



# **unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories**

**Book Package  
Stories 1 - 50**

**Version 9 (master - 601e537a5b)**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2023-02-28

**Version:** 12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories**

**Date:** 2023-03-03

**Version:** 9

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Questions**

**Date:** 2023-03-02

**Version:** 9

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® OBS Translation Words Links**

**Date:** 2021-03-22

**Version:** 1

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2023-01-25

**Version:** 36

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2023-02-10

**Version:** 40

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2023 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License (CC BY-SA). To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from <https://openbiblestories.org>". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at <https://unfoldingword.org/contact/>.

# Table of Contents

<b>Open Bible Stories BP</b> .....	<b>9</b>
1. The Creation .....	9
2. Sin Enters the World .....	40
3. The Flood .....	61
4. God's Covenant with Abraham .....	82
5. The Son of Promise .....	100
6. God Provides for Isaac .....	119
7. God Blesses Jacob .....	131
8. God Saves Joseph and His Family .....	150
9. God Calls Moses .....	177
10. The Ten Plagues .....	199
11. The Passover .....	218
12. The Exodus .....	231
13. God's Covenant with Israel .....	256
14. Wandering in the Wilderness .....	284
15. The Promised Land .....	315
16. The Deliverers .....	338
17. God's Covenant with David .....	373
18. The Divided Kingdom .....	401
19. The Prophets .....	422
20. The Exile and Return .....	457
21. God Promises the Messiah .....	482
22. The Birth of John .....	503
23. The Birth of Jesus .....	518
24. John Baptizes Jesus .....	538
25. Satan Tempts Jesus .....	556
26. Jesus Starts His Ministry .....	572
27. The Story of the Good Samaritan .....	591
28. The Rich Young Ruler .....	611
29. The Story of the Unmerciful Servant .....	630
30. Jesus Feeds Thousands of People .....	649
31. Jesus Walks on Water .....	662
32. Jesus Heals a Demon-Possessed Man & a Sick Woman .....	675
33. The Story of the Farmer .....	697
34. Jesus Teaches Other Stories .....	709
35. The Story of the Compassionate Father .....	728
36. The Transfiguration .....	747
37. Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead .....	759
38. Jesus Is Betrayed .....	781
39. Jesus Is Put on Trial .....	809
40. Jesus Is Crucified .....	832
41. God Raises Jesus from the Dead .....	848
42. Jesus Returns to Heaven .....	864
43. The Church Begins .....	882
44. Peter and John Heal a Beggar .....	904
45. Stephen and Philip .....	920
46. Saul Becomes a Follower of Jesus .....	941
47. Paul and Silas in Philippi .....	960

48. Jesus Is the Promised Messiah .....	983
49. God's New Covenant .....	1007
50. Jesus Returns .....	1036
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy .....</b>	<b>1069</b>
Active or Passive .....	1070
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information .....	1073
Background Information .....	1076
Connect — Background Information .....	1079
Connect — Contrast Relationship .....	1082
Connect — Exception Clauses .....	1084
Connect — Factual Conditions .....	1086
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship .....	1088
Connect — Hypothetical Conditions .....	1091
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship .....	1093
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship .....	1096
Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship .....	1098
Connecting Words and Phrases .....	1100
Direct and Indirect Quotations .....	1104
Doublet .....	1106
Ellipsis .....	1108
End of Story .....	1110
Euphemism .....	1112
Exclamations .....	1114
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' .....	1117
First, Second or Third Person .....	1119
Forms of You .....	1121
Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural .....	1122
Go and Come .....	1124
How to Translate Names .....	1126
Hyperbole .....	1130
Hypothetical Situations .....	1134
Idiom .....	1137
Imperatives — Other Uses .....	1139
Introduction of a New Event .....	1142
Introduction of New and Old Participants .....	1145
Irony .....	1148
Litotes .....	1151
Merism .....	1153
Metaphor .....	1155
Metonymy .....	1161
Nominal Adjectives .....	1163
Numbers .....	1165
Order of Events .....	1168
Parables .....	1170
Possession .....	1172
Pronouns .....	1176
Proverbs .....	1178
Quotes within Quotes .....	1181
Rhetorical Question .....	1184
Simile .....	1187
Symbolic Action .....	1190
Symbolic Language .....	1192

Synecdoche .....	1194
Translate Unknowns .....	1196
Translating Son and Father .....	1199
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words .....</b>	<b>1201</b>
Aaron .....	1202
Abraham, Abram .....	1203
Adam .....	1204
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress .....	1205
Ahab .....	1206
altar .....	1207
Amorite .....	1208
angel, archangel .....	1209
apostle, apostleship .....	1211
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire .....	1212
Baal .....	1213
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian .....	1214
baptize, baptized, baptism .....	1215
Barnabas .....	1217
Bathsheba .....	1218
beg, beggar, needy .....	1219
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief .....	1220
Bethlehem, Ephrathah .....	1223
betray, betrayer .....	1224
bless, blessed, blessing .....	1225
Caleb .....	1227
Canaan, Canaanite .....	1228
chariot, charioteers .....	1229
Christ, Messiah .....	1230
Christian .....	1232
church, Church .....	1233
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision .....	1235
covenant .....	1237
cross .....	1239
crucify, crucified .....	1240
curse, cursed, cursing .....	1241
David .....	1243
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue .....	1245
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit .....	1246
demon-possessed .....	1247
descend, descendant .....	1248
disciple .....	1249
dream .....	1251
Egypt, Egyptian .....	1252
Elijah .....	1253
Esau .....	1254
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	1255
Eve .....	1257
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	1258
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins .....	1260
faith .....	1261
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	1263
fast, fasting .....	1265

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned .....	1266
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out .....	1268
Galilee, Galilean .....	1269
Gibeon, Gibeonite .....	1270
Gideon .....	1271
God .....	1272
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father .....	1274
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .....	1276
good news, gospel .....	1278
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	1280
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place .....	1282
guilt, guilty .....	1283
Hagar .....	1284
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	1285
hell, lake of fire .....	1287
high priest, chief priests .....	1288
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit .....	1290
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	1292
humble, humbled, humility .....	1294
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	1295
innocent .....	1297
Isaac .....	1298
Isaiah .....	1299
Ishmael, Ishmaelite .....	1300
Israel, Israelites .....	1301
Jacob, Israel .....	1303
Jeremiah .....	1305
Jericho .....	1306
Jeroboam .....	1307
Jerusalem .....	1308
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus .....	1310
Jew, Jewish .....	1312
Jewish authorities, Jewish leader .....	1313
John (the apostle) .....	1314
John (the Baptist) .....	1315
Jordan River, Jordan .....	1316
Joseph (NT) .....	1317
Joseph (OT) .....	1318
Joshua .....	1319
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad .....	1320
Judah, kingdom of Judah .....	1322
Judas Iscariot .....	1323
judge, judgment .....	1324
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification .....	1326
King of the Jews .....	1328
king, kingship .....	1329
kingdom .....	1330
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven .....	1332
kingdom of Israel .....	1334
lamb, Lamb of God .....	1335
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God .....	1337
Lazarus .....	1339

lord, Lord, master, sir .....	1340
love, beloved .....	1342
Mary, the mother of Jesus .....	1344
mercy, merciful .....	1346
Midian, Midianite .....	1348
miracle, wonder, sign .....	1349
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock .....	1351
Moses .....	1352
Naaman .....	1353
Nathan .....	1354
Nazareth, Nazarene .....	1355
Nebuchadnezzar .....	1356
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile .....	1357
Noah .....	1358
Passover .....	1359
Paul, Saul .....	1361
peace, peaceful, peacemakers .....	1363
people, people group .....	1365
persecute .....	1367
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas .....	1368
Pharaoh, king of Egypt .....	1369
Philippi, Philippians .....	1370
Pilate .....	1371
praise, praised, praiseworthy .....	1372
pray, prayer .....	1373
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation .....	1375
priest, priesthood .....	1377
promise, promised .....	1379
Promised Land .....	1380
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess .....	1381
prostrate, bow down, worship .....	1383
proud, pride, prideful .....	1385
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished .....	1387
Rahab .....	1389
Rebekah .....	1390
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness .....	1391
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance .....	1392
Rehoboam .....	1394
repent, repentance .....	1395
resurrection .....	1397
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	1398
Rome, Roman .....	1400
Sabbath .....	1401
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering .....	1403
Samaria, Samaritan .....	1405
Sarah, Sarai .....	1406
Satan, devil, evil one .....	1407
Saul (OT) .....	1409
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	1410
sea of reeds, Sea of Reeds, Red Sea .....	1412
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	1413
shepherd, herder, pastor .....	1416

Silas, Silvanus .....	1418
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	1419
Sinai, Horeb .....	1421
Solomon .....	1422
Son of God, the Son .....	1423
spirit, wind, breath .....	1425
suffer, suffering .....	1427
teacher, Teacher .....	1429
temple, house, house of God .....	1430
tempt, temptation .....	1432
Ten Commandments .....	1433
tent of meeting .....	1434
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .....	1435
Uriah .....	1436
virgin, virginity .....	1437
wise, wisdom .....	1438
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ... ..	1439
Yahweh .....	1441
Zechariah (NT) .....	1443
<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>1444</b>
unfoldingWord@ Open Bible Stories Translation Notes Contributors .....	1444
unfoldingWord@ Open Bible Stories Contributors .....	1444
unfoldingWord@ Open Bible Stories Translation Questions Contributors .....	1444
unfoldingWord@ OBS Translation Words Links Contributors .....	1444
unfoldingWord@ Translation Academy Contributors .....	1444
unfoldingWord@ Translation Words Contributors .....	1445



# Open Bible Stories BP

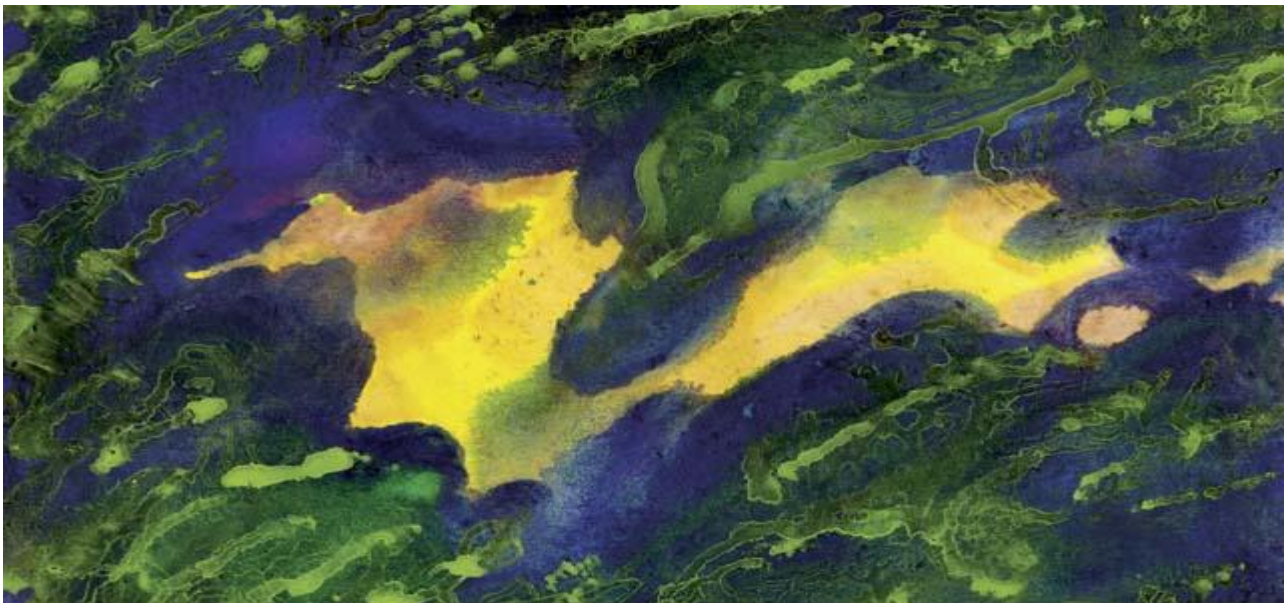
## 1. The Creation

*A Bible story from: Genesis 1-2*

### The Creation

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made the world" or "How did God make the world?"

**01:01**



This is how God made everything in the beginning. He created the universe and everything in it in six days. After God created the earth it was dark and empty because he had not yet formed anything in it. But God's Spirit was there over the water.

### Translation Notes

#### **the beginning**

This could mean 'the beginning of all things,' before anything existed except God.

#### **created**

This term here means that God made it from nothing.

### **the universe**

This includes everything that God created on the earth and in the heavens, both visible and invisible things.

### **the earth**

The word **earth** refers to the whole world that people live on.

### **dark**

It was completely dark. There was no light at all, since God had not yet created light.

### **empty**

God had not yet created anything except for the bare earth covered by water.

### **he had not yet formed anything in it**

There were no distinguishing features—just water covering everything.

### **God's Spirit**

The Spirit of God, sometimes called the Holy Spirit, was present in the beginning, moving freely over the earth in order to create all that he had planned to do.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Spirit (p.1290)

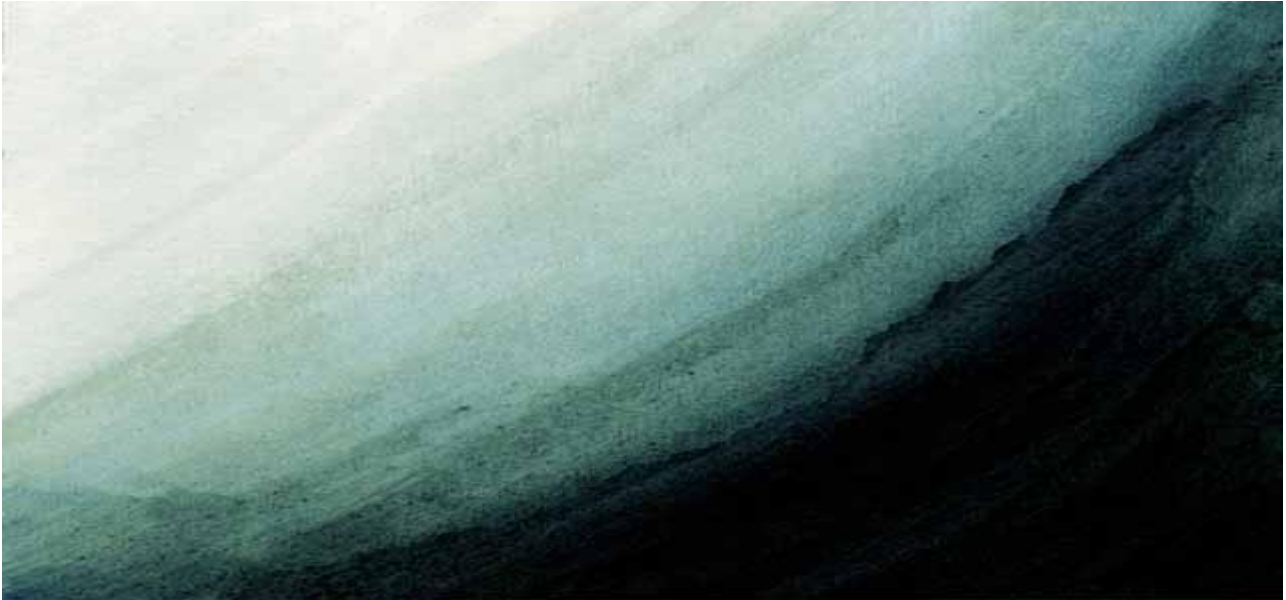
## **Translation Questions**

### **Where did everything in the universe come from?**

God created everything.

### **How long did it take God to create everything?**

He took six days.

**01:02**

Then God said, “Let there be light!” And there was light. God saw that the light was good and called it “day.” He separated it from the darkness, which he called “night.” God created the light on the first day of creation.

## Translation Notes

### **God said**

God created light by means of a simple verbal command.

### **Then God said, “Let there be light!”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God said that there should be light.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### **Let there be light!**

The result of this command happened immediately because it was spoken by God. It may be more natural to translate this as a statement of certainty that this would definitely happen. For example, you could translate this as: “There shall be light.”

See TA article: **Imperatives — Other Uses (p.1139)**

### **light**

This was a special light that God created. The sun was not created until later.

### **was good**

This phrase is often repeated through the Creation story, and emphasizes that each stage of creation was pleasing to God and accomplished his plan and purpose.

### **creation**

This word is used here to refer to the six-day period during which God brought into being everything that exists.

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)

### **Translation Questions**

**What was God's response to the day and night he created on the first day?**

He said they were good.

**01:03**



On the second day of creation, God said, "Let there be an expanse above the waters." And there was an expanse. God called this expanse "sky."

## Translation Notes

### the second day

God's work of creation was orderly, purposeful, and sequential. The things he created each day built upon and depended on the acts of the previous days.

### Let there be an expanse above the waters

God created the sky by speaking a command.

### sky

This term refers to all of the space above the earth, including the air we breathe and the heavens.

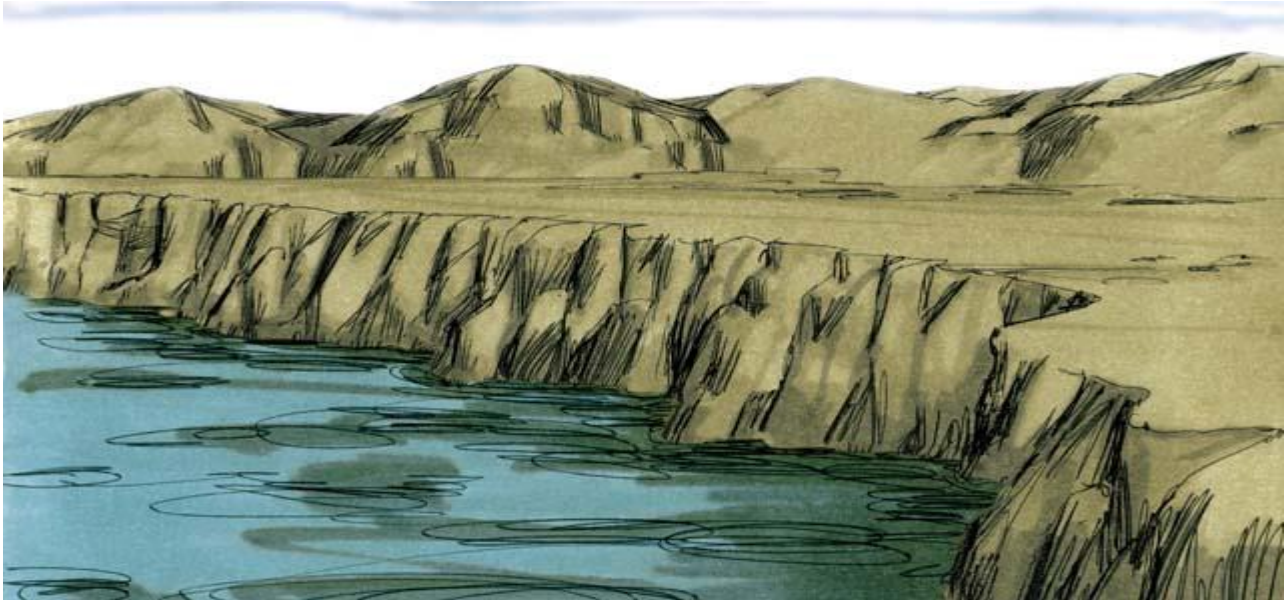
## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**01:04**



On the third day, God said, “Let the water come together in one place and the dry land appear.” He called the dry land “earth,” and he called the water “seas.” God saw that what he had created was good.

### **Translation Notes**

#### **the third day**

The next in the series of orderly days in which God prepared the earth for life

#### **Let the water come together in one place and the dry land appear**

God created the dry land by speaking a command.

#### **earth**

This word is used here to refer to dirt or soil, which is what dry land is made of.

#### **created**

This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)

### **Translation Questions**

**What was God’s response to the earth and the seas he created on the third day?**

He said they were good.

01:05



Then God said, “Let the earth produce all kinds of trees and plants.” And that is what happened. God saw that what he had created was good.

## Translation Notes

### **Then God said, “Let the earth produce all kinds of trees and plants.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God said that the earth should produce all kinds of trees and plants.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### **God said**

God created all vegetation by speaking a command.

### **Let the earth produce all kinds of trees and plants**

The result of this command happened immediately because it was spoken by God. It may be more natural to translate this as a statement of certainty that this would definitely happen. For example, you could translate this as: “The earth will produce all kinds of trees and plants.”

See TA article: **Imperatives — Other Uses (p.1139)**

### **all kinds**

The many different species, or types, of plants and trees.

### **created**

This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.



## **was good**

This phrase is often repeated through the Creation story, and emphasizes that each stage of creation was pleasing to God and accomplished his plan and purpose.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)

## **Translation Questions**

**What was God's response to the trees and plants he created on the third day?**

He said they were good.

**01:06**

On the fourth day of creation, God said, "Let there be lights in the sky." And the sun, the moon, and the stars appeared. God made them to give light to the earth and to mark day and night, seasons and years. God saw that what he had created was good.

## Translation Notes

### **the fourth day**

the next in the orderly series of days in which God created

### **Let there be lights in the sky**

God created the sun, moon, and stars by speaking a command.

### **light**

Shining objects in the sky now provided light for the earth.

### **day and night, seasons and years**

God created different lights to mark days, nights, seasons, and years. He divides time periods which are indicated by the positions of the lights. These periods are cyclical and continue until the end of time.

### **created**

This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)

## Translation Questions

**What was God's response to the sun, moon, and stars he created on the fourth day?**

He said they were good.

**01:07**

On the fifth day, God said, “Let living things fill the waters, and birds fly in the sky.” This is how he made everything that swims in the water and all the birds. God saw that it was good, and he blessed them.

## Translation Notes

### **the fifth day**

God continues his orderly progression of creation that he started during the previous four days.

### **Let living things fill the waters, and birds fly in the sky**

God created water creatures and the birds by speaking a command.

### **everything that swims**

God not only made fish, but every kind of living thing that lives in the waters. Every one exists because God chose to create it.

### **all the birds**

God did not make just one kind of bird, but all of the amazing variety of shapes, sizes, colors, and kinds of birds.

### **it was good**

This phrase is repeated throughout creation to show that every step went exactly according to God’s wise plan and purpose.

## **blessed them**

God speaks his desire that they would prosper and that things would go well for them in the world in which he had placed them.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)
- blessed (p.1225)

## **Translation Questions**

**What was God's response to the things in the seas and the birds he created on the fifth day?**

He said they were good.

01:08



On the sixth day of creation, God said, “Let there be all kinds of land animals!” And it happened just like God said. Some were farm animals, some crawled on the ground, and some were wild. And God saw that it was good.

## Translation Notes

### the sixth day

the next event in a continuing, orderly progression of days and creative acts

### Let there be all kinds of land animals!

The result of this command happened immediately because it was spoken by God. It may be more natural to translate this as a statement of certainty that this would definitely happen. For example, you could translate this as: “There will be all kinds of land animals!”

See TA article: **Imperatives — Other Uses (p.1139)**

### all kinds

This indicates a great variety, but also order.

### land animals

Every kind of animal that lived on the land, as opposed to the birds, or animals that live in the seas.

### farm animals

The kinds of land animals that commonly live peacefully with people—as in tame, or domesticated, animals.

### **crawled on the ground**

This probably includes reptiles and possibly insects.

### **wild**

The kinds of animals that do not normally live peacefully with people, usually because they are afraid of people, or dangerous to them.

### **it was good**

This phrase is repeated throughout creation to show that every step went exactly according to God's wise plan and purpose.

## **Translation Words**

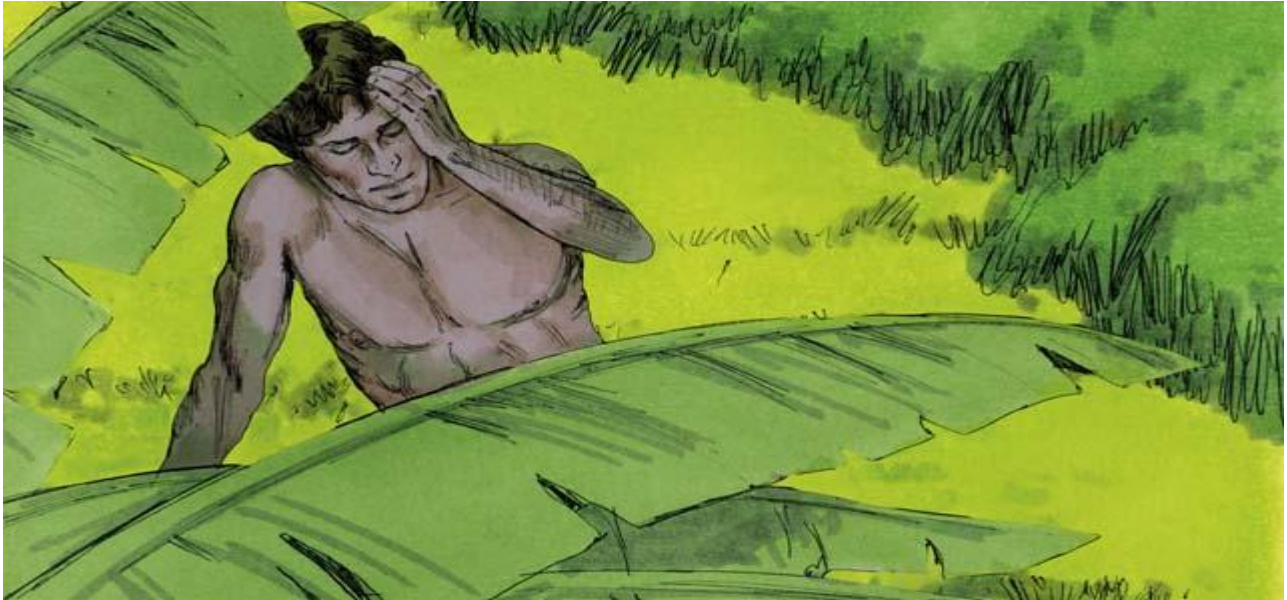
- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)

## **Translation Questions**

**What was God's response to the land animals he created on the sixth day?**

He said they were good.

01:09



Then God said, “Let us make human beings in our image to be like us. They will rule over the earth and all the animals.”

## Translation Notes

### Let us make

This indicates God’s deliberate, willful decision to create man in a particular way for a particular purpose. You could translate this as: “We will make.”

### us & our & us

The Bible teaches that there is one God, but the Old Testament word **God** is a plural form, and God uses plural pronouns when speaking to himself. Some understand this as a special way of speaking that expresses God’s majesty, and others understand this as God the Father speaking to the Son and the Spirit, who are all God.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

### in our image

An image is a physical representation of someone or something. Humans were made in such a way that we display or represent some of the qualities or traits of God.

### in our image to be like us

The two phrases, **in our image** and **like us** are a doublet. They means almost the same thing. Together, they emphasize that man was to be very much like God, although not exactly the same.

See TA article: **Doublet (p.1106)**



### **like us**

Humans share some of God's characteristics, but not all of his qualities. This phrase should be translated with words that show man is similar to God, but not equal with him, nor the same as he is.

### **rule over**

God gave people the right and power to manage, guide, and control how the earth and the animals will be used.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)

## **Translation Questions**

### **In what way did God make man different than the animals?**

He made man in his image and in his likeness.

### **What did God say would be the responsibility of the human beings?**

They would have authority over the earth and over the animals, and would care for them.

**01:10**

So God took some soil, formed it into a man, and breathed life into him. This man's name was Adam. God planted a large garden where Adam could live, and put him there to care for it.

**Translation Notes****took some soil**

God made man from the dust, or dry soil from the ground. This word should probably be different from the general word used for earth.

**formed it**

This word expresses that God personally fashioned the man in the same way that a person shapes something with his hands. Make sure that a different word from 'create' is used. Note that this is very different from how he created everything else through a simple spoken command.

**a man**

Only the man was made at this time; the woman was made later by a different method.

**breathed life**

This phrase expresses God's very personal, intimate action as he transferred life from himself into Adam's body, comparing this to how a human being breathes out air.

**life**

In this event, God breathed both physical and spiritual life into the man.

## **Adam**

Adam's name is the same as the Old Testament word for 'man,' and similar to the word for **soil**, the substance from which he was formed.

## **a large garden**

An area of land planted with trees and plants for a purpose—usually to produce food or to provide beauty.

## **to care for it**

To maintain the garden by preparing soil, planting, tending, and harvesting.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- life
- Adam (p.1204)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How did God make the first man?**

God formed him from the soil.

### **How did the man become alive?**

God breathed life into him.

### **What was the name of the man?**

His name was Adam.

### **Where did God put Adam?**

He put Adam in a garden that God planted.

**01:11**

In the middle of the garden, God planted two special trees—the tree of life and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would die.

**Translation Notes****In the middle**

The central location emphasizes the importance of the two trees.

**the garden**

An area of land planted with trees and plants for a purpose—usually to produce food or to provide beauty.

**the tree of life**

Anyone who ate fruit from this tree would never die.

**the tree of the knowledge of good and evil**

The fruit of this tree could enable a person to know both good and evil.

**knowledge**

To know or understand by personal experience.

## **good and evil**

**Evil** is the opposite of **good**. Just as **good** refers to what is pleasing to God, **evil** refers to everything that is not pleasing to God.

## **would die**

In this instance, he would die both physically and spiritually.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- life
- good (p.1280)
- evil (p.1258)
- Adam (p.1204)
- die

## **Translation Questions**

**From which special tree was Adam not allowed to eat?**

He could not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

**What would happen if Adam ate from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil?**

He would die.

**01:12**

Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be Adam's helper.

**Translation Notes****not good**

This is the first time that anything in creation was not good. It means it was 'not yet good' because God was not finished with the creation of humans.

**alone**

Adam was the only human, with no possibility of a relationship with another person, and unable to have children and multiply.

**Adam's helper**

There was no one who was similar enough to Adam to join with him to accomplish the task that God gave to him. None of the animals could do this.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)
- Adam's (p.1204)

**Translation Questions**

**Why was Adam alone when there were all kinds of animals?**

The animals were not able to be a **helper** for Adam.

## 01:13



So God made Adam fall into a deep sleep. Then God took one of Adam's ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.

### Translation Notes

#### **a deep sleep**

This was a deeper sleep than normal.

#### **took one of Adam's ribs and made**

The verbs indicate God's very personal act of removing the rib from Adam and shaping it into a woman.

#### **a woman**

She was the first woman, the female version of human beings that was missing until now.

#### **brought her to him**

God personally introduced them. He presented the woman to Adam, almost like offering a special gift.

### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Adam (p.1204)

### Translation Questions

**How did God make the woman?**



He formed her from Adam's rib.

**01:14**

When Adam saw her, he said, “At last! This one is like me! Let her be called ‘Woman,’ for she was made from Man.” This is why a man leaves his father and mother and becomes one with his wife.

**Translation Notes****At last!**

Adam’s exclamation indicates that he had been waiting for something like the woman.

**like me**

The woman was the same type of being as Adam, even though there were important differences between them.

**Woman**

This word is the feminine form of the word ‘man.’

**made from Man**

The woman was formed directly from Adam’s own body.

**a man leaves**

This is stated in the present tense to indicate what would become the normal situation in the future. Adam did not have a mother or father, but all other men would.

## **becomes one**

The husband and wife will share an intimate bond of unity and a commitment to one another that will surpass their relationships to anyone else.

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

## **Translation Words**

- Adam (p.1204)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did the name woman mean to Adam?**

It meant that she was made from man.

### **What is the purpose of a man having a wife?**

They are to become one.

**01:15**

God made man and woman in his own image. He blessed them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth!" And God saw that everything he had made was very good, and he was very pleased with all of it. This all happened on the sixth day of creation.

**Translation Notes****God made**

God formed the man and the woman in a very personal way.

**in his own image**

An image is a physical representation of someone or something. God made people to display or represent some of his qualities and traits, but not to be equal to him.

**very good**

More intense than the **it was good** statements on previous days. **Very good** refers to all of creation, not just the man and the woman. Everything was exactly as God intended it to be.

**creation**

This word is used here to refer to the six-day period during which God made everything that exists.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- blessed (p.1225)
- good (p.1280)

## Translation Questions

**What did God say about his creation when he finished it?**

He said it was very good.

**01:16**

When the seventh day came, God had finished all the work that he had been doing. He blessed the seventh day and made it holy because on this day he stopped creating things. This is how God created the universe and everything in it.

**Translation Notes****the seventh day**

The next day after the six days of creation were completed.

**finished all the work that he had been doing**

Specifically, God finished the work of creation. He still performs other work.

**blessed the seventh day**

God had a special, positive plan for the seventh day, and for every seventh day to follow.

**made it holy**

That is, God 'set apart' the day as a special day. It was not to be used in the same way as the other six days of the week.

**the universe**

This includes everything that God created on the earth and in the heavens, both visible and invisible things.

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- blessed (p.1225)
- holy (p.1292)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did God do on the seventh day?**

He finished all his work and blessed the seventh day and made it holy.

## 2. Sin Enters the World

*A Bible story from: Genesis 3*

### **Sin Enters the World**

This title can also be translated as: "About how people began to sin" or "How did people begin to sin?"



02:01



Adam and his wife were very happy living in the beautiful garden God had made for them. Neither of them wore clothes, but this did not cause them to feel any shame because there was no sin in the world. They often walked in the garden and talked with God.

### Translation Notes

#### the beautiful garden

This refers to a special collection of trees and plants that God prepared for Adam and Eve to enjoy and from which to eat. This should be the same word that was used in [01:11](#). See how you translated it there.

#### shame

the feeling that comes with knowing we have sinned or that we fall short in some way

#### talked with God

The word for **talk** should be the same as would be used to refer to talking to a human being. God may have taken a physical form to talk to the man and the woman since the text indicates that they talked to him face-to-face.

### Translation Words

- Adam (p.1204)
- God (p.1272)
- sin (p.1419)

## Translation Questions

**Why were Adam and Eve not ashamed that they were naked?**

There was no sin in the world.

02:02



But there was a snake in the garden. He was very crafty. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”

## Translation Notes

### a snake

This refers to an elongated, legless creature that now moves by wiggling on its belly. Although later on in the story it is revealed that Satan spoke through the snake, this should not be said here in this frame.

### crafty

clever and sly, with the intent to deceive

### He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “He asked the woman if God had really told her not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?

This is a rhetorical question. The snake asked the woman whether God actually said not to eat from any of the trees in the garden. But he was only pretending that he didn't know what God had said because he wanted to create doubt in the woman's mind. He wanted her to question God's goodness.

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

## **you**

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the plural form. God had given this command to both the man and the woman.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

## **the fruit from any of the trees**

This refers to all of the various types of fruit from each of the different trees in the garden.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What was the snake's first question to Eve?**

He asked, "Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?"

02:03



The woman answered, "God told us we could eat the fruit of any tree except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. God told us, 'If you eat that fruit or even touch it, you will die.'"

### Translation Notes

**The woman answered, "God told us we could eat the fruit of any tree except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. God told us, 'If you eat that fruit or even touch it, you will die.'"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "The woman answered that God had told them that they could eat the fruit of any tree except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, and that if they ate that fruit or even touched it, they would die."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

#### **If you eat that fruit or even touch it, you will die**

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the plural form. God had given this command to both the man and the woman.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

#### **the fruit**

We don't know what kind of fruit this was. We only know that it grew on this tree. If possible, it is best to use a general word for fruit here, and not a word for a specific kind of fruit.

#### **the tree of the knowledge of good and evil**

The woman correctly understood that they were not allowed to eat from this one tree that would enable them to understand evil as well as good.

## **you will die**

Use your ordinary word for death, for a person's physical life to end. Don't avoid the term just because the thought of death sounds too harsh.

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)
- evil (p.1258)
- die

### **Translation Questions**

**From which tree were Adam and his wife not allowed to eat?**

They were not to eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

**What did God say would happen if Adam and his wife ate from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil?**

He said they would die.

02:04



The snake responded to the woman, "That is not true! You will not die. God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does."

### Translation Notes

**The snake responded to the woman, "That is not true! You will not die. God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "The snake responded to the woman that this was not true! They would not die. God just knew that as soon as they ate it, they would be like God and would understand good and evil like he does."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**You will not die. God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God**

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the plural form. Satan was speaking about what would happen to both the man and the woman.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

**like God**

The man and the woman were already made in the likeness of God. The snake is suggesting that the woman would be more like God if she understood evil. However, God never intended for her to have this knowledge.

**will understand good and evil**

To know from personal experience what things are good and what things are bad, or being able to know whether something is good or bad.

## **good and evil**

This is a merism. **Good** and **evil** are two extremes that represent everything in between them. Satan is saying that they would understand everything about what is right and wrong.

See TA article: **Merism (p.1153)**

## **Translation Words**

- true
- die
- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)
- evil (p.1258)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did the snake say was the reason God did not want them to eat the fruit?**

He said God was lying because God did not want them to understand things like he did.



02:05



The woman saw that the fruit was beautiful and looked delicious. She also wanted to be wise, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it. Then she gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it too.

### Translation Notes

#### **wise**

The woman wanted to have insight and understanding like the snake seemed to have, and like God has.

#### **who was with her**

This is important information because it shows that the man was present when the woman made the decision to eat the fruit.

### Translation Words

- wise (p.1438)

### Translation Questions

#### **Why did the woman eat the fruit?**

She saw that it was beautiful and delicious, and she wanted to be wise.

#### **Were Adam and his wife forced to eat the fruit?**

No, they freely chose to eat the fruit and disobey God.

02:06



Suddenly, their eyes were opened and they realized they were naked. They tried to cover their bodies by sewing leaves together to make clothes.

### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

### Translation Words

- wise (p.1438)

### Translation Questions

**What did the man and the woman do when they realized they were naked?**

They sewed leaves together to make clothes.

02:07



Then the man and his wife heard the sound of God walking through the garden. They both hid from God. Then God called to the man, “Where are you?” Adam replied, “I heard you walking in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked. So I hid.”

## Translation Notes

### God walking

It seems that God regularly came to the garden to walk and talk with the man and the woman. We do not know what this looked like. If it is possible, it is best to use the same word that would be used to talk about a person walking.

### Then God called to the man, “Where are you?”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God called to the man and asked him where he was.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### Where are you?

This is a rhetorical question. God already knew the answer to this question. The purpose of the question was to force the man and the woman to explain why they were hiding.

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

### you

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the singular form. God was speaking only to the man.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

**Adam replied, “I heard you walking in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked. So I hid.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Adam replied that he heard God walking in the garden, and was afraid because he was naked. So he hid.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Adam (p.1204)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

02:08



Then God asked, “Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?” The man answered, “You gave me this woman, and she gave me the fruit.” Then God asked the woman, “What have you done?” The woman replied, “The snake tricked me.”

### Translation Notes

**Then God asked, “Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God asked who told Adam, that he were naked, and it he had eaten the fruit that God told him not to eat.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Who told you that you were naked?**

Or, “How did you find out that you were naked?” God already knows the answer to all of his questions. By asking this question and the following question, he was giving Adam the opportunity to admit his sin of disobedience. Being naked was not a sin. God created them that way. Their knowledge of their nakedness was the problem. Their shame showed that they had sinned.

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?**

This is a rhetorical question. God already knew that Adam had eaten the fruit that God had told him not to eat. This can be translated as: a statement: “You ate the fruit that I told you not to eat!”

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

### **she gave me the fruit**

The man blamed the woman rather than confessing his disobedience and accepting responsibility for disobeying God.

### **Then God asked the woman, “What have you done?”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God asked the woman what she had done.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### **What have you done?**

Or, “Why have you done this?” God already knew the answer to this question. By asking this question, he was giving the woman the opportunity to admit her guilt. He was also implying that she should not have done what she did.

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

### **The snake tricked me**

The snake deceived or misled her. He lied to her. Don't use a word that indicates that he cast a spell on her or bewitched her. The woman blamed the snake rather than confessing her disobedience and accepting responsibility for disobeying God.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How did the man respond when God confronted him about his sin?**

He blamed the woman.

### **How did the woman respond when God confronted her about her sin?**

She blamed the snake.

02:09



God said to the snake, "You are cursed! You will slide on your belly and eat soil. You and the woman will hate each other, and your children and her children will hate each other too. The woman's descendant will crush your head, and you will wound his heel."

### Translation Notes

#### **You are cursed!**

This could also be translated as: "I curse you!" or "Great harm will come to you." Do not use a word that implies magic.

#### **will hate each other**

The woman would hate the snake and the snake would hate the woman. The women's descendants would also hate the snake's descendants, and the snake's descendants would hate them.

#### **The woman's descendant**

Refers to one of her descendants in particular.

#### **will crush your head**

The descendant of the woman will destroy the descendant of the snake.

#### **will wound his heel**

The descendant of the snake will wound the descendant of the woman.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- cursed (p.1241)
- descendant (p.1248)

## Translation Questions

### What was God's curse on the snake?

You will slide on your belly, and the woman's descendant will crush your head.



## 02:10



God then said to the woman, "I will make childbirth very painful for you. You will desire your husband, and he will rule over you."

### Translation Notes

#### **childbirth very painful**

Some languages may need to express this as a verb. You could say: 'I will cause you to have much more pain when you give birth to children.'

### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)

### Translation Questions

#### **What was God's curse on the woman?**

You will have painful childbirth, and although your desire will be for your husband, he will rule over you.

**02:11**

God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and disobeyed me. Now the ground is cursed, and you will need to work hard to grow food. Then you will die, and your body will return to soil.” The man named his wife Eve, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people. And God clothed Adam and Eve with animal skins.

**Translation Notes****the ground is cursed**

As punishment for Adam’s disobedience, the earth would no longer be fruitful. Adam would have to work very hard to raise enough food to eat.

**you will die**

The ultimate punishment for their disobedience was death. Spiritual death is our separation from God. Physical death is our separation from our body.

**will return to soil**

God created Adam from the soil and gave him life. As a result of sin, his life will be taken from him and his body will decompose and become soil again.

**Eve, which means “life-giver,”**

God gave life to Adam and Eve, and it is passed on to every person through childbirth.

## **the mother of all people**

This means that she would be the female ancestor of all people. Some languages might say 'she would be the grandmother of all people.'

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- disobeyed
- cursed (p.1241)
- die
- Eve (p.1257)
- Adam (p.1204)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What was God's curse on the man?**

You will work hard to grow food, and you will die and return to the soil.

**02:12**

Then God said, “Now that the human beings have become like us by knowing good and evil, they must not be allowed to eat the fruit of the tree of life and live forever.” So God sent Adam and Eve away from the garden. God placed powerful angels at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.

**Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- disobeyed
- cursed (p.1241)
- die
- Eve (p.1257)
- Adam (p.1204)

**Translation Questions****How did God prevent Adam and Eve from living forever?**

He sent them out of the garden containing the tree of life and guarded the entrance with powerful angels.

## 3. The Flood

*A Bible story from: Genesis 6-8*

### The Flood

This title can also be translated as: "About God made a great flood" or "What happened when God made a great flood?"

**03:01**

After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent. It became so bad that God decided to destroy the whole world with a huge flood.

### Translation Notes

#### **After a long time**

This story happens many generations (hundreds of years) after creation.

#### **very wicked and violent**

It may be more natural to say: "had become wicked and did violent things."

#### **It became so bad**

It may be clearer to say: "People were behaving in such harmful and evil ways."

#### **God decided to destroy**

This does not mean that the earth would be destroyed completely. Rather God planned to destroy all the people who had rebelled against him and who had caused such evil and violence. This flood would also kill all the land animals and the birds.

#### **a huge flood**

Very deep water that would cover the earth, even in places where the ground was normally dry, and even covering the tops of the highest mountains.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)

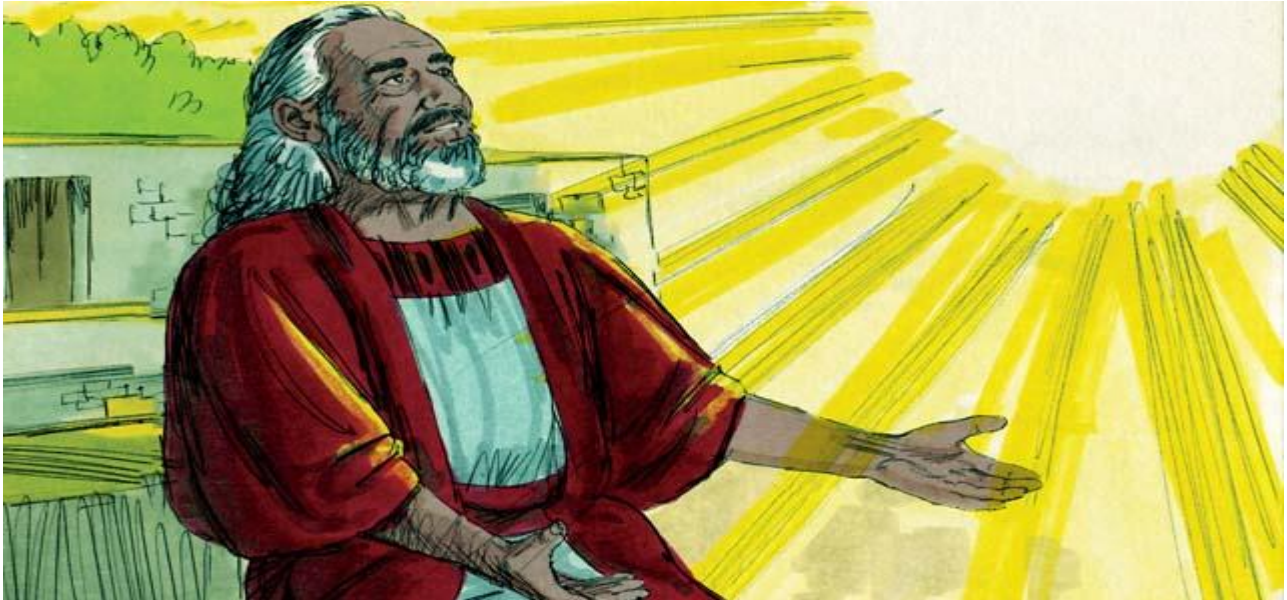
## Translation Questions

### **Why did God decide to destroy the world?**

People had become very wicked and violent.

### **How did God plan to destroy the world?**

He would send a huge flood.

**03:02**

But God was pleased with Noah. He was a righteous man living among wicked people. God told Noah that he was going to make a big flood. Therefore, he told Noah to build a huge boat.

### Translation Notes

#### **God was pleased with Noah**

God was pleased with Noah because he feared and obeyed God. So even though Noah was not sinless, God was gracious to him and made a plan to rescue his family from the devastating flood. Make sure this does not sound like Noah was lucky or that he just happened to escape. Rather, it was God's choice.

#### **was going to make a big flood**

God planned to cause deep water to cover the earth by sending a lot of rain. That is, he planned to cause the flood by causing a lot of rain to fall.

#### **a big flood**

See how you translated this in [03:01](#).

### Translation Words

- Noah (p.1358)
- God (p.1272)
- righteous (p.1398)

### Translation Questions

**Why kind of man was Noah?**



He was a righteous man.

**03:03**

God told Noah to make the boat about 140 meters long, 23 meters wide, and 13.5 meters high. Noah was to build it with wood and to make three levels, many rooms, a roof, and a window. The boat would keep Noah, his family, and every kind of land animal safe during the flood.

### Translation Notes

#### **the boat**

The boat was big enough to carry eight people, two of every kind of animal, and their provisions for almost a year.

### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Noah (p.1358)

### Translation Questions

#### **What did God tell Noah to do?**

God told him to build a huge boat.

#### **What was the purpose of the boat?**

The boat would keep Noah, his family, and the animals safe during the flood.

**03:04**

Noah obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them. It took many years to build the boat because it was so big. Noah warned the people about the flood that was coming and told them to turn to God, but they did not believe him.

### Translation Notes

#### **Noah warned the people**

Noah told everyone that God planned to destroy the world because of sin.

#### **to turn to God**

This means that they should stop sinning and start obeying God.

### Translation Words

- Noah (p.1358)
- obeyed
- God (p.1272)

### Translation Questions

#### **How did the other people react when Noah told them that the flood would come?**

They did not believe him.

03:05



God also commanded Noah and his family to gather enough food for themselves and the animals. When everything was ready, God told Noah it was time for him, his wife, his three sons, and their wives to get into the boat—eight people in all.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

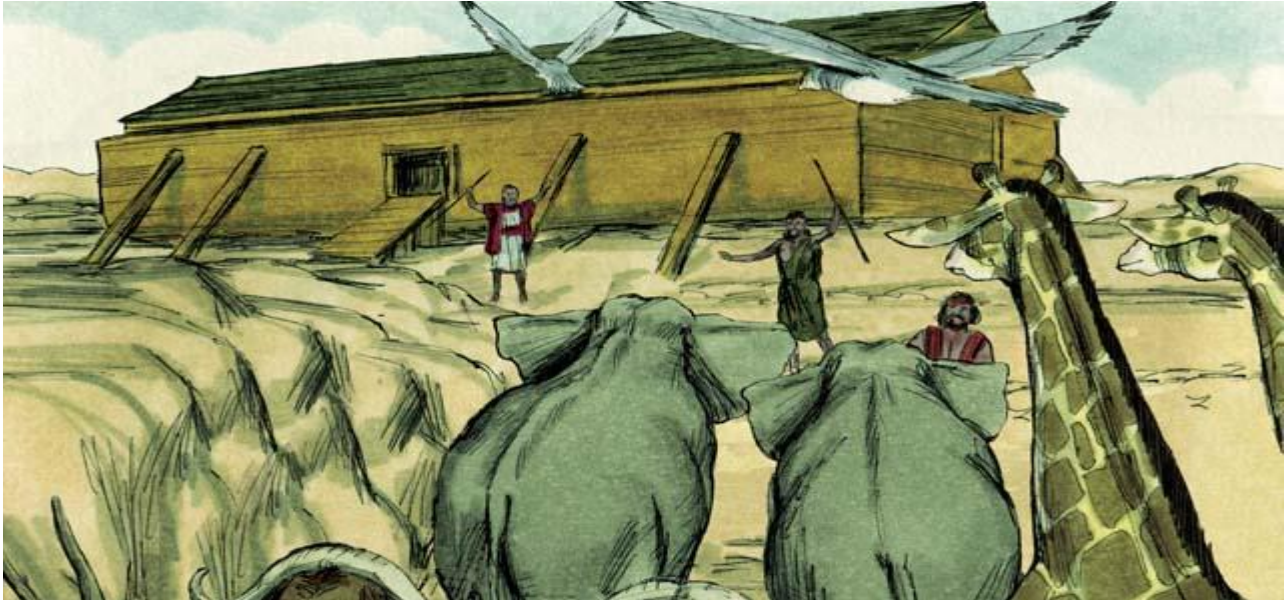
### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Noah (p.1358)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

03:06



God sent a male and a female of every kind of animal and bird to Noah so they could go into the boat and be kept safe during the flood. God sent seven males and seven females of every kind of animal that could be used for sacrifices. When they were all in the boat, God himself closed the door.

## Translation Notes

### God sent

Noah did not need to find the animals. God sent them to him.

### used for sacrifices

For some languages, it may be better to say something like, 'animals that were acceptable to sacrifice to God.' God had decided that people should sacrifice animals to him, but he only permitted them to sacrifice certain kinds of animals.

### God himself closed the door

This emphasizes that it was God who shut the door.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Noah (p.1358)
- sacrifices (p.1403)

## Translation Questions

**Which animals came into the boat before the flood?**

A male and a female of every kind of animal, and seven males and seven females of every kind of animal that could be used for sacrifice came into the boat.

**Who closed the door of the boat after Noah's family and the animals came inside?**

God closed the door.

**03:07**



Then it began to rain, and rain, and rain. It rained for 40 days and 40 nights without stopping! Water also came gushing up out of the earth. Everything in the whole world was covered with water, even the highest mountains.

### **Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Noah (p.1358)
- sacrifices (p.1403)

### **Translation Questions**

**How long did it rain?**

It rained for 40 days and 40 nights.

**03:08**



Everything that lived on the dry land died except the people and animals that were in the boat. The boat floated on the water and kept everything inside the boat safe from drowning.

### **Translation Notes**

(No translation notes for this frame)

### **Translation Words**

- died

### **Translation Questions**

**How high did the water of the flood reach?**

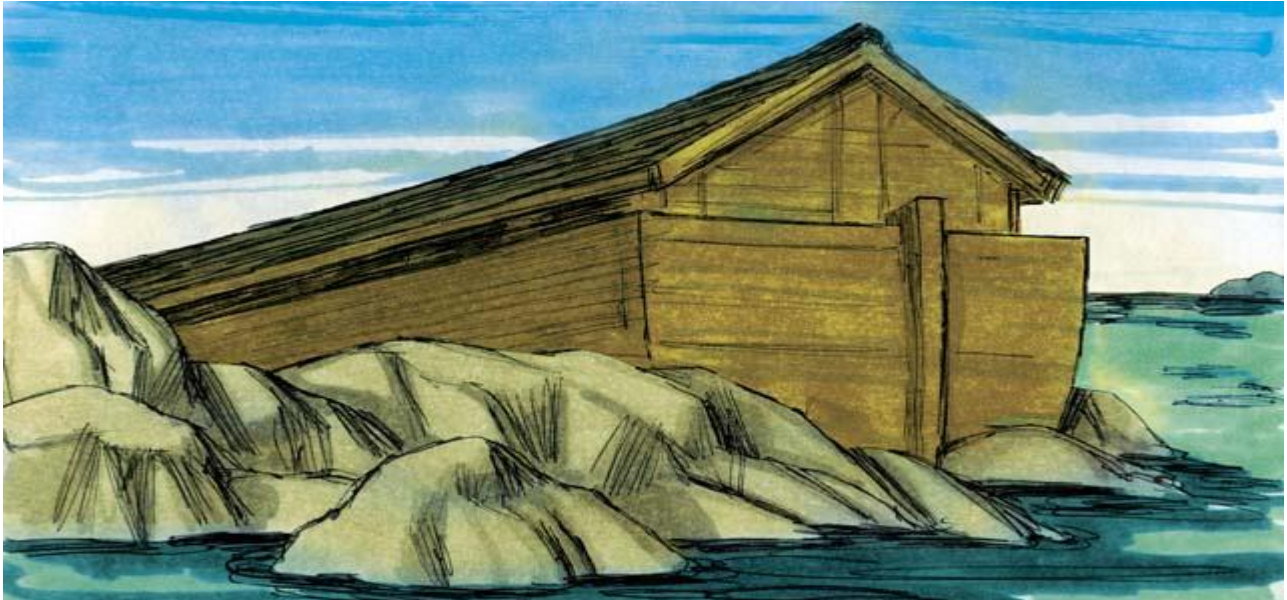
It covered everything in the whole world, even the highest mountains.

**What happened to everything that lived on land?**

Everything died.



03:09



After the rains stopped, the boat floated on the water for five months, and during this time the water started going down. Then, one day, the boat rested on the top of a mountain, but the world was still covered with water. After three more months, the tops of the mountains were visible.

### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

### Translation Words

- died

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 03:10



After 40 more days, Noah sent out a bird called a raven to see if the water had dried up. The raven flew back and forth looking for dry land, but it could not find any.

### Translation Notes

#### a raven

A black bird that flies and eats a variety of plant and animal foods, including the rotting flesh of dead animals.

### Translation Words

- Noah (p.1358)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**03:11**

Later Noah sent out a bird called a dove. But it also could not find any dry land, so it came back to Noah. A week later he sent the dove out again, and it came back with an olive branch in its beak! The water was going down, and the plants were growing again!

**Translation Notes****a dove**

A small white or gray flying bird that eats seeds or fruit.

**an olive branch**

An olive tree's fruit contains oil which people use for cooking or putting on their skin. If your language does not have a word for **olive branch**, you could translate it as: "branch from a tree called 'olive'" or "branch from an oil-tree."

**The water was going down**

It may be more natural in your language to say: "the water was going away" or "the level of the water was getting lower."

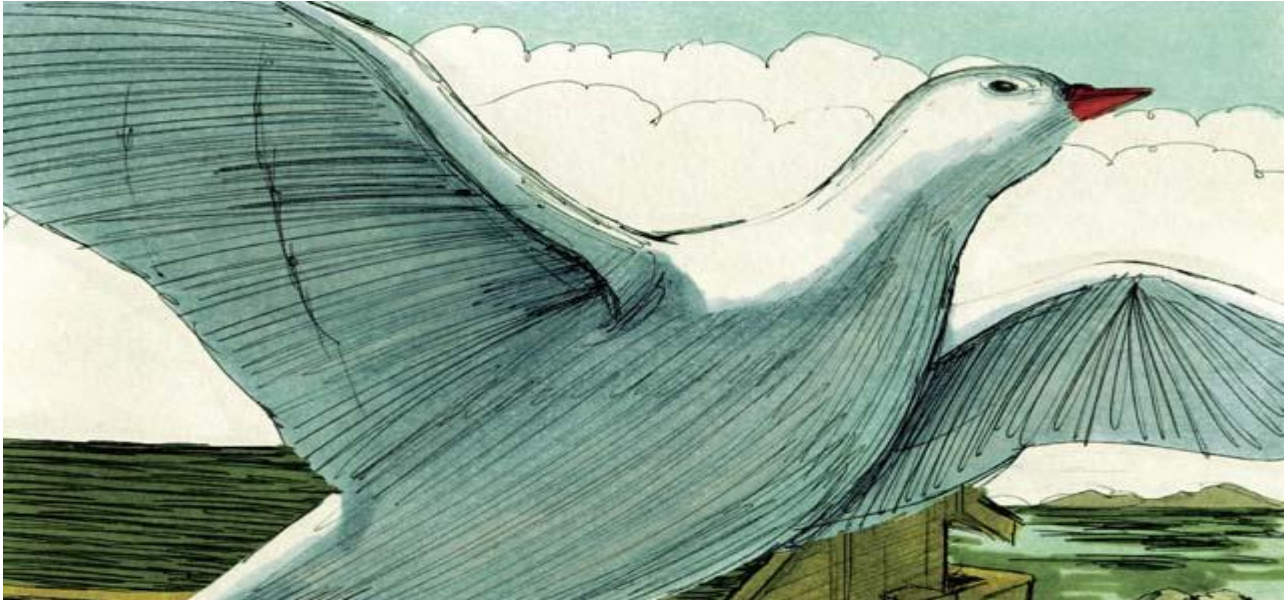
**Translation Words**

- Noah (p.1358)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 03:12



Noah waited another week and sent out the dove a third time. This time, it found a place to rest and did not come back. The water was drying up!

### Translation Notes

#### **waited another week**

You could say: "waited seven more days." The word **waited** shows that Noah was allowing time for the floodwaters to go down before sending out the dove again.

### Translation Words

- Noah (p.1358)

### Translation Questions

#### **How did Noah know the water had dried up?**

He sent out a dove and it did not return.

**03:13**

Two months later, God said to Noah, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So Noah and his family came out of the boat.

**Translation Notes****Two months later**

This means two months after Noah released the dove from the ark. It may be necessary to say this explicitly if it is not clear.

**God said to Noah, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Noah that he and his family and all the animals could leave the boat then, and have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Have many children**

To make sure it is clear that this was God’s command and desire, you could say: “You must have many children” or “I want you to have many children.”

**fill the earth**

If this is not clear, it may be necessary to say: “and fill the earth with people” or “so that there will be many people living on the earth.”

## **came out**

Some languages would say: "went out" instead.

See TA article: **Go and Come (p.1124)**

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Noah (p.1358)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did God tell Noah and his family to do when they left the boat?**

He told them to have many children and grandchildren and to fill the earth.

## 03:14



After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal that could be used for a sacrifice. God was happy with the sacrifice and blessed Noah and his family.

### Translation Notes

#### **animal that could be used for a sacrifice**

Another way to say this would be: "that people could use to sacrifice to him."

#### **God was happy**

God was pleased with Noah for sacrificing these animals.

### Translation Words

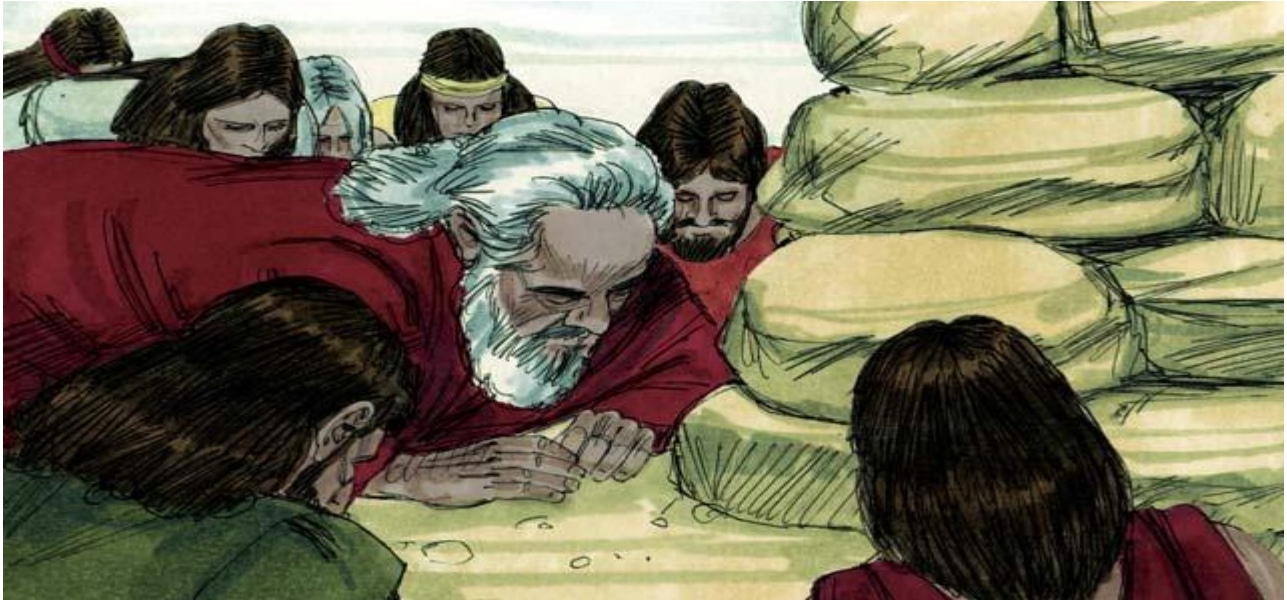
- Noah (p.1358)
- altar (p.1207)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- blessed (p.1225)

### Translation Questions

#### **How did Noah worship God after he got off the boat?**

He built an altar and sacrificed some of the animals.

**03:15**



God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things that people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."

### **Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

### **Translation Words**

- Noah (p.1358)
- altar (p.1207)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- blessed (p.1225)

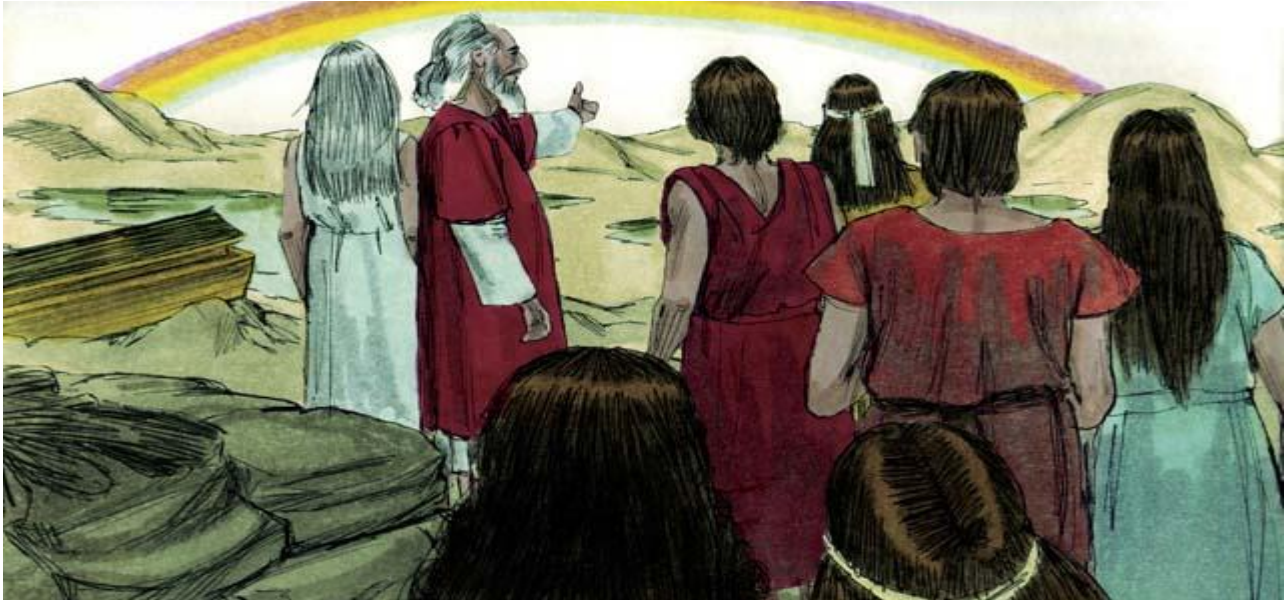
### **Translation Questions**

**What did God promise he would never do again?**

He would never again curse the ground or destroy the world with a flood.



## 03:16



God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.

### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Noah (p.1358)
- altar (p.1207)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- blessed (p.1225)

### Translation Questions

**What did God make as a sign of his promise?**

He made a rainbow in the sky.

## 4. God's Covenant with Abraham

*A Bible story from: Genesis 11-15*

### **God's Covenant with Abraham**

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made a covenant with Abraham" or "Why did God make a covenant with Abraham?"

**04:01**

Many years after the flood, there were again many people in the world, and they still sinned against God and each other. Because they all spoke the same language, they gathered together and built a city instead of spreading out over the earth as God had commanded.

**Translation Notes****Many years after the flood**

Many generations had passed since the end of the flood.

**there were again many people**

Noah's family multiplied into enough people to fill a city.

**the same language**

This means there was only one language, so they could all understand each other.

**a city**

It is best to use a general word for **city** since the text does not give a specific name.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions**

**After the flood, did the people fill the earth as God had commanded?**

No, they gathered together and built a city.

**How many different languages were there in the world at that time?**

There was only one language.

**04:02**

They were very proud, and they did not want to obey God's commands about how they should live. They even began building a tall tower that would reach heaven. God saw that, if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.

**Translation Notes****a tall tower that would reach heaven**

This structure was so tall that its top would be in the sky.

**heaven**

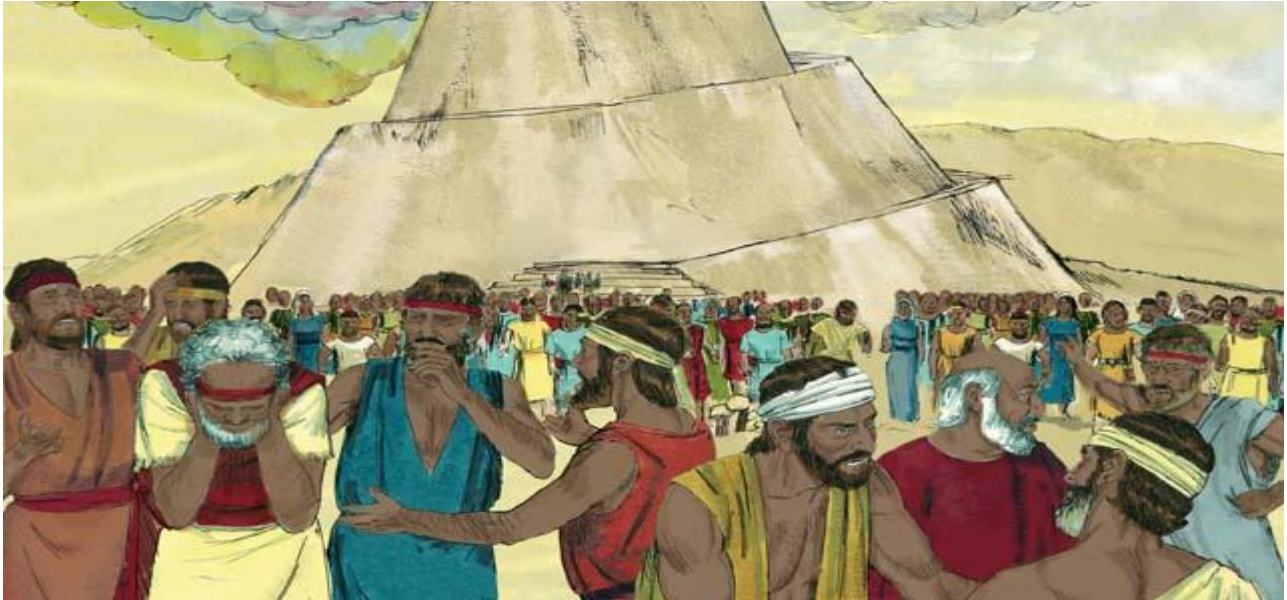
This could be translated as: "sky."

**Translation Words**

- proud (p.1385)
- God (p.1272)
- heaven (p.1285)
- evil (p.1258)
- sinful (p.1419)

**Translation Questions****What did the people work together to do instead of spreading out over the earth?**

They started to build a tall tower that would reach heaven.

**04:03**

So God changed their language into many different languages and spread the people out all over the world. The city they had begun to build was called Babel, which means “confused.”

**Translation Notes****changed their language**

In an instant, God miraculously gave them different languages to speak so that, suddenly, they were no longer able to understand each other.

**many different languages**

Instead of one large group of people speaking one language, there were now many smaller people groups each speaking its own separate language.

**spread the people**

When God changed their languages, he caused these groups of people to scatter out on the earth. Each group moved to its own area.

**Babel**

We don't know the exact location of this city, other than it was somewhere in the ancient Middle East.

**confused**

This refers to how the people were confused or mixed-up when they could no longer understand each other after God changed their language.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

**What did God do to cause the people to spread out all over the world?**

He changed their language into many different languages.

**What was the name of the city that they were building?**

It was named **Babel**.

**What does the name Babel mean?**

It means 'confused.'

**04:04**

Hundreds of years later, God spoke to a man named Abram. God told him, “Leave your country and family and go to the land I will show you. I will bless you and make you a great nation. I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”

**Translation Notes****Hundreds of years later**

This could be translated as: “many generations after the people split into different language groups at Babel.” or “a long time after that happened.”

**God told him, “Leave your country and family and go to the land I will show you. I will bless you and make you a great nation. I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told him to leave his country and family and to go to the land that he would show him. God said that he would bless him and make him a great nation, that he would make his name great, and that he would bless those who bless Abram and curse those who curse him. God said that all families on earth would be blessed because of Abram.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Leave your country**

This refers to the area where Abram was born and grew up (a region in Central Asia called ‘Ur’). It could be translated as: “native region” or “homeland” or something similar.



**and family**

God was calling Abram to leave behind most of his relatives. However, God was not telling Abram to abandon the people he was responsible for, including his wife.

**make you a great nation**

Here **great nation** is a metonym that means God would cause Abram to have many descendants, and they would become a large and important nation or country.

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

**will make your name great**

This means that Abram's name and family would become well-known throughout the world and people would think well of them.

**All families on earth will be blessed because of you**

This can be stated in active form: "I will bless all families on earth because of you."

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**All families on earth**

Abram's decision to follow God would affect not only his own family, but also families from every people group on earth.

**Translation Words**

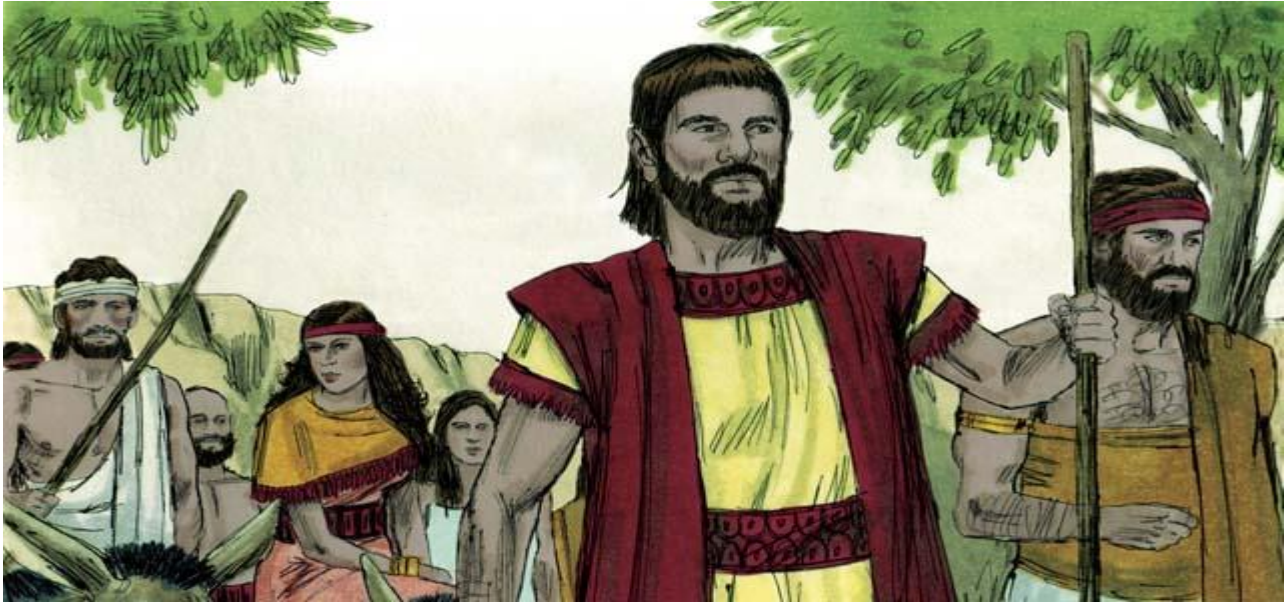
- God (p.1272)
- Abram (p.1203)
- bless (p.1225)
- curse (p.1241)

**Translation Questions****What did God tell Abram to do?**

God told Abram to leave his country and family and go to another land.

**What did God promise to do for Abram?**

He promised to give Abram all the land he could see, to make his name great, to make his descendants a great nation, and to bless all the families on earth through him.

**04:05**

So Abram obeyed God. He took his wife, Sarai, together with all of his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of Canaan.

**Translation Notes****He took**

Some languages would say: "He brought" here. Others would use two different verbs here, such as: "He caused his wife to come with him" or "He brought along all of their servants and possessions."

**God showed him**

Somehow God made it clear to Abram where he was to go. The text doesn't tell how God showed him.

**the land of Canaan**

The name of this land was 'Canaan.' This could be translated as: "the land called Canaan."

**Translation Words**

- Abram (p.1203)
- obeyed
- God (p.1272)
- Sarai (p.1406)
- servants (p.1413)
- Canaan (p.1228)

## **Translation Questions**

**To which land did Abram go?**

He went to the land of Canaan.

**04:06**

When Abram arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you all this land, and your descendants will always possess it.” Then Abram settled in the land.

**Translation Notes**

**God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you all this land, and your descendants will always possess it.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Abram to look all around, for God would give to him all this land, and his descendants would always possess it.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**all this land**

If Abram was standing on a mountain, he could have seen a very large area. On several occasions, God promised to give the entire land of Canaan to Abram and his descendants.

**your descendants will always possess it**

God promised to give the land to Abram and also to his descendants.

**Then Abram settled in the land**

Abram lived there along with all those who had gone there with him.

**Translation Words**

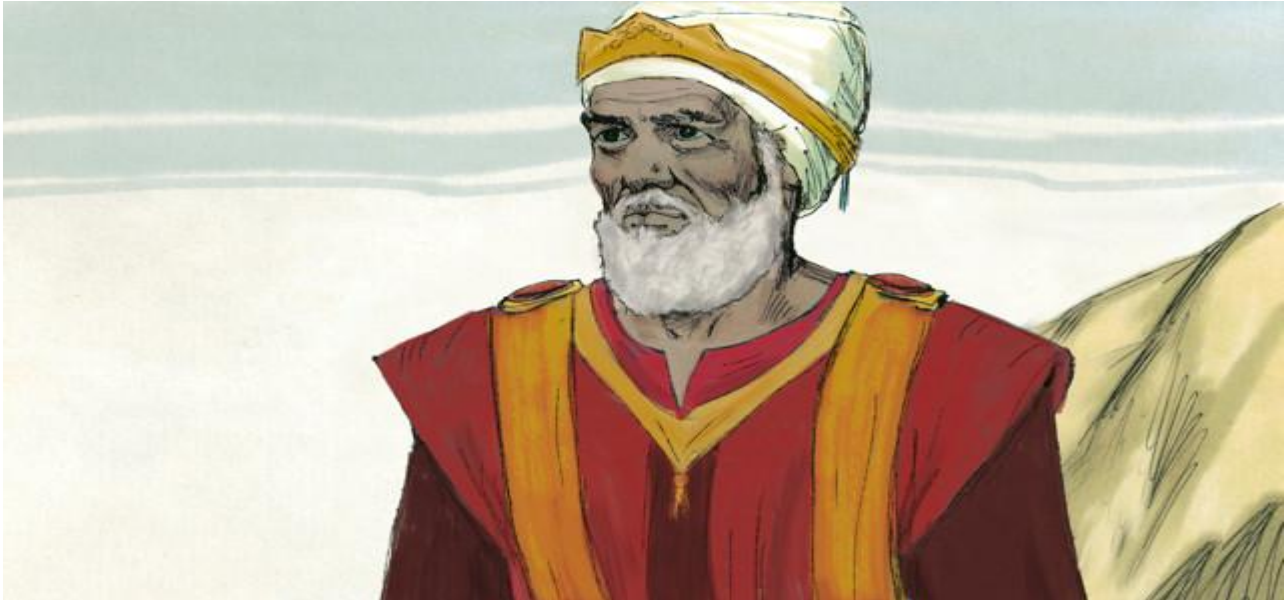
- Abram (p.1203)
- Canaan (p.1228)

- God (p.1272)
- descendants (p.1248)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What promise did God make to Abram about Canaan?**

God would give it to Abram and his descendants would always possess it.

**04:07**

There was a man named Melchizedek who was a priest of God Most High. One day, after Abram had been in a battle, he and Abram met. Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram." Then Abram gave Melchizedek a tenth of everything he had won in the battle.

**Translation Notes**

**Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Melchizedek blessed Abram and asked that God Most High who owns heaven and earth would bless Abram."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Melchizedek**

Melchizedek was the recognized religious authority in Canaan who received and presented offerings to God.

**God Most High**

The people of Canaan worshiped many false gods. The title **Most High God** explains that the God that Melchizedek worshiped was far superior to all of them, and was the same God that Abram worshiped.

**Translation Words**

- Abram (p.1203)
- priest (p.1377)
- God (p.1272)
- bless (p.1225)
- heaven (p.1285)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Who was Melchizedek?**

He was the priest of God Most High.

### **What did Melchizedek do for Abram?**

He blessed Abram.

### **What did Abram give to Melchizedek?**

He gave him a tenth of all he owned.

**04:08**

Many years went by, but Abram and Sarai still did not have a son. God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed in God's promise.

**Translation Notes****Many years went by**

A large number of years had passed since God had first promised that Abram would have a son.

**as the stars in the sky**

This expression means that Abram's descendants will be so many that no one can count them all.

**Translation Words**

- Abram (p.1203)
- Sarai (p.1406)
- son
- God (p.1272)
- promise (p.1379)
- descendants (p.1248)
- believed (p.1220)
- righteous (p.1398)

**Translation Questions****What did God promise Abram after he had lived in Canaan for many years?**

Abram would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.



**Why did God say Abram was righteous?**

He said this because Abram believed God's promise.

**04:09**

Then God made a covenant with Abram. Normally, a covenant is an agreement between two parties to do things for each other. But in this case, God made a promise to Abram while Abram was in a deep sleep, but he could still hear God. God said, "I will give you a son from your own body. I give the land of Canaan to your descendants." But Abram still did not have a son.

**Translation Notes****two parties**

The parties could be two people, two groups of people, or a person and a group of people.

**in this case, God made a promise to Abram**

The promise that God made to Abraham was without conditions. God would do what he promised. It did not depend on what Abram did.

**God said, "I will give you a son from your own body. I give the land of Canaan to your descendants."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God said he would give Abram a son from his own body, and would give the land of Canaan to his descendants."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**from your own body**

With his own body, Abram would cause his wife to become pregnant, so that, together, they would have their own, natural son. This was an amazing promise, since Abram and Sarai were very old.

### **did not have a son**

Abram still did not have any descendants who could possess the land.

### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- covenant (p.1237)
- Abram (p.1203)
- son
- Canaan (p.1228)
- descendants (p.1248)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What is a covenant?**

A covenant is an agreement between two parties.

## 5. The Son of Promise

*A Bible story from: Genesis 16-22*

### The Son of Promise

This title can also be translated as: "About how God promised Abraham that he would have a son" or "How did God promise to give Abraham a son?"

05:01



Ten years after Abram and Sarai arrived in Canaan, they still did not have a child. So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children, and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."

### Translation Notes

#### **they still did not have a child**

Without a child, Abram had no descendants to become a great nation.

**So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children, and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him that since God had not allowed her to have children and now I am too old to have children, Abram should take her servant, Hagar, and marry her also so she could have a child for Sarai."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

#### **Marry her also**

Abram would take Hagar as a second wife, but Hagar would not have the full status of a wife as Sarai did. She was still Sarai's servant.

#### **have a child for me**

Since Hagar was Sarai's servant, Sarai would be considered the mother of any children that Hagar bore.

## Translation Words

- Abram (p.1203)
- Sarai (p.1406)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- God (p.1272)
- servant (p.1413)
- Hagar (p.1284)

## Translation Questions

**Why did Sarai think she would not have children?**

She was too old.

**What did Sarai tell Abram to do in order to have a child?**

Marry her servant Hagar, so Hagar could have a child for her.

05:02



So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael. But Sarai became jealous of Hagar. When Ishmael was thirteen years old, God again spoke to Abram.

### Translation Notes

#### married

Hagar became Abram's concubine—a 'second wife' of lower status. Hagar was still Sarai's servant.

#### became jealous of Hagar

Sarai was jealous of Hagar because Hagar could have children and Sarai could not.

### Translation Words

- Abram (p.1203)
- Hagar (p.1284)
- Ishmael (p.1300)
- Sarai (p.1406)
- God (p.1272)

### Translation Questions

#### What was the name of Hagar's child?

His name was **Ishmael**.

#### What problem happened between Sarai and Hagar?

Sarai became jealous of Hagar.



05:03



God said, "I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you." Then Abram bowed to the ground. God also told Abram, "You will be the father of many nations. I will give you and your descendants the land of Canaan as their possession, and I will be their God forever. You must circumcise every male in your family."

### Translation Notes

**God also told Abram, "You will be the father of many nations. I will give you and your descendants the land of Canaan as their possession, and I will be their God forever. You must circumcise every male in your family."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God also told Abram that Abram would be the father of many nations. God would give him and his descendants the land of Canaan as their possession and would be their God forever. Abram must circumcise every male in his family."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

#### **the father of many nations**

Abram would have many descendants, and they would have their own lands and rule themselves. They and others would remember that Abram was their ancestor and would honor him.

#### **I will be their God**

Another way to say this is: "I will be the God that they will worship."

#### **every male in your family**

This could be translated as: "every boy and man in your family." This included Abram's servants and his descendants.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- covenant (p.1237)
- Abram (p.1203)
- descendants (p.1248)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- circumcise (p.1235)

## Translation Questions

### **What covenant promises did God make to Abram?**

Abram would be the father of many nations, and God would give the land of Canaan to him and to his descendants.

### **What did God tell Abram to do as a sign of the covenant between them?**

Abram must circumcise every male in his family.

05:04



“Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him Isaac. I will make my covenant with him, and he will become a great nation. I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.” Then God changed Abram’s name to Abraham, which means “father of many.” God also changed Sarai’s name to Sarah, which means “princess.”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

God continues to speak to Abram.

**“Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him Isaac. I will make my covenant with him, and he will become a great nation. I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “His wife, Sarai, would have a son—he will be the son of promise. He would name him Isaac. God would make is covenant with Isaac, and he will become a great nation. God would make Ishmael a great nation, too, but his covenant would be with Isaac.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### the son of promise

Isaac would be the son that God promised to Sarai and Abram. He would also be the son that God would use to give Abram many descendants.

### I will make my covenant with him

This would be the same covenant that God made with Abram.

## **father of many**

As God had promised, Abraham would become the ancestor of many people who would even become many nations.

## **princess**

A princess is a daughter of a king. The names Sarai and Sarah apparently both meant 'princess.' But God changed her name to signify that she would be the mother of many nations, and some of her descendants would be kings.

## **Translation Words**

- Sarah (p.1406)
- son
- promise (p.1379)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- covenant (p.1237)
- Ishmael (p.1300)
- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Sarah (p.1406)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Who did God say would be the son of the promise?**

Isaac, Sarai's son, would be the son of promise.

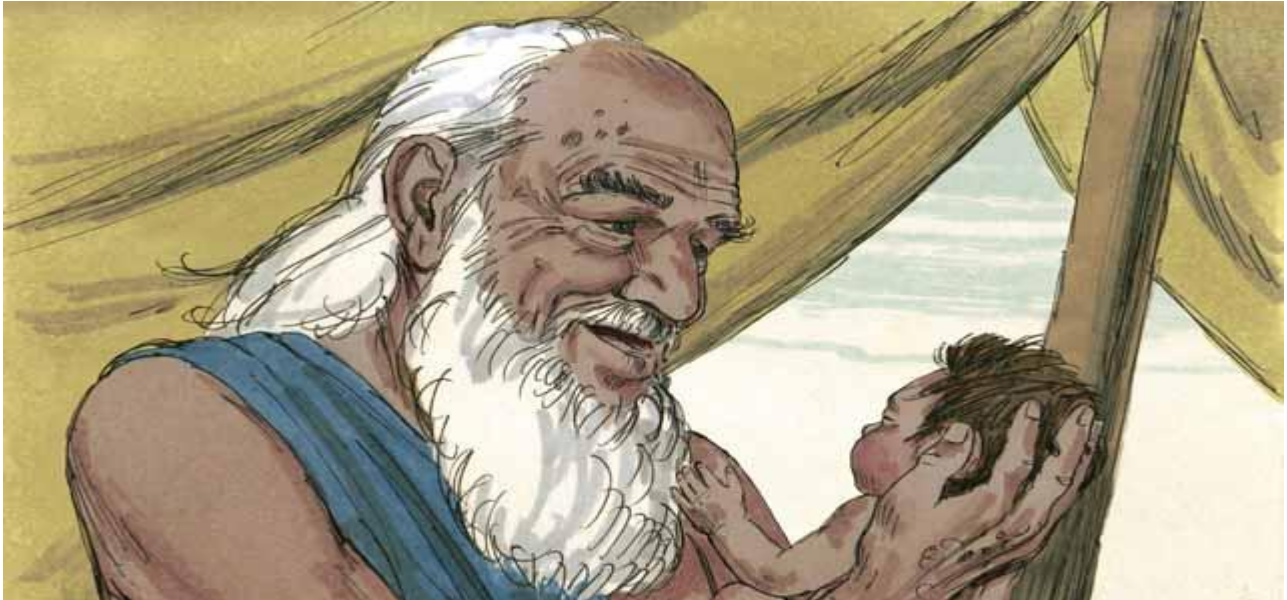
### **Who did God say would become a great nation?**

Both Isaac and Ishmael would become great nations.

### **What did Abram's new name, Abraham, mean?**

His name means **father of many**.

05:05



That day Abraham circumcised all the males in his household. About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac, as God had told them to do.

### Translation Notes

#### **all the males in his household**

This means all of the men and boys that Abraham was responsible for, including his male servants, young and old.

### Translation Words

- Abraham (p.1203)
- circumcised (p.1235)
- Sarah (p.1406)
- son
- Isaac (p.1298)
- God (p.1272)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

05:06



When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me." Again, Abraham obeyed God. He prepared to sacrifice his son.

### Translation Notes

#### **God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God tested Abraham's faith by telling him to take Isaac, his only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to God."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

#### **God tested Abraham's faith**

God wanted Abraham to show that he was completely submitted to God, that he would obey whatever God told him to do.

#### **your only son**

It is implied that God knows that Abraham has another son, Ishmael. This emphasizes that Isaac is the son that God promised to give Abraham. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "your only son whom I have promised"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

#### **kill him**

God did not want human sacrifice. God wanted to see that Abraham loved God more than he loved his son and would obey God even when God told him to give his son back to God.

## **prepared to sacrifice his son**

Abraham got ready to sacrifice his son. God stopped him before he killed his son.

### **Translation Words**

- Isaac (p.1298)
- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- faith (p.1261)
- son
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- obeyed

### **Translation Questions**

**What did God ask Abraham to do to Isaac when Isaac was a young man?**

God asked Abraham to sacrifice Isaac to him.

**Why did God ask Abraham to sacrifice Isaac?**

God did this to test Abraham's faith.

05:07



As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of sacrifice, Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the lamb?" Abraham replied, "God will provide the lamb for the sacrifice, my son."

## Translation Notes

### walked to the place of sacrifice

God had told Abraham to sacrifice Isaac on a special high hill that was about three days' walk from where they lived.

### Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the lamb?"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Isaac told his father that they had wood for the sacrifice, but he did not know where the lamb was."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### wood for the sacrifice

For a sacrifice, normally the lamb was killed and then placed on top of wood so that the wood and the lamb could be burned up with fire.

### the lamb

A young sheep or goat would be the normal animal for a sacrifice.

### Abraham replied, "God will provide the lamb for the sacrifice, my son."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Abraham replied to his son that God would provide the lamb for the sacrifice."



See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### **will provide the lamb**

Abraham may have believed that Isaac was the lamb that God provided, although God fulfilled Abraham's words by providing a ram to sacrifice in Isaac's place.

### **Translation Words**

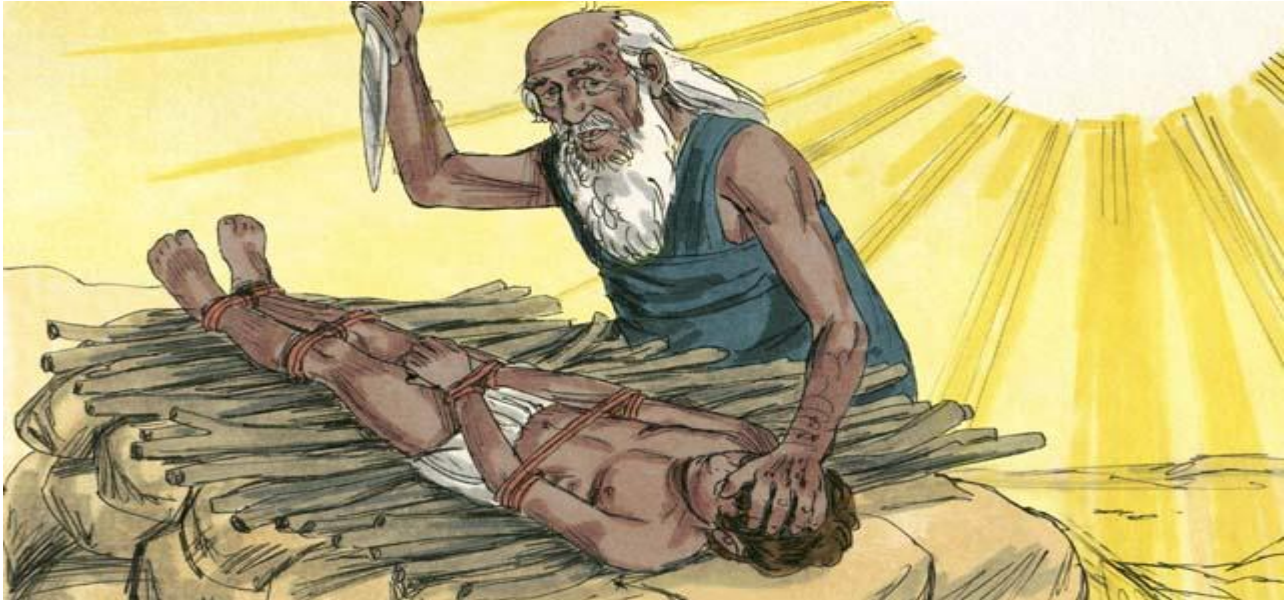
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- lamb (p.1335)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did Abraham tell Isaac was the reason they did not have a lamb for the sacrifice?**

Abraham said God would provide the lamb for the sacrifice.

05:08



When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me."

### Translation Notes

#### to kill his son

God did not want human sacrifice. God wanted to see that Abraham loved God more than he loved his son and would obey God even when God told him to give his son back to God.

#### God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God told him to stop, and not to hurt the boy! God now knew that Abraham feared God because he did not keep his only son from him."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

#### you fear me

Abraham feared God, which included respect and reverence for God. Because of those things, he obeyed God.

#### your only son

Ishmael was also Abraham's son, but Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God's covenant was with Isaac and it was through Isaac that God would fulfill his promise. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "your only son whom I have promised"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## Translation Words

- sacrifice (p.1403)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- son
- Isaac (p.1298)
- altar (p.1207)
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

### **Did God want Abraham to kill Isaac?**

No, he only wanted to see if Abraham would obey him.

05:09



Nearby, Abraham saw a ram that was stuck in a bush. God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of Isaac. Abraham happily offered the ram as a sacrifice.

### Translation Notes

#### **a ram**

A ram is an adult male sheep.

#### **God had provided the ram**

Just at the right moment, God caused the ram to be stuck in the bush.

### Translation Words

- Abraham (p.1203)
- God (p.1272)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- Isaac (p.1298)

### Translation Questions

#### **What did God provide as a sacrifice instead of Isaac?**

He provided a ram stuck in a bush.

**05:10**

Then God said to Abraham, "Because you were willing to give me everything, even your only son, I promise to bless you. Your descendants will be more than the stars in the sky. Because you have obeyed me, I will bless all the families of the world through your family."

**Translation Notes**

**Then God said to Abraham, "Because you were willing to give me everything, even your only son, I promise to bless you. Your descendants will be more than the stars in the sky. Because you have obeyed me, I will bless all the families of the world through your family."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Then God said to Abraham that because Abraham was willing to give God everything, even his only son, he promised to bless him. His descendants will be more than the stars in the sky. Because Abraham had obeyed him, God would bless all the families of the world through Abraham's family."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**your only son**

See explanation in [05:08](#).

**the stars in the sky**

See explanation in [04:08](#).

**all the families of the world**

Here, **families** refers to the larger distinct groups of people on earth, rather than to each set of parents and children.

## **your family**

Here, **family** refers to the many descendants that Abraham would have. The future generations of the world would be blessed through Abraham's descendants. The greatest blessing would come many generations later through God's chosen servant, the Messiah.

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- son
- promise (p.1379)
- bless (p.1225)
- descendants (p.1248)
- obeyed

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did God promise to do for Abraham because Abraham had obeyed him?**

He promised that Abraham's descendants would be more than the stars in the sky, and that all the families of the world would be blessed through his family.

## **6. God Provides for Isaac**

*A Bible story from: Genesis 24:1-25:26*

### **God Provides for Isaac**

This title can also be translated as: "About how God got a wife for Isaac" or "How did God get a wife for Isaac?"

**06:01**

When Abraham was very old, his son Isaac had grown to be a man. So Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to bring back a wife for his son, Isaac.

**Translation Notes****sent one of his servants back**

This could be translated as: “told one of his servants to go back.” The word **back** means that the servant would be going to the same place where Abraham used to live long ago before he came to Canaan. Make sure the translation of this phrase makes that clear.

**to the land**

This land was east of where Abraham was now living.

**to bring back a wife for his son, Isaac**

This could be translated as: “to bring back an unmarried woman for his son, Isaac, to marry.”

**Translation Words**

- Abraham (p.1203)
- son
- Isaac (p.1298)
- servants (p.1413)

**Translation Questions**

**Why did Abraham send his servant back to the land of Abraham’s relatives?**



He sent him to bring back a wife for his Abraham's son, Isaac.

06:02



After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to Rebekah. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.

### Translation Notes

**the granddaughter of Abraham's brother**

Specifically, she was the daughter of Abraham's brother's son. Her grandfather was Abraham's brother.

### Translation Words

- Abraham's (p.1203)
- God (p.1272)
- servant (p.1413)
- Rebekah (p.1390)

### Translation Questions

**How did the servant find Rebekah?**

God led him to her.

**How was Rebekah related to Abraham?**

Rebekah was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.

## 06:03



Rebekah agreed to leave her family and go back with the servant to Isaac's home. Isaac married her as soon as she arrived.

### Translation Notes

#### Rebekah agreed

Even though Rebekah's parents were arranging her marriage, they did not force her to go marry Isaac.

### Translation Words

- Rebekah (p.1390)
- servant (p.1413)
- Isaac (p.1298)

### Translation Questions

#### Was Rebekah forced to go with the servant to marry Isaac?

No, she agreed to go.

**06:04**

After a long time, Abraham died. God then blessed Abraham's son Isaac because of the covenant he had made with Abraham. One of God's promises in that covenant was that Abraham would have countless descendants. But Isaac's wife, Rebekah, could not have children.

**Translation Notes**

**God then blessed Abraham's son Isaac because of the covenant he had made with Abraham.**

The promises of the covenant that God made with Abraham were not for him only, but also for his descendants.

**countless**

This could also be translated as: "very many." The word **countless** means there would be so many descendants that people would not be able to count them.

**Translation Words**

- Abraham (p.1203)
- promises (p.1379)
- God (p.1272)
- covenant (p.1237)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- descendants (p.1248)
- Rebekah (p.1390)

**Translation Questions**

**What promises of God were passed on to Isaac when Abraham died?**

All of the promises that God had made to Abraham, including that he would have countless descendants, were passed on to Isaac.

**Why did it appear that the promise of countless descendants would not be fulfilled through Isaac?**

Rebekah could not have children.

06:05



Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. The two babies struggled with each other while they were still in Rebekah's womb, so Rebekah asked God what was happening.

### Translation Notes

#### in Rebekah's womb

This could mean 'inside her.'

### Translation Words

- Isaac (p.1298)
- Rebekah (p.1390)
- God (p.1272)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**06:06**

God told Rebekah, “You will give birth to two sons. Their descendants will become two different nations. They will struggle with each other. But the nation coming from your older son will have to obey the nation coming from your younger son.”

**Translation Notes**

**God told Rebekah, “You will give birth to two sons. Their descendants will become two different nations. They will struggle with each other. But the nation coming from your older son will have to obey the nation coming from your younger son.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Rebekah that she would give birth to two sons. Their descendants would become two different nations. They would struggle with each other. But the nation coming from her older son would have to obey the nation coming from her younger son.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**They will struggle with each other**

Both the two sons and the nations that will come from them will continually fight with each other. Compare to [06:05](#).

**your older son**

Even though the babies were twins, the baby that came out first would be treated as the older son.

**Translation Words**

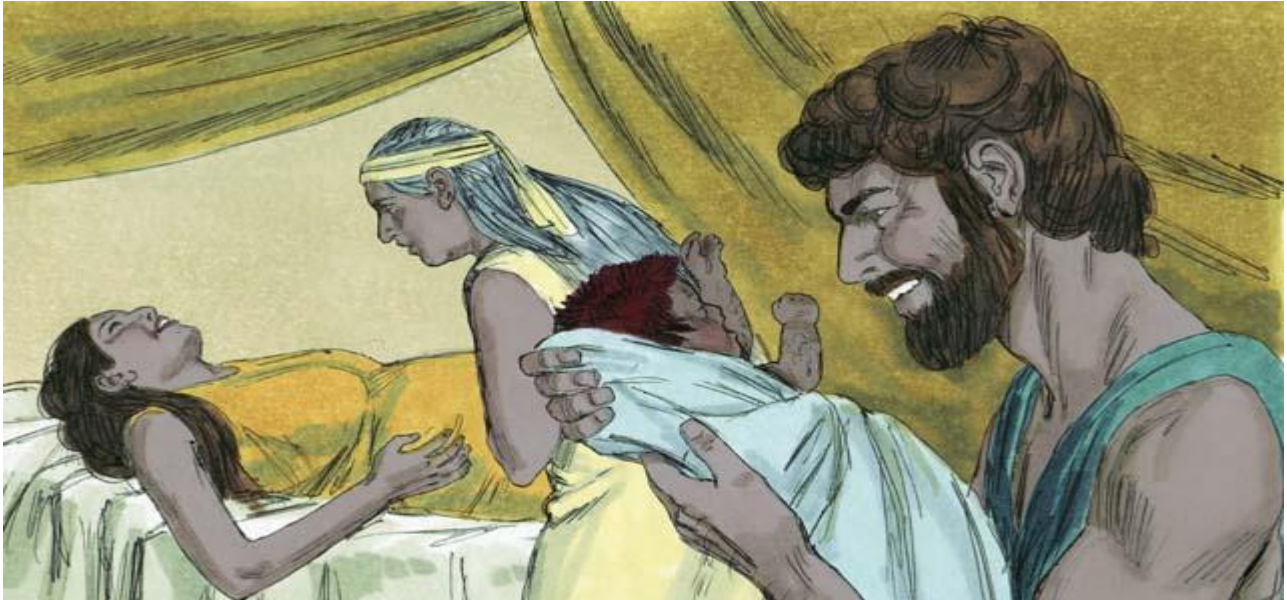
- God (p.1272)
- Rebekah (p.1390)
- son

## Translation Questions

**What did God tell Rebekah about her two twin sons before they were born?**

They would become two nations, and the older son will serve the younger one.



**06:07**

When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him Esau. Then the younger son came out holding on to Esau's heel, and they named him Jacob.

**Translation Notes****Rebekah's babies were born**

Some languages have a more indirect way of saying this such as: "when Rebekah saw and took them" or "when Rebekah brought them to light."

**the older son came out & the younger son came out**

This could be translated as: "the first son to come out was...the second son to come out was." Make sure that the way **older** and **younger** are translated still communicates that the boys were twins.

**red**

This may mean that his skin was very red or that the hair on his body was red.

**hairy**

Esau had a lot of hair on his body. You could say: "the older son's body was red, with lots of hair."

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## Translation Words

- Rebekah's (p.1390)
- son
- Esau (p.1254)
- Jacob (p.1303)

## Translation Questions

**What was the name of the older son?**

His name was **Esau**.

**What was the name of the younger son?**

His name was **Jacob**.

## **7. God Blesses Jacob**

*A Bible story from: Genesis 25:27-35:29*

### **God Blesses Jacob**

This title can also be translated as: "About how God helped Jacob" or "What did God do to help Jacob?"

07:01



As the boys grew up, Jacob loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt animals. Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.

## Translation Notes

### As the boys grew up, Jacob loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt animals

This is background information telling how the boys were different from each other, and that their parents each favored one child over the other.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

### loved to stay at home & loved to hunt

Some languages will use a word for **love** here that is different from the one used for, “Rebekah loved Jacob.” For example, this could be translated as: “liked to stay at home...liked to hunt” or “preferred to stay at home...preferred to hunt.”

### at home

This expression refers to the area around the family dwellings. Jacob preferred to stay close to the tents where they lived. Some languages have a special expression for **at home**.

### but Esau loved to hunt animals

The connecting word **but** contrasts Esau’s love of hunting with Jacob’s love of staying home.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## **Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau**

This could be translated as: "Rebekah was more fond of Jacob, and Isaac was more fond of Esau." This does not necessarily mean that Rebekah and Isaac did not love the other son, but that each parent had a favorite.

### **but Isaac loved Esau**

The connecting word **but** contrasts Isaac's love of Esau with Rebekah's love of Jacob.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## **Translation Words**

- Jacob (p.1303)
- Esau (p.1254)
- Rebekah (p.1390)
- Isaac (p.1298)

## **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

07:02



One day when Esau came back from hunting, he was very hungry. Esau said to Jacob, "Give me some of the food you have made." Jacob responded, "First, promise me that everything you should receive because you were born first, you will give it all to me." So Esau promised to give to Jacob all those things. Then Jacob gave him some food.

### Translation Notes

#### **Esau said to Jacob, "Give me some of the food you have made."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Esau asked Jacob to give him some of the food that Jacob had made."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

#### **Give me some of the food & you will give it all**

Some languages may prefer to use two different words for **give** here. This would also apply to, "Esau promised to give...Jacob gave" in the last two sentences.

#### **Jacob responded, "First, promise me that everything you should receive because you were born first, you will give it all to me."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jacob told Esau to first promise that everything Esau would receive because he was born first, he would give it all to Jacob."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

#### **everything you should receive because you were born first**

According to their custom, since Esau was the oldest son, he should have been the one to receive twice as much of their father's wealth when their father died. Jacob thought of a way to take these rights of the oldest son from Esau.

## Translation Words

- Esau (p.1254)
- Jacob (p.1303)

## Translation Questions

**Esau was the older son. Why did he give everything that he should receive to Jacob, the younger son?**

Everything Esau should have received as the older son, he gave Jacob in exchange for some food.

07:03



Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau. But before he did, Rebekah and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau. Isaac was old and could no longer see. So Jacob put on Esau's clothes and put goatskins on his neck and hands.

## Translation Notes

### give his blessing

It was customary for fathers to formally express their desire for good things to happen to their children. Normally, the older son received the best promise. Isaac wanted this extra prosperity to happen to Esau.

### But before he did

The connecting word **But** here contrasts Isaac's desire to give Esau a blessing with the Rebekah and Jacob's trick that intervened, preventing him from doing so.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### tricked him

The word **trick** means to do something to deliberately deceive someone. Rebekah came up with a plan to deceive Isaac into giving Jacob the special blessing instead of Esau.

### pretend

The word **pretend** shows how Jacob would deceive his father (who had very poor eyesight in his old age).



## **So Jacob put on Esau's clothes and put goatskins on his neck and hands.**

The connecting word **So** here connects the result, Jacob put on Esau's clothes and goatskin to deceive Isaac, with the reason, Isaac was old and blind.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### **Esau's clothes**

This refers to the clothes that Esau owned.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

### **goatskins**

The hairiness of the goatskins would make Jacob feel like Esau.

## **Translation Words**

- Isaac (p.1298)
- blessing (p.1225)
- Esau (p.1254)
- Rebekah (p.1390)
- Jacob (p.1303)

## **Translation Questions**

### **To whom did Isaac want to give his formal blessing?**

He gave it to Esau.

### **How did Jacob trick Isaac into giving him the blessing?**

He pretended to be Esau by wearing goatskins so that Isaac would think he was Esau.

07:04



Jacob came to Isaac and said, “I am Esau. I have come so that you can bless me.” When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was Esau and blessed him.

## Translation Notes

### Jacob came to Isaac

In some languages, it might be more natural to say: “Jacob went to Isaac.”

### When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was Esau and blessed him.

This is a sequential clause. The word **When** connects Isaac feeling and smelling Jacob with the resulting action (he believed it was Esau and blessed him).

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

### he thought it was Esau

He thought that the person he was touching and smelling was Esau.

## Translation Words

- Jacob (p.1303)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- Esau (p.1254)
- bless (p.1225)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

07:05



Esau hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing. So he planned to kill Jacob after their father died.

## Translation Notes

### **because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing**

The connecting word **because** connects the reason, Jacob stole Esau's rights and blessing, with the result, Esau hated Jacob.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### **his rights**

This refers to the the extra blessing and inheritance that belonged to Esau because he was the firstborn son.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

### **rights as oldest son**

Jacob found a way to get the larger portion of their father's wealth that should have gone to Esau as the older son. See also note on [07:02](#).

### **his blessing**

Jacob also tricked their father into giving him the promise of extra prosperity that Isaac intended to give to Esau. See also note on [07:03](#).

### **So he planned to kill Jacob**

The connecting word **So** connects the result, Esau planned to kill Jacob, with the reason, Esau hated Jacob.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### **Translation Words**

- Esau (p.1254)
- Jacob (p.1303)
- blessing (p.1225)

### **Translation Questions**

**Because Jacob stole Esau's blessing, what did Esau plan to do to him?**

Esau planned to kill Jacob after Isaac died.

07:06



But Rebekah heard of Esau's plan. So she and Isaac sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

## Translation Notes

### But Rebekah heard of Esau's plan

The connecting word **But** is used in a contrast relationship. It contrasts Esau's plan to kill Jacob with Rebekah hearing of it and devising a different plan.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### Esau's plan

This refers to the plan that Esau had decided to do. Esau's plan was to kill Jacob after his father died.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

### So she and Isaac sent Jacob far away

The connecting word **So** connects the result, Rebekah and Isaac sent Jacob far away, with the reason, Rebekah heard of Esau's plan to kill Jacob.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### she and Isaac sent Jacob far away

Rebekah wanted to protect Jacob from Esau, so she talked to Isaac about sending Jacob away.

### **far away to live with her relatives**

This was the same place where Rebekah was living when Abraham's servant asked her to be Isaac's wife. To make this clear, you could add: "in the same land where she used to live." The land was to the east, several hundred miles away.

### **her relatives**

This could also be translated as: "their relatives." Since Abraham's brother was Rebekah's grandfather, her relatives were also Isaac's relatives.

### **Translation Words**

- Rebekah (p.1390)
- Esau's (p.1254)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- Jacob (p.1303)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did Isaac and Rebekah do when Rebekah heard of Esau's plan to kill Jacob?**

They sent Jacob far away to live with Rebekah's relatives.

07:07



Jacob lived with Rebekah's relatives for many years. During that time he married and had 12 sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.

### Translation Notes

#### Rebekah's relatives

This refers to a social relationship—these people were related to Rebekah as part of her extended family.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

#### During that time he married and had 12 sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.

This is background information about what happened while Jacob was away.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

#### very wealthy

This included money, large herds of animals and other possessions.

### Translation Words

- Jacob (p.1303)
- Rebekah's (p.1390)
- God (p.1272)

### Translation Questions

**What happened to Jacob during the next twenty years?**

He married, had 12 sons and a daughter, and God made him wealthy.



07:08



After 20 years away from his home in Canaan, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his flocks and herds of animals.

## Translation Notes

### After 20 years

Jacob had lived for twenty years in the land where his mother was from. If that is not clear you could say: “After twenty years living in the land where his relatives were...”

See TA article: **Connect — Background Information (p.1079)**

### his family

This refers to a social relationship—the people who were his family, those related to him by birth or marriage.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

### all his flocks and herds of animals

This refers to ownership—all the groups of animals that belonged to him.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

### herds

A **herd** is a large group of animals. Use a similar word in your language.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

## Translation Words

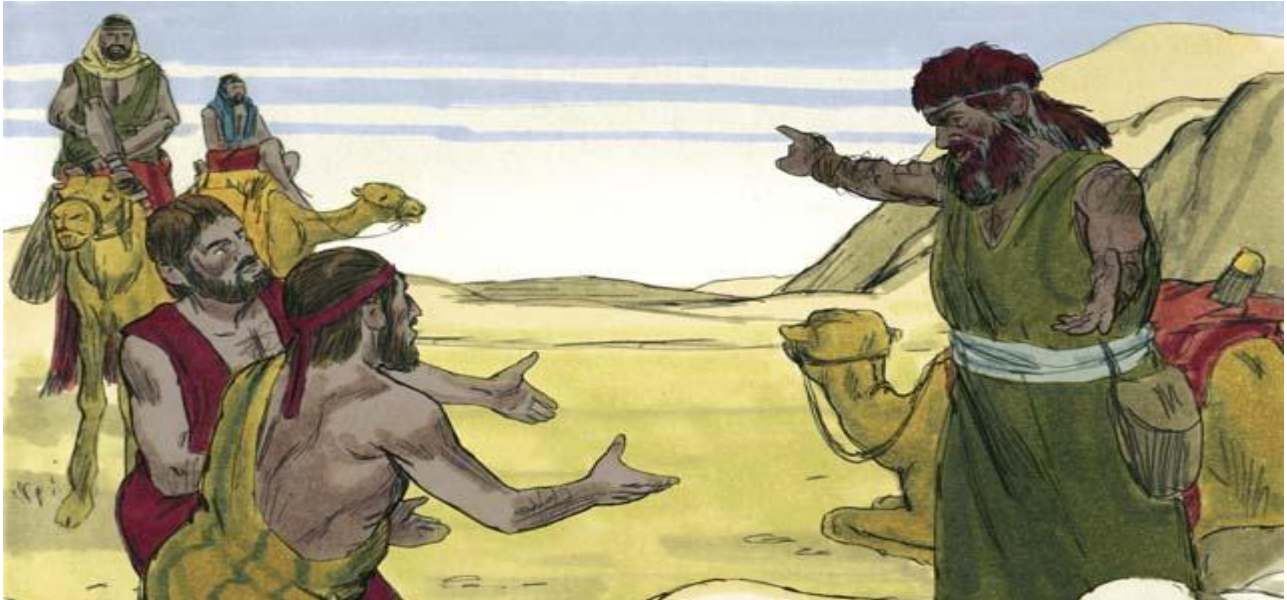
- Canaan (p.1228)

- Jacob (p.1303)
- servants (p.1413)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

07:09



Jacob was very afraid because he thought Esau still wanted to kill him. So he sent many of his animals to Esau as a gift. The servants who brought the animals said to Esau, "Your servant, Jacob, is giving you these animals. He is coming soon."

### Translation Notes

#### Your servant, Jacob

Jacob was not actually Esau's servant. But Jacob told his servants to say this because he wanted to show Esau that he was coming to him humbly and respectfully, so that Esau would no longer be angry with him.

### Translation Words

- Jacob (p.1303)
- Esau (p.1254)
- servant (p.1413)

### Translation Questions

#### Why was Jacob afraid when he returned to Canaan?

He thought Esau would kill him.

#### What did Jacob do in order to soothe Esau's anger?

He sent herds of animals to Esau as a gift.

**07:10**

But Esau no longer wanted to harm Jacob. Instead, he was very happy to see him again, so the brothers lived peacefully in Canaan. Then Isaac died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had made to Abraham now passed on from Isaac to Jacob.

**Translation Notes****But Esau no longer wanted to harm Jacob**

The connecting word **But** here contrasts Jacob's fear of Esau wanting to kill him with Esau no longer wanting to harm Jacob.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Instead, he was very happy to see him again**

The connecting word **Instead** contrasts Jacob's fear of Esau wanting to kill him with Esau being happy to see Jacob.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**lived peacefully**

This refers to the fact that Esau and Jacob were not angry at each other and did not fight with each other.

**Then Isaac died**

The connecting word **Then** connects the timing of events. Jacob's return to Canaan and living there were followed by Isaac's death and Jacob and Esau burying him together.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

### **buried him**

This could mean that they dug a hole in the ground, placed Isaac's body in it, and covered the hole with dirt or stones. Or it could mean that they placed Isaac's body in a cave and covered the opening.

### **The covenant promises**

These were the promises that God made in his covenant with Abraham.

### **passed on from Isaac to Jacob**

The promises went from Abraham to his son Isaac, and now to Isaac's son Jacob. Esau did not receive the promises (See: [06:04](#)).

### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- Esau (p.1254)
- Jacob (p.1303)
- peacefully (p.1363)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- covenant (p.1237)
- promises (p.1379)
- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Was Esau still angry with Jacob?**

No, he no longer wanted to harm Jacob.

### **Where did Jacob settle to live?**

He settled in Canaan.

### **After Isaac's death, who received the covenant promises that God originally gave to Abraham?**

Jacob received them.

## 8. God Saves Joseph and His Family

*A Bible story from: Genesis 37-50*

### God Saves Joseph and His Family

This title can also be translated as: "About how God took care of Joseph and his family" or "How did God rescue Joseph and his family?"

08:01



Many years later, when Jacob was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the flocks.

### Translation Notes

#### **Many years later, when Jacob was an old man**

This begins a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

#### **sent**

This word means that Jacob told Joseph to go and Joseph went.

#### **his favorite son**

This phrase refers to a social relationship—the favorite son who was born to him. This could be translated as: “the son he loved more than any of his other children.”

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

#### **check on**

This means that Joseph is to go and see if everything is all right with his brothers. Some languages might say something like: “to see about his brothers’ well-being.”

#### **his brothers**

These were Joseph’s older brothers.

### **were taking care of the flocks**

Since this was several days' journey away, it may be necessary to say: "who were far away taking care of..."

### **Translation Words**

- Jacob (p.1303)
- Joseph (p.1318)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)



08:02



Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most, and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler. When Joseph came to his brothers, they took him captive and sold him to some slave traders.

### Translation Notes

#### **because their father loved him most, and because Joseph had dreamed**

The word **because** connects the two reasons Joseph's brothers hated him (their father loved him most and Joseph's dream), with the result (they hated him).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

#### **When Joseph came**

The word **When** indicates the order of events. After Joseph came the brothers took him captive and sold him.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

#### **came to his brothers**

Another way this could be translated is: "reached the place where his brothers were."

#### **took him captive**

They took him against his will. It was not right for them to do this.

#### **slave traders**

These were people who made a business of buying people from one owner and selling them as slaves to another owner.

## Translation Words

- Joseph (p.1318)
- dreamed (p.1251)
- slave traders (p.1413)

## Translation Questions

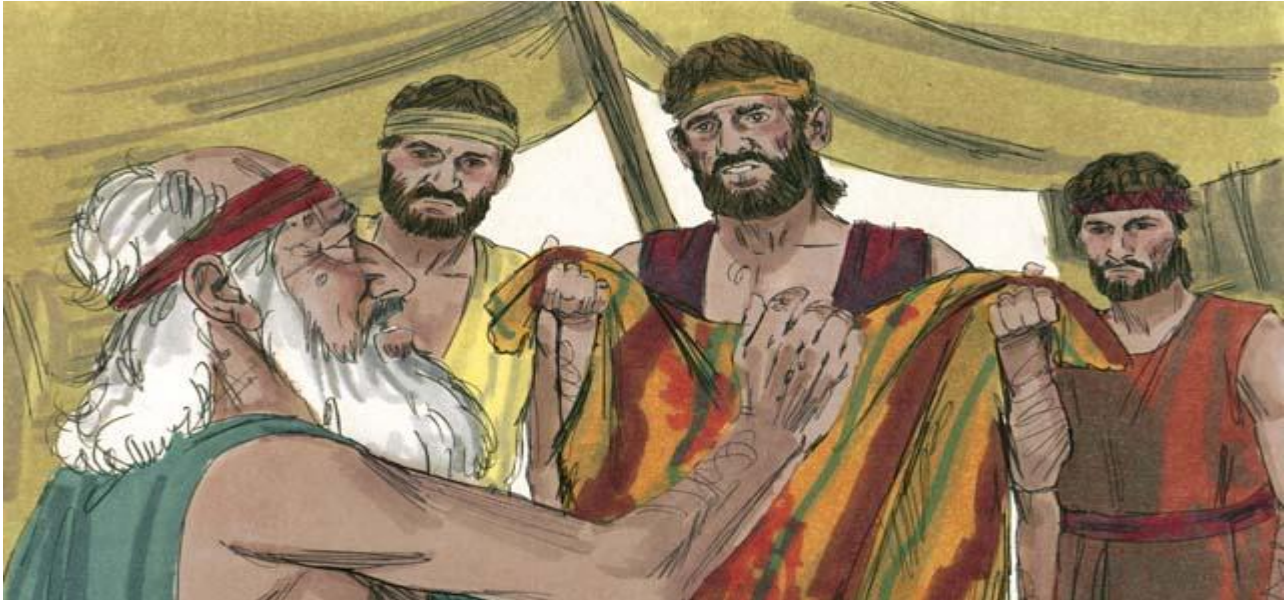
### **Why did Joseph's brothers hate him?**

Because Joseph was Jacob's favorite son, and because Joseph had dreamed he would be their ruler.

### **What evil thing did Joseph's brothers do to him?**

They took him captive and sold him to some slave traders.

08:03



Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's blood. Then they showed the robe to their father so he would think that a wild animal had killed Joseph. Jacob was very sad.

## Translation Notes

### Before Joseph's brothers returned home

The connecting word **Before** indicates the order of events. Joseph's brothers tore his robe and dipped it in blood. Then they returned home.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

### goat's blood

This connects the blood with the goat, of which it was a part. The brothers wanted Jacob to think that the blood on the clothes was Joseph's blood.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

### so he would think that a wild animal

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (showing Jacob the torn robe dipped in blood), with the desired result (Jacob thinking a wild animal killed Joseph).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## Translation Words

- Joseph (p.1318)
- Jacob (p.1303)

## Translation Questions

### **How did Joseph's brothers explain his disappearance to Jacob?**

They put goat's blood on Joseph's robe so that Jacob would think a wild animal had killed him.

08:04



The slave traders took Joseph to Egypt. Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River. The slave traders sold Joseph as a slave to a wealthy government official. Joseph served his master well, and God blessed Joseph.

### Translation Notes

#### **Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.**

This is background information about the country of Egypt where the slave traders took Joseph.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

#### **a wealthy government official**

This was a person who was part of the Egyptian government. Another way to say this would be: "a leader in Egypt's government."

#### **Joseph served his master well, and God blessed Joseph.**

The connecting word **and** indicates two events that happened when Joseph became a slave. There is no indication of cause and effect.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

### Translation Words

- slave traders (p.1413)
- Joseph (p.1318)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- Nile River (p.1357)
- God (p.1272)

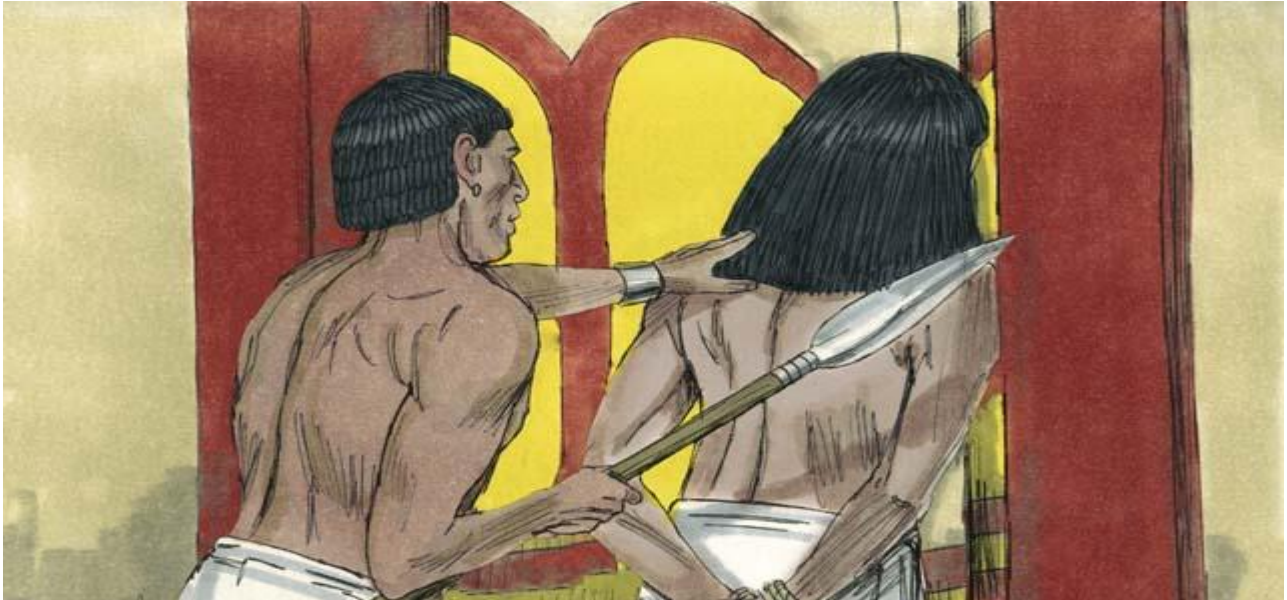
- blessed (p.1225)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Did God abandon Joseph in Egypt?**

No, in everything Joseph did, God blessed him.

08:05



His master's wife tried to sleep with Joseph, but Joseph refused to sin against God in this way. She became angry and falsely accused Joseph so that he was arrested and sent to prison. Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.

## Translation Notes

### tried to sleep with Joseph

Another way to say this would be: "tried to seduce Joseph to have sex with her." To **sleep with** is a way of expressing this in order not to be crude or offensive.

See TA article: **Euphemism (p.1112)**

### but Joseph refused to sin against God

The connecting word **but** indicates a contrast. You would expect that when Joseph's master's wife tried to sleep with him, Joseph would agree, but instead he did the unexpected and refused.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### sin against God

It is against God's law for people to have sex together if they are not married to each other. Joseph did not want to sin by disobeying God's law.

### Even in prison

The connecting word **Even** indicates a contrast. You would expect Joseph to become bitter in prison but, instead, he continued to be faithful and God continued to bless him.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## **remained faithful to God**

Another way to say this would be: "continued to obey God."

### **Translation Words**

- Joseph (p.1318)
- sin (p.1419)
- God (p.1272)
- faithful (p.1263)
- blessed (p.1225)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Why was Joseph sent to prison in Egypt?**

Joseph refused to sleep with his master's wife, so she falsely accused him.



08:06



After two years, Joseph was still in prison even though he was innocent. One night the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the dreams.

### Translation Notes

#### **which is what the Egyptians called their kings**

This is background information about the title, 'Pharaoh.'

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

#### **disturbed him greatly**

This means that the king felt very afraid and confused (because of what he had seen in the dreams).

#### **None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the dreams.**

The interpretation of dreams was important in the ancient Near East. It was seen as possible only through divine power. This can be clearly stated: "God did not enable any of his advisors to tell him the meaning of the dreams.."

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

#### **his advisors**

These were men with special powers and knowledge who could sometimes tell what dreams meant. Some translations refer to them as 'wise men.'

## **the meaning of the dreams**

People in Egypt believed that dreams were messages from the gods telling them about what would happen in the future. God used Pharaoh's dreams to tell him what would happen.

### **Translation Words**

- Joseph (p.1318)
- innocent (p.1297)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Egyptians (p.1252)
- kings (p.1329)
- dreams (p.1251)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

08:07



God had given Joseph the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the dreams for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."

## Translation Notes

### **God had given Joseph the ability to interpret dreams**

Yahweh gave Joseph the power to interpret dreams in order to bring himself glory and to protect Joseph and the Hebrew people. This can be clearly stated: "God had given Joseph the ability to interpret dreams in order to protect Joseph and the Hebrew people."

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### **to interpret dreams**

To **interpret** is to tell what something means. So Joseph was able to tell people what their dreams meant.

### **had Joseph brought to him**

Another way to say this would be: "ordered his servants to bring Joseph to him."

### **and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "and told him that God was going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

## **God is going to send**

God will cause the crops to grow well for seven years, and after that he will cause them to produce very little food so that the people and animals will not have enough to eat.

## **famine**

The gardens and fields would produce so little food that people and animals would not have enough to eat.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Joseph (p.1318)
- dreams (p.1251)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What ability had God given Joseph?**

He gave him the ability to interpret dreams.

### **What was the meaning of Pharaoh's dream?**

God was going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine.

**08:08**

Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!

### Translation Notes

#### **was so impressed with Joseph**

Pharaoh was amazed by Joseph's wisdom and felt respect for him; he trusted Joseph to make wise decisions that would benefit the people. It may be clearer to say: "impressed with Joseph's wisdom."

#### **he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!**

This is a strong statement that emphasizes how unusual it was for a slave to be so honored by the Pharaoh.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

#### **the second most powerful man**

Pharaoh made Joseph a very powerful and important ruler over all of Egypt. Only Pharaoh was more powerful and important than Joseph.

### Translation Words

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Joseph (p.1318)
- Egypt (p.1252)

### Translation Questions

**How did Pharaoh reward Joseph after Joseph interpreted his dream?**

He made Joseph the second most powerful man in Egypt.

**08:09**

Joseph told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests. When the seven years of famine came, Joseph sold the food to the people so they would have enough to eat.

### Translation Notes

#### **to store up large amounts of food**

From the abundant harvests, they took food to the cities and stored it there. The food then belonged to Pharaoh.

#### **famine**

See how you translated this in [08:07](#).

### Translation Words

- Joseph (p.1318)

### Translation Questions

#### **How did Joseph prepare for the famine?**

Joseph told the Egyptians to store up large amounts of food during the seven good years, and then he sold the food to the people during the seven years of famine.

## 08:10



The famine was severe not only in Egypt, but also in Canaan where Jacob and his family lived.

### Translation Notes

#### **The famine was severe**

The famine was very bad. There was very little food and many people outside of Egypt were starving.

#### **Egypt, but also in Canaan**

For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to say: "the country of Egypt, but also in the land of Canaan."

### Translation Words

- Egypt (p.1252)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- Jacob (p.1303)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)



**08:11**

So, Jacob sent his older sons to Egypt to buy food. The brothers did not recognize Joseph when they stood before him to buy food. But Joseph recognized them.

**Translation Notes****So, Jacob sent his older sons to Egypt to buy food.**

The connecting word **So** connects the result (Jacob send his sons to buy food), with the reason (the famine was bad in Canaan).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**his older sons**

These were Joseph's older brothers who had sold him into slavery.

**did not recognize Joseph**

They did not know that the man was Joseph, because now Joseph was much older than when they last saw him, and he was dressed as an Egyptian ruler.

**But Joseph recognized them.**

The connecting word **But** indicates a contrast relationship. It contrasts Joseph's brothers not recognizing him with Joseph recognizing them.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

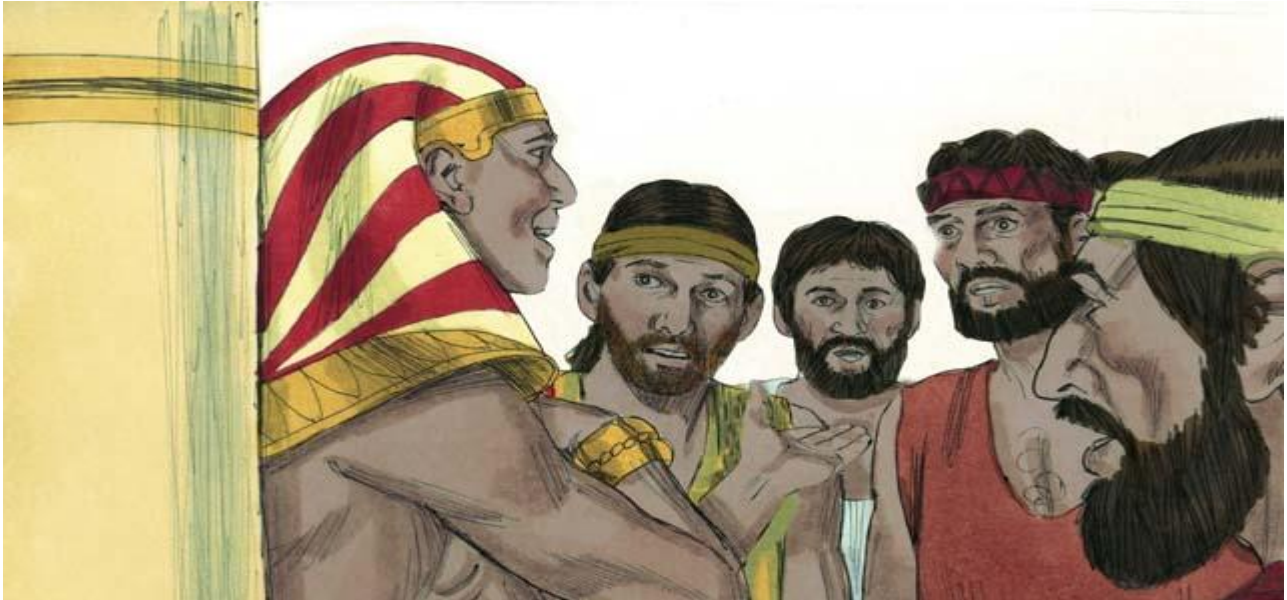
- Jacob (p.1303)

- Egypt (p.1252)
- Joseph (p.1318)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why did Joseph's brothers come to Egypt?**

They came to buy food because the famine was severe in Canaan also.

**08:12**

After testing his brothers to see if they had changed, Joseph said to them, “I am your brother, Joseph! Do not be afraid. You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good! Come and live in Egypt so I can provide for you and your families.”

**Translation Notes****After testing his brothers**

The connecting word **After** begins a sequential clause. Joseph tested his brothers to see if they had changed and then he revealed who he was.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**testing his brothers**

Joseph placed his older brothers in a difficult situation to see if they would protect their youngest brother or treat him as badly as they had treated Joseph. When they protected their youngest brother, Joseph knew they had changed.

**if they had changed**

Another way to say this would be: “if they were different than they used to be.” Years ago Joseph’s brothers sold him into slavery. Joseph wanted to find out if they would now do what was right.

**I am your brother, Joseph!**

This is a strong statement that Joseph was indeed their brother, even though he knew they would find it very difficult to believe that.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Do not be afraid**

Joseph gave this command to his brothers who were afraid because they had greatly wronged Joseph. Now, as a great ruler, he had the power to punish them. Joseph could refuse to sell them food, or could even put them in prison or kill them. Another way to say this would be: "You do not need to fear any punishment from me."

**but God used the evil for good!**

The connecting word **but** contrasts Joseph's brother's desire to do evil to God's using it for good.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**God used the evil for good!**

This is a strong statement, because it is surprising that God was able to cause good to happen from the evil thing the brothers did to Joseph.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**evil for good**

Joseph's brothers did an evil thing when they sold Joseph as a slave and he was taken to Egypt. But God allowed this so that Joseph could save thousands of people, including his own family, from starving during the famine. This was a very good thing.

**Translation Words**

- Joseph (p.1318)
- evil (p.1258)
- slave (p.1413)
- God (p.1272)
- good (p.1280)
- Egypt (p.1252)

**Translation Questions****Before Joseph told his brothers who he was, why did he test them?**

He tested them to see if they had changed.

**How did God cause good to come from Joseph's brothers selling him as a slave?**

Joseph became a powerful ruler in Egypt, and God used him to provide food for his family and many other people during the famine.

**08:13**



When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.

**Translation Notes**

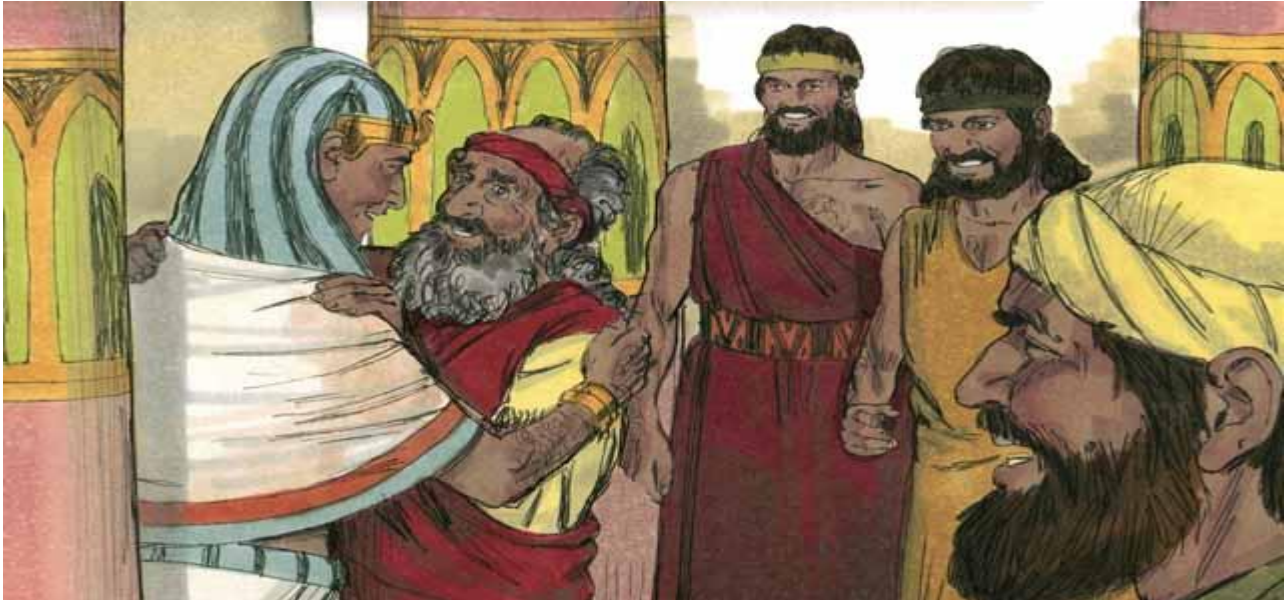
(No translation notes for this frame)

**Translation Words**

- Joseph (p.1318)
- Jacob (p.1303)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**08:14**

Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt with all of his family, and they all lived there. Before Jacob died, he blessed each of his sons.

**Translation Notes****Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt**

Egypt was a great distance away from Canaan, and it would have been difficult for an elderly man to walk or ride a cart that far.

**Before Jacob died**

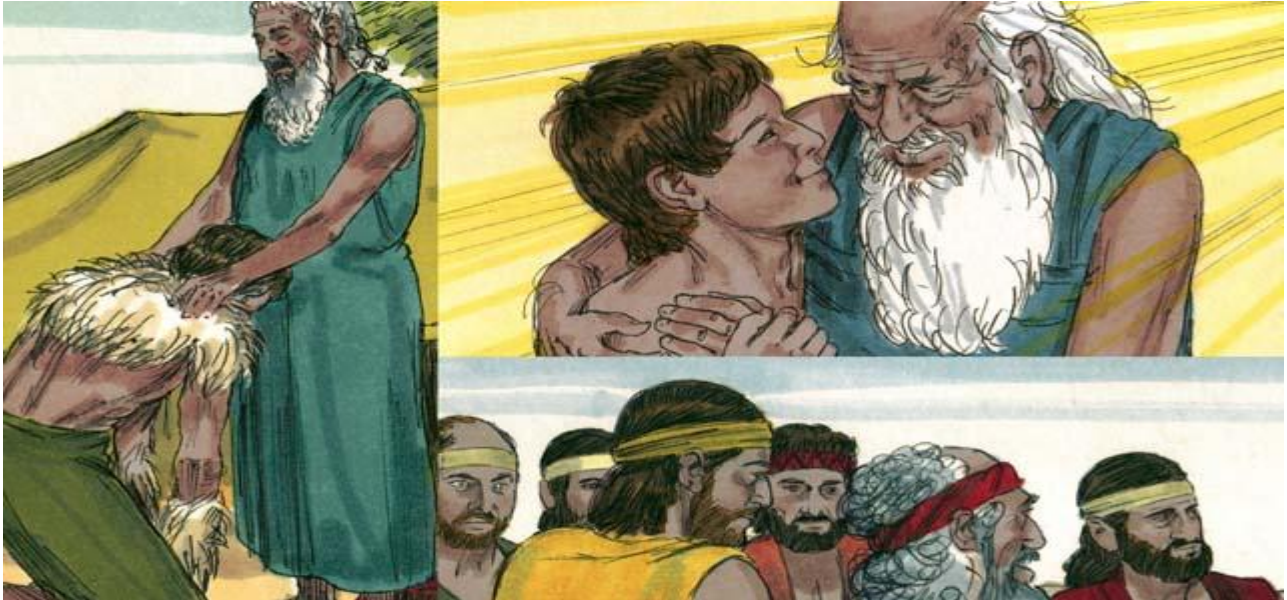
Jacob died in Egypt. He did not get to return to Canaan, the land God had promised to give to him and his descendants.

**Translation Words**

- Jacob (p.1303)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- blessed (p.1225)

**Translation Questions****What did Jacob do after he found out that Joseph was alive?**

He moved his whole family to Egypt.

**08:15**

The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's 12 sons and their families. The descendants of the 12 sons became the 12 tribes of Israel.

**Translation Notes****The covenant promises**

Long ago God made an agreement with Abraham and promised him that he would give him many descendants; they would possess the land of Canaan and become a great nation. God also promised that all peoples would be blessed through Abraham's line (See: [07:10](#)).

**were passed on to**

Other ways to say this are: "passed down to" or "given to" or "applied to." God's promise to Abraham was also for Abraham's children, grandchildren and all the rest of his descendants (See: [06:04](#)).

**the 12 tribes of Israel**

God had promised Abraham, Isaac and Jacob that their descendants would become a great nation. God later changed Jacob's name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob's 12 sons became 12 great tribes. These 12 tribes made up the ancient nation called Israel, which was named by Jacob's new name.

See TA article: **How to Translate Names (p.1126)**

**12**

This could also be written in words: "twelve."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### **Translation Words**

- covenant (p.1237)
- promises (p.1379)
- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- Jacob (p.1303)
- descendants (p.1248)
- Israel (p.1301)

### **Translation Questions**

**After Jacob died, who received the promises that God gave to Abraham?**

The 12 sons of Jacob received them.

**What did the descendants of the 12 sons of Jacob become?**

They became the 12 tribes of Israel.



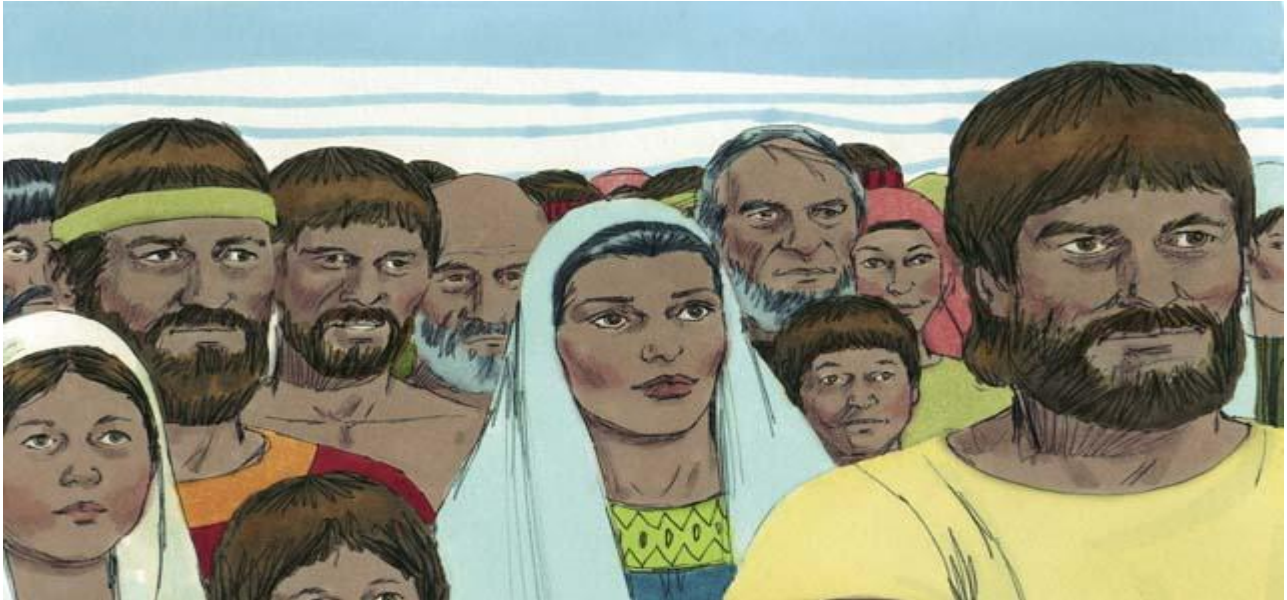
## 9. God Calls Moses

*A Bible story from: Exodus 1-4*

### God Calls Moses

This title can also be translated as: "About how God called Moses to work for him" or "How did God call Moses to work for him?"

09:01



After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in Egypt. They and their descendants continued to live there for many years and had many children. They were called the Israelites.

### Translation Notes

#### After Joseph died

This begins a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

#### his relatives

This refers to a social relationship—all the people who were related to him by birth or marriage.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

#### They were called the Israelites

The people group that descended from Jacob was called 'Israel,' which is the name that God gave to Jacob. The people from that group were called **Israelites**.

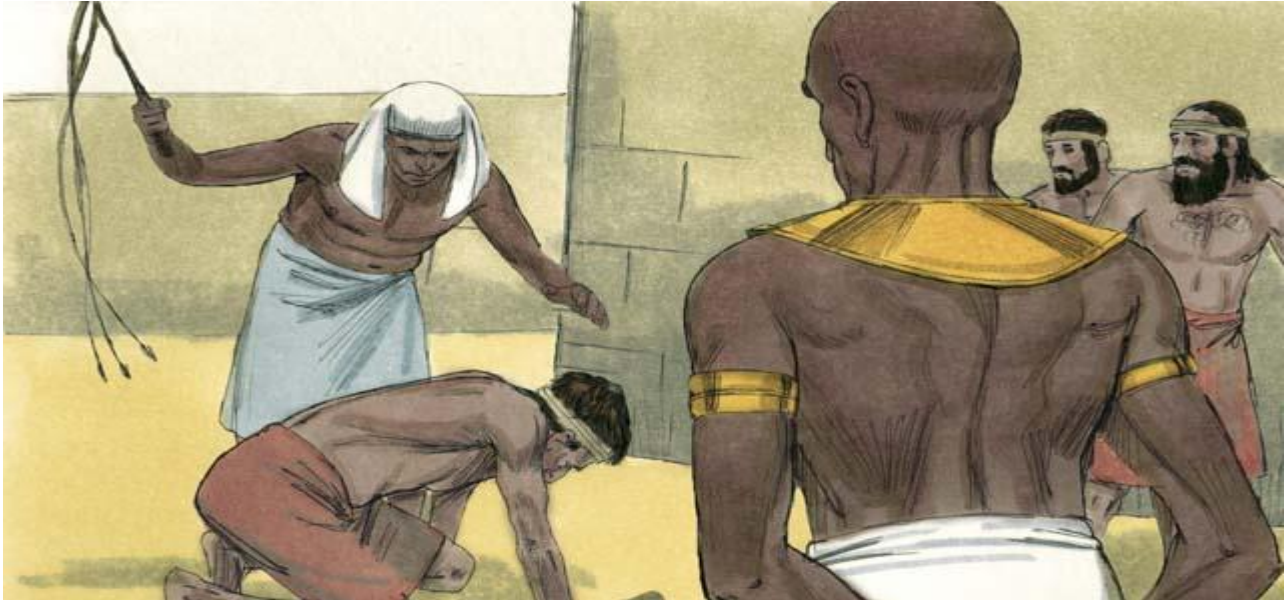
### Translation Words

- Joseph (p.1318)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- descendants (p.1248)
- Israelites (p.1301)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

09:02



After hundreds of years, the number of Israelites had become very large. The Egyptians were no longer grateful that Joseph had done so much to help them. They became afraid of the Israelites because there were so many of them. So the Pharaoh who was ruling Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.

## Translation Notes

### After hundreds of years

This begins a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

### Israelites

'Israelite people' or 'people of Israel'

See TA article: **How to Translate Names (p.1126)**

### Egyptians

'Egyptian people' or 'people of Egypt'

See TA article: **How to Translate Names (p.1126)**

### because there were so many of them

The connecting word **because** connects the action (the Egyptians being afraid) with the reason (there were so many Israelites).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## **Pharaoh**

**Pharaoh** is an Egyptian word that refers to their king. This Pharaoh was probably the son of a former Pharaoh who had died, who may have been a descendant of the Pharaoh that Joseph knew.

### **who was ruling Egypt at that time**

This is background information about the ruler who was Pharaoh at that time.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

### **made the Israelites slaves**

This could mean 'forced the Israelites to do hard labor against their will and treated them very harshly.'

## **Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- Joseph (p.1318)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- slaves (p.1413)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why were the Egyptians afraid of the Israelites?**

They were afraid because there were so many Israelites.

### **What did Pharaoh do to the Israelites because he was afraid of them?**

He made them slaves to the Egyptians.

**09:03**

The Egyptians forced the Israelites to build many buildings and even whole cities. The hard work made their lives miserable, but God blessed them, and they had even more children.

### Translation Notes

#### **made their lives miserable**

This means that they suffered terribly because of how harshly they were treated and how hard they were forced to work. They also felt very discouraged.

#### **God blessed them**

God took care of them, helping them endure the severe treatment and even caused them to become more numerous by giving them many children.

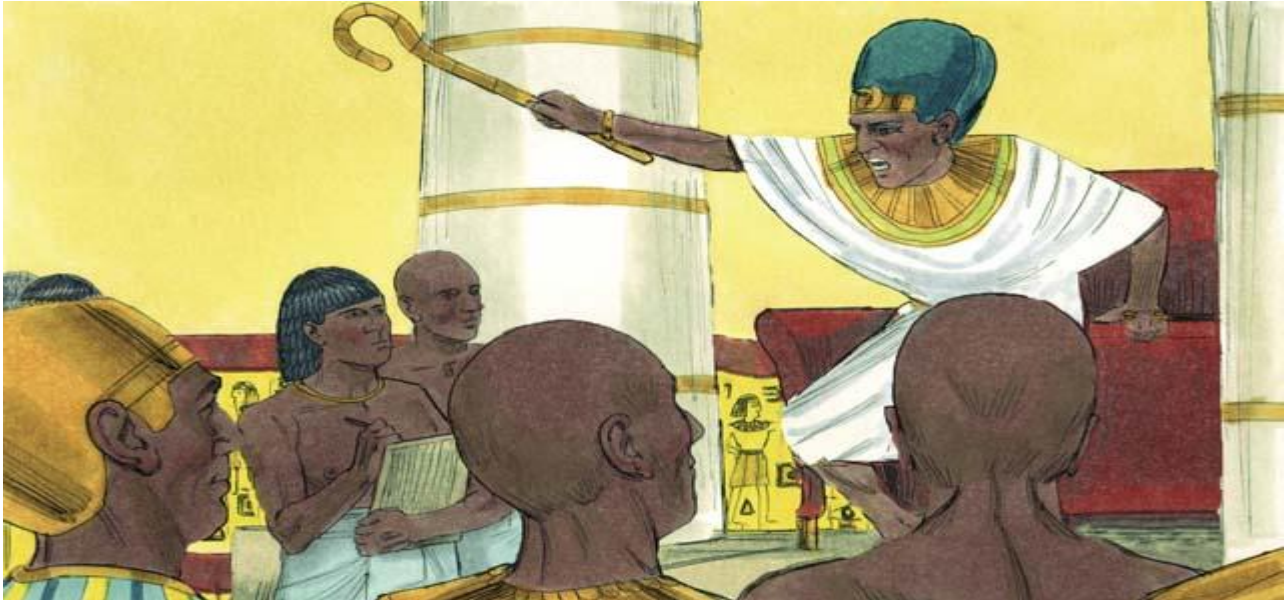
### Translation Words

- Egyptians (p.1252)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)
- blessed (p.1225)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

09:04



Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the Nile River.

### Translation Notes

#### **saw**

Other ways to say this are: “realized” or “knew.”

#### **so he ordered his people to kill**

The connecting word **so** connects the result (Pharaoh ordered the people to kill all the Israelite boys), with the reason.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### Translation Words

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Nile River (p.1357)

### Translation Questions

#### **How did Pharaoh try to keep the Israelites from increasing in number?**

He ordered all Israelite baby boys to be thrown into the Nile River.

09:05



A certain Israelite woman gave birth to a baby boy. She hid the baby for as long as she could.

### Translation Notes

**as long as she could**

She hid the baby from the Egyptians until it became too difficult to keep him safely hidden in her home.

### Translation Words

- Israelite (p.1301)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

09:06



When the boy's mother could no longer hide him, she put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the Nile River in order to save him from being killed. His older sister watched to see what would happen to him.

### Translation Notes

#### reeds

A **reed** is a type of tall grass that grew in flat, wet areas. Use a similar word in your language.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

### Translation Words

- Nile River (p.1357)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)



09:07



A daughter of Pharaoh saw the basket and looked inside. When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son. She hired an Israelite woman to nurse him without realizing the woman was the baby's own mother. When the child was old enough that he no longer needed his mother's milk, his mother returned him to Pharaoh's daughter, who named him Moses.

### Translation Notes

#### **took him as her own son**

She was a princess. When she made him her son, he became a prince of Egypt.

#### **to nurse him**

Another way to say this would be: "to breastfeed him."

### Translation Words

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- son
- Israelite (p.1301)
- Moses (p.1352)

### Translation Questions

#### **What happened to the baby boy in the basket in the river?**

A daughter of Pharaoh saw him, took him as her own son, and named him Moses.

**09:08**

One day, when Moses had grown up, he saw an Egyptian beating an Israelite slave. Moses tried to save his fellow Israelite.

### Translation Notes

#### **had grown up**

Another way to say this would be: “had grown into a man.”

#### **his fellow Israelite**

This phrase refers to the Israelite slave. The word **fellow** here indicates that Moses was also an Israelite. Although the daughter of the Egyptian Pharaoh raised Moses, Moses remembered that he was really an Israelite.

### Translation Words

- Moses (p.1352)
- Egyptian (p.1252)
- Israelite (p.1301)
- slave (p.1413)
- save (p.1410)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

09:09



When Moses thought nobody would see, he killed the Egyptian and buried his body. But someone saw what Moses had done.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Moses (p.1352)
- Egyptian (p.1252)

### Translation Questions

**What did Moses do in order to save a fellow Israelite?**

He killed an Egyptian who was beating him, and buried the Egyptian's body.

09:10



Pharaoh learned what Moses had done. He tried to kill him, but Moses fled from Egypt into the wilderness. Pharaoh's soldiers could not find him there.

### Translation Notes

#### but Moses fled from Egypt

The connecting word **But** contrasts Pharaoh trying to kill Moses with Moses escaping into the wilderness.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

#### the wilderness

The wilderness was a large area that was rocky and dry. The land there was not good for growing food and few people lived there.

### Translation Words

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Egypt (p.1252)

### Translation Questions

#### Why did Moses have to flee from Egypt?

When Pharaoh found out that he killed the Egyptian, he wanted to kill Moses.

#### Where did Moses go to escape from Pharaoh?

He went to the wilderness.

## 09:11



Moses became a shepherd in the wilderness far away from Egypt. He married a woman from that place and had two sons.

### Translation Notes

#### the wilderness

See how you translated this in [09:10](#).

### Translation Words

- Moses (p.1352)
- shepherd (p.1416)
- Egypt (p.1252)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**09:12**

Moses was taking care of his father-in-law's flock of sheep. One day he saw a bush on fire, burning without being destroyed. He went close to the bush to look at it. When he was very close, God spoke to him and said, "Moses, take off your shoes. You are standing on holy ground."

**Translation Notes****taking care of his father-in-law's flock of sheep**

This means he was doing the work of a shepherd to guide the sheep to grass and water, and to protect them. It could be translated as: "tending the sheep that belonged to his father-in-law."

**flock of sheep**

A **flock of sheep** is a large group of sheep that are owned by someone. Use a similar word in your language.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**a bush on fire, burning without being destroyed**

God made the bush full of fire, but the fire did not damage the bush.

**God spoke to him**

This could be translated as: "God said out loud." Moses heard God speak, but he did not see God.

**God spoke to him and said, "Moses, take off your shoes. You are standing on holy ground."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God told Moses to take off his shoes, because he was standing on holy ground."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### **take off your shoes**

God wanted him to take off his shoes to show that he greatly respected God. To make clear the reason for this, you could say: "take off your shoes, because you are on holy ground."

### **holy ground**

It was holy in the sense that God set it apart from the ordinary land and made it to be a special place where He would reveal Himself.

### **Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- sheep (p.1260)
- God (p.1272)
- holy (p.1292)

### **Translation Questions**

**What unusual thing did Moses see while taking care of his sheep in the wilderness?**

He saw a bush that was on fire, but it did not burn up.

**What did God tell Moses as he approached the burning bush?**

God said, "Moses, take off your shoes. You are standing on holy ground."



**09:13**

Then God said, “I have seen the suffering of my people. I will send you to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt. I will give them the land of Canaan, the land I promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.”

**Translation Notes****the suffering of my people**

This could be translated as: “the very harsh treatment that my people are experiencing.” Some languages might translate this as: “how the Egyptians are giving my people terrible pain.”

**my people**

This refers to the Israelites. God had made a covenant with Abraham and his descendants that he would bless them and make them into a great nation. Through this covenant, the Israelites became God’s own people.

**so that you can bring the Israelites**

The connecting words **so that** connect the result (Moses bringing the Israelites out of their slavery), and the reason (God has seen their suffering).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt**

This can be translated as: “can set the Israelites free from being slaves in Egypt” or “can bring the Israelites out of Egypt where they are now slaves.”

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- suffering (p.1427)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- slavery (p.1413)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- promised (p.1379)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- Jacob (p.1303)

## Translation Questions

### **How do we know God cared about the Israelites in Egypt?**

God said to Moses, "I have seen the suffering of my people."

### **What did God send Moses to do for the Israelites?**

God told him to go to Pharaoh and bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.

### **What land did God say he would give to the Israelites?**

God would give him the land of Canaan, the land God had promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

**09:14**

Moses asked, “What if the people want to know who sent me, what should I say?” God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.’ This is my name forever.”

**Translation Notes****the people**

See **my people** in [09:13](#).

**I AM WHO I AM**

This description shows that God can only be defined by himself, not by anything else that we know of, and he cannot be compared to anyone else.

**Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “Tell them that I AM has sent you to them.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**I AM**

This name emphasizes that God is the only one who has always lived and always will live.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

### **Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.'**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "Also tell them that I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob."

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

### **Yahweh**

The name **Yahweh** means 'HE IS' and expresses that God exists by his own power—no one created him.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

### **my name**

The name that God told Moses and all of Israel to use for him is 'Yahweh,' which is related to 'I AM' and appears to mean 'HE IS.'

## **Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- God (p.1272)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- Jacob (p.1303)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What name did God say would be his forever?**

He said his name would be Yahweh.

09:15



Moses was afraid and did not want to go to Pharaoh because he thought he could not speak well, so God sent Moses' brother, Aaron, to help him.

### Translation Notes

#### **was afraid and did not want to go**

Moses knew that Pharaoh wanted to kill him, and he did not believe that he could do what God wanted him to do.

#### **so God sent Moses' brother**

The connecting word **so** connects the result (God sent Aaron to help Moses), and the reason (Moses thought he could not speak well).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

#### **Moses' brother, Aaron**

Aaron was Moses' actual brother from his Israelite mother and father. Aaron would have been at least several years older than Moses.

#### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### Translation Words

- Moses (p.1352)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)

- God (p.1272)
- Aaron (p.1202)

## Translation Questions

### Who did God send to help Moses?

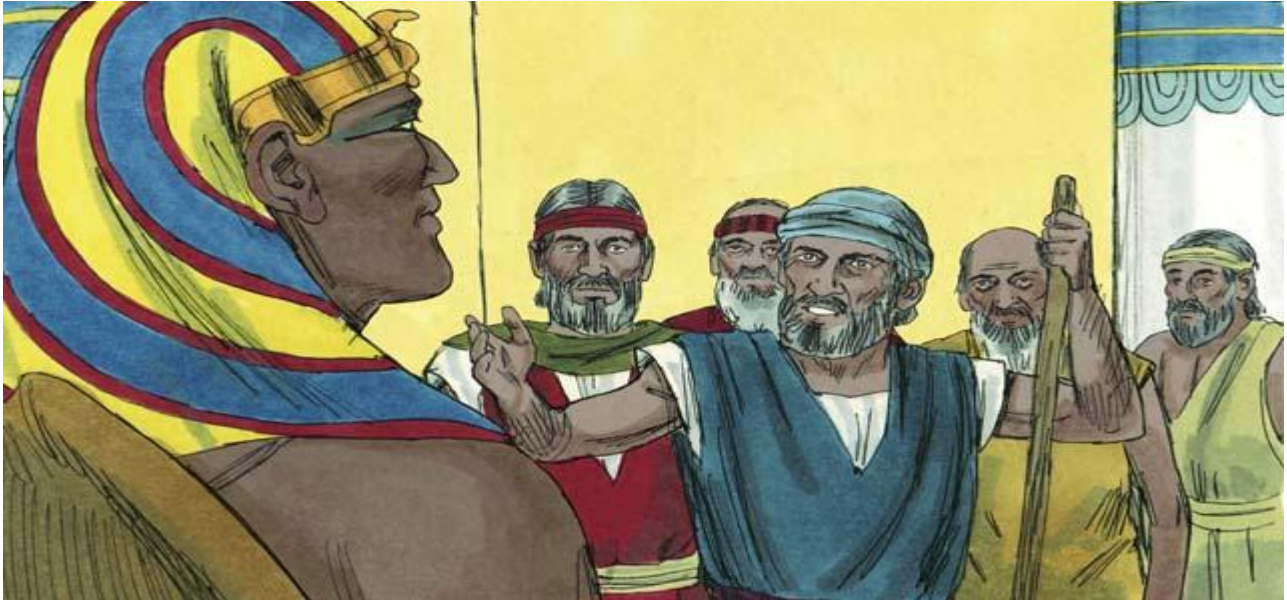
God sent Moses' brother, Aaron, to help him.

## 10. The Ten Plagues

*A Bible story from: Exodus 5-10*

### The Ten Plagues

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made the Egyptians suffer with the Ten Plagues" or "What happened when God made the Egyptians suffer from the ten plagues?"

**10:01**

God warned Moses and Aaron that Pharaoh would be stubborn. When they went to Pharaoh, they said, “This is what the God of Israel says, ‘Let my people go!’” But Pharaoh did not listen to them. Instead of letting the Israelites go free, he forced them to work even harder!

**Translation Notes****stubborn**

This means the Pharaoh would refuse to obey God. You may also want to add: “stubborn and refuse to listen (or obey).”

**to Pharaoh**

It may be clearer to say: “to Pharaoh’s palace to talk to him.”

**This is what the God of Israel says, ‘Let my people go!’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “The God of Israel says to let his people go!”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**the God of Israel**

This could be translated as: “God, who chose the Israelites to be his people” or “God, who rules the people of Israel” or “the God whom the Israelites worship.”

**Let my people go!**

Other ways to say this are: “Allow my people to go free!” or “Free my people to leave Egypt!”



**my people**

See **my people** in [09:13](#).

**But Pharaoh did not listen**

The connecting word **But** connects what Moses and Aaron said God told Pharaoh to do (let his people go), with what he did (he did not listen to them).

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**listen to**

This could be translated as: “heed” or “obey.”

**Instead of letting the Israelites go free**

The connecting word **Instead** connects what Moses and Aaron told Pharaoh to do (listen to God and let his people go), with what Pharaoh did (make them work harder).

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**he forced them to work even harder!**

This is a strong statement that Pharaoh not only did not free the Israelites, he made their lives even harder!

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- Aaron (p.1202)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- God (p.1272)
- Israel (p.1301)

**Translation Questions****What was God’s message that Moses and Aaron gave to Pharaoh?**

God’s message to Pharaoh was, “Let my people go!”

**What did Pharaoh do when he heard this command?**

He forced the Israelites to work even harder.

**10:02**

Pharaoh kept refusing to let the people go, so God sent ten terrible plagues on Egypt. Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.

**Translation Notes****the people**

This refers to the people of Israel, also called 'the Israelites.'

**so God sent**

The connecting word **so** connects the cause (Pharaoh made the Israelites work harder instead of letting them go), with the result (God sent ten terrible plagues on Egypt).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**ten terrible plagues**

A plague is something very bad or terrible that happens to someone or something. A plague usually refers to something that affects many people or happens over a large geographic area. Another word for **plague** would be 'disaster.'

**all of Egypt's gods**

It may be more clear to say: "all the gods that the Egyptian people worshiped." The people of Egypt worshiped many different false gods. Some of these false gods did not exist. Other false gods that they worshiped were actually demons. Demons are not as powerful as the God of Israel.

## Translation Words

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- God (p.1272)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- gods (p.1276)

## Translation Questions

**What did God do when Pharaoh refused to let the Israelites go?**

He sent ten terrible plagues on Egypt.

**What did God show Pharaoh through these plagues?**

He showed that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.

**10:03**

God turned the Nile River into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

**Translation Notes****turned the Nile River into blood**

Some languages may need to say: “turned the water in the Nile River into blood.” There was blood in the river instead of water, so the fish died and the people had no water to drink.

**but Pharaoh still**

The connecting word **but** contrasts God turning the river to blood with Pharaoh not letting the Israelites go.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Nile River (p.1357)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Israelites (p.1301)

**Translation Questions****What did God do to the water in the Nile River?**

God turned water in the Nile River into blood.

**10:04**

God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh begged Moses to take away the frogs. But after all the frogs died, Pharaoh hardened his heart and would not let the Israelites leave Egypt.

**Translation Notes****God sent frogs all over Egypt**

This could be translated as: "God caused many frogs to appear throughout Egypt."

**hardened his heart**

He became stubborn again and refused to obey God. Here, **heart** is a synecdoche that refers to Pharaoh. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh hardened himself"

See TA article: **Synecdoche (p.1194)**

**hardened his heart**

He became stubborn again and refused to obey God. Pharaoh's stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart were hard. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh became stubborn"

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- begged (p.1219)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Israelites (p.1301)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**10:05**

So God sent a plague of gnats. Then he sent a plague of flies. Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt. When Moses prayed, God removed all the flies from Egypt. But Pharaoh hardened his heart and would not let the people go free.

**Translation Notes****God sent a plague**

This could be translated as: "God caused there to be a plague" or "God caused a plague (of gnats) to come over the land of Egypt."

**gnats**

These were tiny, biting insects flying in large swarms, annoying and landing on all the people and animals of Egypt.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**flies**

These were much bigger flying insects that were both annoying and destructive. There were so many of these flies that they covered everything, even filling the Egyptians' houses.

**hardened his heart**

See note in [10:04](#).

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Aaron (p.1202)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Egypt (p.1252)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)



**10:06**

Next, God caused all the farm animals that belonged to the Egyptians to get sick and die. But Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he would not let the Israelites go.

**Translation Notes****farm animals**

This refers to large animals that the Egyptians used to help them in their work, such as horses, donkeys, camels, cattle, sheep, and goats.

**heart was hardened**

See note in [10:04](#).

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Egyptians (p.1252)
- Pharaoh's (p.1369)
- Israelites (p.1301)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**10:07**

Then God told Moses to throw ashes into the air in front of Pharaoh. When he did, painful skin sores appeared on the Egyptians, but not on the Israelites. God hardened Pharaoh's heart, and Pharaoh would not let the Israelites go free.

**Translation Notes****God hardened Pharaoh's heart**

God caused Pharaoh to continue to be stubborn. See also note in [10:04](#).

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Egyptians (p.1252)
- Israelites (p.1301)

**Translation Questions****Who was affected by the plague of the painful skin sores?**

The sores appeared on the Egyptians, but not on the Israelites.

**10:08**

After that, God sent hail that destroyed most of the crops in Egypt and killed anybody who went outside. Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them, “I have sinned. You may go.” So Moses prayed, and the hail stopped falling from the sky.

**Translation Notes****After that**

This refers to after God caused the painful sores to appear on the Egyptians' skin.

**God sent hail**

God caused hail to fall from the sky.

**hail**

Hail is like chunks of ice that fall down from the clouds as rain does. These chunks can be very small or very large. The larger ones will hurt or kill whatever they fall on.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them, “I have sinned. You may go.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them that he had sinned, and said that they could go.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**You may go**

The word **You** refers to Moses, Aaron, and the Israelites.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Aaron (p.1202)
- sinned (p.1419)
- prayed (p.1373)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 10:09



But Pharaoh sinned again and hardened his heart. He would not let the Israelites go free.

### Translation Notes

#### hardened his heart

See note in [10:04](#).

### Translation Words

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- sinned (p.1419)
- Israelites (p.1301)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 10:10



So God caused swarms of locusts to come over Egypt. These locusts ate all the crops that the hail had not destroyed.

### Translation Notes

#### swarms of locusts

Locusts are grasshoppers that fly together in swarms, or large groups, and that can destroy large areas of all kinds of plants and food crops by eating them.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

#### the hail

Hail is like chunks of ice that fall down from the clouds as rain does.

### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Egypt (p.1252)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**10:11**

Then God sent darkness that lasted for three days. It was so dark that the Egyptians could not leave their houses. But there was light where the Israelites lived.

**Translation Notes****God sent darkness**

God caused darkness to cover or spread over most of Egypt. In other words, God took away the light from this part of Egypt.

**that lasted for three days**

This darkness was darker than ordinary nighttime darkness, and it continued to be totally dark for three whole days.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Egyptians (p.1252)
- Israelites (p.1301)

**Translation Questions****Did the plague of darkness affect everyone equally?**

No, it was dark where the Egyptians lived, but there was light where the Israelites lived.

**10:12**

Even after these nine plagues, Pharaoh still refused to let the Israelites go free. Since Pharaoh would not listen, God planned to send one last plague. This would change Pharaoh's mind.

**Translation Notes****these nine plagues**

This means: 'these nine disasters that God had caused.'

**Since Pharaoh would not listen, God planned to send one last plague. This would change Pharaoh's mind.**

The connecting word **Since** connects the action (God sending one last plague), with the reason (Pharaoh refused to let the Israelites go free).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Since Pharaoh would not listen**

This could be translated as: "Since Pharaoh would not do what God was telling him to do" or "Since Pharaoh refused to obey God."

**This would change Pharaoh's mind**

Another way to say this would be: "This last plague would cause Pharaoh to change how he thought about God and, as a result, he would let the Israelites go free."

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.



## Translation Words

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

**How did Pharaoh respond to each of the first nine plagues?**

He refused to let the people go free.

**What did God do after Pharaoh did not respond to the first nine plagues?**

God planned to send one last plague.

**What would this last plague do that the first nine had not done?**

It would change Pharaoh's mind.

## 11. The Passover

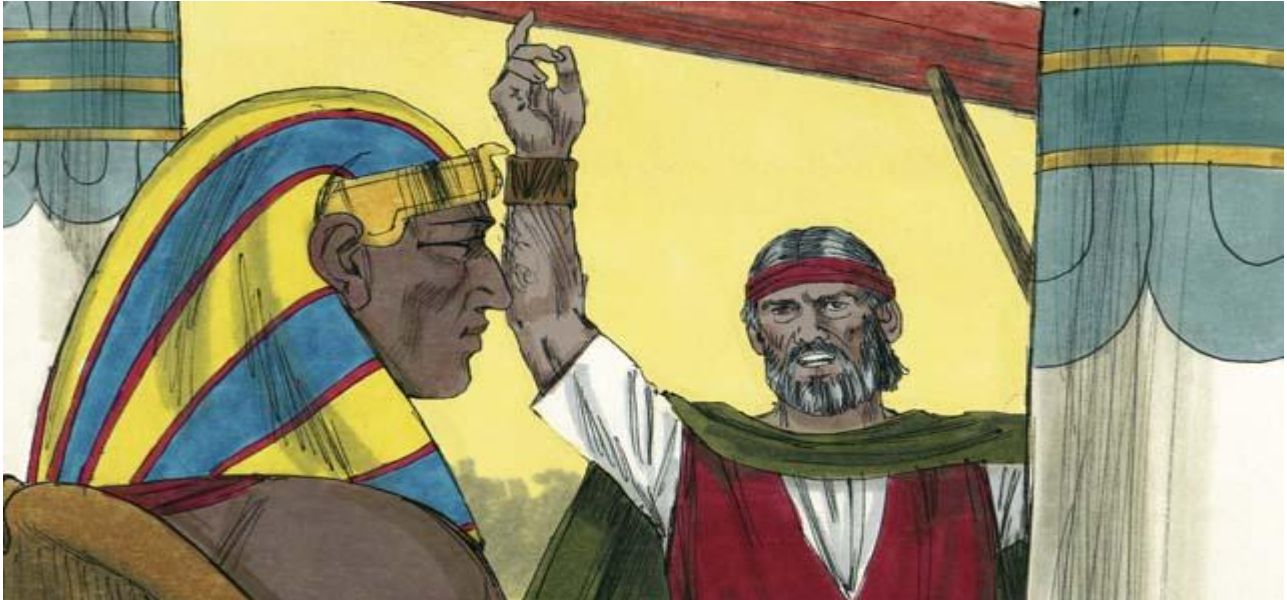
*A Bible story from: Exodus 11:1-12:32*

### The Passover

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made the Passover festival" or "Why did God make the Passover festival?"

### Passover

The term **Passover** is the name of a Jewish festival when they celebrate that God passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons when he killed the Egyptians.

**11:01**

God sent Moses and Aaron to tell Pharaoh to let the Israelites go. They warned him that, if he did not let them go, God would kill all the firstborn males of Egypt's people and animals. When Pharaoh heard this, he still refused to believe and obey God.

**Translation Notes****the firstborn males of Egypt's people and animals**

This could be translated as: "the eldest son in every Egyptian family and the first male offspring of any of their animals."

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- believe (p.1220)
- obey

**Translation Questions****What did God say he would do to the Egyptians if Pharaoh did not let the Israelites go?**

He would kill all the firstborn males of both people and animals.

**11:02**

God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect lamb and kill it.

**Translation Notes****God provided**

God is the only one who could provide the way to save the Israelites' sons from death.

**to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him**

This can be stated in active form: "for those who believed in him to save their firstborn son"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**a perfect lamb**

This could mean 'a young sheep or goat that had no blemishes or defects.'

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- save (p.1410)
- son
- believed (p.1220)
- lamb (p.1335)

**Translation Questions**

**How could people save their firstborn son?**

They had to kill a perfect lamb.

**11:03**

God told the Israelites to put the blood of this lamb around the door of their houses. They should roast the meat. Then they should quickly eat it, along with unleavened bread. He also told them to be ready to leave Egypt immediately after they ate this meal.

**Translation Notes****unleavened bread**

**Unleavened bread** is bread that is prepared without yeast. Yeast is mixed into bread dough to make the dough expand and rise as it bakes. This could be translated as: "made without something that would make it rise." Making bread with yeast takes longer than without it, so unleavened bread shows that this meal was urgent and the people needed to do it quickly.

**be ready to leave Egypt immediately after they ate this meal**

This means they needed to be prepared to leave before they started to eat.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- lamb (p.1335)
- blood
- Egypt (p.1252)

**Translation Questions****What did God tell the Israelites to do with the blood of the lamb?**

God told them to put the blood of the lamb around the door of their house.

**What specific food did God tell the Israelites to eat with the roasted lamb?**

They were to eat bread that was made without yeast.

**What were the Israelites to be ready to do when they ate?**

They were to be ready to leave Egypt.

**11:04**

The Israelites did everything just as God had commanded them to do. In the middle of the night, God went throughout Egypt killing every firstborn son.

**Translation Notes****every firstborn son**

This means every firstborn son of families who had not made the blood sacrifice, that is, the Egyptians. To make this clear you may want to add: "Every Egyptian firstborn son" (since all the Israelite families had put the blood on their doorposts).

**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)
- Egypt (p.1252)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)



**11:05**

All the houses of the Israelites had blood around the doors, so God passed over those houses. Everybody inside them was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's blood.

**Translation Notes****passed over**

This means that God passed by those houses and did not stop to kill anyone there. This phrase became the name of the Jewish festival, 'Passover.'

**They were saved**

God did not kill their firstborn son.

**because of the lamb's blood**

This could be translated as: "because the lamb's blood was on their door." God saw that they had killed their lamb as he had commanded, so he did not kill their son.

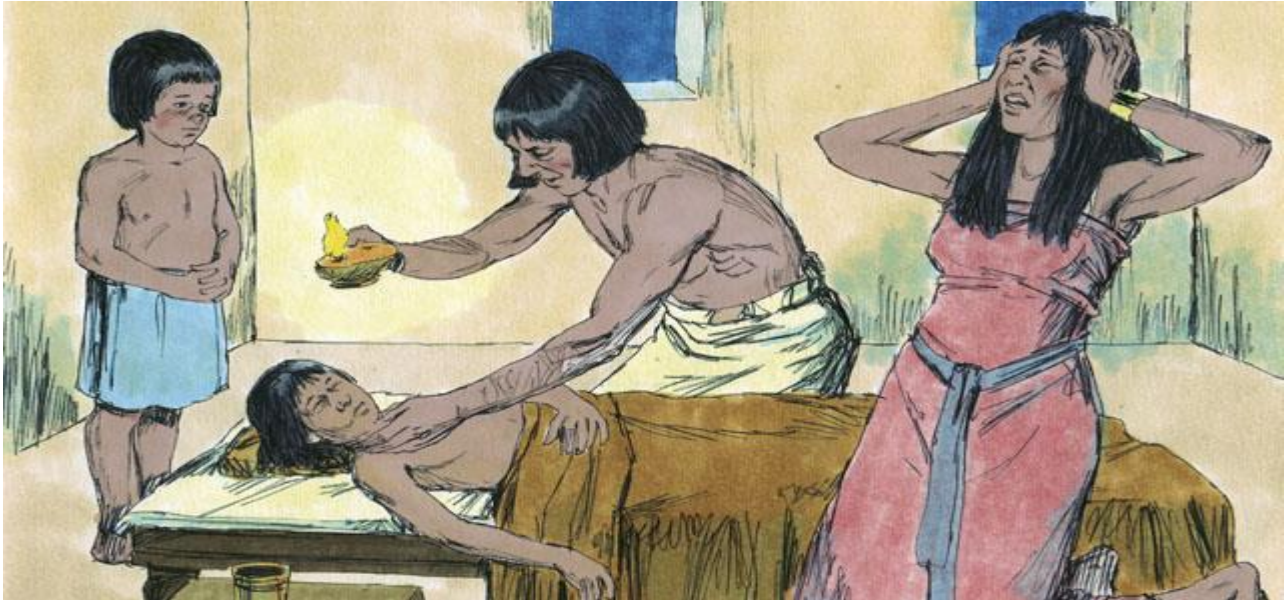
**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- blood
- God (p.1272)
- saved (p.1410)
- lamb's (p.1335)

## Translation Questions

**What did God do at the houses that had the blood around the doors?**

He passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe.

**11:06**

But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands. So God did not pass over their houses. God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn sons.

**Translation Notes****did not believe God or obey his commands**

In some languages it may be more natural or clear to say: "did not believe God and so they did not obey his commands."

**did not pass over**

He did not pass by their houses. Rather, he stopped at each house and killed their eldest son.

**Translation Words**

- Egyptians (p.1252)
- believe (p.1220)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****What did God do at every Egyptian house?**

He killed the firstborn son.

**11:07**

Every Egyptian firstborn male died, from the firstborn of the prisoner in jail to the firstborn of Pharaoh. Many people in Egypt were crying and wailing because of their deep sadness.

### Translation Notes

**from the firstborn of the prisoner in jail to the firstborn of Pharaoh**

This is a way of saying that everyone's firstborn son died—from the son of the least important person to the son of the most important person, and everyone in between.

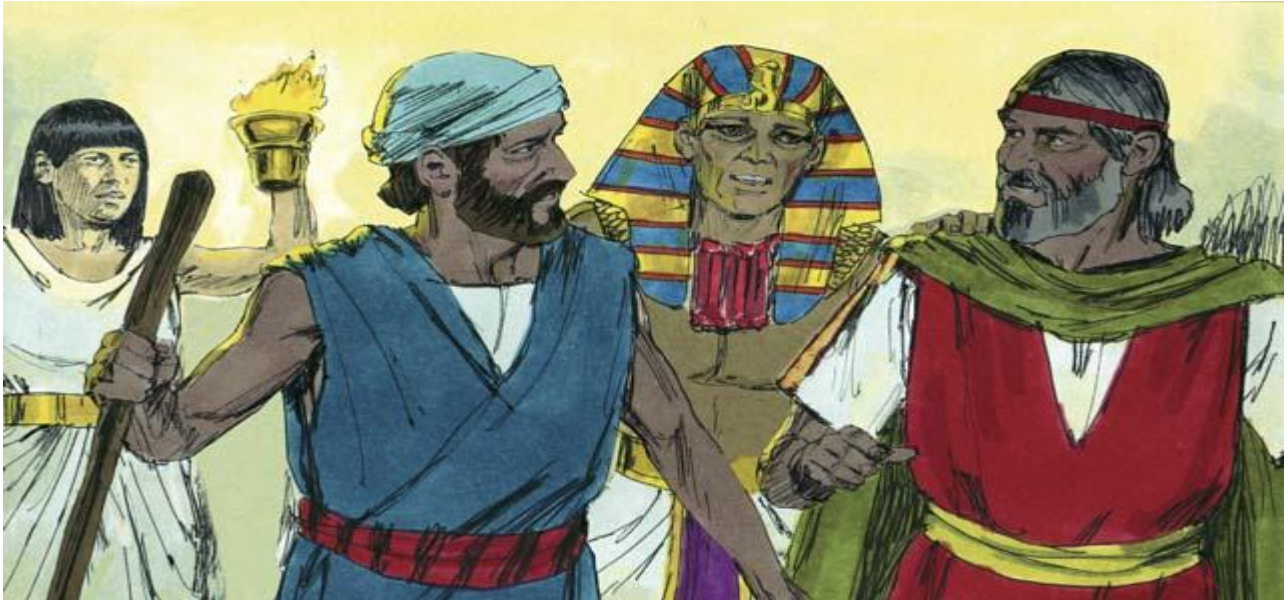
### Translation Words

- Egypt (p.1252)
- Pharaoh (p.1369)

### Translation Questions

**How many of the firstborn sons of the Egyptians were killed?**

All of them died, including Pharaoh's son.

**11:08**

That same night, Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron and said, "Take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!" The Egyptian people also urged the Israelites to leave right away.

**Translation Notes****called for**

This means that Pharaoh told his servants to tell Moses and Aaron to come to him.

**and said**

Pharaoh said the following words to Moses and Aaron after they came to him. In some languages this would be translated as: "and said to them," or "After they came, Pharaoh said to them."

**and said, "Take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "and told them to take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!**

This is a command. It is stated as an exclamation because Pharaoh was finally afraid of God and urgently wanted the Israelites to leave Egypt.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

## **Take**

The motion is away from the speaker, Pharaoh. Moses is commanded to take the Israelites away from Pharaoh and continue moving with them until they have left all of Egypt, the country where the speaker is located.

See TA article: **Go and Come (p.1124)**

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Aaron (p.1202)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Egypt (p.1252)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did Pharaoh tell Moses and Aaron after this plague?**

He told them to take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!

## 12. The Exodus

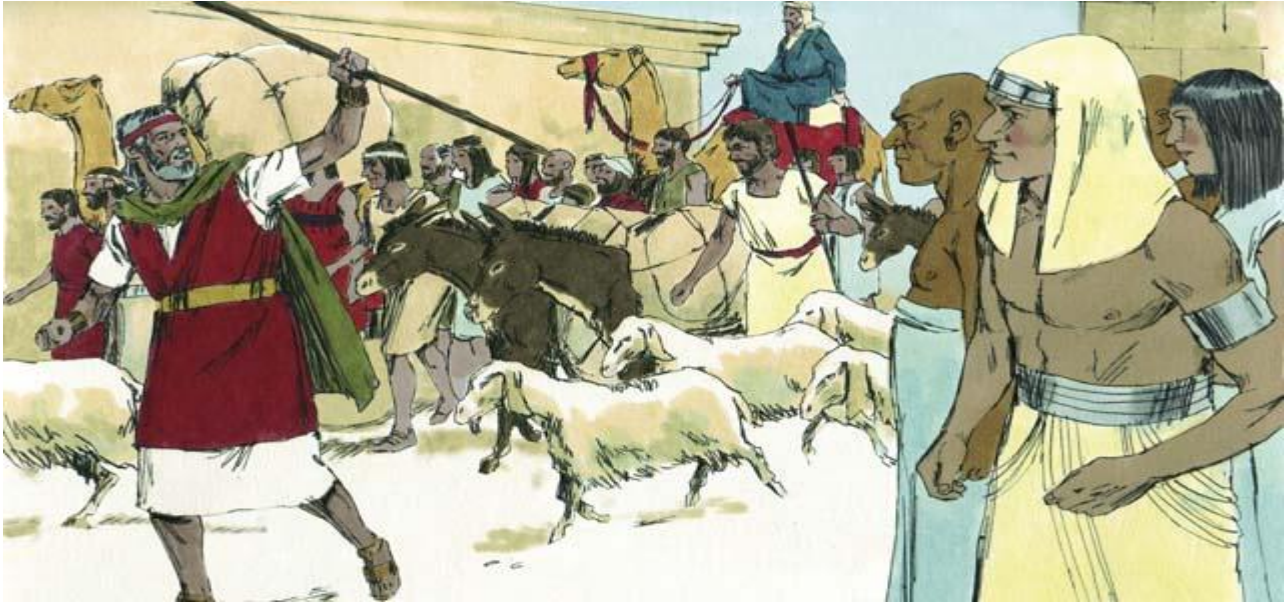
*A Bible story from: Exodus 12:33-15:21*

### The Exodus

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when the Israelites left Egypt" or "What happened when God took the Israelites out of Egypt?" or "What happened when the Israelites left Egypt?"

### Exodus

The term **Exodus** means 'leaving' or 'going out from.'

**12:01**

The Israelites were very happy to leave Egypt. They were no longer slaves, and they were going to the Promised Land! The Egyptians gave the Israelites whatever they asked for, even gold and silver and other valuable things. Some people from other nations believed in God and went along with the Israelites as they left Egypt.

**Translation Notes****They were no longer slaves**

This could be translated as: "They were not slaves anymore."

**were going**

Some languages may use a more specific word like 'traveling' since they would be going a long distance to the Promised Land.

**the Promised Land**

This is the land that God had promised that he would give to Abraham's descendants.

**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- slaves (p.1413)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- believed (p.1220)
- God (p.1272)



## **Translation Questions**

### **What did the Egyptians give the Israelites as they left Egypt?**

They gave them whatever they asked for, even gold and silver and other valuable things.

### **Who else left Egypt with the Israelites?**

Some people from other nations who believed in God left with them.

**12:02**

A tall pillar of cloud went ahead of them during the day. It became a tall pillar of fire at night. God, who was in the pillar of cloud and the pillar of fire, was always with them and guided them as they traveled. All they had to do was follow him.

**Translation Notes****A tall pillar of cloud**

This could be translated as: "A tall cloud" or "A cloud shaped like a pillar." This was not an actual pillar such as something that supports a building. In appearance it resembled a pillar, but it was made out of clouds.

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**a tall pillar of fire**

This was a column of fire that hung or floated in the air in front of the Israelites. This was not an actual pillar such as something that supports a building. It resembled a pillar in appearance, but it was made out of fire.

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**guided them**

God showed them the way by making the pillar move along in front of them so they could follow it.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions**

**How did God lead the Israelites?**

He led them in a pillar of cloud during the day and a pillar of fire at night.

**12:03**

After a short time, Pharaoh and his people changed their minds. They wanted to make the Israelites their slaves again. So they chased after the Israelites. It was God who made them change their minds. He did this because he wanted everyone to know that he, Yahweh, is more powerful than Pharaoh and all the gods of the Egyptians.

**Translation Notes****After a short time**

Probably at least two days had gone by. For that to be clear, it may be translated as: "After a few days" or "A few days after the Israelites left Egypt."

**changed their minds**

This phrase means 'began to think differently than they had before.' The Egyptians did not replace their minds, but made a decision that was not the same as the one they first made. They decided the Israelites should leave, but later decided that was the wrong choice and that they should have kept the Israelites as slaves. Some languages may not have this same expression, and will express the meaning in a direct way.

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

**So they**

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the Egyptians chased after the Israelites), with the reason (the Egyptians wanted the Israelites to be their slaves again).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- Pharaoh (p.1369)
- Israelites (p.1301)

- slaves (p.1413)
- God (p.1272)
- gods (p.1276)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why did God cause Pharaoh to be stubborn and chase the Israelites?**

God did this to show that he is the One True God who is more powerful than Pharaoh and his gods.

**12:04**

When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the Red Sea. They were very afraid and cried out, "Why did we leave Egypt? We are going to die!"

**Translation Notes****they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the Red Sea**

Another way to say this would be: "there was nowhere they could go to escape since the Egyptians were behind them and the Red Sea was in front of them."

**Why did we leave Egypt?**

The Israelites were not asking for reasons. Because they were afraid, in this moment they were wishing they had not left Egypt (even though it had been very difficult for them there). This could be a statement: "We should not have left Egypt!"

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**We are going to die!**

This is a strong statement that expresses their certainty that the Egyptians would kill them.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

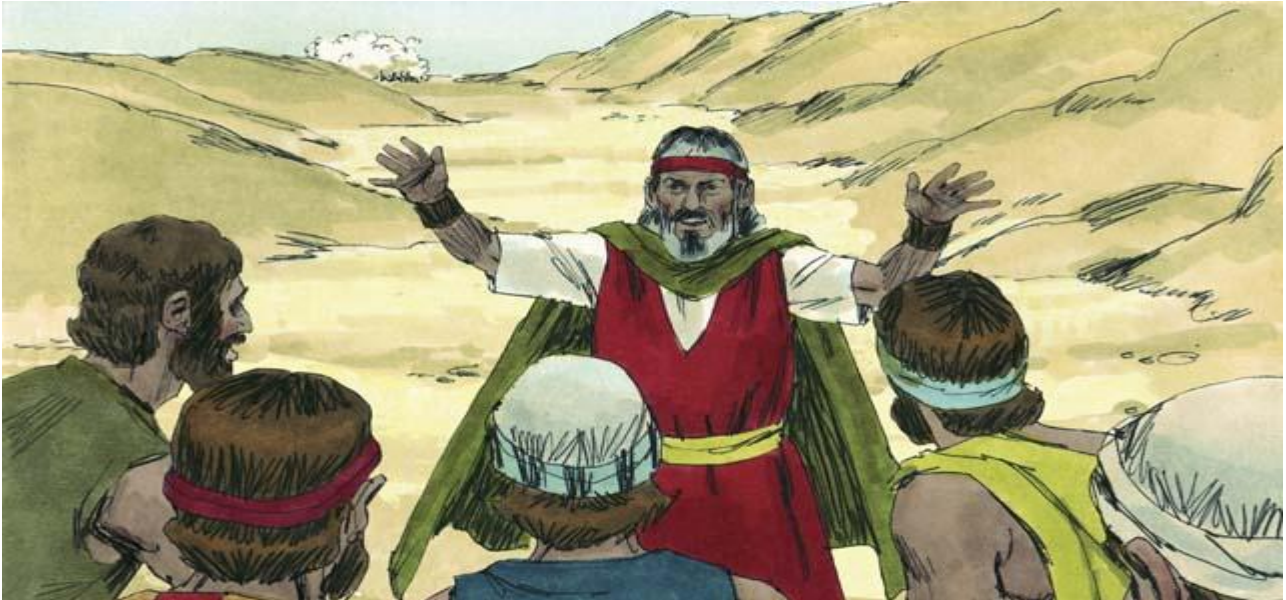
**Translation Words**

- Pharaoh's (p.1369)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- Red Sea (p.1412)

## Translation Questions

**How did the Israelites react when they were trapped between the sea and Pharaoh's army?**

They said, "Why did we leave Egypt? We are going to die!"

**12:05**

Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you.” Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to move toward the Red Sea.”

**Translation Notes****Stop being afraid!**

This is both a command and also an exclamation. Moses was telling the people in very strong terms that they were wrong to be afraid, rather than trusting God to protect them.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**God will fight for you today and save you**

Another way to say this would be: “Today God will defeat the Egyptians for you and keep them from harming you.”

**fight for you today and save you**

Both occurrences of the pronoun **you** refers to all the Israelites.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

**Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to move toward the Red Sea.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God told Moses to tell the people to move toward the Red Sea.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**



## **to move**

Some languages will be more specific and say: "to walk."

## **Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)
- save (p.1410)
- Red Sea (p.1412)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did Moses say to the Israelites to calm their fear?**

He told them to stop being afraid! God would fight for them that day and save them.

**12:06**

Then the pillar of cloud moved between the Israelites and the Egyptians and became a pillar of fire at night. The Egyptians were not able to come near the Israelites all night.

**Translation Notes****Then the pillar of cloud moved**

The connecting word **Then** connects God's instructions that the Israelites are to move forward with the pillar of cloud moving behind them.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**the pillar of cloud**

See how you translated this phrase in [12:02](#).

**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- Egyptians (p.1252)

**Translation Questions**

**How did God prevent the Egyptians from coming near the Israelites as they started to escape?**

He placed the pillar of cloud between them.

**12:07**

God told Moses to raise his hand over the sea. Then God caused the wind to push the water in the sea to the left and the right, so that there was a path through the sea.

**Translation Notes****raise his hand over the sea**

This could be translated as: "held out his hand over the sea." This was a gesture to show that God was doing this miracle through Moses.

**Then God caused**

The connecting word **Then** connects Moses' action of obedience in raising his hand over the sea with the result (God caused the wind to blow).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**so that**

The connecting words **so that** connect the wind blowing with the effect (the path through the sea for the Israelites).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Moses (p.1352)

## Translation Questions

**What did God tell Moses to do in order to make a path of escape for the Israelites?**

God told him to raise his hand over the sea so that the waters would divide.

**12:08**



The Israelites marched through the sea on dry ground with a wall of water on either side of them.

### Translation Notes

**marched**

This can be translated as: "walked" or "went."

**with a wall of water on either side of them**

This could be translated as: "and the water on both sides of them stood up tall and straight like a wall."

### Translation Words

- Israelites (p.1301)

### Translation Questions

**How were the Israelites able to cross the sea?**

They walked through it on dry ground.

12:09



Then the Egyptians saw that the Israelites were escaping. The Egyptians started chasing after them again.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Egyptians (p.1252)
- Israelites (p.1301)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**12:10**

So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their chariots to get stuck. They shouted, "Run away! God is fighting for the Israelites!"

**Translation Notes****So they followed the Israelites**

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the Egyptians followed the Israelites in to the sea), with the cause (God removed the cloud).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**the path through the sea**

This was the dry strip of land across the bottom of the sea, with a wall of water on each side.

**but God**

The connecting word **but** contrasts the movement of the Israelites God caused by opening the path, with the lack of movement of the Egyptians God caused with their panic and chariots becoming stuck.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**to panic**

This could be translated as: "to get fearful and confused."

**to get stuck**

The chariots could no longer move.

### **Run away!**

This is both a command and also an exclamation. The Egyptians were so afraid when they realized that they were in great danger.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **God is fighting for the Israelites!**

This exclamation emphasizes the fear of the Egyptians when they realized that God had led them into a trap in the sea, and they were going to drown.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)
- Egyptians (p.1252)
- chariots (p.1229)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What happened to the Egyptians as they chased the Israelites through the sea?**

He caused the Egyptians to panic and their chariots to get stuck.



**12:11**

The Israelites all arrived at the other side of the sea. Then God told Moses to stretch out his hand again over the water. When Moses did that, the water fell on the Egyptian army and returned to its normal place. The whole Egyptian army drowned.

**Translation Notes****to stretch out his hand again**

This could be translated as: "lift his hand over the sea again" or, as a direct command, as in, "God told Moses, 'Stretch out your hand again.'"

**Then God**

The connecting word **Then** connects the action (the Israelites arriving safely on the other side of the Sea) with God's instructions to Moses to close the path through the sea.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**returned to its normal place**

This could be translated as: "covered the place again where the path had been," or "filled the whole sea again" or "went back to where it was before God separated it."

**The whole Egyptian army**

This could be translated as: "everyone in Egypt's army."

**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)

- God (p.1272)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Egyptian (p.1252)

## Translation Questions

### **How did God destroy the Egyptian army?**

The water covered the Egyptian army so that they drowned.

**12:12**

When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God. They believed that Moses was a prophet of God.

**Translation Notes****When the Israelites saw**

The connecting word **When** connects the cause (God's destruction of the Egyptian army), with the effect (the Israelites trusted God).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**trusted in God**

In other words, the people now trusted that God was powerful and could protect them.

**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- Egyptians (p.1252)
- God (p.1272)
- believed (p.1220)
- Moses (p.1352)
- prophet (p.1381)

**Translation Questions****How did the Israelites react when they saw that the Egyptians were dead?**

They trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.

**12:13**

The Israelites also rejoiced very much because God had saved them from dying and from being slaves. Now they were free to worship God and obey him. The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.

**Translation Notes****rejoiced very much**

This could be translated as: “were very happy and they showed it enthusiastically” or “showed it with their whole hearts” or “with all their strength.”

**because God had saved them**

The connecting word **because** connects the result (the Israelites rejoiced), with the cause (God saved them).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**free to worship**

God freed, or rescued, the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt so that they could serve him.

**to praise God**

In some languages this could be translated as: “to lift up God’s name” or “to say that God is great.”

**Translation Words**

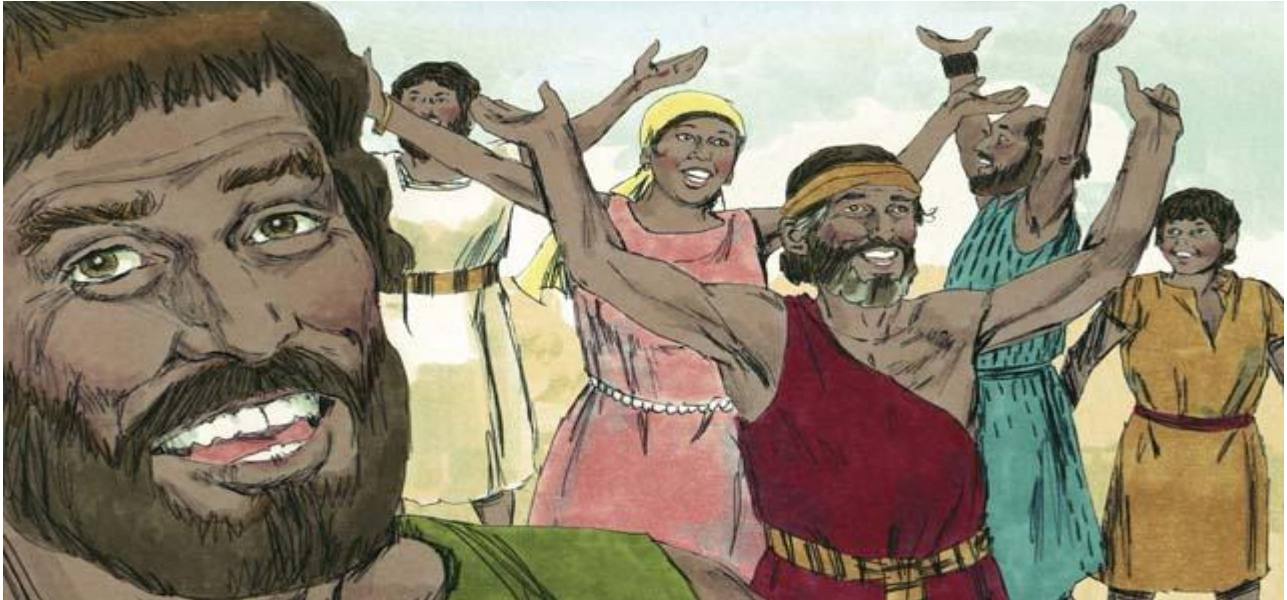
- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)
- saved (p.1410)

- slaves (p.1413)
- praise (p.1372)
- Egyptian (p.1252)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why did the Israelites sing and praise God?**

They praised him because he had saved them from the Egyptians.

**12:14**

God commanded the Israelites to celebrate a festival every year in order to remember how God had defeated the Egyptians and freed them from being slaves. This festival was called the Passover. In it, they had to celebrate by killing a healthy lamb, roasting it, and eating it with bread made without yeast.

**Translation Notes****in order to**

The connecting words **in order to** indicate the goal or purpose of the festival (to remind the Israelites and their descendants of how God had delivered them).

See TA article: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.1088)**

**remember how God had defeated**

This could be translated as: “regularly remind themselves of how God defeated.” The word **remember** here doesn’t just mean to not forget; it also means to formally commemorate something.

**the Passover**

This could be translated as: “the Passover activities” or “the Passover celebration” or “the Passover meal.”

**healthy lamb**

This here refers to a lamb with no disease or anything else wrong with it. Another way to say this might be “a completely healthy and well-formed lamb.”

**with bread made without yeast**

Another way to say this is: “unleavened bread.” See how you translated this in [11:03](#).

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Passover (p.1359)
- Egyptians (p.1252)
- slaves (p.1413)
- lamb (p.1335)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did God tell the Israelites to do in order to remember his victory over the Egyptians?**

He commanded them to celebrate the Passover every year.

## **13. God's Covenant with Israel**

*A Bible story from: Exodus 19-34*

### **God's Covenant with Israel**

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made a covenant with Israel" or "How did God make a covenant with Israel?"



**13:01**

After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai. This was the same mountain where Moses had seen the burning bush. The people set up their tents at the base of the mountain.

**Translation Notes****After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea**

This begins a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**This was the same mountain where Moses had seen the burning bush**

This is background information about the mountain to which the Israelites traveled.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**burning bush**

Before Moses returned to Egypt, God had spoken to him from a shrub that was on fire, but that was not burned up by the fire (See: [09:12](#)).

**set up their tents**

The Israelites had to travel a great distance from Egypt to the Promised Land. So they took tents with them so that they could set them up as shelters and sleep in them along the way. Some languages could translate this as: "hung their tents."

### **the base of the mountain**

This could be translated as: "bottom of the mountain." This refers to the area of land that is located next to the place where the ground starts to slant upward to form a mountain.

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Red Sea (p.1412)
- Sinai (p.1421)
- Moses (p.1352)

### **Translation Questions**

**Where did God lead the Israelites after they crossed the Red Sea?**

He lead them to a mountain called Sinai.

**13:02**

God said to Moses and all the people of Israel, “You must always obey me and keep the covenant I am making with you. If you do this, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”

**Translation Notes**

**You must always obey me and keep the covenant I am making with you.**

This is a direct command from God to all of the Israelites.

**keep the covenant I am making with you**

This could be translated as: “do what my covenant requires you to do.” Obeying and keeping the covenant are not two different things. One way to make this clear would be to say: “obey me by keeping the covenant I am making with you.” God will soon tell them what his covenant requires.

**If you do this**

The connecting word **If** introduces a conditional statement. The blessings are dependent on the Israelites obeying the commandments God had given.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**my prized possession**

This could be translated as: “You will be my possession that I value most” or “You will be the people that I treasure more than any other group of people” or “You will be my own precious people.”

## **a kingdom of priests**

God speaks of his people as if they were priests. Alternate translation: "a kingdom of people who are like priests" or "a kingdom of people who do what priests do"

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

## **a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation**

This could be translated as: "I will be your king and you will be like priests." The Israelites were supposed to teach the other nations about God and be a mediator between God and the nations just as there were priests in the nation of Israel to go between God and the Israelites.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Israel (p.1301)
- obey
- covenant (p.1237)
- kingdom (p.1330)
- priests (p.1377)
- holy (p.1292)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did God promise the Israelites that they would become if they would obey him?**

They would be his prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.

**13:03**

For three days the people made themselves ready for God to come near to them. Then God came down to the top of Mount Sinai. When he came, there was thunder, lightning, smoke, and sounds of loud trumpets. Then Moses went by himself up the mountain.

**Translation Notes****For three days**

In other words, three days after they arrived at Mount Sinai and God first spoke to them.

**made themselves ready for God to come near to them**

This refers to ceremonial cleansing in preparation to meet with God. This could be translated as: "got ready to meet with God" or "prepared themselves to meet with God."

**sounds of loud trumpets**

This could be translated as: "loud sounds came from horns" or "horns were blown and they made loud sounds" or "they heard the loud sounds of horns blowing." These trumpets were not blown by men, but by God or by his angels.

**Moses went by himself**

This could be translated as: "God permitted Moses to go up, but he did not permit anyone else to go."

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Sinai (p.1421)

- Moses (p.1352)

## Translation Questions

**What signs accompanied God when he came down on Mount Sinai?**

Thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast accompanied God when he came down.

**13:04**

Then God made a covenant with the people. He said, "I am Yahweh, your God. It is I who saved you from being slaves in Egypt. Do not worship any other god."

**Translation Notes****Then God made a covenant with the people. He said,**

What God says next is the content of the covenant, that is, he tells the people the things that they must obey. This could be translated as: "Then God made this covenant with them:"

**Yahweh, your God**

In some languages it might be more natural to change the order and say "your God Yahweh." Make sure it does not sound like the Israelites had more than one God. It should be clear that Yahweh is the only God. Another way to translate this would be: "Yahweh, who is your God" or "your God, whose name is Yahweh."

**who saved you from being slaves**

This could be translated as: "I freed you from slavery."

**Do not worship any other god.**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- covenant (p.1237)
- Yahweh (p.1441)

- saved (p.1410)
- slaves (p.1413)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- worship (p.1383)
- god (p.1276)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)



**13:05**

“Do not make idols and do not worship them, because I, Yahweh, must be your only God. Do not use my name in a disrespectful way. Be sure to keep the Sabbath day holy. In other words, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to remember me.”

**Translation Notes****Connecting Statement**

God continues speaking to Moses.

**Do not make idols**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

**do not worship them**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

**because**

The connecting word **because** indicates the reason the Israelites were not to make idols or worship them (unlike other deities who did not care if people worshiped many other gods too, Yahweh was jealous of their worship).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Do not use my name in a disrespectful way**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites. This could be translated as: “Do not talk about me in a way that does not show respect and honor” or “Talk about me in a way that gives me proper respect and honor.”

### **Be sure to keep the Sabbath day holy**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

### **do all your work in six days**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

### **the seventh day**

To translate this, it is best to use the number (**seventh**) rather than give the name of a specific day of the week.

### **to remember me**

This could be translated as: "to keep me in mind" or "to honor me."

### **Translation Words**

- worship (p.1383)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- God (p.1272)
- Sabbath (p.1401)
- holy (p.1292)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**13:06**

“Honor your father and your mother. Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not lie. Do not desire to have your neighbor’s wife, his house, or anything that belongs to him.”

**Translation Notes****Connecting Statement**

God continues speaking to Moses.

**Honor your father and your mother**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

**Do not murder**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

**Do not commit adultery**

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites. This could be translated as: “Do not have sexual relations with someone else’s spouse” or “Do not have marital relations with another man’s wife or another woman’s husband.” Be sure to translate this in a way that doesn’t offend or embarrass people. Languages often have an indirect, polite way of saying this, such as: “Do not sleep with.”

See TA article: **Euphemism (p.1112)**

**Do not lie**

This means: ‘Do not say false things about other people.’

## Translation Words

- adultery (p.1205)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**13:07**

The people all agreed to obey the laws that God had given them. They agreed to belong to God alone and to worship only him.

**Translation Notes****had given them**

This could be translated as: "had told them to obey."

**to belong to God alone**

From among all the nations, God had chosen the Israelites for his special purpose. This could be translated as: "to be his special nation" or "to be his own people" or "to be the nation he chose to be his people."

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- laws (p.1337)
- obey

**Translation Questions****What would God do to the Israelites if they disobeyed his commandments?**

He would punish them.

**13:08**

God also told the Israelites to make a large tent—the Tent of Meeting. He told them exactly how to make this tent and what things to put in it. He told them to make a large curtain to separate the tent into two rooms. God would come into the room behind the curtain and stay there. Only the high priest was allowed to go into that room where God was.

**Translation Notes****make a large tent**

This is background information about the tent the Israelites were to make as a place to worship God.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**the room behind the curtain**

This room was hidden by the curtain. Some languages would call this room 'the room in front of the curtain.'

**where God was**

If this phrase would lead people to think that God was limited to living in the tent, it could be translated as: "where God revealed Himself to humans."

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Tent of Meeting (p.1434)
- high priest (p.1288)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did God tell the Israelites to build for him?**

He told them to make the Tent of Meeting.

**Who could enter into the room behind the curtain where God was?**

Only the high priest could enter there.

**13:09**

The people must also make an altar in front of the Tent of Meeting. Anyone who had disobeyed God's law should bring an animal to that altar. A priest would then kill it and burn it on the altar as a sacrifice to God. God said that the animal's blood would cover that person's sin. In this way, God would not see that sin any longer. That person would become clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.

**Translation Notes****God's law**

This refers to all the commandments and instructions that God had told the Israelites to obey.

**would cover that person's sin**

When people brought animals to sacrifice, God chose to see the blood of the animals as a covering over their sin. This is like hiding something that is ugly or dirty by covering it.

**clean in God's sight**

This could be translated as: "as if he did not have the sin according to God" or "free of the punishment for breaking God's law."

**Translation Words**

- disobeyed
- God's law (p.1337)
- Tent of Meeting (p.1434)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- priest (p.1377)
- altar (p.1207)



- blood
- sin (p.1419)
- Moses' (p.1352)
- Aaron (p.1202)
- descendants (p.1248)

## Translation Questions

### **How could the people cover their sin?**

They could bring an animal for the priests to sacrifice. The blood of the sacrifice would cover their sin.

### **Who did God choose to be his priests?**

He chose Aaron and his descendants.

**13:10**

God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to Moses. God also gave the people many other laws and rules to follow. God promised to bless the people and protect them if they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them if they did not obey them.

**Translation Notes****these Ten Commandments**

This refers to the commands God gave to Moses for the Israelites to obey. They are listed in frames [13:05](#) and [13:06](#).

**two stone tablets**

A tablet was a flat piece of stone or other hard material used in ancient times for writing.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**God also gave**

This can be translated as: "God also told them."

**to follow**

This can be translated as: "that they must obey" or "that they must keep."

**if they obeyed**

The connecting word **if** indicates a hypothetical conditional relationship. God's blessing depends on the Israelites obeying the laws.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

### **But he said he would punish**

The connecting word **But** contrasts how God would bless the Israelites if they obeyed him with how he would punish them if they did not obey him.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### **if they did not obey**

The connecting word **if** indicates a hypothetical conditional relationship. God would punish the Israelites if they did not obey the laws.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

## **Translation Words**

- obey
- God (p.1272)
- promised (p.1379)

## **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**13:11**

For many days, Moses remained on top of Mount Sinai. He was talking with God. But the people became tired of waiting for him to return to them. So they brought gold to Aaron and asked him to make an idol that they could worship instead of God. In this way, they sinned terribly against God.

**Translation Notes****the people became tired of waiting**

This could be translated as: “the people became impatient because he did not return quickly” or “the people didn’t want to wait any longer for him to return.”

**the people**

This does not mean all the Israelite people, just the people who had grown tired of waiting for Moses.

See TA article: **Synecdoche (p.1194)**

**brought gold**

These were objects and jewelry made of gold, which could be melted and formed into other things.

**they sinned terribly against God**

They sinned in a way that was especially offensive to God. This could be translated as: “they sinned badly,” or “they did something that was very bad” or “they did something bad that made God very angry.”

**Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- Sinai (p.1421)

- God (p.1272)
- Aaron (p.1202)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did the people do when they got tired of waiting for Moses to return from Mount Sinai?**

They asked Aaron to make a gold idol, and then they worshiped it and made sacrifices to it.

**13:12**

Aaron made a golden idol in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the idol and make sacrifices to it! God was very angry with them because of their sin. God told Moses he wanted to destroy them. But Moses asked God not to kill them. God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.

**Translation Notes****made a golden idol**

Aaron took the things made of gold that the people had brought to him, melted them, combined them, and formed them into the shape of a calf.

**The people began to wildly worship the idol and make sacrifices to it!**

This is a strong statement that expresses how shocking it was that the people would worship this idol when they had seen what God had done for them.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**to wildly worship**

The people were sinning by worshipping the idol and also by doing sinful things as they worshiped it.

**because**

God had just told the Israelites that they were only to worship him because he was a jealous God, and if they did not obey they would be punished. For these reasons, God was very angry with the Israelites because of their sin.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## **listened to his prayer**

God always hears prayer. In this situation, **listened** means that God agreed to do what Moses asked.

### **Translation Words**

- Aaron (p.1202)
- worship (p.1383)
- sacrifices (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- sin (p.1419)
- Moses (p.1352)
- prayer (p.1373)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Why did God not destroy the Israelites when they disobeyed?**

He did not destroy them because Moses prayed for them.

## 13:13



When Moses came down from Mount Sinai, he was carrying the two stone tablets on which God had written the Ten Commandments. When Moses saw the idol, he was so angry that he smashed the tablets.

### Translation Notes

#### **smashed the tablets**

He threw the stone tablets down on the ground and they broke up into little pieces.

### Translation Words

- Moses (p.1352)
- God (p.1272)
- Ten Commandments (p.1433)

### Translation Questions

#### **What happened to the stones on which God had written the Ten Commandments?**

Moses was angry and smashed the stones.



**13:14**

Then Moses burned the idol and ground it into powder. He threw the powder into a stream and made the people drink the water. God sent a plague on the people and many of them died.

**Translation Notes****burned the idol and ground it into powder**

Moses utterly destroyed the idol by pounding it into fine particles.

**a plague**

This plague may have been a serious illness. Alternate translation: "Yahweh made the people very sick."

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****What did Moses do to the idol?**

He burned the idol and ground it into powder, and then he made the people drink it in water.

**13:15**

Moses made new stone tablets for the Ten Commandments to replace the ones that he had broken. Then he climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would forgive the people. God listened to Moses and forgave them. Moses came back down the mountain with the Ten Commandments on the new tablets. Then God led the Israelites away from Mount Sinai toward the Promised Land.

**Translation Notes****Moses made**

Moses carved the stone tablets with tools such as a hammer and chisel.

**listened to**

See how you translated this phrase in [13:12](#).

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- prayed (p.1373)
- God (p.1272)
- forgive (p.1266)
- Ten Commandments (p.1433)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Sinai (p.1421)
- Promised Land (p.1380)

## Translation Questions

**Where did the Israelites go after Mount Sinai?**

God led the Israelites toward the Promised Land.

## 14. Wandering in the Wilderness

*A Bible story from: Exodus 16-17; Numbers 10-14; 20; 27; Deuteronomy 34*

### Wandering in the Wilderness

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when the Israelites went about in the wilderness" or "What happened when the Israelites wandered in the wilderness?"

### Wilderness

This refers to a dry, remote place where very few people live.

**14:01**

God finished telling the Israelites about all the laws that they must obey because of his covenant with them. Then he led them away from Mount Sinai. He wanted to take them to the Promised Land. This land was also called Canaan. God went ahead of them in the pillar of cloud, and they followed him.

**Translation Notes****General Information**

This frame is background information that summarizes the previous two stories in preparation for a shift in the story.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**the pillar of cloud**

See how you translated this phrase in [12:02](#).

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- covenant (p.1237)
- Sinai (p.1421)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- Canaan (p.1228)

**Translation Questions****Where did God lead the Israelites after they left Mount Sinai?**

He led them towards Canaan, the Promised Land.



**14:02**

God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there. They were called Canaanites. The Canaanites did not worship or obey God. They worshiped false gods and did many evil things.

**Translation Notes****God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants**

This is background information that summarizes the stories of Genesis in preparation for a shift in the story.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Canaanites**

This frame explains who the Canaanites were and God's relationship with them in preparation for the introduction of a new major character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- promised (p.1379)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- Jacob (p.1303)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- descendants (p.1248)
- people groups (p.1365)
- Canaanites (p.1228)
- worship (p.1383)

- obey
- false gods (p.1276)
- evil (p.1258)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)



**14:03**

God told the Israelites, "After you go into the Promised Land, you must get rid of all the Canaanites there. Do not make peace with them and do not marry them. You must completely destroy all of their idols. If you do not obey me, you will end up worshiping their idols instead of me."

**Translation Notes****you must get rid of all the Canaanites there**

This is a polite way to say that they were to kill or drive out all the Canaanites out of the Promised Land. This could be translated as: "must get all the Canaanites out of the land" or "must remove from the land all of the Canaanites who are living there."

See TA article: **Euphemism (p.1112)**

**Do not make peace with them**

This could be translated as: "Do not live peacefully among or alongside them" or "Do not promise to live peacefully with them."

**do not marry them**

God did not want any Israelite person to marry any Canaanite person.

**If you do not obey me**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If the Israelites do not obey God by driving out the Canaanites, in time they will also disobey God by worshiping the idols of the Canaanites.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

## **you will end up worshiping their idols**

If the Israelites became friends with the Canaanites and did not destroy the idols, they would be tempted to worship those idols instead of God.

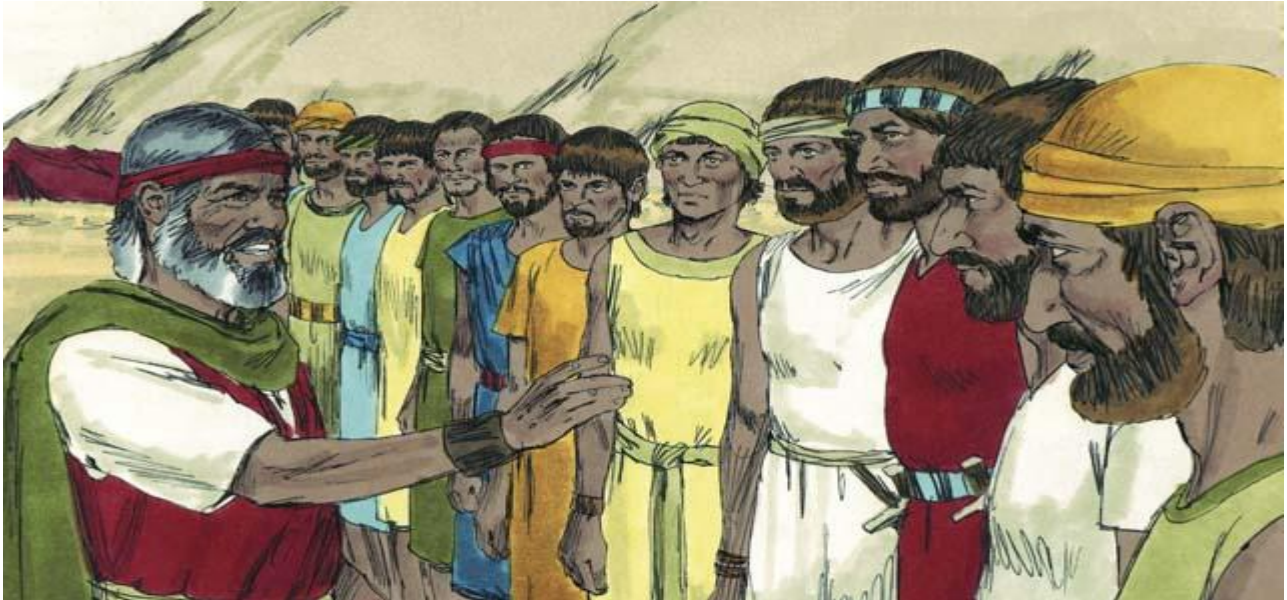
### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Canaanites (p.1228)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- peace (p.1363)
- obey
- worshiping (p.1383)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What did God tell the Israelites to do to the Canaanites?**

He told them to get rid of all of them, not to make peace with them, not to marry them, and to destroy all of their idols.

**14:04**

When the Israelites reached the border of Canaan, Moses chose 12 men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like. They were also to spy on the Canaanites to see if they were strong or weak.

**Translation Notes****border**

a line separating two countries, a boundary

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**tribe of Israel**

This refers to the descendants of each of the sons of Jacob.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**go and spy**

The Israelites were to go from where they were camped to the land of Canaan and spy in the land of Canaan.

See TA article: **Go and Come (p.1124)**

**spy on the land**

This could be translated as: “secretly get information about the land” or “secretly learn about the land.” Part of the spies’ task was to find out what kinds of food the land could produce.

### **to spy on the Canaanites**

This could be translated as: “secretly get information about the people of Canaan” or “secretly learn about the Canaanites.”

### **to see if they were strong or weak**

They wanted to know if the Canaanites were prepared to fight against them. This could be translated as: “to find out how powerful the Canaanite armies were.”

### **Translation Words**

- Israel (p.1301)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- Moses (p.1352)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**14:05**

The 12 men traveled through Canaan for 40 days, and then they came back. They told the people, "The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful!" But ten of the spies said, "The cities are very strong and the people are giants! If we attack them, they will certainly defeat us and kill us!"

**Translation Notes****they came back**

They returned to where the rest of the Israelites were waiting, just outside the border of Canaan. This can be clearly stated: "they returned to the camp of the Israelites."

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**They told the people, "The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful!"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "They told the people that the land was very fertile and the crops were plentiful!"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful!**

This is a strong statement that emphasizes that the land was extremely good.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**The cities are very strong and the people are giants!**

This is a strong statement that emphasizes that the inhabitants of the land were extremely large and powerful soldiers.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **The cities are very strong**

The cities had strong walls around them, so it would be very difficult for the Israelites to attack them.

### **the people are giants**

This was not simply referring to unusually tall people, but a particular race of people that were far larger than even the tallest normal people. This could be translated as: "the people are like giants compared to us!" or "the people are much taller and stronger than we are!"

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

### **If we attack them, they will certainly defeat us and kill us!**

This is a strong statement that emphasizes that the Israelites were certain the Canaanites would defeat them in battle.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

## **Translation Words**

- Canaan (p.1228)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did the 12 spies say about the land of Canaan?**

The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful.

### **Why did ten of the spies say the Israelites should not attack the people of Canaan?**

They said, "The cities are strong and the people are giants. If we attack them, they will defeat us and kill us!"

**14:06**

Immediately, Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!"

**Translation Notes**

**It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!**

This is a strong statement that even though the people of Canaan were large, God was even bigger and would enable the Israelites to defeat them.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**the people of Canaan**

This could be translated as: "the people who live in Canaan" or "the Canaanites."

**but we can certainly**

The connecting word **but** indicates that there was an exceptional reason why the Canaanites would be defeated rather than the Israelites.

See TA article: **Connect — Exception Clauses (p.1084)**

**we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!**

To show the connection between these two statements, it may be necessary to say: "we can certainly defeat them because God will fight for us!"

## **God will fight for us!**

This could be translated as: "God will fight alongside us and help us defeat them!" This makes it clear that the Israelites would also be fighting against the Canaanites.

## **Translation Words**

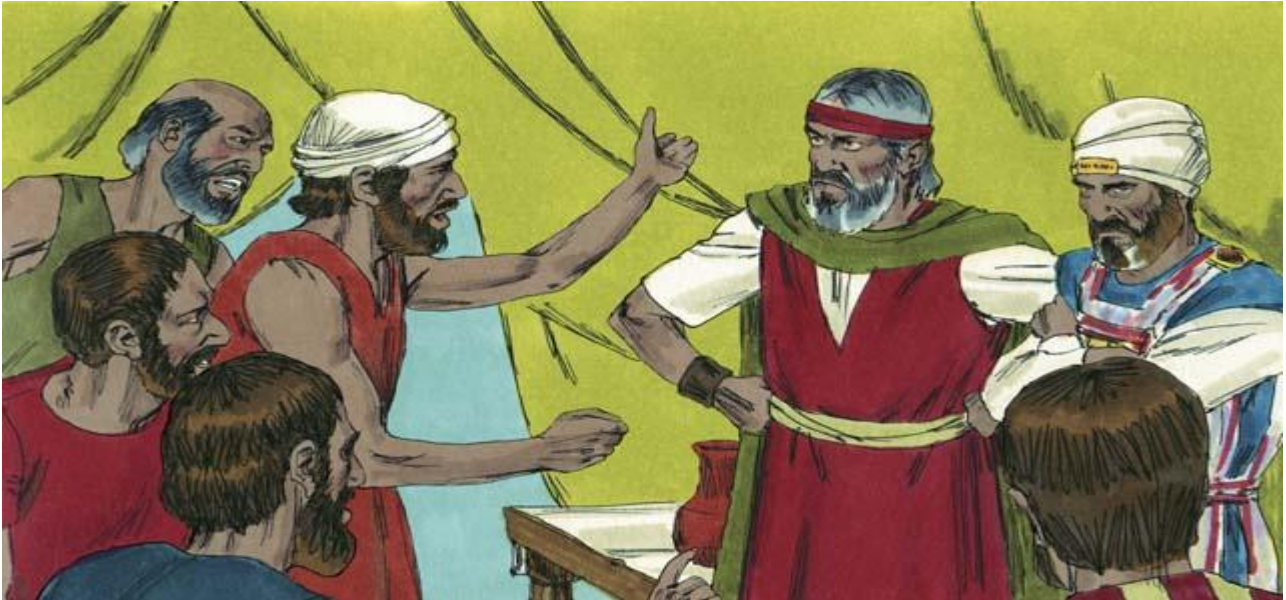
- Caleb (p.1227)
- Joshua (p.1319)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- God (p.1272)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did Caleb and Joshua say about the people of Canaan?**

They said, "The people are strong, but we can defeat them. God will fight for us!"



**14:07**

But the people did not listen to Caleb and Joshua. They became angry with Moses and Aaron and said, “Why did you bring us to this horrible place? We should have stayed in Egypt. If we go into the land, we will die in battle, and the Canaanites will make our wives and children to be slaves.” The people wanted to choose a different leader to take them back to Egypt.

**Translation Notes****But the people did not listen**

The connecting word **But** indicates that in contrast to Joshua and Caleb’s reasoning, the people refused to listen.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Why did you bring us to this horrible place?**

The people were not expecting an answer from Moses or from God. Alternate translation: “You should not have brought us to this horrible place.”

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**this horrible place**

They considered Canaan to be **horrible** because they thought it was so dangerous that they would all be killed.

**Translation Words**

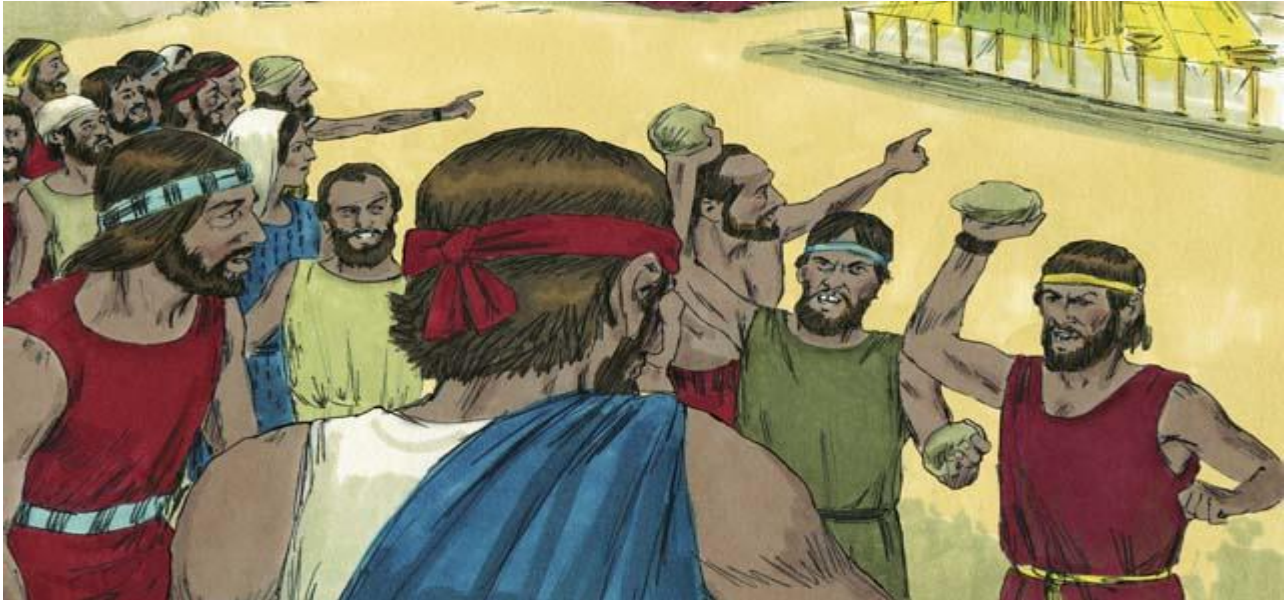
- Caleb (p.1227)
- Joshua (p.1319)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Aaron (p.1202)
- Egypt (p.1252)

- slaves (p.1413)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did the people want to do after they heard the report of the spies?**

They wanted to choose another leader and go back to Egypt.

**14:08**

When the people said this, God was very angry. He came to the Tent of Meeting and said, “You have rebelled against me, so all of you will have to wander in the wilderness. Everyone who is 20 years or older will die there and never enter the land I am giving you. Only Joshua and Caleb will enter it.”

**Translation Notes****He came to**

God did not appear as a person, but came in some other form that showed his glory and power.

**so all of you**

The connecting word **so** connects the action or reason with the consequence. The people rebelled against God, and for this reason or as a result, they would have to wander in the wilderness.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**to wander in the wilderness**

God would lead the people around in the wilderness with no specific destination until all of the adults who rebelled against him died.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Tent of Meeting (p.1434)
- Joshua (p.1319)
- Caleb (p.1227)

## Translation Questions

**How did God say he would punish the people for their disobedience?**

They would wander in the wilderness until everyone twenty years or older, except Caleb and Joshua, died.

**14:09**

When the people heard God say this, they were sorry they had sinned. So they decided to attack the people of Canaan. Moses warned them not to go because God would not go with them, but they did not listen to him.

**Translation Notes****When the people heard God say this**

The connecting word **When** connects the action or reason with the result. As a result of hearing God's judgment, the people became sorry they had sinned.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**they had sinned**

It may be necessary to add: "they had sinned by disobeying God's command to conquer the peoples of Canaan."

**So they decided**

The connecting word **So** connects the action or reason with the result. As a result of being sorry they had sinned, the people of Israel attacked the people of Canaan.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Moses warned them not to go**

This means that Moses told them not to go to fight against the Canaanites because they would be in danger if they did that.

**because God would not go with them**

The connecting word **because** connects the action (Moses warning them) with the reason (God not going with them).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**God would not go with them**

In other words, God would not be with them to help them. Because of the Israelites' disobedience, God withdrew from them his presence, protection, and power.

**but they did not listen to him**

They did not obey Moses. They went to attack the Canaanites anyway. The connecting word **but** indicates an exception relationship. The Israelites decided to attack the Canaanites even though Moses had warned them not to do that.

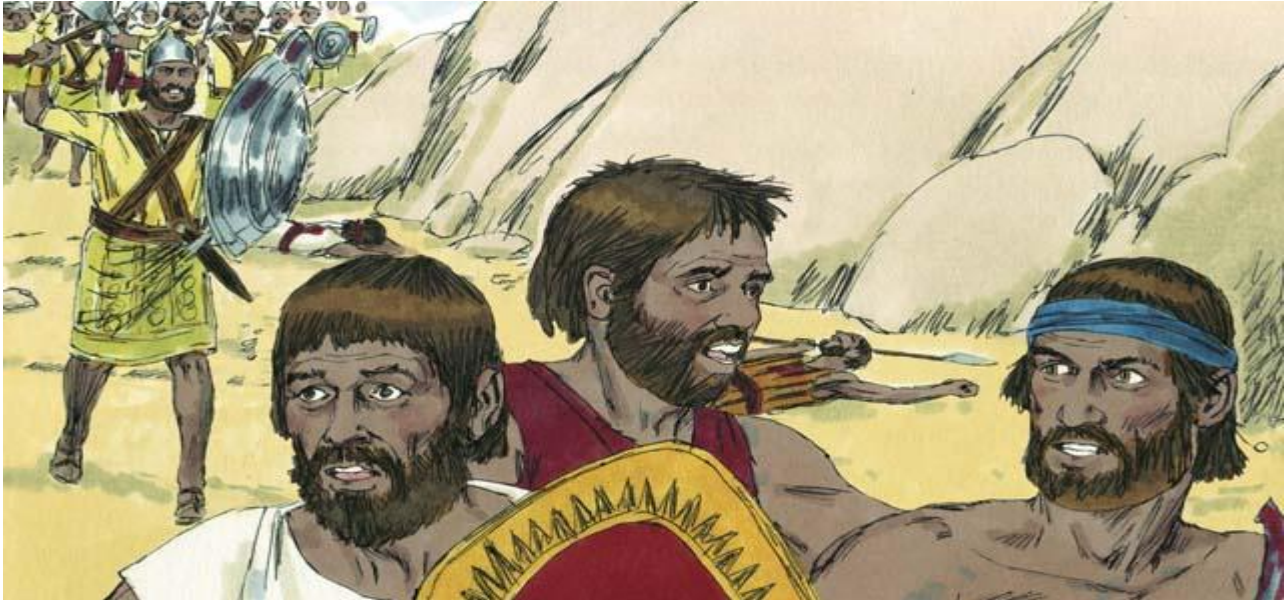
See TA article: **Connect — Exception Clauses (p.1084)**

**Translation Words**

- sinned (p.1419)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- Moses (p.1352)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**14:10**

God did not go with them into this battle, so the Canaanites defeated them and killed many of them. Then the Israelites turned back from Canaan. For the next 40 years, they would wander through the wilderness.

**Translation Notes****God did not go with them into this battle**

In other words, God did not help them in this fight.

**so the Canaanites defeated them and killed many of them**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (God did not go with them into this battle), with two results (the Canaanites defeated them, and the Canaanites killed many of them).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**turned back from Canaan**

They left Canaan and went back into the wilderness where they were before.

**wander through the wilderness**

They lived in the wilderness, and together they moved from place to place in that large, dry land, looking for food and water for themselves and their animals.

**Translation Words**

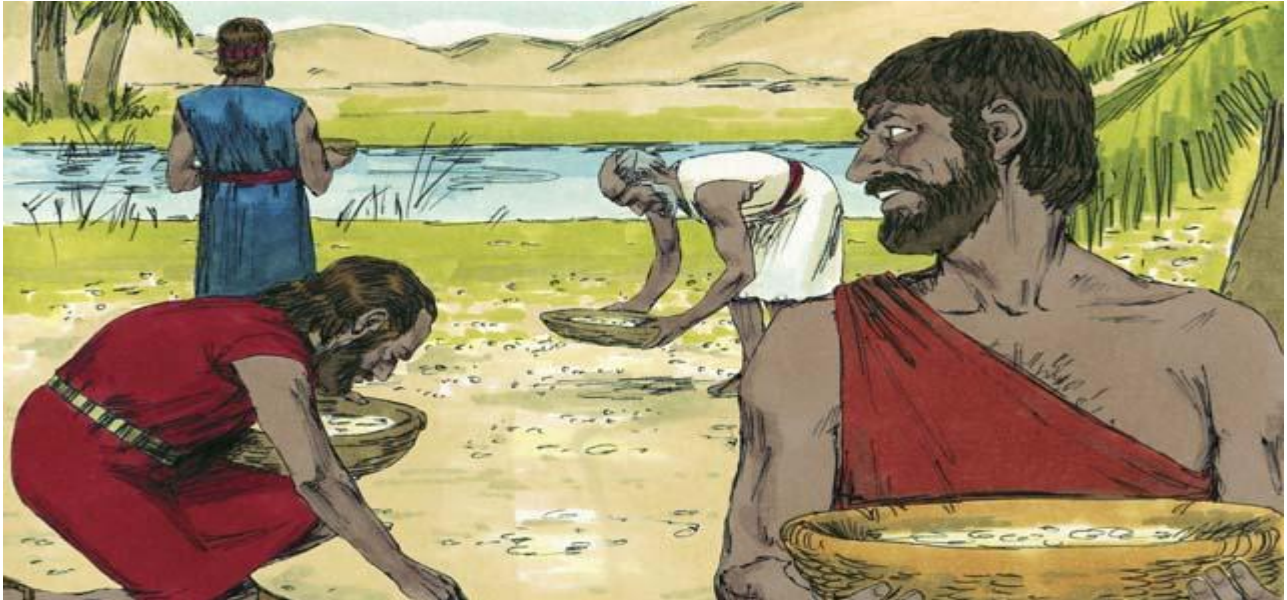
- God (p.1272)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Canaan (p.1228)

## Translation Questions

**Why were the Israelites defeated when they attacked the Canaanites?**

They were defeated because God did not go with them into the battle.



**14:11**

During the 40 years that the people of Israel wandered in the wilderness, God provided for them. He gave them bread from heaven, called manna. He also sent flocks of quail (which are medium-sized birds) into their camp so they could have meat to eat. During all that time, God kept their clothes and sandals from wearing out.

**Translation Notes****God provided for them**

This could be translated as: "God gave them everything they needed for food, water, and shelter."

**bread from heaven, called manna**

Overnight, this thin, bread-like food fell onto the grass like dew from the sky. They called it **manna**. Almost every day the people gathered this manna and cooked it as their food.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**He also sent flocks of quail (which are medium-sized birds)**

Another way to say this would be: "He also caused a large number of quails to fly into their camp." If quails are unknown, a different, similar type bird could be used. Or it could be translated as: "a large number of medium-sized birds."

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**their camp**

The place where the Israelites set up their tents to sleep in was called a **camp**. It was like a city with tents instead of buildings, and it could be moved around.

## Translation Words

- Israel (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

### **How long did the Israelites wander in the wilderness?**

They wandered for 40 years.

### **How did God provide for the Israelites in the wilderness?**

He gave them manna, sent flocks of quail, and kept their clothes and shoes from wearing out.

**14:12**

To provide them with water to drink, God miraculously made it come out of a rock. But despite all this, the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. Even so, God was still faithful. He did what he promised that he would do for the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

**Translation Notes**

**To provide them with water to drink, God miraculously made it come out of a rock.**

This could be translated as: "By doing something that only God can do, he made water pour out of a rock so the people and animals could drink."

**But despite all this**

This could be translated as: "But even though God provided food, water, clothing, and everything that they needed." The connecting word **But** contrasts God's many gifts that have been listed with Israel's complaining against God and his servant Moses.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Even so**

This could be translated as: "Even though the Israelites complained and grumbled against him." The connecting words **Even so** contrast Israel's complaining with God's faithfulness.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## **God was still faithful. He did what he promised that he would do for the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob**

This could be translated as: "God continued to do what he had told Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob he would do. He provided their descendants with what they needed so that they could live and become a great nation and eventually own the land of Canaan."

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Moses (p.1352)
- faithful (p.1263)
- promised (p.1379)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Isaac (p.1298)
- Jacob (p.1303)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How did God respond when the people complained and grumbled?**

God was still faithful to his promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

**14:13**

Another time when the people did not have any water, God told Moses, “Speak to the rock, and water will come out of it.” But Moses did not speak to the rock. Instead, he hit the rock twice with a stick. In this way, he dishonored God. Water came out of the rock for everyone to drink, but God was angry with Moses. He said, “Because you did this, you will not enter the Promised Land.”

**Translation Notes****Another time when the people did not have any water**

From the previous story, it transitions to another story about when the people did not have water.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**God told Moses, “Speak to the rock, and water will come out of it.”**

This is an imperative and a direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Moses to speak to the rock, and water will come out of it.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Instead**

The connecting word **Instead** emphasizes the exceptional relationship. Moses disobeyed by hitting the rock even though God himself commanded him to speak to it.

See TA article: **Connect — Exception Clauses (p.1084)**

**he dishonored God**

This could be translated as: “Moses disobeyed God” or “Moses disrespected God.” God had a specific way He wanted Moses to show the people God’s power to provide for them. When Moses disobeyed God by doing it in a different way, he showed a lack of respect for God.

## **Because you did this**

The connecting words **Because you did this** connect the reason (Moses' disobedience) with the result (God not allowing him to enter the Promise Land).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Promised Land (p.1380)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why was God angry when Moses struck the rock?**

God was angry because Moses dishonored God by not speaking to the rock as God told him to do.

### **How did God punish Moses for his disobedience?**

God said that Moses would not enter the Promised Land.

**14:14**

After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for 40 years, all of those who had rebelled against God were dead. Then God led the people to the edge of the Promised Land again. Moses was now very old, so God chose Joshua to lead the people. God also promised Moses that one day he would send to the people another prophet like Moses.

**Translation Notes****After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for 40 years**

This begins a new event. It transitions from the time of wandering, God's judgment on Israel, to what lies ahead for their descendants.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**who had rebelled against God**

This could be translated as: "who had refused to obey God when he told them to go into the Promised Land."

**the people**

**The people** refers to the children of the generation that died.

**so God chose**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Moses' old age) with the result (God choosing someone else to lead Israel).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## **one day**

This means: 'some time in the future.'

## **another prophet like Moses**

Like Moses, this man would be an Israelite, he would speak God's words to the people, and he would lead the people.

## **Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- rebelled (p.1391)
- God (p.1272)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- Moses (p.1352)
- Joshua (p.1319)
- promised (p.1379)
- prophet (p.1381)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Who did God promise to send one day in the future?**

He would send another prophet like Moses.



**14:15**

Then God told Moses to go to the top of a mountain so he could see the Promised Land. Moses saw the Promised Land but God did not permit him to enter it. Then Moses died, and the Israelites mourned for 30 days. Joshua became their new leader. Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.

**Translation Notes****but God did not permit him to enter**

The connecting word **but** introduces the fact that Moses was able to see the Promised Land even though God did not allow him to enter it.

See TA article: **Connect — Exception Clauses (p.1084)**

**mourned for 30 days**

For 30 days all the people of Israel cried and showed that they were very sad that Moses had died.

**because he trusted and obeyed God.**

The connecting word **because** connects Joshua's trust in and obedience to God with the result (he was a good leader).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)

- Moses (p.1352)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Joshua (p.1319)
- trusted (p.1435)
- obeyed

### **Translation Questions**

**Who led the Israelites after Moses died?**

Joshua led them.

**What kind of leader was Joshua?**

He was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.

## 15. The Promised Land

*A Bible story from: Joshua 1-24*

### The Promised Land

This title can also be translated as: "About how God gave the Promised Land to the Israelites" or "How did God give the Promised Land to the Israelites?"

### Promised Land

This refers to the land of Canaan that God promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

**15:01**

At last it was time for the Israelites to enter Canaan, the Promised Land. In that land was a city called Jericho. It had strong walls around it to protect it. Joshua sent two spies to that city. In that city lived a prostitute named Rahab. She hid these spies, and later she helped them to escape from the city. She did this because she believed God. The spies promised to protect Rahab and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.

**Translation Notes****At last it was time for the Israelites to enter Canaan**

This begins a new event. The Israelites were about to enter into the Promised Land.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**At last it was time for**

'At last' means 'finally' or 'after a long wait.' To make it clear what **time** refers to, you could say: "after they had wandered in the desert for 40 years, God finally permitted..."

**In that land was a city called Jericho. It had strong walls around it to protect it. Joshua sent two spies to that city. In that city lived a prostitute named Rahab.**

This is background information about the city of Jericho which Israel would attack, and Rahab who would help them.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**two spies to that city**

This could be translated as: "two men to that city to find out information about it." Also see the notes for "spy out the land" in [14:04](#).

### **had strong walls around it to protect it**

This could be translated as: "was completely surrounded by thick, strong walls made of stone to protect the city from enemies."

### **to escape**

It is also possible to add: "escape from people in Jericho who wanted to harm them."

### **her family**

Rahab asked for protection for her father, mother, brothers, and sisters. Use your word for family that includes these people.

## **Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- Joshua (p.1319)
- Jericho (p.1306)
- Rahab (p.1389)
- believed (p.1220)
- God (p.1272)
- promised (p.1379)

## **Translation Questions**

### **When it was time to enter the Promised Land, what did Joshua do first?**

He sent two spies to Jericho.

### **What did the spies promise to do for Rahab the prostitute?**

They promised to protect Rahab and her family when the Israelites destroyed the city.

**15:02**

The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the Promised Land. God told Joshua, “Have the priests go first.” When the priests started to step into the Jordan River, the water upstream stopped flowing so the Israelites could cross over to the other side of the river on dry ground.

**Translation Notes****God told Joshua, “Have the priests go first.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Joshua to have the priests go first.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Have the priests go first**

For some languages, it may be helpful to add: “Have the priests go before the rest of the people to cross the river.”

**the water upstream stopped flowing**

In some languages, it may be helpful to add: “and the water in front of them flowed away downstream.”

**upstream**

This word refers to the direction from which the Jordan River water flows.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**cross over**

This means to pass from one side to another

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

## **Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- Jordan River (p.1316)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- God (p.1272)
- Joshua (p.1319)
- priests (p.1377)

## **Translation Questions**

**How were the Israelites able to cross the Jordan River?**

When the priests started to step into the Jordan River, the water stopped flowing.

**15:03**

After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua to get ready to attack the city of Jericho, even though it was very strong. God told the people that their priests and soldiers must march around the city once a day for six days. So the priests and the soldiers did this.

**Translation Notes****After the people crossed the Jordan River**

The connecting word **After** introduces sequential action. The Israelites obeyed God by passing from one side of the Jordan to the other. Once that was completed, God gave another task for them to do. In some languages, it is better to say: "The people crossed the Jordan River and then..."

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**even though it was very strong**

The connecting words **even though** represent a factual condition. The city of Jericho was indeed very strong, so attacking of the city would seem to be an unwise choice.

See TA article: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.1086)**

**once a day for six days**

That is, they went around the city one time every day for a total of six days.

**So the priests and the soldiers did this**

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the priests and soldiers marching), with the reason (God's command).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**



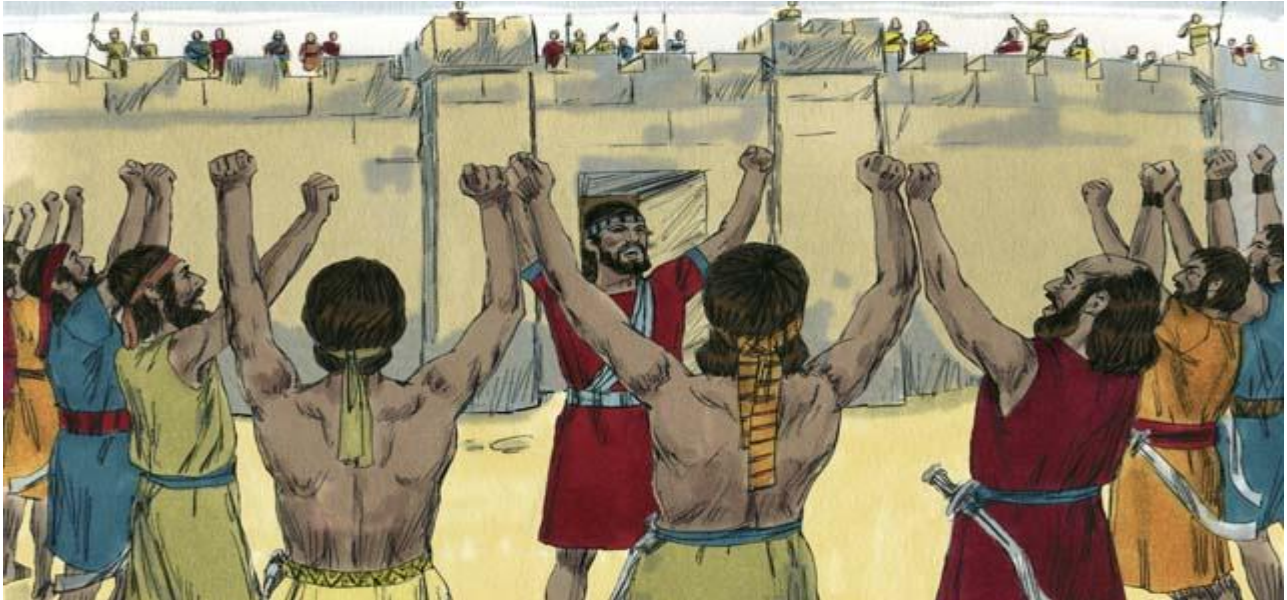
## Translation Words

- Jordan River (p.1316)
- God (p.1272)
- Joshua (p.1319)
- Jericho (p.1306)
- priests (p.1377)

## Translation Questions

### How did the Israelites attack Jericho?

They marched around the city once a day for six days.

**15:04**

God also said that on the seventh day the Israelites must march around the city seven times. Then the priests must blow their trumpets and all the people must shout loudly. So they did this.

**Translation Notes****Then the priests must blow their trumpets**

The connecting word **Then** introduces sequential action. The priests were to blow their trumpets after the Israelites had finished marching around the city seven times.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**must blow their trumpets**

This could be translated as: “must sound their trumpets” or “must play their trumpets.” These trumpets were made out of ram’s horns.

**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- priests (p.1377)

**Translation Questions****What did the Israelites do to Jericho on the seventh day?**

On the seventh day, they marched around the city seven more times. After they marched around the city for the last time, the priests blew their trumpets and the soldiers shouted.

15:05



Then the walls around Jericho fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city, as God had commanded. They only spared Rahab and her family, who became part of the Israelites. When the other people living in Canaan heard that the Israelites had destroyed Jericho, they were terrified that the Israelites would attack them also.

## Translation Notes

### Then the walls around Jericho fell down!

This is a strong statement. It emphasizes how surprising it was that the strong walls fell down when the Israelites blew the trumpets.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### Then the walls around Jericho fell down

The implication is that God caused the walls to fall. The walls were thick enough to drive chariots upon. People lived inside them. These were not flimsy walls. In order for them to fall, an act of God would have to happen. This could be stated in active form: "Then God caused the walls of Jericho to fall down!"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

### Then the walls

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. The Israelites followed all of God's commands, and then this event happened.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

### who became part of the Israelites

This can be translated as: "who then joined the Israelite community" or "who then became members of the nation of Israel."

## Translation Words

- Jericho (p.1306)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)
- Rahab (p.1389)
- Canaan (p.1228)

## Translation Questions

### **What happened when the soldiers shouted and the priests blew trumpets?**

The walls of Jericho fell down so the Israelites could destroy everything in the city.

### **What happened to Rahab and her family?**

They were not killed, and they became part of the Israelites.

**15:06**

God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan. But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the Gibeonites, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan. They asked Joshua to make a peace treaty with them. Joshua and the other leaders of the Israelites did not ask God what they should do. Instead, they made a peace treaty with the Gibeonites.

**Translation Notes****a peace treaty**

This is an agreement between two groups of people that they will not harm each other but will live in peace and help each other. This could be translated as: "peace agreement."

**But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the Gibeonites**

Some languages may introduce this as: "But one day a Canaanite people group by the name of the Gibeonites..."

**But one of the Canaanite people groups**

The connecting word **But** contrasts God's command that the Israelites not make any treaties with the people of Canaan with the reason Joshua made an agreement with Gibeonites.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**lied to Joshua and said**

This could be translated as: "They lied to Joshua by saying" or "They falsely said to Joshua" or "They falsely told Joshua."

## **Instead**

The connecting word **Instead** contrasts what Joshua should have done (ask God what they should do), with what he did do (out of ignorance make the treaty God had forbidden).

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- peace (p.1363)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- Gibeonites (p.1270)
- Joshua (p.1319)

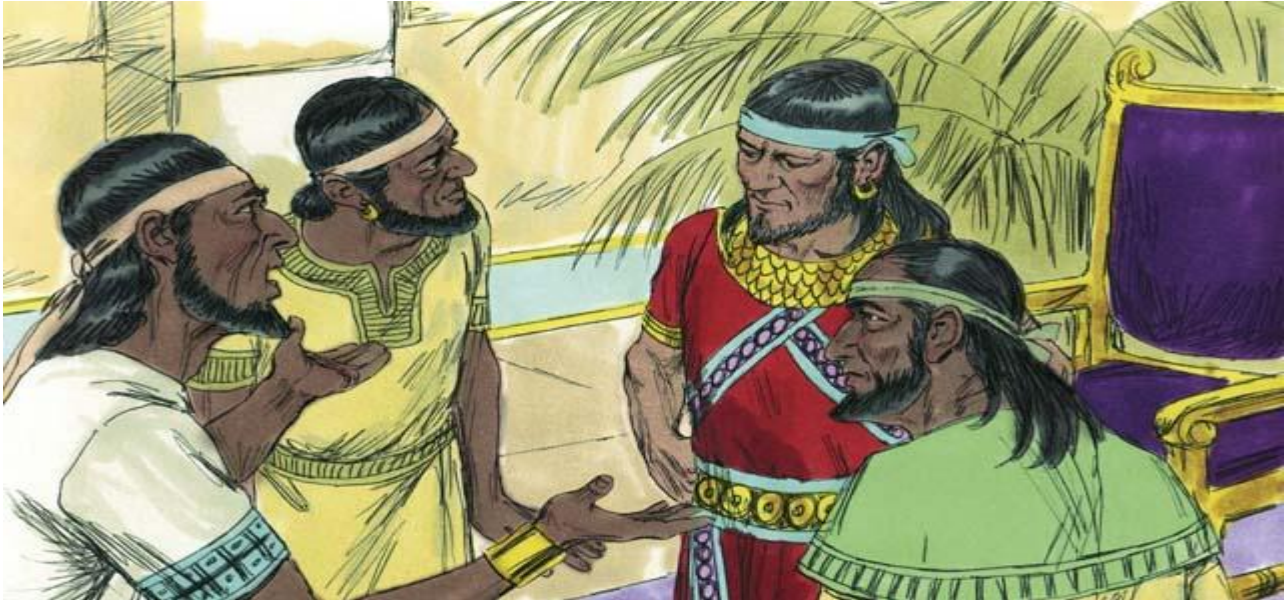
## **Translation Questions**

**How did the Gibeonites trick the Israelites into making a peace treaty with them?**

They said they were from a place far from Canaan.

**Why did Joshua and the Israelites not know the Gibeonites were lying?**

They did not ask God.

**15:07**

Three days later, the Israelites found out that the Gibeonites really did live in Canaan. They were angry because the Gibeonites had deceived them. But they kept the peace treaty they had made with them because it was a promise before God. Then, some time later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon. The Gibeonites sent a message to Joshua asking for help.

**Translation Notes****found out**

This verbal phrase means 'discovered.'

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

**But they kept the peace treaty**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the Gibeonites' deception of the Israelites with the Israelites keeping their promise to the Gibeonites.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Then, some time later**

This begins a new event. This event happened after the treaty was made but is indirectly a result of it.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**so they combined their armies**

The connecting word **so** connects the result (the Amorites attacking Gibeon), with the reason (Gibeon's treaty with Israel).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## **sent a message to Joshua asking for help**

This could be translated as: "sent some of their people to tell Joshua that they needed the Israelites to help defend them against their enemies."

### **Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- Gibeon (p.1270)
- peace (p.1363)
- promise (p.1379)
- God (p.1272)
- king (p.1329)
- Canaan (p.1228)
- Amorites (p.1208)
- Joshua (p.1319)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Why did the Israelites keep the peace treaty and defend the Gibeonites?**

They did not kill them because the Israelites had made a promise before God.



**15:08**

So Joshua gathered the Israelite army. They marched all night to reach the Gibeonites. In the early morning, they surprised the Amorite armies and attacked them.

**Translation Notes****to reach the Gibeonites**

This could mean 'to get to the Gibeonites' or 'to arrive at where the Gibeonites lived.' The Gibeonites lived in Canaan, but Canaan is big enough that it took all night for the Israelite army to travel from their camp to where the Gibeonites were.

**they surprised the Amorite armies**

The Amorites did not know that the Israelites were coming to attack them.

**Translation Words**

- Joshua (p.1319)
- Israelite (p.1301)
- Gibeonites (p.1270)
- Amorite (p.1208)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**15:09**

God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.

### Translation Notes

#### **God fought for Israel**

God fought on the side of Israel against Israel's enemies.

#### **caused the Amorites to be confused**

This could be translated as: "made the Amorites panic" or "caused the Amorites to be unable to fight together well."

#### **large hailstones**

This could be translated as: "very large balls of ice to come down from the sky."

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Amorites (p.1208)

### Translation Questions

**How else did God fight for the Israelites against the Amorites?**

He confused the Amorites and sent large hailstones on them.

## 15:10



God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the Amorites. On that day, God won a great victory for Israel.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

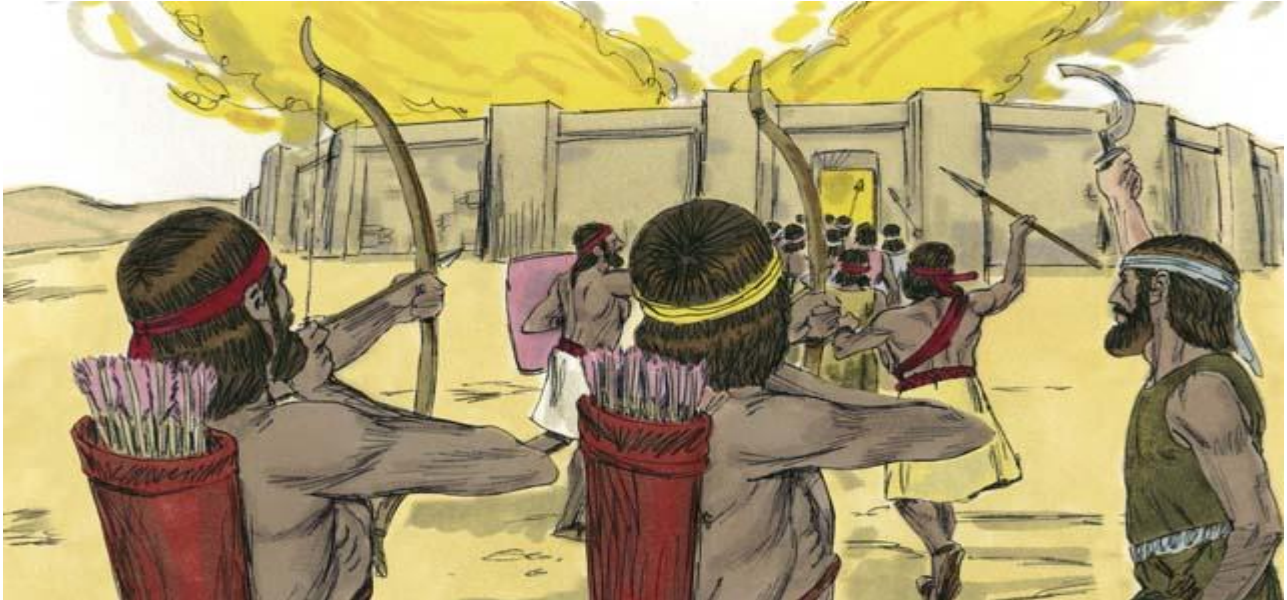
### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Amorites (p.1208)

### Translation Questions

**How else did God fight for the Israelites against the Amorites?**

He caused the sun to stay in one place so the Israelites had enough time to completely defeat them.

**15:11**

After God defeated those armies, many of the other Canaanite people groups gathered together to attack Israel. Joshua and the Israelites attacked and destroyed them.

**Translation Notes****After God defeated those armies**

The connecting word **After** introduces sequential action. God defeated one large army made up of many smaller armies. Then another large army, also made up of many smaller armies, came against Israel.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**attacked and destroyed them**

This could be translated as: "fought against them and defeated them."

**Translation Words**

- Canaanite (p.1228)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Joshua (p.1319)

**Translation Questions**

**What did Joshua and the Israelites do to the other Canaanite people groups who attacked them?**

Joshua and the Israelites destroyed them.

**15:12**

After these battles, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.

**Translation Notes****God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land**

This could be translated as: "God appointed each tribe its own plot of land" or "God decided which part of the Promised Land each tribe of Israel would live on."

**Then God gave Israel peace**

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. The fighting of the battles and the dividing of the Promised Land were completed, and then God gave Israel peace along its borders. OR Fighting the battles and dividing the Promised Land were completed. Then God gave Israel peace along its borders.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**gave Israel peace along all its borders**

This could be translated as: "God allowed the Israelites to experience peace with the other people groups that surrounded them" or "God allowed the Israelites to experience peace with the other countries around Israel."

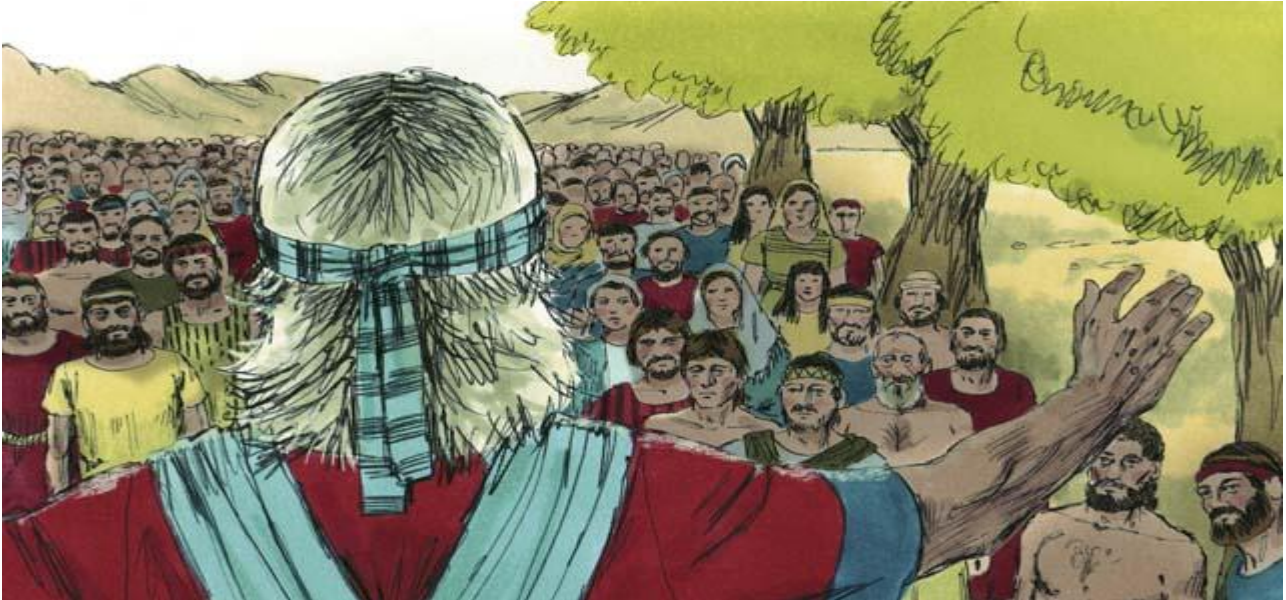
**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- peace (p.1363)

## Translation Questions

### What did each tribe of Israel receive?

God gave each of the 12 tribes of Israel its own section of the Promised Land.

**15:13**

When Joshua was an old man, he called all the people of Israel together. Then Joshua reminded the people that they had promised to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Mount Sinai. The people promised to be faithful to God and obey his laws.

**Translation Notes****When Joshua was an old man**

This begins a new event. The story transitions from Joshua's leadership of Israel to what is to happen to them next. It may be clearer to say: "Many years later, when Joshua was an old man." Joshua was over 100 years old at this time.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**to be faithful to God**

In other words, they would be loyal to God. They would worship and serve only God; they would not worship or serve any other gods.

**obey his laws**

This means that the people would obey the laws that God had already given them as part of the covenant.

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- Joshua (p.1319)



- Israelites (p.1301)
- obey
- covenant (p.1237)
- God (p.1272)
- Sinai (p.1421)
- promised (p.1379)
- faithful (p.1263)
- laws (p.1337)

## Translation Questions

### **Why did Joshua call the Israelites together when he was old?**

He called them together to remind them of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with them.

### **How did the Israelites answer Joshua?**

They promised to remain faithful to God and to follow his laws.

## 16. The Deliverers

*A Bible story from: Judges 1-3; 6-8; 1 Samuel 1-10*

### The Deliverers

This title can also be translated as: "About how God rescued the Israelites from their enemies" or "Why did God need to rescue the Israelites from their enemies?"

### Deliverers

This refers to the judges, or warriors, who God send to help the Israelites defeat their enemies and deliver them from their troubles.

**16:01**

After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God. They did not obey God's laws, and they did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites from the Promised Land. The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God. The Israelites had no king, so everyone did what they thought was right for themselves.

**Translation Notes****After Joshua died**

This begins a new event. In the previous story, Joshua reminded the Israelites of their promise to obey God. This story transitions to what the Israelites actually did after Joshua died.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**and they did not drive out**

This tells how they disobeyed God, so in some languages it may be better to start this as a new sentence: "They did not..."

**drive out the rest of the Canaanites from the Promised Land**

This can be translated as: "fight with the rest of the Canaanites to force them to leave the Promised Land."

**the true God**

This could mean 'the only real God.' Yahweh is the only one that people should worship.

**so everyone did what they thought**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Israel had no king), with the result (everyone did what they thought was right rather than what God said).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### **what they thought was right for themselves**

This means that they all did whatever they wanted to do, including many evil things.

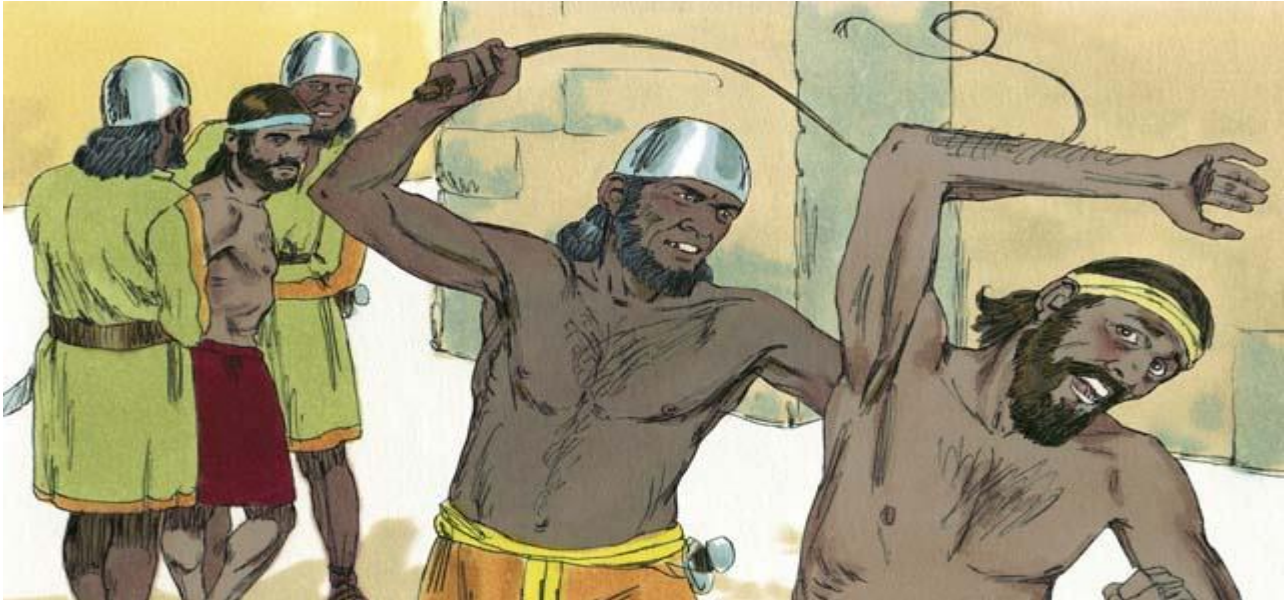
### **Translation Words**

- Joshua (p.1319)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- disobeyed
- God (p.1272)
- Canaanites (p.1228)
- obey
- God's laws (p.1337)
- worship (p.1383)
- gods (p.1276)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- true
- king (p.1329)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How did the Israelites disobey God after Joshua died?**

They did not drive out the Canaanites, and they worshiped the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.

**16:02**

By disobeying God, the Israelites started a pattern that repeated many times. The pattern went like this: the Israelites would disobey God for several years, then he would punish them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. These enemies would steal things from the Israelites, destroy their property, and kill many of them. Then after Israel's enemies oppressed them for many years, the Israelites would repent of their sin and ask God to rescue them.

**Translation Notes****Then after Israel's enemies oppressed them**

The connecting word **Then** connects the reason (Israel's enemies would oppress them), with the result (Israel would repent and ask God to rescue them).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**ask God to rescue them**

That is, they asked God to help them and to set them free from their enemies.

**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- disobey
- God (p.1272)
- punish (p.1387)
- repent (p.1395)

**Translation Questions**

**How did God punish the Israelites for their disobedience?**

God allowed their enemies to defeat them.

**16:03**

Each time the Israelites repented, God would rescue them. He did this by providing a deliverer—a person who would fight against their enemies and defeat them. Then there would be peace in the land and the deliverer would rule over them well. God sent many deliverers to rescue the people. God did this again after he allowed the Midianites, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat the Israelites.

**Translation Notes****by providing**

This could be translated as: “by choosing” or “by appointing.”

**there would be peace**

This could be translated as: “the people could live without fear” or “their enemies stopped attacking them.”

**the land**

That refers to Canaan, the Promised Land that God had given to Abraham.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- deliverer (p.1245)
- peace (p.1363)
- Midianites (p.1348)

**Translation Questions**

**How did God respond when the Israelites cried out for help?**

He provided a deliverer who rescued them and brought peace to the land.



**16:04**

The Midianites took all of the Israelites' crops for seven years. The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the Midianites would not find them. Finally, they cried out to God to save them.

**Translation Notes****crops**

This refers to edible plants that the Israelites were growing in their gardens or fields.

**were so scared, they hid**

This could be translated as: "were very afraid of the Midianites, so they hid."

**Finally**

This begins a new event. Signals a shift from the Midianites' oppression and Israel's suffering to Israel's repentance and God's deliverance.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**they cried out**

This might be translated as: "they called out" or "they prayed desperately."

**to save them**

This might be translated as: "to set them free" or "to rescue them from these enemies."

## Translation Words

- Midianites (p.1348)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)
- save (p.1410)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**16:05**

There was an Israelite man name Gideon. One day, he was threshing grain in a hidden place so the Midianites would not steal it. The angel of Yahweh came to Gideon and said, "God is with you, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites."

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

**threshing grain**

The grain was wheat, which has a head of many small grains, or seeds, on the top of a thin stalk. **Threshing** is separating the seeds of the plant from the stalks by beating the heads of grain. The seeds are food, but the stalks are not.

**God is with you**

This means: 'God is present with you in a special way' or 'God has plans to use you in a special way.'

**Translation Words**

- Gideon (p.1271)
- Midianites (p.1348)
- angel (p.1209)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- God (p.1272)
- Israel (p.1301)

## Translation Questions

**What was Gideon doing when the angel of Yahweh came to him?**

Gideon was threshing grain secretly so the Midianites would not steal it.

**16:06**

Gideon's father had an altar dedicated to an idol. The first thing God told Gideon to do was to tear down that altar. But Gideon was afraid of the people, so he waited until nighttime. Then he tore down the altar and smashed it to pieces. He built a new altar to God nearby and made a sacrifice to God on it.

**Translation Notes****to tear down**

This means: 'to violently bring down' or 'to take down and destroy.'

**But Gideon was afraid of the people**

The connecting word **But** contrasts God's command (tear down the altar), with the reason for Gideon's delayed obedience (he was afraid).

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**afraid of the people**

Gideon was afraid that his fellow Israelites who worshiped the same idol would be angry with him.

**so he waited until nighttime**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Gideon was afraid of the people), with the result (he waited until nighttime to obey).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## **waited until nighttime**

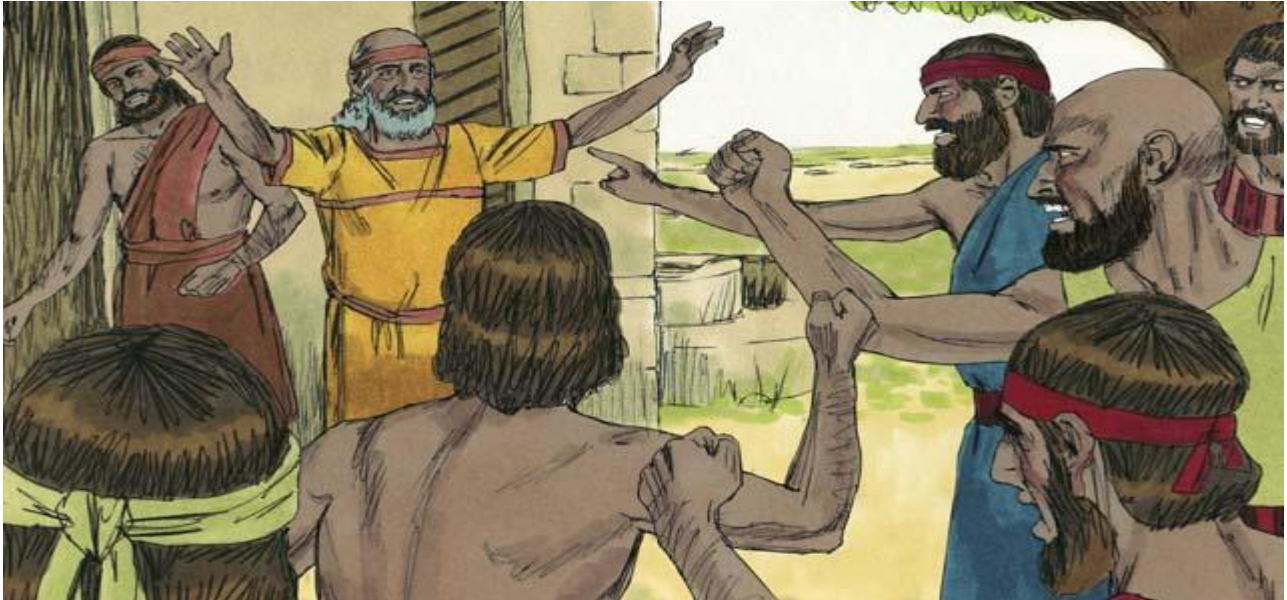
Another way to say this would be: "waited until after dark." Gideon smashed the altar at night, when everyone was asleep so that no one would see him do it.

### **Translation Words**

- Gideon (p.1271)
- altar (p.1207)
- God (p.1272)
- sacrifice (p.1403)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**16:07**

The next morning the people saw that someone had torn down and destroyed the altar, and they were very angry. They went to Gideon's house to kill him, but Gideon's father said, "Why are you trying to help your god? If he is a god, let him protect himself!" Because he said this, the people did not kill Gideon.

**Translation Notes****Gideon's father said, "Why are you trying to help your god? If he is a god, let him protect himself!"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Gideon's father asked why they were trying to help their god. If he is a god, he should be able to protect himself!"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Why are you trying to help your god?**

This is not a real question that asks for information. Another way of saying this would be: "You should not be trying to help your god" or "You should not need to help your god."

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**If he is a god, let him protect himself**

This is a strong statement that if the idol were truly a god, he would be able to protect himself.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Because he said this**

The connecting word **Because** connects the reason (Gideon's father's defense), with the result (the people did not kill Gideon).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

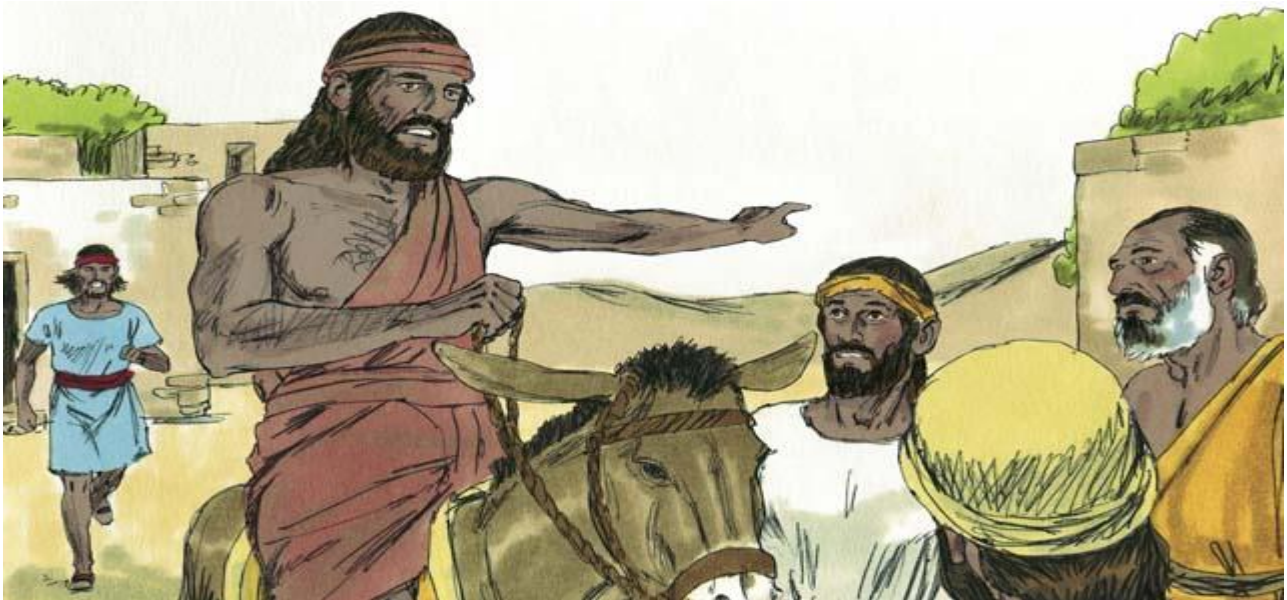
## Translation Words

- altar (p.1207)
- Gideon (p.1271)
- god (p.1276)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)



**16:08**

Then the Midianites came again to steal from the Israelites. There were so many of them that they could not be counted. Gideon called the Israelites together to fight them. Gideon asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God was really telling him to save Israel.

**Translation Notes****Then the Midianites came again**

The connecting word **Then** indicates sequential action. God called Gideon, and then the Midianites returned.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**came again to steal from the Israelites**

This could be translated as: "came again to the Israelites' land to steal things from them."

**they could not be counted**

This could be translated as: "The number of the Midianites was too great to count" or "it would be very difficult to count all of the Midianites."

**for two signs**

This could be translated as: "to do two miracles" or "to make two impossible things happen."

**to save Israel**

This could be translated as: "to rescue Israel from the Midianites."

## Translation Words

- Midianites (p.1348)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Gideon (p.1271)
- God (p.1272)
- save (p.1410)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**16:09**

For the first sign, Gideon laid a sheepskin on the ground and asked God to let the morning dew fall only on the sheepskin and not on the ground. God did that. The next night, he asked that the ground be wet but the sheepskin dry. God did that, too. Because of these two signs, Gideon believed that God really wanted him to save Israel from the Midianites.

**Translation Notes****sign**

This could be translated as: “miracle” or “impossible thing.”

**sheepskin**

This is the skin of a sheep that has all of the wool on it. Wool is a very thick and curly hair that would hold a lot of water. Translate this so that it is clear that this skin is covered with thick, soft hair.

**let the morning dew fall**

This can be translated as: “make the morning dew appear” or “make the morning dew come up.” **Dew** refers to the drops of water that form on cool surfaces at night. Dew naturally covers everything equally.

**God did that**

This could be translated as: “God did what Gideon asked him to do.”

**Because of these two signs**

The connecting word **Because** connects the reason (the two signs), with the result (Gideon believed God wanted to deliver Israel through him).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

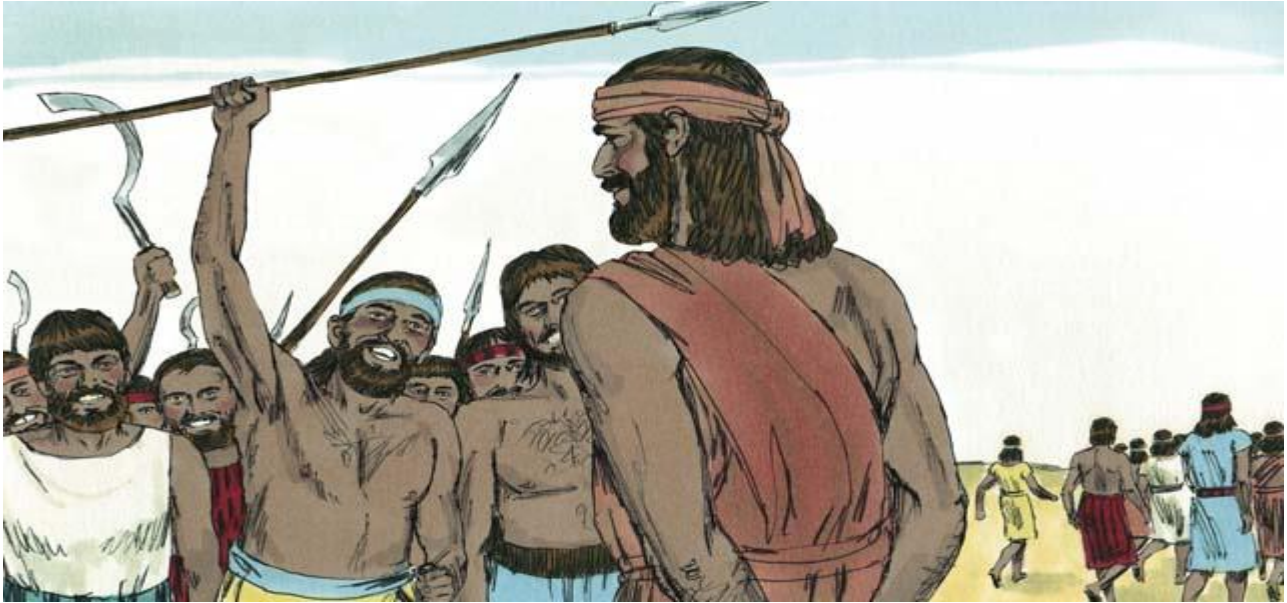
## Translation Words

- Gideon (p.1271)
- sheepskin (p.1260)
- God (p.1272)
- save (p.1410)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Midianites (p.1348)

## Translation Questions

**What two signs did God do to prove that he would save Israel through Gideon?**

God made the morning dew fall only on the sheepskin and not the ground, and then the dew fell only on the ground and not the sheepskin.

**16:10**

Then Gideon called for soldiers to come to him, and 32,000 men came. But God told him this was too many. So Gideon sent home 22,000 men, all who were afraid to fight. God told Gideon that he still had too many men. So Gideon sent all of them home except for 300 soldiers.

**Translation Notes****Then Gideon called for soldiers to come to him, and 32,000 men came.**

Some languages might need to say why he called the soldiers: “When Gideon called the Israelites to come fight against the Midianites, 32,000 soldiers came to him” (See: [16:08](#)).

**32,000**

This could also be written in words: “thirty-two thousand men.”

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**But God told him**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the number of men who came to fight compared with God’s view of the number he wanted.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**22,000**

This could also be written in words: “twenty-two thousand.”

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**too many men**

This was more soldiers than God wanted for this fight. If that many soldiers fought and won, they would think that they won the battle with their own strength, and they would not know that God did it.

**So Gideon sent home 22,000 men**

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (God told Gideon there were too many men), with the result (Gideon sent home 22,000 men).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**except for 300 soldiers**

This sentence could be translated as: "So Gideon allowed only 300 men to stay, and the rest of the men went home."

**300**

This could also be written in words: "three hundred."

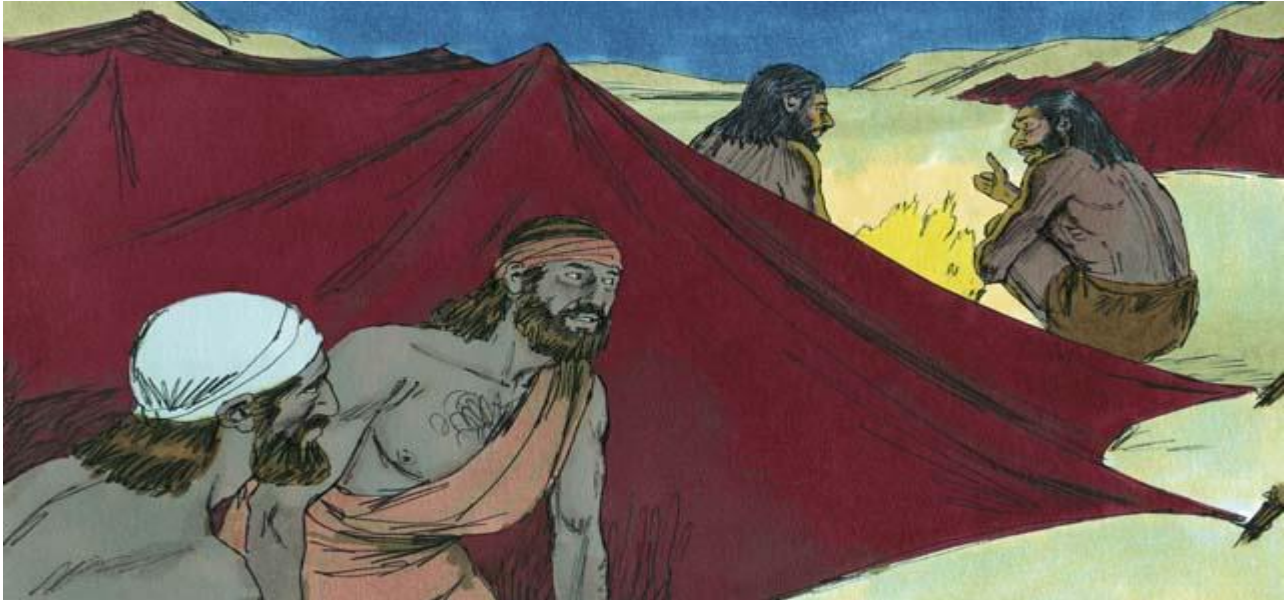
See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**Translation Words**

- Gideon (p.1271)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****Why did Gideon send home all except 300 of the soldiers?**

He sent them home because God told him he had too many men.

**16:11**

That night God told Gideon, “Go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk. When you hear what they say, you will no longer be afraid to attack them.” So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had dreamed. The man’s friend said, “This dream means that Gideon’s army will defeat us, the Midianite army!” When Gideon heard this, he worshiped God.

**Translation Notes**

**God told Gideon, “Go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk. When you hear what they say, you will no longer be afraid to attack them.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Gideon to go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk. When he would hear what they would say, he would no longer be afraid to attack them.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk.**

God gives Gideon a command that includes instruction on what he is to do.

**Go down**

The Midianite soldiers were camping out in a valley and were at a lower elevation than the Israelite soldiers.

**you will no longer be afraid**

This could mean ‘you will stop being afraid.’

### **something he had dreamed**

This could mean 'something he had seen in a dream' or 'a dream he had had.'

### **This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat us, the Midianite army!**

This is a strong statement by the enemy soldier that Gideon would defeat them.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **When Gideon heard this**

The connecting word **When** connects the action or reason with the result. Gideon worshiped God as a result of hearing the interpretation of the soldier's dream.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Gideon (p.1271)
- Midianite (p.1348)
- dream (p.1251)
- worshiped (p.1383)

## **Translation Questions**

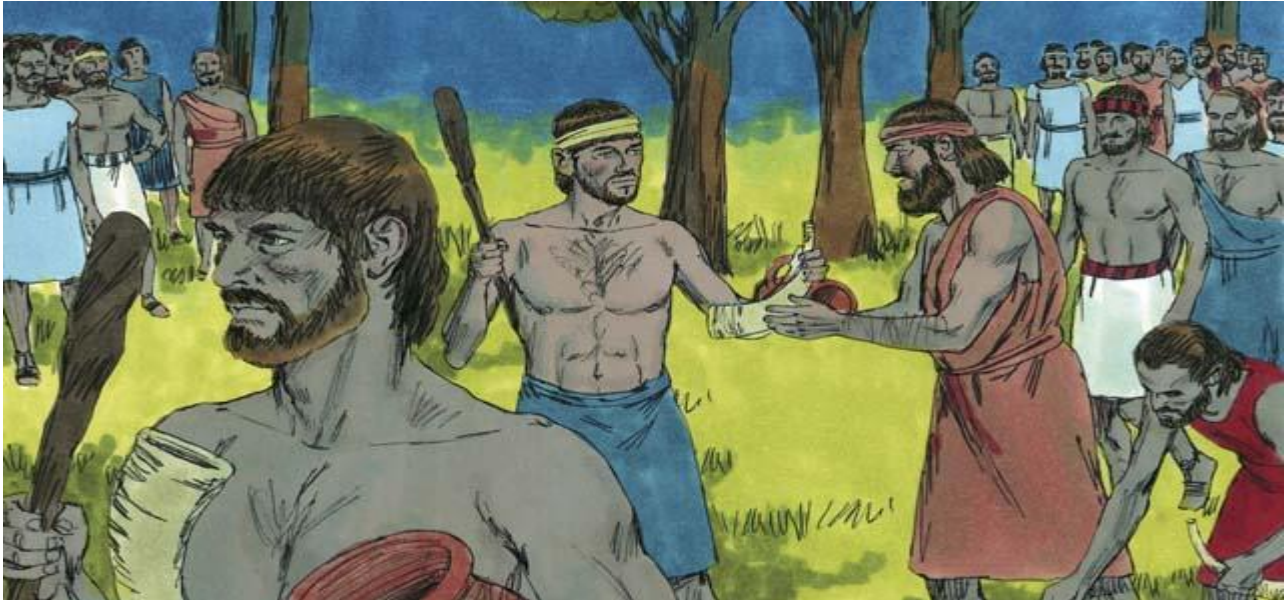
### **What additional sign did God give Gideon so he would not be afraid?**

Gideon heard a Midianite soldier tell of his dream that Gideon's army would defeat the Midianite army.

### **What did Gideon do when he heard the Midianite soldier's dream?**

He worshiped God.



**16:12**

Then Gideon returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a horn, a clay pot, and a burning torch. They surrounded the camp where the Midianite soldiers were sleeping. Gideon's 300 soldiers had the torches in the pots so the Midianites could not see the light of the torches.

**Translation Notes****Then Gideon returned to his soldiers**

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause that connects Gideon hearing the dream and worshipping God with him rallying the 300 Israelites to fight the Midianites.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**horn**

This could be translated as: "trumpet" or "ram's horn trumpet." These horns came from rams, or male sheep, and were often used to call men for battle.

**a burning torch**

This was probably a piece of wood wrapped with cloth and soaked in oil so that it could burn well. (This was not the modern torch that runs on batteries.)

**so the Midianites could not see**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (the torches were in the pots), with the result (the Midianites could not see the light of the torches).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## Translation Words

- Gideon (p.1271)
- Midianite (p.1348)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**16:13**

Then, all of Gideon's soldiers broke their pots at the same moment, suddenly revealing the fire of the torches. They blew their horns and shouted, "A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon!"

**Translation Notes****Then, all of Gideon's soldiers broke their pots**

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. Gideon's men surrounding the Midianite camp, and then they broke their pots at the same moment.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**shouted**

This could be translated as: "yelled loudly" or "said with a very loud voice."

**A sword**

A sword is a weapon that has a long sharp blade and a handle at one end. People hold the handle and hit or stab the enemy with the sharp blade. If your people don't have a weapon just like this, you could translate it as: "A long knife" or "A machete" or "A bush knife."

**sword**

Here **sword** is a metonym that refers to their fighting. Alternate translation: "We fight for Yahweh and for Gideon"

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

## **A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon!**

This is a strong statement that Gideon was depending on Yahweh, and not the sword, for his victory.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

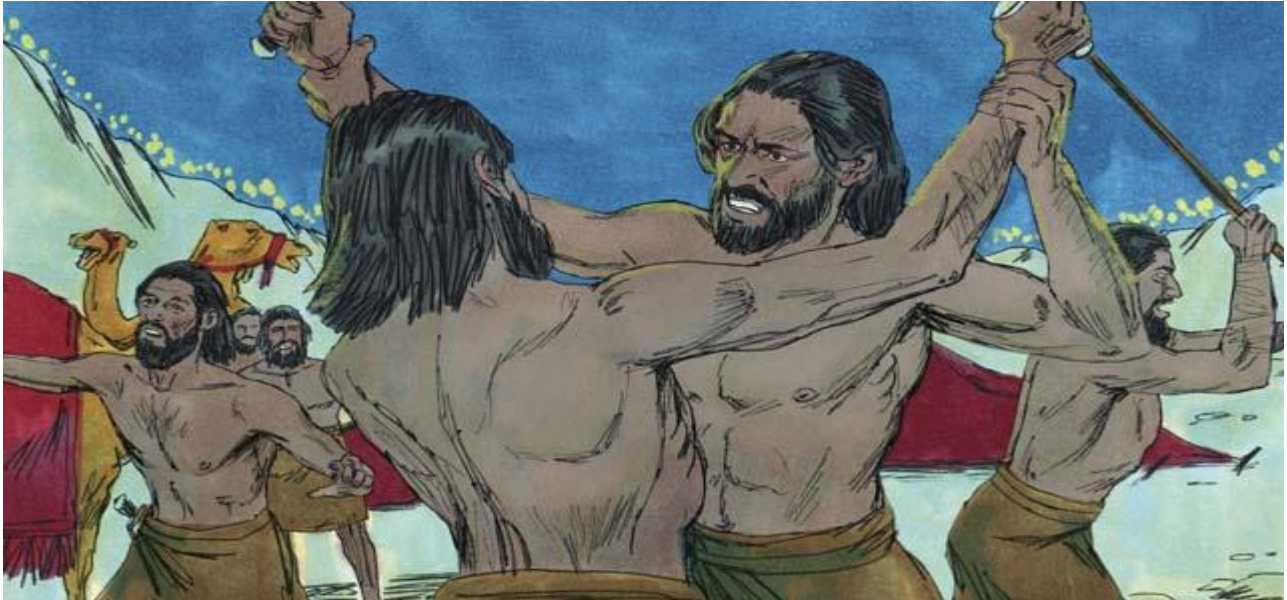
## **Translation Words**

- Gideon (p.1271)
- Yahweh (p.1441)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How did Gideon and his men attack the Midianites?**

They surrounded the Midianite camp, broke their pots to reveal their torches, and blew their horns and shouted, "A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon."

**16:14**

God confused the Midianites so that they started attacking and killing each other. Immediately, Gideon sent messengers to call many other Israelites to come from their homes and help chase the Midianites. They killed many of them and chased the rest of them out of the Israelites' land. God caused 120,000 Midianites to die that day. This is how God saved Israel.

**Translation Notes****God confused the Midianites**

God caused the Midianites to be confused. They wanted to attack the Israelites, but instead, they attacked each other.

**so that they started attacking and killing each other**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (God confused the Midianites), with the result (they started attacking and killing each other).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**many other Israelites**

This could be translated as: "many other Israelite men." This refers to the soldiers previously sent home in [16:10](#).

**120,000**

This could also be written in words: "one hundred and twenty thousand."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

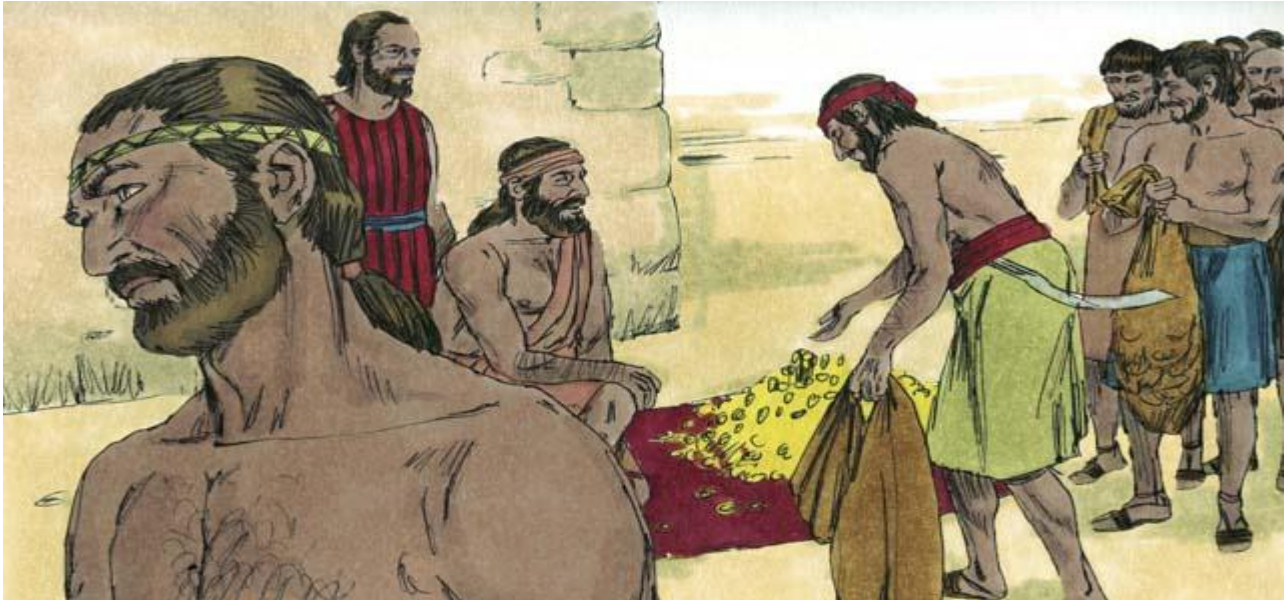
## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Midianites (p.1348)
- Israel (p.1301)
- saved (p.1410)

## Translation Questions

**What did God do to help Gideon defeat the Midianites?**

God confused the Midianites so they attacked and killed each other.

**16:15**

The people wanted to make Gideon their king. Gideon did not allow them to do this, but he asked them for some of the gold rings that each of them had taken from the Midianites. The people gave Gideon a large amount of gold.

**Translation Notes****did not allow them to do this**

Gideon knew that it was better for the Israelites to have God as their king.

**but he asked them**

This phrase starts with **but** because what he did next was not wise.

**Translation Words**

- Gideon (p.1271)
- king (p.1329)
- Midianites (p.1348)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**16:16**

Then Gideon used the gold to make a special garment like the high priest used to wear. But the people started worshipping it as if it were an idol. So God punished Israel again because they worshiped idols. God allowed their enemies to defeat them. They finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another deliverer to rescue them.

**Translation Notes****Gideon used the gold to make a special garment**

This could be translated as: "Gideon melted down the gold objects the people had given him and formed a special garment out of that gold."

**But the people started worshipping it**

The connecting word **But** contrasts God's deliverance of Israel from the Midianites with them worshipping the gold garment.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**So God punished Israel again**

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (Israel started worshipping the garment as an idol), with the result (God punished them again).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- Gideon (p.1271)
- high priest (p.1288)
- worshipping (p.1383)



- God (p.1272)
- punished (p.1387)
- Israel (p.1301)
- deliverer (p.1245)

## Translation Questions

**What did Gideon do that later led the people to return to idol worship?**

He made a special garment of gold that the people later began to worship as an idol.

**16:17**

This same thing happened many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send someone to rescue them. Over many years, God sent many deliverers who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

**Translation Notes**

(No translation notes for this frame)

**Translation Words**

- Israelites (p.1301)
- sin (p.1419)
- God (p.1272)
- punish (p.1387)
- repent (p.1395)
- deliverers (p.1245)
- saved (p.1410)

**Translation Questions****What did the Israelites do many times?**

The Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to save them.

**16:18**

Finally, the people asked God for a king like all the other nations had. They wanted a king who was tall and strong, and who could lead them into battle. God did not like this request, but he gave them a king just as they had asked.

**Translation Notes****Finally**

The connecting word **Finally** indicates a shift from the time of deliverers sent by God to the time when Israel asked God for a king. This could be translated as: "After their enemies attacked them many times" or "After many years of being attacked by many different nations..."

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**asked God for a king**

This could be translated as: "demanded that God give them a king" or "kept asking God for a king."

**like all the other nations had**

Other nations had a king. Israel wanted to be like them and have a king too.

**God did not like this request**

This could be translated as: "God did not agree with what they had asked him for." God knew that they were rejecting him as their ruler and were choosing to follow a human leader instead.

**but he gave them a king**

The connecting word **But** contrasts God not liking the request with him giving Israel a king.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- king (p.1329)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Why did the people ask God for a king?**

All the other nations had kings, and the Israelites wanted someone to lead them into battle.

#### **How did God answer their request?**

He gave them a king, just as they had asked.

## 17. God's Covenant with David

*A Bible story from: 1 Samuel 10; 15-19; 24; 31; 2 Samuel 5; 7; 11-12*

### God's Covenant with David

This title can also be translated as: "About when God made a covenant with David" or "What covenant did God make with David?"

**17:01**

Saul was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. Saul was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.

**Translation Notes****Saul was the first king of Israel**

This introduces Saul as a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**the first king of Israel**

This could be translated as: the “first king to rule over Israel.”

**He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted**

This is background information about Saul.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**one day**

This could be translated as: “some time in the future” or “years later.”

**be king in his place**

This is an idiom that means ‘replace him as king.’ Other ways to say this are: “take his place as king over Israel” or “rule as king instead of him.”

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

### **Translation Words**

- Saul (p.1409)
- king (p.1329)
- Israel (p.1301)
- obey
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

**Was Saul, the first king of Israel, a good king or a wicked king?**

He was good for the first few years, but then he became wicked.

**17:02**

God chose a young Israelite named David and began to prepare him to one day become king after Saul. David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times, David killed both a lion and a bear that attacked his father's sheep while David was watching them. David was a humble and righteous man. He trusted and obeyed God.

**Translation Notes****God chose a young Israelite named David**

This introduces David as a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem.**

This is background information about David.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**father's sheep**

This refers to ownership. The sheep belonged to the father of David.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

**watching**

This could mean 'caring for' or 'protecting' or 'taking care of.'

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)



- Israelite (p.1301)
- David (p.1243)
- king (p.1329)
- Saul (p.1409)
- shepherd (p.1416)
- Bethlehem (p.1223)
- sheep (p.1260)
- humble (p.1294)
- righteous (p.1398)
- trusted (p.1435)
- obeyed

## Translation Questions

**What was David's occupation before he became king?**

He was a shepherd who took care of sheep.

**17:03**

When David was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath. Goliath was a very good soldier. He was very strong and about three meters tall! But God helped David kill Goliath and save Israel. After that, David won many victories over Israel's enemies. David became a great soldier, and he led Israel's army in many battles. The people praised him very much.

**Translation Notes****a giant named Goliath**

The word **giant** here describes a person who is unusually tall and powerful. Goliath was a huge soldier in an army that was fighting against Israel.

**about three meters tall!**

This is a strong statement that Goliath was extremely tall.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**After that**

The connecting words **After that** indicate the sequence of events. The first enemy of Israel that David defeated was Goliath, but after defeating Goliath, David went on to defeat many other enemies of Israel.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**Translation Words**

- David (p.1243)
- God (p.1272)
- Israel (p.1301)
- praised (p.1372)

## Translation Questions

### **Why was it so amazing that David was able to kill Goliath?**

Goliath was a very tall, very strong trained soldier wearing battle gear. David was a shepherd boy with no weapon but a sling.

### **Why did the people of Israel praise David?**

He won many victories over Israel's enemies.

**17:04**

The people loved David so much that King Saul became jealous of him. Finally Saul wanted to kill him, so David ran away into the wilderness to hide from him and his soldiers. One day when Saul and his soldiers were looking for him, Saul went into a cave. It was the same cave that David was hiding in, but Saul did not see him. David went up very close behind Saul and cut off a piece of his clothing. Later, after Saul left the cave, David shouted to him to look at the cloth he was holding. In this way, Saul knew that David refused to kill him to become king.

**Translation Notes****Finally**

The people praised David very much so King Saul became jealous. Now the story transitions to Saul not only feeling jealous but acting on that jealousy.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**Finally**

**Finally** connects the reason for Saul's jealousy (the people loved David) with the result of Saul's jealousy (Saul wanted to kill David).

See TA article: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.1100)**

**One day**

The story transitions from explaining the general story (of Saul wanting to kill David) to a specific story (about Saul trying to kill David). This event happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

### **In this way**

The connecting words **In this way** connect the reason (Saul saw that David had a piece of his clothing) with the result (Saul knew David would not kill him and try to become king).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### **to become king**

David would not dishonor God by killing the man that God placed as king over Israel.

### **Translation Words**

- Saul (p.1409)
- loved (p.1342)
- David (p.1243)
- king (p.1329)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did David do when he had a chance to kill Saul in the cave?**

He spared Saul and only cut off a piece of his clothes.

**17:05**

Some time later, Saul died in battle, and David became king of Israel. He was a good king, and the people loved him. God blessed David and made him successful. David fought many battles, and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies. David conquered the city of Jerusalem and made it his capital city, where he lived and ruled. David was king for 40 years. During this time, Israel became powerful and wealthy.

**Translation Notes****Some time later**

The story transitions from Saul being king to David becoming king.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**made him successful**

This could mean 'helped him accomplish the good things he wanted to do.'

**and God helped him defeat**

The connecting word **and** is acting as more than a simple conjunction. It indicates that God's blessing on David included his military efforts. David won many battles not because he was a great soldier, though he was, but because God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.

See TA article: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.1100)**

**his capital city**

This could mean 'the capital city of his kingdom.' David lived in Jerusalem and ruled from there. The entire city does not belong to David, but because David is the supreme government leader and because David captured Jerusalem and made it the capital, it is often described as his.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

## **capital city**

It was the center of government for the country of Israel and it had the primary status above all the other cities in Israel.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

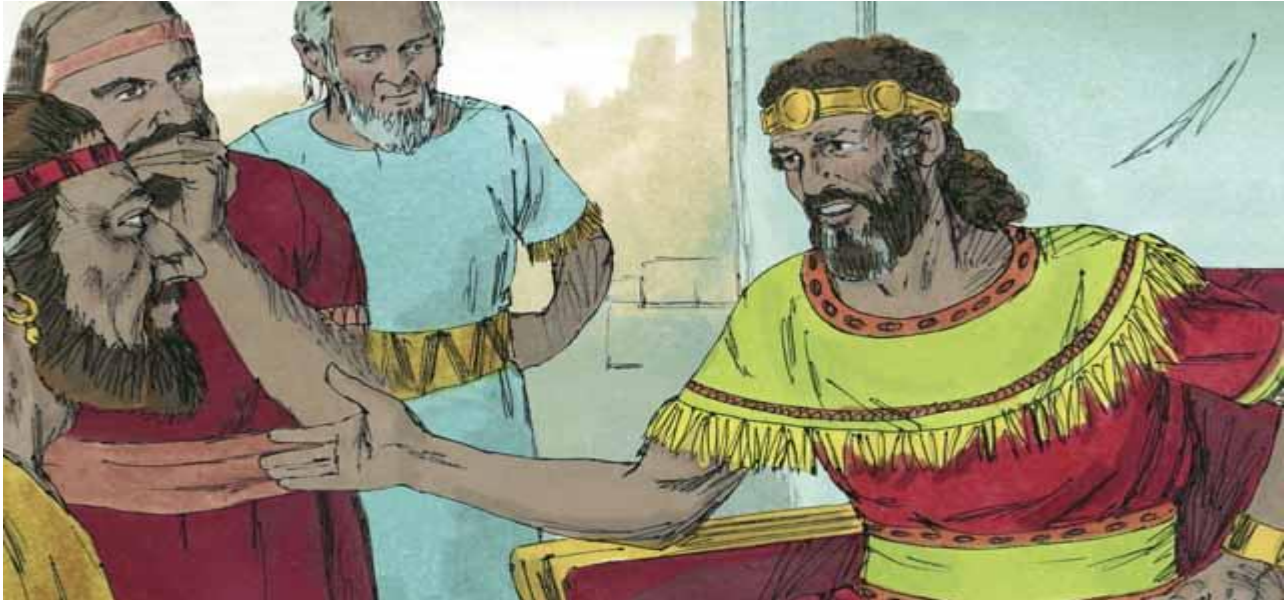
## **Translation Words**

- Saul (p.1409)
- David (p.1243)
- king (p.1329)
- Israel (p.1301)
- loved (p.1342)
- God (p.1272)
- blessed (p.1225)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)

## **Translation Questions**

**What was the city that David conquered and then made his capital?**

He made Jerusalem his capital.

**17:06**

David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. For about 400 years, the people had been worshiping God and offering sacrifices to him at the Tent of Meeting that Moses had made.

**Translation Notes****to build a temple**

David wanted to construct a permanent building for worshiping God that would replace the portable Tent of Meeting.

**400**

This could also be written in words: "four hundred."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**Translation Words**

- David (p.1243)
- temple (p.1430)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- worship (p.1383)
- God (p.1272)
- sacrifices (p.1403)
- Tent of Meeting (p.1434)
- Moses (p.1352)



## Translation Questions

### **What did David want to build for God?**

David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer sacrifices.

**17:07**

But there was a prophet named Nathan. God sent him to tell David this: “You have fought in many wars, so you will not build this Temple for me. Your son will build it. But still, I will greatly bless you. One of your descendants will rule as king over my people forever!” The only descendant of David who could rule forever was the Messiah. The Messiah was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from their sin.

**Translation Notes****But there was a prophet named Nathan**

The connecting word **But** contrasts David’s desire to build a temple for God with God sending a prophet to David with a message.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**so you will not build**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (David had fought in many wars), with the result (God did not want David to be the one to build a temple).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**this Temple**

This could mean ‘this building for worship’ or ‘this place of worship.’

**But still**

The connecting words **But still** contrast God saying David could not build a temple with God’s promise to bless David. If God had not said this, David might have thought God was angry with him for some reason or he had done something wrong and that was why God would not allow him to do this act of worship. This contrast relationship shows that there was nothing wrong between David and God. God showed His love for David through His promise to David that the Messiah would be his descendant.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### **One of your descendants will rule as king over my people forever!**

This is a surprising statement because people do not live forever.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **God's Chosen One**

This could be represented by a verbal phrase: "the One God chose."

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

### **from their sin**

This could mean 'from the terrible consequences of their sin.'

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Nathan (p.1354)
- David (p.1243)
- Temple (p.1430)
- son
- bless (p.1225)
- king (p.1329)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- descendant (p.1248)
- sin (p.1419)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why did God not allow David to build a temple?**

David would not build it because he had fought in so many wars.

### **Who did God say would build the Temple?**

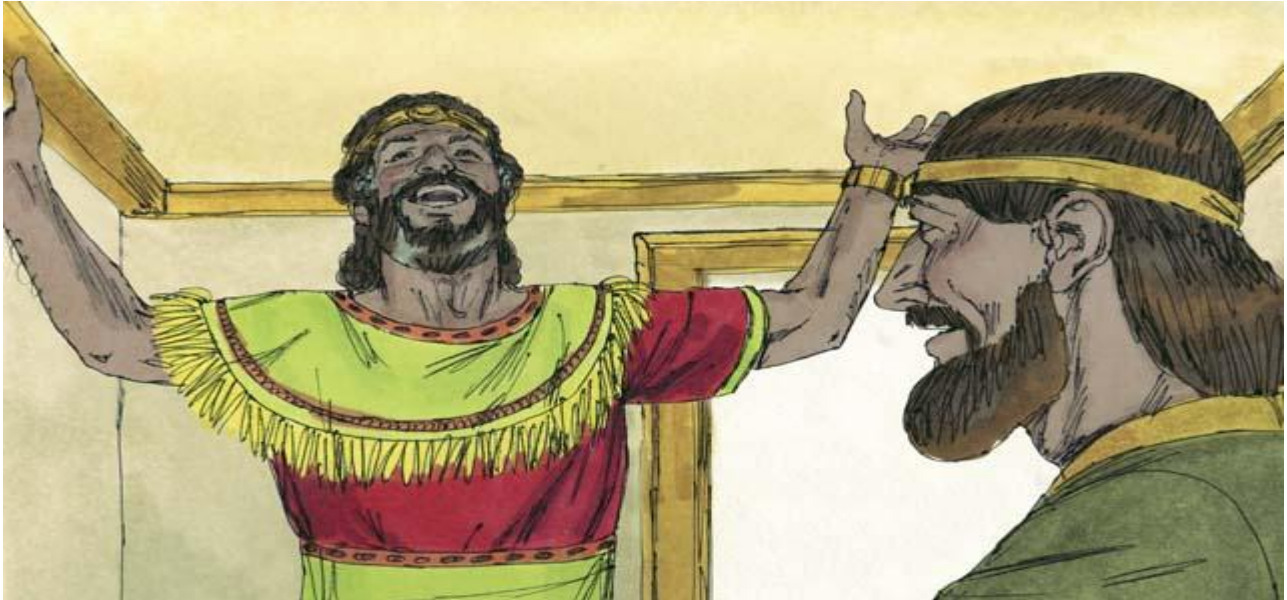
David's son would build it.

### **What was the great promise that God gave to David?**

God promised that one of David's descendants would rule as king over God's people forever.

### **What great act would the Messiah do?**

He would save the people of the world from their sin.

**17:08**

When David heard Nathan's message, he thanked God and praised him. God was honoring him and giving him many blessings. Of course, David did not know when God would do these things. We know now that the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost 1,000 years.

**Translation Notes****When David heard Nathan's message**

The connecting word **When** connects the reason (Nathan's message), with the result (David thanked and praised God).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Nathan's message**

This could also be translated "the message Nathan gave."

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

**Of course**

The connecting words **Of course** indicate that David did not know when God would do these things, since God did not tell him when they would happen.

See TA article: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.1100)**

**1,000**

This could also be written in words: "one thousand."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

## Translation Words

- David (p.1243)
- praised (p.1372)
- God (p.1272)
- blessings (p.1225)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Messiah (p.1230)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**17:09**

David ruled his people justly for many years. He obeyed God faithfully, and God blessed him. However, in his later years, he sinned greatly against God.

**Translation Notes****However, in his later years**

The connecting word **However** contrasts David obeying God for many years with David sinning against God in his later years.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**in his later years**

This may be translated as: “when David was older” or “later on in David’s life.”

**sinned greatly**

This could mean ‘sinned in a very evil way.’ David’s sin was especially evil.

**Translation Words**

- David (p.1243)
- justly (p.1326)
- faithfully (p.1263)
- God (p.1272)
- blessed (p.1225)
- sinned (p.1419)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**17:10**

One day, David looked out from his palace and saw a beautiful woman bathing. He did not know her, but he found out that her name was Bathsheba.

**Translation Notes****One day, David**

We have many stories of David obeying God. Now a new story of when David sinned is being introduced.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

**saw**

Bathsheba may have been bathing at her own house, but David's palace was very high and he was able to see over walls that were lower.

**a beautiful woman & her name was Bathsheba**

This introduces Bathsheba as a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**bathing**

This may be translated as: "taking a bath" or "washing herself."



### **but he found out**

The connecting word **but** contrasts David not knowing the woman with his finding out who she was.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### **Translation Words**

- David (p.1243)
- Bathsheba (p.1218)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**17:11**

Instead of looking away, David sent someone to bring her to him. He slept with her and sent her back home. A short time later, Bathsheba sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.

**Translation Notes****Instead of looking away**

The connecting word **Instead** contrasts what David should have done (look away), with what David did (sent someone to bring her to him).

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**He slept with her**

In order to be polite, a euphemism is used to say David had sexual intercourse with Bathsheba.

See TA article: **Euphemism (p.1112)**

**Translation Words**

- David (p.1243)
- Bathsheba (p.1218)

**Translation Questions****What terrible sin did David commit later in his life?**

He committed adultery with Bathsheba, and murdered her husband.

**17:12**

Bathsheba's husband was a man named Uriah. He was one of David's best soldiers. He was away fighting in a war at this time. David called Uriah back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But Uriah refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent Uriah back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed. This is what happened: Uriah died in battle.

**Translation Notes****Bathsheba's husband was a man named Uriah**

This introduces Bathsheba's husband, Uriah, as a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**He was one of David's best soldiers. He was away fighting in a war at this time.**

This is background information about who Uriah was.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**go be with his wife**

This could mean 'go home to be intimate with his wife.' David wanted people, especially Uriah, to believe that Bathsheba was pregnant with Uriah's child.

**So David sent Uriah**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Uriah refused to sleep with his wife), with the result (David sent him into great danger).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### **where the enemy was strongest**

This refers to the location in the battle where the most fighting was going on.

### **so that he would be killed**

The connecting words **so that** connect the reason (David wanted Uriah killed), with the result (David told the general to put Uriah where the enemy was strongest and abandon him there).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### **Translation Words**

- Bathsheba's (p.1218)
- Uriah (p.1436)
- David (p.1243)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What did David do so that people would not know that he had sinned?**

He had his general place Uriah where he would be killed in battle.

**17:13**

After Uriah died in the war, David married Bathsheba. Later, she gave birth to David's son. God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was. David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, David followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

**Translation Notes****After Uriah died**

The connecting word **After** introduces a sequential clause. Uriah died, and then David married Bathsheba.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**what David had done**

This refers to David's adultery with Bathsheba and his murder of her husband, Uriah.

**so he sent**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (God was very angry with David), with the result (God sent a prophet to tell David that he had done an evil thing).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- Uriah (p.1436)
- David (p.1243)
- Bathsheba (p.1218)
- God (p.1272)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Nathan (p.1354)

- evil (p.1258)
- sin (p.1419)
- repented (p.1395)
- forgave (p.1266)
- obeyed

### **Translation Questions**

**What did David do when Nathan confronted him about his sin?**

David repented of his sin and received God's forgiveness.

**17:14**

But David's baby boy died. This is how God punished David. Also, until David died, some members of his own family rebelled against him, and David lost much power. But God was faithful and still did what he had promised David he would do for him, even though David had disobeyed him. Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him Solomon.

**Translation Notes****But David's baby boy died**

The connecting word **But** contrasts David's repentance and God's forgiveness with God's punishment of David and Bathsheba's baby dying.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**some members of his own family rebelled against him**

This fighting was very serious. Among other things, one of his sons murdered another son and tried to take David's place as king while David was still reigning. If possible, use a word that conveys the intensity of this conflict within the family.

**But God was faithful**

The connecting word **But** contrasts David's sin and unfaithfulness with God's faithfulness.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Later**

This introduces the birth of a second son who did not die.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- punished (p.1387)
- David (p.1243)
- God (p.1272)
- faithful (p.1263)
- promised (p.1379)
- Bathsheba (p.1218)
- Solomon (p.1422)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How did God punish David for his sin?**

David's baby boy died, there was fighting in David's family for the rest of his life, and David's power was greatly weakened.

### **Did God still keep his promises to David in spite of David's unfaithfulness?**

Yes, he still kept them.

### **What was the name of their son who was born later to David and Bathsheba?**

His name was Solomon.



## 18. The Divided Kingdom

*A Bible story from: 1 Kings 1-6; 11-12*

### The Divided Kingdom

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when the Israelites divided against each other" or "What happened when the Israelites divided against each other?"

### Divided Kingdom

This refer to when the twelve tribes of Israel divided into the northern kingdom of Israel and the southern kingdom of Judah after the death of Solomon.

**18:01**

King David ruled for 40 years. Then he died, and his son Solomon began to rule over Israel. God spoke to Solomon and asked him what he wanted most that God should do for him. Solomon asked that God would make him very wise. This pleased God, so he made Solomon the wisest man in the world. Solomon learned many things and was a very wise ruler. God also made him very wealthy.

**Translation Notes****King David ruled for 40 years**

This is background information about what happened while David was king, before he died and his son Solomon became king after him.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Then he died**

This begins the transition from David's reign as king to Solomon's reign.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**so he made Solomon the wisest man in the world**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (God was pleased with Solomon asking him to make him wise), and the result (God made him the wisest man in the world).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

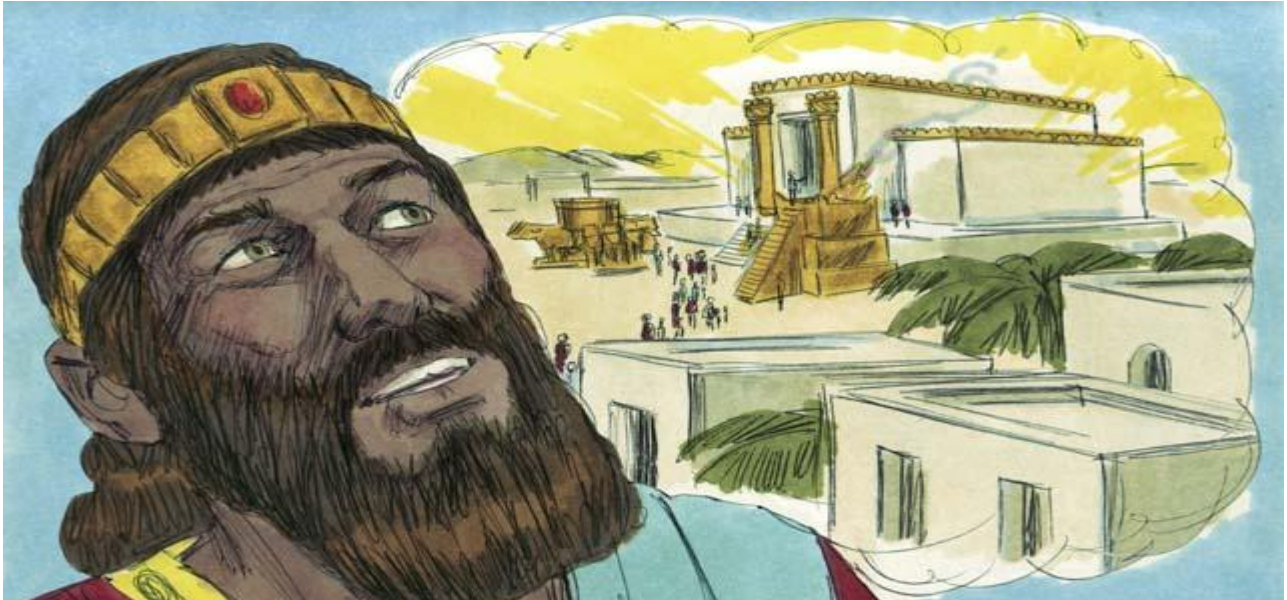
- David (p.1243)
- Solomon (p.1422)
- God (p.1272)

- wise (p.1438)

## Translation Questions

**What did Solomon ask God to do for him?**

He asked God to make him very wise.

**18:02**

In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father, David, had planned and gathered materials. People now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple instead of at the Tent of Meeting. God came and was present in the Temple, and he lived there with his people.

**Translation Notes****was present in the Temple**

This could mean 'was present in the Temple in a special way.' Even though God was also present everywhere else at the same time, he made himself especially available to the people at the Temple.

**with his people**

This could be translated as: "in the midst of his people" or "among his people."

**Translation Words**

- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Solomon (p.1422)
- Temple (p.1430)
- David (p.1243)
- worshiped (p.1383)
- God (p.1272)
- sacrifices (p.1403)
- Tent of Meeting (p.1434)

**Translation Questions**

**What was the purpose of the Temple that Solomon built?**

It was a place for the people to worship God and offer sacrifices.

**18:03**

But Solomon loved women from other countries. He disobeyed God by marrying many women, almost 1,000 of them! Many of these women came from foreign countries and brought their gods with them and continued to worship them. When Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods.

**Translation Notes****But Solomon loved women from other countries**

The connecting word **But** contrasts Solomon building the Temple, God's dwelling place, with Solomon loving women from other religions.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**1,000**

This could also be written in words: "one thousand."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**brought their gods with them**

They brought their idols and their methods of worshiping idols with them to Israel.

**When Solomon was old**

The connecting word **When** introduces a background clause that indicates Solomon became old at the beginning of the time when he worshiped foreign gods.

See TA article: **Connect — Background Information (p.1079)**

## Translation Words

- Solomon (p.1422)
- disobeyed
- God (p.1272)
- gods (p.1276)
- worship (p.1383)

## Translation Questions

### What serious sins did Solomon commit?

He married many foreign women and worshiped their gods in his old age.

**18:04**

God was angry with Solomon because of this. He said that he would punish him by dividing the nation of Israel into two kingdoms. He would do this after Solomon died.

**Translation Notes****because of this**

The connecting words **because of this** connect the reason (Solomon worshiped other gods), with the result (God was angry with him and said he would divide the kingdom).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Solomon (p.1422)
- punish (p.1387)
- Israel (p.1301)
- kingdoms (p.1330)

**Translation Questions****How did God punish Solomon's sins?**

God said he would divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.



**18:05**

After Solomon died, his son Rehoboam became king. All the people of the nation of Israel came together to accept him as their king. They complained to Rehoboam that Solomon had made them do a lot of hard work and pay a lot of taxes. They asked Rehoboam to make them work less.

**Translation Notes****After Solomon died**

The connecting word **After** introduces a sequential clause that indicates Solomon died and then Rehoboam became king.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**to accept him as their king**

This could mean 'tell him that they were glad he was king and that they would do what he said.'

**their king**

This refers to a social relationship. Their king is the man who rules the country where they live.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

**Translation Words**

- Solomon (p.1422)
- Rehoboam (p.1394)
- king (p.1329)
- Israel (p.1301)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**18:06**

But Rehoboam answered them in a very foolish way. He said, “You say that my father, Solomon, made you work hard. But I will make you work harder than he did, and I will make you suffer worse than he did.”

**Translation Notes****But Rehoboam answered them in a very foolish way**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the people’s request for a wise and gracious response with Rehoboam’s unwise and harsh response.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**answered them in a very foolish way**

Rehoboam’s answer was harsh, and caused the people to turn against him.

**He said, “You say that my father, Solomon, made you work hard. But I will make you work harder than he did, and I will make you suffer worse than he did.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “He told them that his father Solomon made them work hard, but that he would make them work harder than his father did, and would make them suffer worse than he did.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**you**

Here **you** is plural, referring not just to the people present, but all the people in the nation.

See TA article: **Forms of You (p.1121)**

## Translation Words

- Rehoboam (p.1394)
- Solomon (p.1422)

## Translation Questions

**What foolish answer did Rehoboam give to the people?**

I will make you work harder and punish you more than my father, Solomon, did.

**18:07**

When the people heard him say this, most of them rebelled against him. Ten tribes left him; only two tribes remained with him. These two tribes called themselves the kingdom of Judah.

**Translation Notes****tribes**

The descendants of each of Jacob's 12 sons had become a **tribe** or very large family group in the nation of Israel. Everyone in Israel belonged to one of the 12 tribes.

**rebelled against him**

This could mean 'refused to follow Rehoboam as their king.' It might help to start this sentence with 'So' or 'Because of that' or 'Because of what Rehoboam said.'

**remained with him**

This could mean 'stayed loyal to him' or 'continued to support him as king.'

**the kingdom of Judah**

This is not possession, but it gives the name of the kingdom. It could be translated as: "the Judah kingdom."

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

**Translation Words**

- rebelled (p.1391)
- kingdom of Judah (p.1322)

## Translation Questions

**What was the name of the kingdom founded by the two southern tribes who remained with Rehoboam?**

It was named the kingdom of Judah.

**18:08**

The other ten tribes made a man named Jeroboam to be their king. These tribes were in the northern part of the land. They called themselves the kingdom of Israel.

**Translation Notes****the kingdom of Israel**

This is not possession, but it gives the name of the kingdom. It could be translated as: “the Israel kingdom.”

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

**Translation Words**

- Israel (p.1301)
- Jeroboam (p.1307)
- king (p.1329)
- kingdom (p.1330)
- kingdom of Israel (p.1334)

**Translation Questions**

**How many of the tribes rebelled against Rehoboam and formed the northern kingdom?**

Ten tribes joined the kingdom of Israel.

**18:09**

Jeroboam rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship. They no longer went to Jerusalem in the kingdom of Judah to worship God at the Temple.

**Translation Notes****caused the people to sin**

This could be translated as: "led the people to sin" or "motivated the people to sin." Rehoboam led the people into sin by making idols for them to worship.

**Translation Words**

- Jeroboam (p.1307)
- rebelled (p.1391)
- God (p.1272)
- sin (p.1419)
- worship (p.1383)
- Temple (p.1430)
- kingdom of Judah (p.1322)

**Translation Questions****What did Jeroboam do to keep his people from going to Judah to worship at the Temple?**

He built and placed two idols in the kingdom of Israel for his people to worship.



## 18:10



The kingdoms of Judah and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.

### Translation Notes

#### Judah and Israel

The people of Judah and Israel were all descendants of Jacob and part of God's people. Even so, they disobeyed God and fought and killed each other.

### Translation Words

- kingdoms (p.1330)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 18:11



In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil. Many of these kings were killed by other Israelites who wanted to become king in their place.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- kingdom (p.1330)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- king (p.1329)
- evil (p.1258)

### Translation Questions

**How many of the kings of Israel were faithful to God?**

None of them were faithful.

**18:12**

All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped idols. When they did this, they often slept with prostitutes and sometimes even sacrificed children to the idols.

**Translation Notes****When they did this**

The connecting word **When** introduces a background clause which indicates that at the same time the people of the kingdom of Israel started worshiping idols, they also started sleeping with prostitutes and sacrificing children to idols.

See TA article: **Connect — Background Information (p.1079)**

**Translation Words**

- kings (p.1329)
- kingdom of Israel (p.1334)
- worshiped (p.1383)
- sacrificed (p.1403)

**Translation Questions**

**What were some of the evil practices that were often included in the worship of idols?**

They took part in sexual immorality and child sacrifice.

**18:13**

The kings of Judah were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of Judah's kings were evil. They ruled badly, and they worshiped idols. Some of these kings even sacrificed their children to false gods. Most of the people of Judah also rebelled against God and worshiped other gods.

**Translation Notes****ruled justly**

This means they ruled according to God's laws. This can be translated as: "when they ruled, they did what was right."

**But most of Judah's kings were evil**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the few godly kings with the most kings of Judah who were evil.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- kings (p.1329)
- kings of Judah (p.1322)
- descendants (p.1248)
- David (p.1243)
- good (p.1280)
- justly (p.1326)
- worshiped (p.1383)

- God (p.1272)
- evil (p.1258)
- sacrificed (p.1403)
- false gods (p.1276)
- rebelled (p.1391)

## Translation Questions

**Who was the ancestor of the kings of Judah?**

King David was their ancestor.

**Were any kings of Judah faithful to God?**

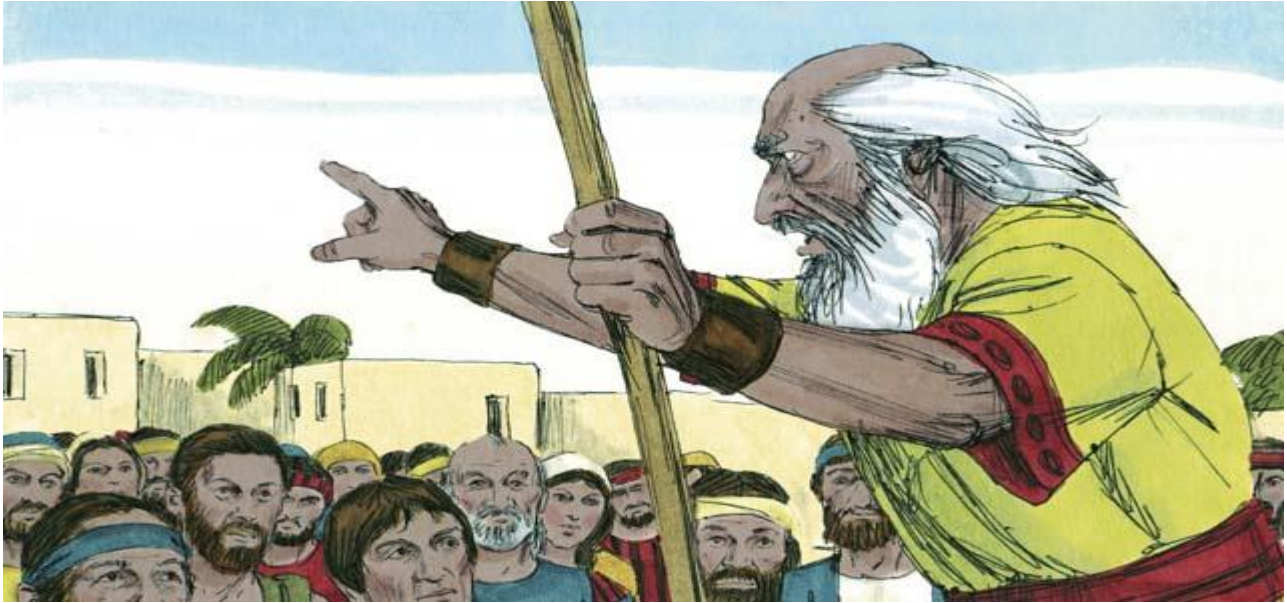
Yes, some were faithful, but most were evil.

## 19. The Prophets

*A Bible story from: 1 Kings 16-18; 2 Kings 5; Jeremiah 38*

### The Prophets

This title can also be translated as: "About the work the prophets did for God" or "How did the prophets work for God?"

**19:01**

God was always sending prophets to the Israelites. The prophets heard messages from God and then told them to the people.

**Translation Notes****God was always sending prophets to the Israelites**

This introduces the prophets of God as new characters.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**Israelites**

Here, this could be translated as: “the kingdoms of Israel and Judah.” All of the descendants of Jacob, including those in the kingdom of Judah, continued to be called **Israelites**.

**The prophets heard messages from God and then told them to the people.**

This is background information about what the prophets did.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Translation Words**

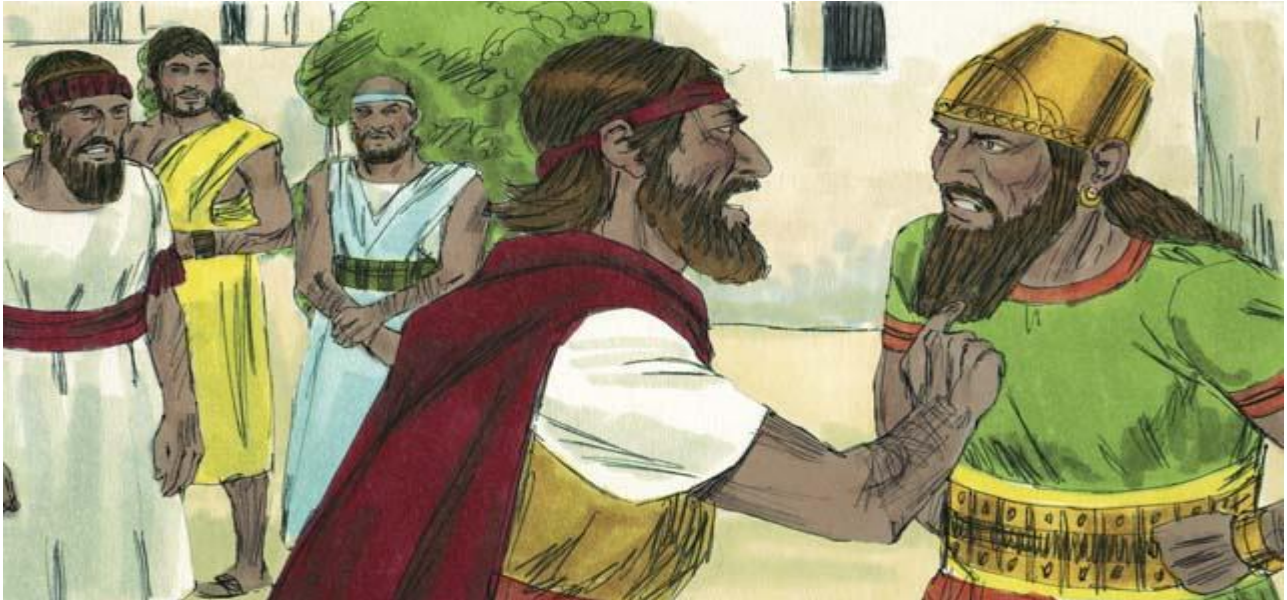
- Israelites (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)
- prophets (p.1381)

## Translation Questions

**Where did the prophets get the messages that they spoke to the people?**

They heard the messages from God.



**19:02**

Elijah was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel. Ahab was an evil man. He tried to make the people worship a false god named Baal. So Elijah told King Ahab that God was going to punish the people. He said to him, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say it will rain again." This made Ahab so angry that he decided to kill Elijah.

**Translation Notes****So Elijah told King Ahab that God was going to punish the people**

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (Ahab tried to make the people worship Baal), with the result (God was going to punish the people).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**He said to him, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say it will rain again."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "He told him that there would be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until he said it would rain again."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**until I say it will rain again**

This may be translated as: "until I command the rain and dew to come again."

**This made Ahab so angry**

This could be translated as: "When Ahab heard what Elijah said, he became so angry."

## Translation Words

- Elijah (p.1253)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Ahab (p.1206)
- king (p.1329)
- kingdom of Israel (p.1334)
- evil (p.1258)
- worship (p.1383)
- false god (p.1276)
- Baal (p.1213)

## Translation Questions

**What did Elijah say that God was going to do to punish the people?**

Elijah said that God will withhold rain and dew in the kingdom of Israel until Elijah says it will rain again.

**19:03**

So God told Elijah to go into the wilderness to hide from Ahab. Elijah went into the wilderness to a certain stream where God directed him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring Elijah bread and meat. During this time, Ahab and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.

**Translation Notes****the wilderness**

This was a remote location with very few people. This may also be translated as: “desert” or “the bush.”

**During this time**

The connecting words **During this time** introduce a simultaneous clause. At the same time as Elijah was hiding in the wilderness, Ahab and his army were looking for him but could not find him.

See TA article: **Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship (p.1098)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Elijah (p.1253)
- Ahab (p.1206)

**Translation Questions****How did God provide for Elijah in the wilderness where he was hiding?**

Every morning and evening, God sent birds with bread and meat for him.

**19:04**

Because there was no rain, after some time the stream dried up. So Elijah went to another country close by. In that country lived a poor widow and her son. They had almost run out of food because there was no harvest. But still, as the woman took care of Elijah, God provided for her and her son. Her jar of flour and her bottle of oil never became empty. They had food during the whole famine. Elijah stayed there for about three years.

**Translation Notes****another country close by**

This refers to a country that was beside, or shared a border with, Israel.

**because there was no harvest**

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (there was no harvest), with the result (they had almost run out of food).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**But still**

The connecting words **But still** introduce a contrast relationship. You would expect the widow to refuse to help Elijah because she was almost out of food, but she did the unexpected and took care of him.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**took care of**

This means they gave him a place to stay in their house and provided food for him. It does not mean he was sick.

## **God provided for her and her son. Her jar of flour and her bottle of oil never became empty**

This could be translated as: "God prevented their flour jar and their bottle of oil from becoming empty" or "God caused their flour jar and their bottle of oil to never become empty."

### **jar of flour**

This refers to a clay jar in which the widow kept her supply of flour.

### **bottle of oil**

In Israel, olive oil is used for cooking. This could be translated as: "bottle of cooking oil." The widow used the flour and the oil for making bread.

## **Translation Words**

- Elijah (p.1253)
- God (p.1272)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How did God provide for Elijah when he lived with the widow and her son?**

God caused their flour jar and bottle of oil to never become empty.

19:05



After three and a half years, God told Elijah that he would make it rain again. He told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab. When Ahab saw him, he said, "There you are, you troublemaker!" Elijah replied to him, "It is you who are the troublemaker! You have abandoned Yahweh. He is the true God, but you are worshiping Baal. Now you must bring all the people of the kingdom of Israel to Mount Carmel."

### Translation Notes

#### **There you are, you troublemaker!**

This is a strong statement that expresses that Ahab was very angry with Elijah.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

#### **you troublemaker**

This means: 'You are a troublemaker!' Ahab was accusing Elijah of causing trouble by telling the king that he was doing wrong and also by stopping the rain.

#### **It is you who are the troublemaker!**

This is a strong statement that Elijah uses to rebuke Ahab.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

#### **You have abandoned Yahweh**

That is, Ahab had led Israel to stop worshiping and obeying Yahweh.

## **Now you must bring all the people of the kingdom of Israel to Mount Carmel.**

This is a command that Elijah gave to Ahab by his authority as a prophet of God.

### **all the people of the kingdom of Israel**

This is a generalization to refer to the leaders and people who represent the ten tribes of the northern kingdom.

See TA article: **Hyperbole (p.1130)**

### **Mount Carmel**

Mount Carmel is the name of a mountain located in northern Israel. It is over 500 meters high.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Elijah (p.1253)
- kingdom of Israel (p.1334)
- Ahab (p.1206)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- worshipping (p.1383)
- Baal (p.1213)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What great evil did Elijah say that Ahab had committed?**

Ahab had abandoned Yahweh, the true God, and had worshiped Baal.

**19:06**

So all the people of Israel went to Mount Carmel. The men who said they spoke messages for Baal also came. These were Baal's prophets. There were 450 of them. Elijah said to the people, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, worship him! But if Baal is God, worship him!"

**Translation Notes****all the people of Israel**

Not every person in the land of Israel came to Mount Carmel. This is a generalization to refer to the leaders and people who represent the ten tribes of the northern kingdom.

See TA article: **Hyperbole (p.1130)**

**Mount Carmel**

See how you translated this in [19:05](#).

**Baal's prophets**

This refers to the prophets that served the god Baal.

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

**450**

This could also be written in words: "four hundred and fifty."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**



### **How long will you keep changing your mind?**

This is not a real question asking for information. Elijah was rebuking the Israelites for repeatedly changing their minds about whether they would serve Yahweh or Baal. Some languages will have to express this as a statement such as “Stop changing your minds about whom you will worship!”

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

### **If Yahweh is God, worship him! But if Baal is God, worship him!**

This is a strong statement that the people should decide once for all who they would worship. This does not mean that Elijah was undecided. He knew that Yahweh is the real God. He wanted the people to understand that when they worship false gods, they are rejecting Yahweh as the only true God. Translate this in a way that shows that the people had to make a choice.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **Translation Words**

- people of Israel (p.1334)
- prophets (p.1381)
- Baal (p.1213)
- Elijah (p.1253)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What choice did Elijah tell the people they must make?**

He told them that if Yahweh is God, they should serve him, but if Baal is God, they should serve Baal.

**19:07**

Then Elijah said to Baal's prophets, "Kill a bull, divide the meat into pieces, and put it on an altar for a sacrifice, but do not light the fire. I will do the same later, and I will put the meat on a different altar. Then if God sends fire on the altar, you will know that he is the real God." So the prophets of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.

**Translation Notes**

**Kill a bull, divide the meat into pieces, and put it on an altar for a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.**

Elijah commanded exactly how the prophets of Baal should prepare their sacrifice in order to test and see if Baal was a real god.

**if God sends fire on the altar**

The connecting word **If** indicates a hypothetical conditional relationship. If God sends fire, then it proves that he is real.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**the real God**

This means the one and only true God.

**So the prophets of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.**

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the prophets of Baal made the sacrifice but didn't light a fire), with the reason (Elijah told them to do it that way).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## Translation Words

- Elijah (p.1253)
- prophets (p.1381)
- Baal (p.1213)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**19:08**

Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, "Hear us, Baal!" All day long they prayed and shouted and even cut themselves with knives, but Baal did not answer, and he did not send any fire.

**Translation Notes****prayed to Baal**

The prophets of Baal asked Baal to send fire onto the bull they prepared as a sacrifice.

**Hear us, Baal!**

This is both a command and a strong plea for Baal to answer their request and to send fire on the sacrifice.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**shouted**

They yelled or called out loudly to Baal.

**cut themselves with knives**

They injured themselves with knives as an extreme way to show their devotion to Baal, hoping that this would persuade him to listen to them.

**but Baal did not answer, and he did not send any fire.**

The connecting word **but** contrasts Baal's not answering or sending fire with the prophets praying, shouting, and cutting themselves.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## Translation Words

- prophets (p.1381)
- Baal (p.1213)
- prayed (p.1373)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**19:09**

Baal's prophets spent almost the whole day praying to Baal. They finally stopped praying. Then Elijah put the meat of another bull on an altar for God. After that, he told the people to pour 12 huge pots of water on top of the sacrifice until the meat, the wood, and even the ground around the altar were completely wet.

**Translation Notes****After that**

The connecting words **After that** introduce a sequential clause. Elijah prepared the sacrifice, and then had people pour 12 pots of water over it.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**Translation Words**

- Elijah (p.1253)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- altar (p.1207)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**19:10**

Then Elijah prayed, “Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant. Answer me so that these people will know that you are the true God.”

**Translation Notes****show us**

This could mean ‘prove to us’ or ‘demonstrate to us.’

**I am your servant**

This could be translated as: “You have given me authority to serve you and do these things.”

**Answer me**

This could mean ‘respond to my prayer’ or ‘send the fire that I have asked you for.’

**these people will know**

This may be translated as: “these people will see and understand.”

**Translation Words**

- Elijah (p.1253)
- prayed (p.1373)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Isaac (p.1298)

- Jacob (p.1303)
- Israel (p.1301)
- servant (p.1413)
- true

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)



**19:11**

Immediately, fire fell from the sky. It burned up the meat, the wood, the rocks, the soil, and even the water that was around the altar. When the people saw this, they prostrated themselves to the ground and said, "Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!"

**Translation Notes****Immediately**

The connecting word **Immediately** emphasizes that the fire fell from the sky as soon as Elijah prayed. In contrast, the prayers of the prophets of Baal were still not answered after hours of praying.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**fell from the sky**

This may be translated as: "suddenly came down from the sky."

**Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!**

This statement is repeated to emphasize that it is indeed true!

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Yahweh is God**

This expression means that they understood that Yahweh is the only God, not just one god among others.

**Translation Words**

- altar (p.1207)
- Yahweh (p.1441)

- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

### **How did God show he is the real God?**

God sent fire from the sky and burned up the meat, the wood, the rocks, the dirt, and the water around the altar.

### **How did the people respond when they saw this demonstration of power?**

They fell on the ground and said, "Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!"

**19:12**

Then Elijah said, “Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!” So the people captured the prophets of Baal and took them away from there and killed them.

**Translation Notes****Then Elijah said, “Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then Elijah told them not to let any of the prophets of Baal escape!”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!**

This is both a command and also a strong statement to emphasize that the people must seize every one of the prophets of Baal.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**escape**

The prophets of Baal tried to run away after their god was proven to be a false god.

**captured**

This could mean ‘seized and held onto’ or ‘took hold of.’

**Translation Words**

- Elijah (p.1253)
- prophets (p.1381)

- Baal (p.1213)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What happened to the prophets of Baal?**

The people took them away and killed them.

**19:13**

Then Elijah said to King Ahab, “Return immediately to your home, because the rain is coming.” Soon the sky became black, and a heavy rain began. Yahweh was ending the drought. This also showed that he is the true God.

**Translation Notes****Then Elijah said to King Ahab, “Return immediately to your home, because the rain is coming.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then Elijah told King Ahab to return immediately to his home, because the rain was coming.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Then Elijah said to King Ahab**

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. The prophets of Baal were killed, and then Elijah warned Ahab.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**Return immediately to your home**

Elijah is giving a command to King Ahab on his authority as a prophet of God.

**the sky became black**

This could mean ‘the sky became very dark.’ Heavy rainclouds covered the sky, making it look dark grey or black.

## **the drought**

This could mean 'the long dry time with no rain.'

### **Translation Words**

- Elijah (p.1253)
- King (p.1329)
- Ahab (p.1206)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**19:14**

When Elijah finished his work, God chose a man named Elisha to be his prophet. God did many miracles through Elisha. One of the miracles happened to Naaman. He was the commander of an enemy army, but he had a bad skin disease. Naaman heard about Elisha, so he went to Elisha and asked him to heal him. Elisha told Naaman to go to the Jordan River and dip himself in the water seven times.

**Translation Notes****When Elijah finished his work, God chose a man named Elisha to be his prophet**

This sentence introduces Elisha as a new character in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**the commander of an enemy army**

Naaman was a commander in the army of one of the countries that was Israel's enemy.

**but he had a bad skin disease**

The connecting word **but** contrasts Naaman's prestigious position of army commander, with his having this terrible disease.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Naaman heard about Elisha**

This means that people had told Naaman that Elisha was able to perform miracles. Here Elisha is used to represent the miracles that God gave Elisha the power to perform.

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

## **he went to Elisha and asked him**

This could mean 'he went to see Elisha and asked him.' Naaman had to go into Israel to find Elisha and ask him to do this.

### **Translation Words**

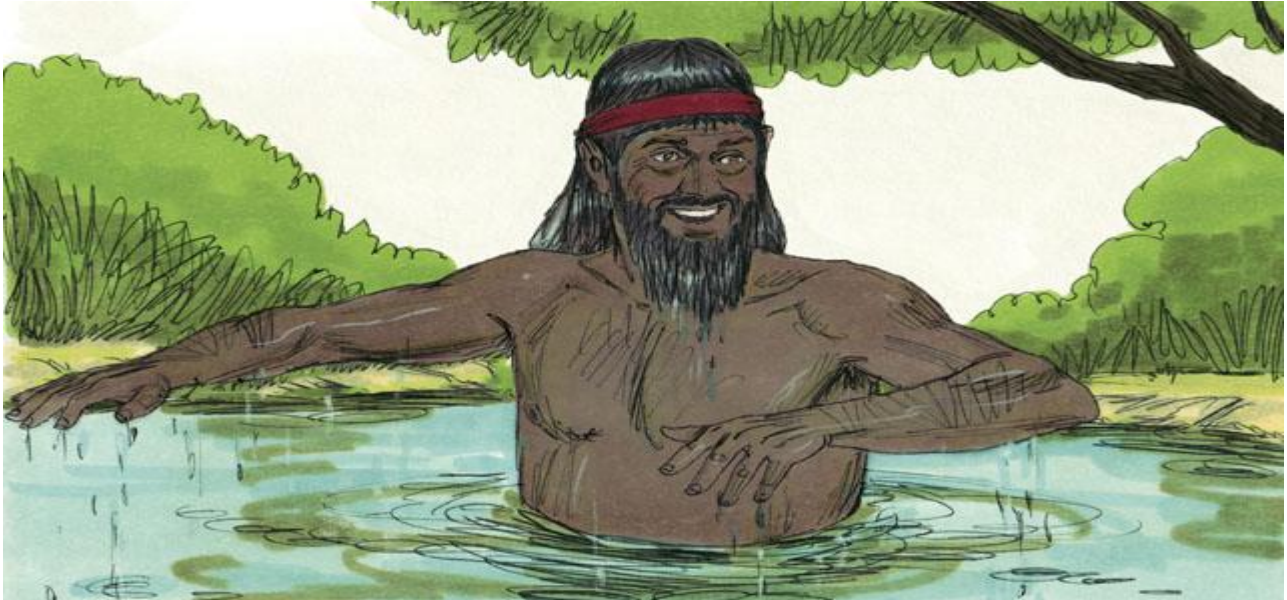
- Elijah (p.1253)
- God (p.1272)
- prophet (p.1381)
- miracles (p.1349)
- Naaman (p.1353)
- heal
- Jordan River (p.1316)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did Elisha tell Naaman to do to in order to heal his skin disease?**

He told him to dip himself seven times in the Jordan River.



**19:15**

Naaman became angry. He refused to do this because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind. He went to the Jordan River and dipped himself seven times into the water. When he came up from the water the last time, God healed him.

**Translation Notes****He refused to do this because it seemed foolish**

Naaman would not do what Elisha said because he knew that washing alone could not heal his disease.

**because it seemed foolish**

The connecting word **because** connects the reason for his anger (it seemed foolish), with the result (Naaman refused to obey).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**he changed his mind**

This could mean 'he decided to do what Elisha had told him to do.'

**When he came up from the water the last time**

The connecting clause **When he came up from the water the last time** introduces a sequential clause. Naaman dipped himself seven times, and then God healed him.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**Translation Words**

- Naaman (p.1353)

- Jordan River (p.1316)
- healed
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

### **What did Naaman do after he heard Elisha's instructions?**

At first he was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish, but later he changed his mind and did it, and was completely healed.

**19:16**

God also sent many other prophets to the people of Israel. They all told the people to stop worshiping idols. Instead, people should act justly with each other and have mercy on each other. The prophets warned the people that they must stop doing evil and obey God instead. If the people did not do this, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.

**Translation Notes****If the people did not do this**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical condition. The result depended on Israel's response to the warning of the prophets. God said that, if they did not stop doing evil, he would punish them.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- prophets (p.1381)
- worshiping (p.1383)
- justly (p.1326)
- mercy (p.1346)
- evil (p.1258)
- obey
- judge (p.1324)
- guilty (p.1283)
- punish (p.1387)

**Translation Questions**

**What did the prophets tell the people to do?**

They told them to stop worshiping idols and to show justice and mercy to others; otherwise, God would punish them.

**19:17**

Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them. Once, they put the prophet Jeremiah into a dry well and left him there to die. He sank down into the mud in the bottom of the well. But then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.

**Translation Notes****Once, they put the prophet Jeremiah into a dry well**

This begins a new event about Jeremiah being held captive in a well.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**a dry well**

The well did not currently have any water in it, but it did still have mud in the bottom. This could be translated as: "an empty well."

**But then the king had mercy on him**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the people putting Jeremiah in the well to die, and the king having mercy on him and ordering him brought out.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**had mercy on him**

This means he was kind to Jeremiah and helped him.

## Translation Words

- obey
- God (p.1272)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Jeremiah (p.1305)
- king (p.1329)
- mercy (p.1346)

## Translation Questions

### **In general, how did the people treat the prophets?**

The people mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them.

### **How did the people mistreat the prophet Jeremiah?**

The people put Jeremiah in a dry well and left him there to die.

### **Did Jeremiah die in the well?**

No, the king had mercy on him and had his servants pull Jeremiah out.

**19:18**

The prophets continued to speak for God even though the people hated them. They warned people that God would destroy them if they did not repent. They also reminded people that God promised to send them the Messiah.

**Translation Notes****continued to speak for God**

This could mean 'continued to tell the people what God wanted to tell them.'

**even though the people hated them**

The connecting words **even though** contrast the prophets speaking for God with the people hating them for their obedience.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- prophets (p.1381)
- God (p.1272)
- repent (p.1395)
- promised (p.1379)
- Messiah (p.1230)

## Translation Questions

**The prophets reminded the people that God would send a special person. Who was that person?**

The person that God would send was the Messiah.



## 20. The Exile and Return

*A Bible story from: 2 Kings 17; 24-25; 2 Chronicles 36; Ezra 1-10; Nehemiah 1-13*

### The Exile and Return

This title can also be translated as: "About how the Israelites went away as prisoners and how they returned" or "How did God send the Israelites away as prisoners and bring them back again?"

### The Exile

The word **exile** means someone is removed from their country by force. The **Exile** is the term for this 70-year period when the Israelites were forced to live in Babylon.

### Return

This refers to when the Jews returned to the land of Israel after being captives in Babylon for 70 years.

**20:01**

The kingdom of Israel and the kingdom of Judah both sinned against God. They broke the covenant that God had made with them at Sinai. God sent his prophets to warn them to repent and worship him again, but they refused to obey.

**Translation Notes****broke the covenant**

This could mean 'disobeyed the commands God had given them in his covenant with them at Mount Sinai.'

**warn them to repent and worship him again**

Another way to translate this would be: "tell them to stop sinning and to worship Yahweh instead of other gods, or terrible things would happen to them."

**but they refused to obey**

The connecting word **but** contrasts the people refusing to obey God, with God send them prophets to warn them to repent and worship him.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- kingdom of Israel (p.1334)
- kingdom of Judah (p.1322)
- sinned (p.1419)
- God (p.1272)
- covenant (p.1237)
- Sinai (p.1421)

- prophets (p.1381)
- repent (p.1395)
- worship (p.1383)
- obey

### **Translation Questions**

**What was the warning that the prophets spoke to the people?**

They told them to repent and worship God again.

**How did the people respond to the message from the prophets?**

The people refused to obey.

**20:02**

So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. Assyria was another nation that became very powerful. The Assyrians were also very cruel to other nations. They came and destroyed the kingdom of Israel. The Assyrians killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything they wanted, and burned much of the country.

**Translation Notes****both kingdoms**

This refers to both the kingdoms of Israel and Judah.

**Assyria was another nation that became very powerful**

This introduces the Assyrians, from the nation of Assyria, as new characters in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**took away**

This could mean 'stole.' They stole these valuable things and carried them back to Assyria.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- punished (p.1387)
- Assyria (p.1212)
- kingdom of Israel (p.1334)

## Translation Questions

**What enemy destroyed the kingdom of Israel?**

The Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel.

## 20:03



The Assyrians gathered together all the leaders, the rich people, and the people who could make valuable things. They took them to Assyria. Only some very poor Israelites remained in Israel.

### Translation Notes

#### **the people who could make valuable things**

This refers to people who were good at woodworking, metalworking, and building.

#### **remained**

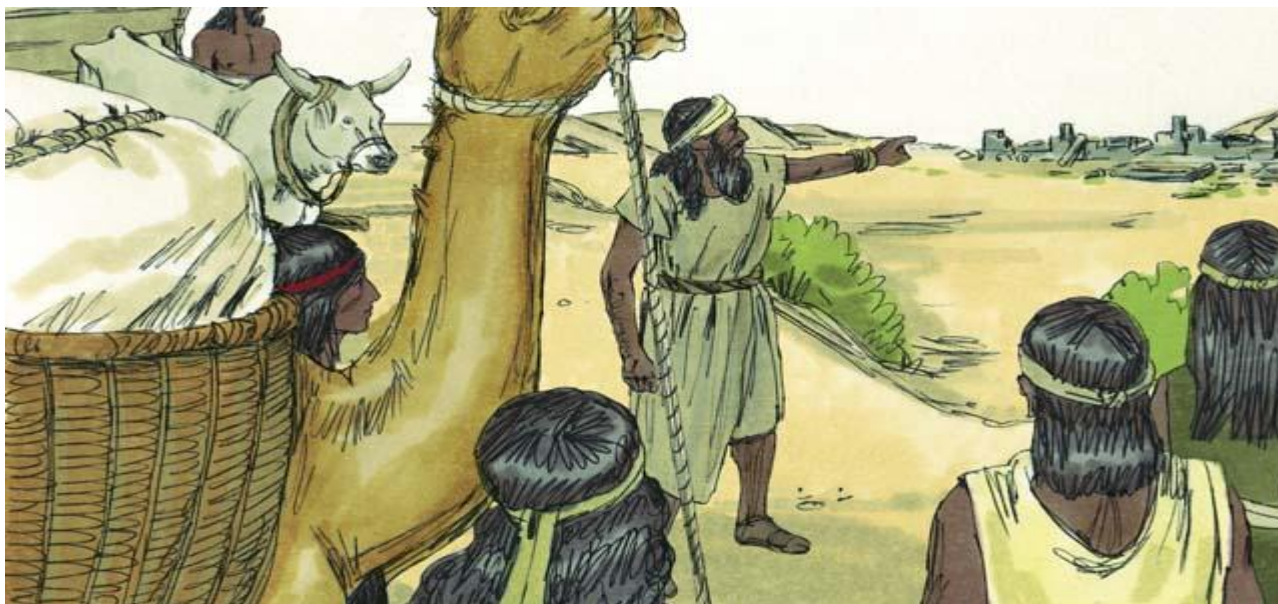
This could mean 'stayed' or 'were left behind' or 'were allowed to stay behind.'

### Translation Words

- Assyria (p.1212)
- Israelites (p.1301)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**20:04**

Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land. The foreigners rebuilt the cities. They intermarried with the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of these people were called Samaritans.

**Translation Notes****foreigners**

This refers to people who were not Israelites.

**Translation Words**

- Assyrians (p.1212)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- descendants (p.1248)
- Samaritans (p.1405)

**Translation Questions****Who were the Samaritans?**

The Samaritans were the descendants of the Israelites who married the foreigners brought to the land by the Assyrians.

**20:05**

The people in the kingdom of Judah saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites. God sent prophets to warn them, but they refused to listen.

**Translation Notes****for not believing and obeying him**

Another way to translate this would be: "because they did not believe or obey him."

**But they still worshiped idols,**

The connecting word **but** contrasts the people continuing to worship idols despite seeing Israel's punishment when they refused to obey.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**warn them**

This could mean 'tell them to stop sinning or terrible things would happen to them.'

**but they refused to listen**

The connecting word **but** contrasts the people refusing to listen, with God sending prophets to warn them.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**they refused to listen**

This could mean 'they refused to obey' or 'they refused to stop their evil behavior.'



## Translation Words

- kingdom of Judah (p.1322)
- God (p.1272)
- punished (p.1387)
- kingdom of Israel (p.1334)
- believing (p.1220)
- obeying
- worshiped (p.1383)
- idols (p.1276)
- Canaanites (p.1228)
- prophets (p.1381)

## Translation Questions

**Did the people of the kingdom of Judah obey God when they saw how he had punished the kingdom of Israel?**

No, they continued worshiping idols.

**20:06**

About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. Babylon was a powerful nation. The king of Judah agreed to be Nebuchadnezzar's servant and pay him a lot of money every year.

**Translation Notes****100**

This could also be written in words: "one hundred."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians**

This introduces the Babylonians and their king, Nebuchadnezzar, as new characters in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**agreed to be**

The king of Judah was forced to either serve the Babylonian king or be destroyed.

**to be Nebuchadnezzar's servant**

This could be translated as: "to govern Judah under Nebuchadnezzar's command."

**Translation Words**

- Assyrians (p.1212)
- kingdom of Israel (p.1334)
- God (p.1272)

- Nebuchadnezzar (p.1356)
- king (p.1329)
- Babylon (p.1214)
- kingdom of Judah (p.1322)
- servant (p.1413)

### **Translation Questions**

**Who did the king of Judah agree to serve?**

He agreed to serve King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon.

**20:07**

But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon. So, the Babylonians came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.

**Translation Notes****So, the Babylonians came back and attacked**

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the Babylonians came back and attacked), with the reason (the king of Judah rebelled).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**came back**

This may also be translated as: “returned” or “came to Judah again.”

**captured the city**

This could mean ‘took control of the city and the people there.’

**took away**

They carried the treasures with them back to Babylon.

**Translation Words**

- kingdom of Judah (p.1322)
- rebelled (p.1391)
- Babylon (p.1214)

- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Temple (p.1430)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**20:08**

To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind. After that, they took the king away so he would die in prison in Babylon.

**Translation Notes****To punish**

Nebuchadnezzar punished the king of Judah by telling his soldiers to do these things.

**in front of him**

This may be translated as: "where he could see," or "so that he could see it," or "before his eyes."

**made him blind**

This may also be translated as: "destroyed his eyes."

**After that, they took the king away**

The connecting words **After that** introduce a sequential clause. They killed the king's sons and blinded him in Judah, and then took him to a prison in Babylon.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**Translation Words**

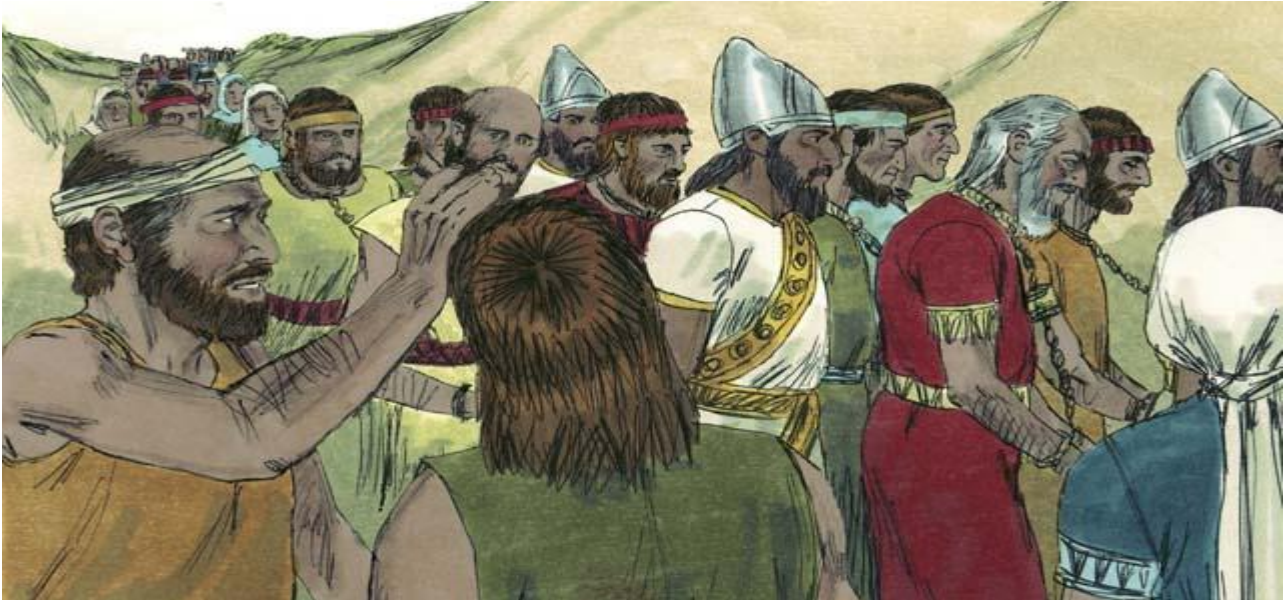
- punish (p.1387)
- king (p.1329)
- king of Judah (p.1322)
- Nebuchadnezzar's (p.1356)

- son
- Babylon (p.1214)

### **Translation Questions**

**When the king of Judah rebelled, what did Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers do to him?**

They killed the king's sons in front of him, made him blind, and took him away to die in prison in Babylon.

**20:09**

Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields. This period of time when God's people were forced to leave the Promised Land is called the Exile.

**Translation Notes****leaving only the poorest people behind**

This could mean 'leaving only the poorest people in Judah' or 'letting only the poorest people stay in Judah.'

**This period of time**

To translate this, choose a phrase that can refer to a long time, since this exile period lasted 70 years.

**the Exile**

The word **exile** means someone is removed from their country by force. The **Exile** is the term for this 70-year period when the Israelites were forced to live in Babylon.

**Translation Words**

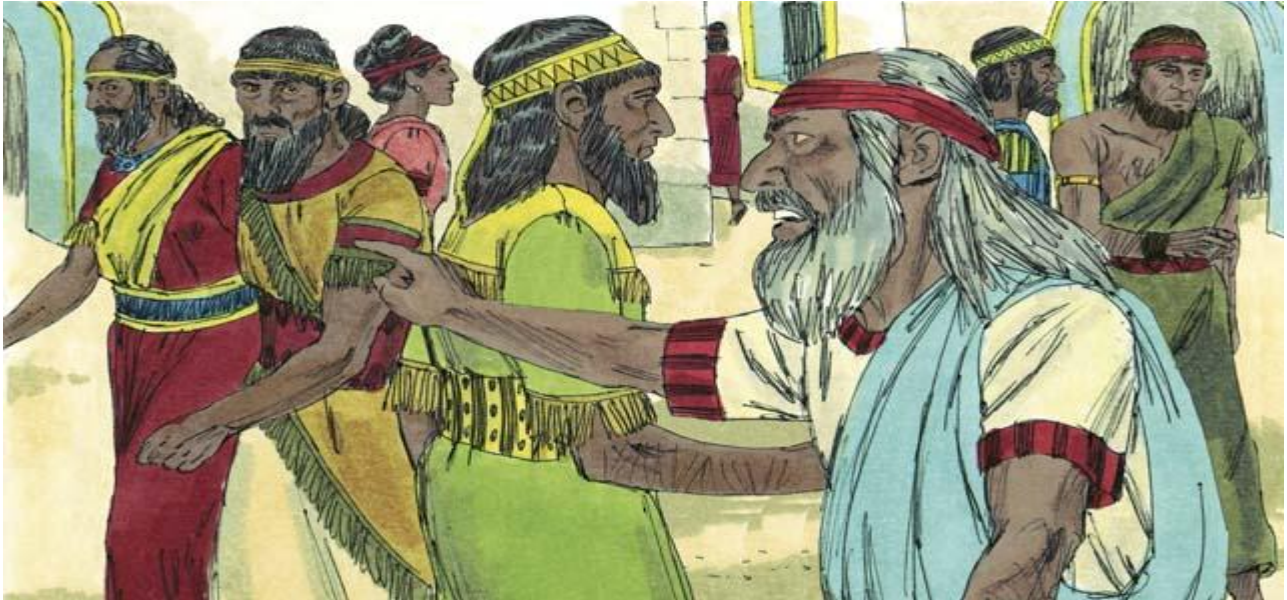
- Nebuchadnezzar (p.1356)
- kingdom of Judah (p.1322)
- Babylon (p.1214)
- God's (p.1272)
- Promised Land (p.1380)



## Translation Questions

**What do we call the period of time when God's people were forced to leave the Promised Land?**

This period is called the Exile.

**20:10**

Even though God punished his people for their sin by taking them away into exile, he did not forget them or his promises. God continued to watch over his people and speak to them through his prophets. He promised that, after 70 years, they would return to the Promised Land again.

**Translation Notes****Even though God punished his people for their sin**

The connecting words **Even though** contrast God sending the people into exile with him not forgetting his promises to them.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**exile**

See how you translated this term in [20:09](#).

**did not forget**

This could be translated as: “did not ignore” or “did not neglect.” Or the whole phrase could be translated as: “continued to honor his commitment to his people and his promises.”

**watch over**

This could mean ‘take care of.’

**speak to them through his prophets**

This could be translated as: “tell his prophets messages that he wanted them to tell his people.”

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- punished (p.1387)
- sin (p.1419)
- promises (p.1379)
- prophets (p.1381)
- Promised Land (p.1380)

## Translation Questions

### **What did God promise to the people during the Exile?**

God promised that after 70 years, they would return to the Promised Land again.

**20:11**

About 70 years later, Cyrus, the king of Persia, defeated Babylonia. So, instead of the Babylonian Empire, the Persian Empire now ruled over many nations. The Israelites were now called Jews. Most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon. Only a few very old Jews even remembered the land of Judah.

**Translation Notes****About 70 years later**

This begins a new event when Cyrus allowed the Jews to return to Israel from exile in Babylon.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**70 years later**

This refers to the 70 years that had passed since the Babylonian army took the people of Jerusalem into exile.

**Cyrus**

Cyrus was also called 'Cyrus the Great.' The name **Cyrus** meant 'like the sun' in the Persian language. However, since Cyrus was an important historical person, it might be best to transliterate his name rather than translating the meaning.

**the Persian Empire**

The Persian Empire grew to cover the area from central Asia to Egypt. It was located in the region of what is Iran today.

**The Israelites were now called Jews**

This could also be translated as: "People now called the Israelites by the name 'Jews.'"

## **the land of Judah**

That is, the area where the kingdom of Judah was located before the Exile. Jerusalem was the capital city of Judah.

### **Translation Words**

- king (p.1329)
- Babylon (p.1214)
- Israelites (p.1301)
- Jews (p.1312)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Who was the king who defeated the Babylonians?**

Cyrus, king of the Persians, defeated the Babylonians.

**20:12**

The Persians were very strong, but they had mercy on the people they conquered. Shortly after Cyrus became king of the Persians, he gave an order that any Jew who wanted to return to Judah could leave Persia and go back to Judah. He even gave them money to rebuild the Temple! So, after 70 years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.

**Translation Notes****Cyrus**

See how you translated his name in [20:11](#).

**Judah**

See the note about Judah in [20:11](#).

**go back to Judah**

Since most of these Jews were the children and grandchildren of those who left Judah, they had never lived in Judah before. In some languages, it might be better to say "to go to Judah."

**He even gave them money to rebuild the Temple!**

This sentence emphasizes the surprising fact that King Cyrus of the Persians would give the Jews money to rebuild their Temple.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**70 years**

This could also be written in words: "seventy years."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

### **exile**

See how you translated this term in [20:09](#).

### **returned**

This could mean 'went back.' Some languages may prefer to say, 'went' since most of these people had never been to Jerusalem.

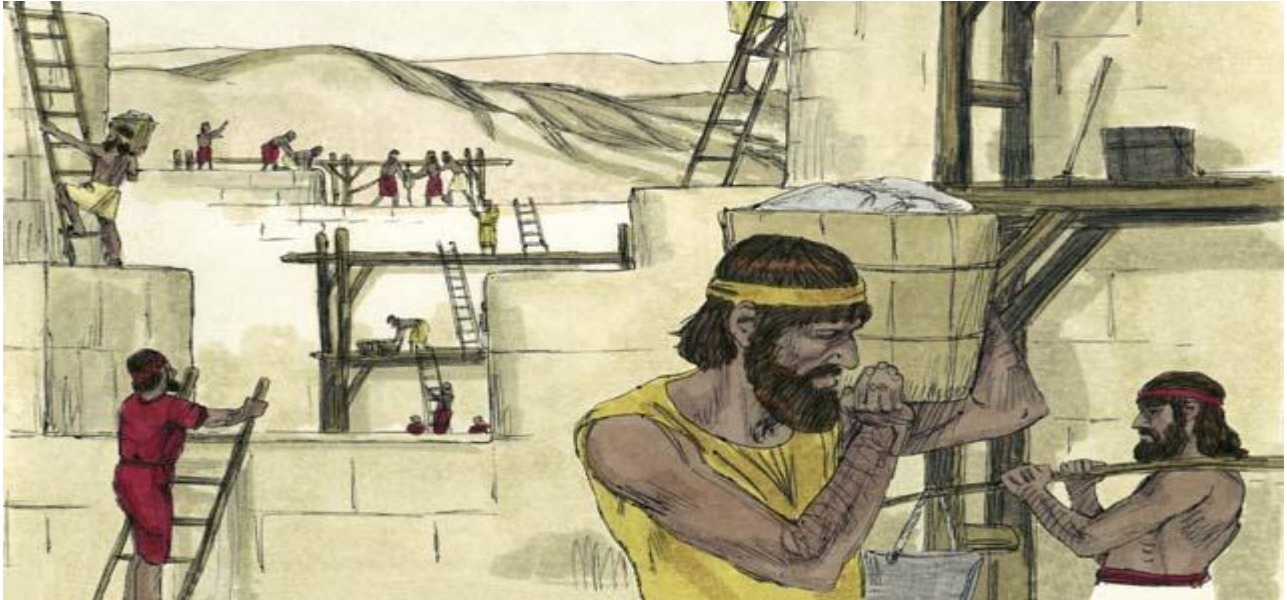
## **Translation Words**

- mercy (p.1346)
- Jew (p.1312)
- Temple (p.1430)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What order did King Cyrus give concerning the Jews?**

He ordered that any Jew who wanted to return to Judah could go there.

**20:13**

When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the Temple and the wall around the city. The Persians still ruled over them, but once again the Jews were living in the Promised Land and worshiping at the Temple.

**Translation Notes****the people**

That is, the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob, who were now called the Jews.

**the wall**

This wall was very thick (2.5 meters) and was built to protect the city from attackers.

**once again**

In some languages this might need to be translated as: “now” or “as their ancestors had done” or “just as before the Exile.”

**worshiping at the Temple**

They worshiped Yahweh, the One True God, at the Temple they rebuilt.

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- Jerusalem (p.1308)



- Temple (p.1430)
- Promised Land (p.1380)
- worshipping (p.1383)

## Translation Questions

**What did the Jews do when they arrived in Jerusalem?**

They rebuilt the Temple and the wall around the city.

## 21. God Promises the Messiah

*A Bible story from: Genesis 3; 12; Deuteronomy 18:15; 2 Samuel 7; Psalm 16; 22; 35; 69; 41; Isaiah 7:14; 9:1-7; 61; 53; 50:6; 59:16; Jeremiah 31; Daniel 7; Micah 5:2; Zechariah 11:12-13; Malachi 4:5*

### God Promises the Messiah

This title can also be translated as: "About how God promised to send the Messiah" or "What happened when God promised to send the Messiah?"

**21:01**

Even when God created the world, he knew that he would send the Messiah at some time far later. He promised Adam and Eve that he would do this. He said that a descendant of Eve would be born who would crush the snake's head. Of course, Satan appeared as a snake in order to deceive Eve. God meant that the Messiah would defeat Satan completely.

**Translation Notes****Even when God created the world**

The connecting words **Even when** contrast God creating a perfect world without sin, with his preexisting plan to send a Messiah to save people from sin.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**crush the snake's head**

Unless the head of a venomous snake is crushed, the snake can still hurt someone. Use a word for **crush** that communicates that its head is destroyed.

**Satan appeared as a snake in order to deceive Eve**

Satan spoke to Eve in the form of a snake. This does not mean that he is a snake now. This could be translated as: "The snake who deceived Eve was an appearance of Satan."

**to deceive Eve**

This could mean 'to lie to Eve.' The snake lied by making Eve doubt what God had said and tricking her into disobeying God.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- promised (p.1379)
- Adam (p.1204)
- Eve (p.1257)
- descendant (p.1248)
- Satan (p.1407)

## Translation Questions

### **When did God first decide to send the Messiah?**

He decided this before he created the world.

### **What would the Messiah do to Satan?**

The Messiah would defeat Satan completely.

**21:02**

God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing. God would fulfill this promise by sending the Messiah at some later time. The Messiah would save people from their sin out of every people group in the world.

**Translation Notes****through him**

This could mean 'because of one of his descendants.'

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- people groups (p.1365)
- blessing (p.1225)
- fulfill (p.1268)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- save (p.1410)

**Translation Questions**

**Who would God sent to fulfill his promise that all people groups will be blessed through Abraham?**

He would send the Messiah.

## 21:03



God promised Moses that in the future he would send another prophet like Moses. This prophet would be the Messiah. In this way, God promised again that he would send the Messiah.

### Translation Notes

#### **prophet like Moses**

To be like Moses, the future prophet would need to have great authority from God to lead and rescue his people.

### Translation Words

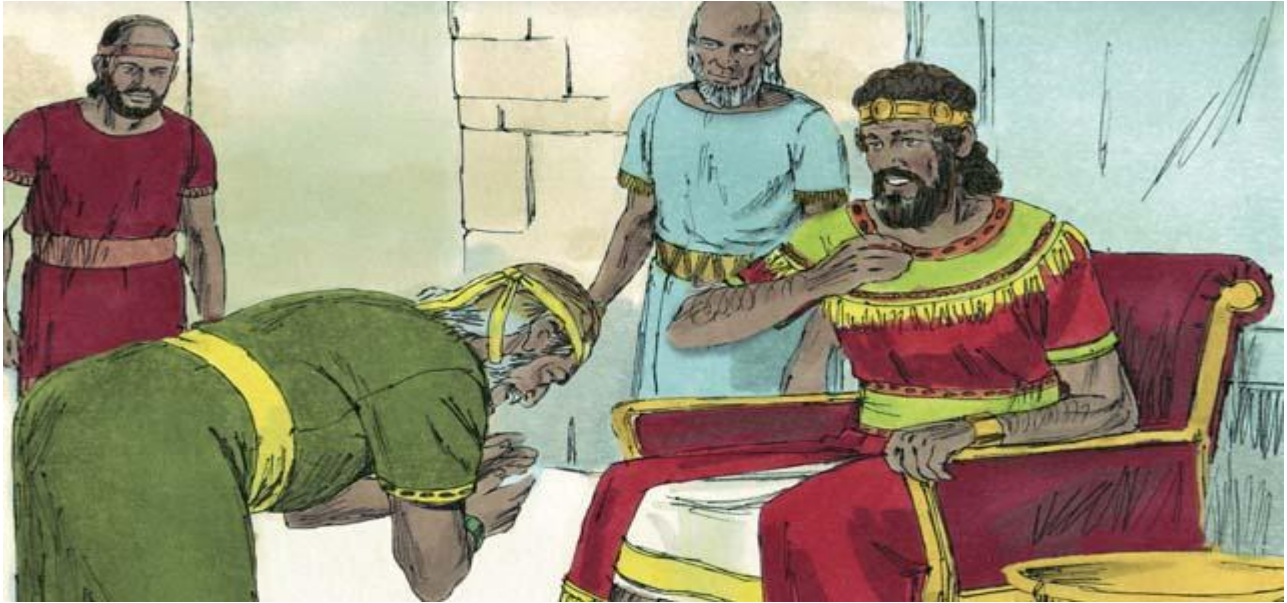
- God (p.1272)
- promised (p.1379)
- Moses (p.1352)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)

### Translation Questions

#### **In what way would the Messiah like Moses?**

The Messiah would be a prophet like Moses.

## 21:04



God promised King David that one of his own descendants would be the Messiah. He would be king and rule over God's people forever.

### Translation Notes

#### **his own descendants**

Another way to say this would be: "a direct descendant of David himself."

### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- promised (p.1379)
- David (p.1243)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- descendants (p.1248)

### Translation Questions

#### **How would the Messiah be related to King David?**

The Messiah would be one of David's descendants.

**21:05**

God spoke to the prophet Jeremiah and told him that he would make a New Covenant one day. The New Covenant would not be like the old covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. When he would make his New Covenant with people, he would make them to know him personally. Each person would love him and want to obey his laws. God said this would be like writing his law on their hearts. They would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. It is the Messiah who would make the New Covenant with them.

**Translation Notes****would not be like**

The New Covenant would be truly effective. People really would know God, they would truly live as his people, and He would forgive their sins completely, based on the Messiah's sacrifice of himself one time for all who believe in him.

**this would be like writing his law on their hearts**

Yahweh's law will become a part of them, rather than merely being written on stone. Here **heart** represents 'emotions' or 'mind.' Alternate translation: "My law will be part of their thoughts and emotions"

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

**writing his law on their hearts**

This is a metaphor meaning: 'help his people to understand his laws and to earnestly desire to obey them.' If possible, keep the image of writing on their hearts, since this is in contrast with the way God had written his law on stone tablets for the Israelites. If that is not possible, you could just translate the meaning.

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**be his people**

This could be translated as: "be his special people" or "be his favored people."



## Translation Words

- prophet (p.1381)
- Jeremiah (p.1305)
- God (p.1272)
- covenant (p.1237)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Sinai (p.1421)
- forgive (p.1266)
- sins (p.1419)
- Messiah (p.1230)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**21:06**

God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king. A prophet is a person who hears the words of God and then proclaims God's messages to the people. The Messiah that God promised to send would be the perfect prophet. That is, the Messiah would hear God's messages perfectly, he would understand them perfectly, and he would teach them to people perfectly.

**Translation Notes****the perfect prophet**

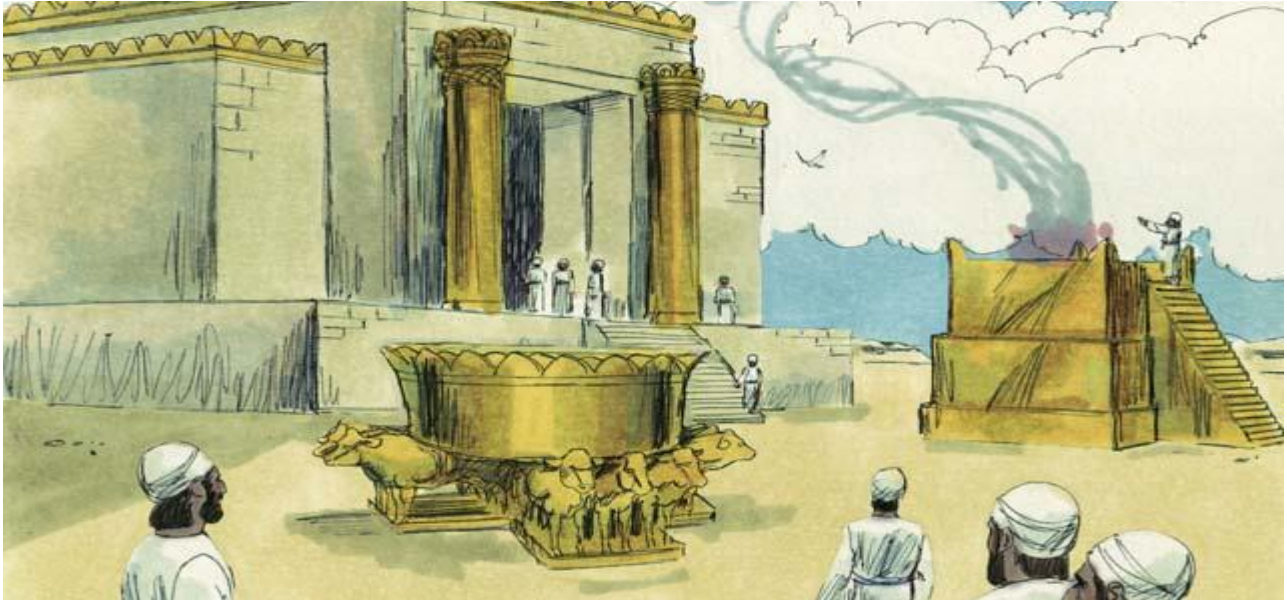
The Messiah would be a prophet who would be perfect in obedience to God, giving every word God would speak to the people. He would present God perfectly to the people, helping them to know and understand God.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- priest (p.1377)
- king (p.1329)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**21:07**

Israelite priests kept on making sacrifices to God for the people. These sacrifices were in place of God punishing the people for their sins. Priests also prayed to God for the people. However, the Messiah would be the perfect high priest who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God. That is, he would never sin, and when he would give himself to be the sacrifice, no other sacrifice for sin would ever be necessary.

**Translation Notes****However**

The connecting word **However** contrasts the Israelite priests' performance, with the Messiah's performance as priest.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**the perfect high priest**

Unlike the other high priests, the Messiah would never sin, and he would permanently take away all the sins of the people.

**offer himself**

This could mean 'allow himself to be killed.'

**a perfect sacrifice**

This could mean 'a sacrifice that has no fault or imperfection.'

**Translation Words**

- Israelite (p.1301)

- priest (p.1377)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- punishing (p.1387)
- sin (p.1419)
- prayed (p.1373)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- high priest (p.1288)

## Translation Questions

### **How would the Messiah be the perfect high priest?**

He would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God on behalf of the people.

**21:08**

Kings and chiefs rule over groups of people, and sometimes they make mistakes. King David ruled over only the Israelites. But the Messiah, a descendant of David's, will rule over the whole world, and he will rule forever. Also, he will always rule justly and make the right decisions.

**Translation Notes****But the Messiah**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the kingdom and performance of other kings, with the Messiah's kingdom and performance as king.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**the whole world**

This could also be translated as: "everyone everywhere."

**Translation Words**

- King (p.1329)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- David (p.1243)

**Translation Questions****How would the Messiah be the perfect king?**

He would reign over the whole world forever, rule justly, and make the right decisions.

**21:09**

God's prophets said many other things about the Messiah. For example, Malachi said that another prophet would come before the Messiah came. That prophet would be very important. Also, the prophet Isaiah wrote that the Messiah would be born of a virgin. And the prophet Micah said that the Messiah would be born in the town of Bethlehem.

**Translation Notes****Malachi**

Malachi was the last prophet in the Old Testament.

**the Messiah would be born of a virgin**

Another way to say this would be: "a virgin would give birth to the Messiah."

**virgin**

Some ancient versions and some contemporary versions translate: "the virgin will conceive," while others translate: "the young woman will conceive."

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**Micah**

Micah was an Old Testament prophet of God who, like Isaiah, spoke his messages from God almost 800 years before the Messiah came.

**Translation Words**

- God's (p.1272)

- prophet (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- Isaiah (p.1299)
- prophet (p.1381)
- virgin (p.1437)
- Bethlehem (p.1223)

## Translation Questions

**What did Isaiah say would be special about the birth of the Messiah?**

The Messiah would be born of a virgin.

**21:10**

The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in the region of Galilee. The Messiah would comfort people who were very sad. He would also set prisoners free. The Messiah would also heal sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.

**Translation Notes****set prisoners free**

This could mean 'set free those who have unjustly been put into prison.' This could also refer to setting people free from the bondage of sin.

**could not hear, see, speak, or walk**

It may be better to say: "could not hear, could not see, could not speak, or could not walk." Some languages have special words for these conditions, such as 'deaf' and 'blind.'

**Translation Words**

- prophet (p.1381)
- Isaiah (p.1299)
- Galilee (p.1269)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- heal

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)



**21:11**

The prophet Isaiah also said that people would hate the Messiah and refuse to accept him. Other prophets said that a friend of the Messiah would turn against him. The prophet Zechariah said that this friend would receive 30 silver coins from other people for doing this. Also, some prophets said that people would kill the Messiah, and that they would gamble for his clothes.

**Translation Notes****Zechariah**

Zechariah was an Old Testament prophet who spoke to God's people after they returned to the Promised Land from the Exile in Babylon. This was about 500 years before the Messiah came.

**30 silver coins**

At the time, each of these coins was worth the amount of money a person could earn in four days.

**gamble for his clothes**

This could mean 'play a game of chance to determine who would win his clothes.'

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**Translation Words**

- prophet (p.1381)
- Isaiah (p.1299)
- Messiah (p.1230)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**21:12**

The prophets also told about how the Messiah would die. Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah. They would pierce him, and he would die in great suffering and agony even though he had not done anything wrong.

**Translation Notes****pierce**

People would stab the Messiah with a sharp weapon.

**even though he had not done anything wrong**

The connecting words **even though** contrast the way the Messiah was killed, with his innocence. It is not expected that an innocent, sinless man would be killed so brutally.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- prophets (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- die
- Isaiah (p.1299)

**Translation Questions****According to the prophets, how would the Messiah die?**

The Messiah would be mistreated and pierced, and would die in great suffering.

**21:13**

The prophets also said that the Messiah would not sin. He would be perfect. But he would die because God would punish him for other people's sins. When he died, people would be able to have peace with God. This is why, in God's plan, the Messiah had to die.

**Translation Notes****But he would die**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the perfection of the Messiah, with his death as punishment for other people's sins. It is not expected that a perfect man would die for other people's sin.

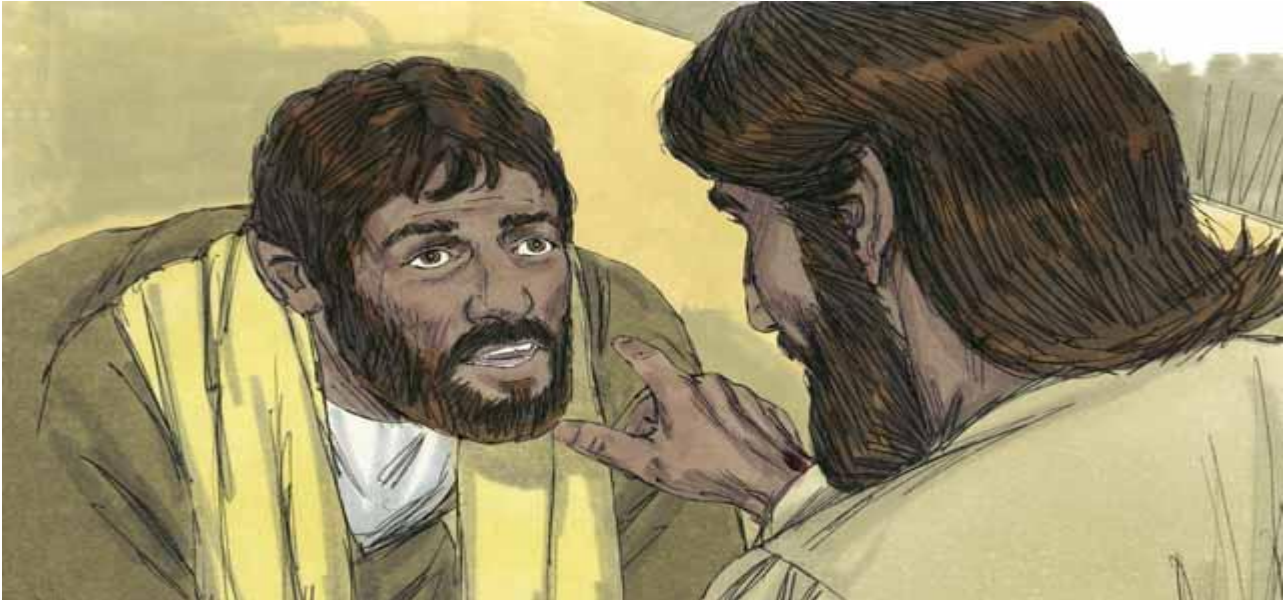
See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- prophets (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- sin (p.1419)
- die
- punish (p.1387)
- peace (p.1363)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****In God's plan, why did the Messiah have to die?**

The Messiah, being perfect, would die so that God could punish him for the people's sin so they could have peace with God.

**21:14**

The prophets also said that God would raise the Messiah from the dead. This shows that Jesus' death and resurrection was all God's plan to make the New Covenant, so he could save people who had sinned against him.

**Translation Notes****raise the Messiah from the dead**

This could mean 'cause the Messiah to be alive again.'

**to make the New Covenant**

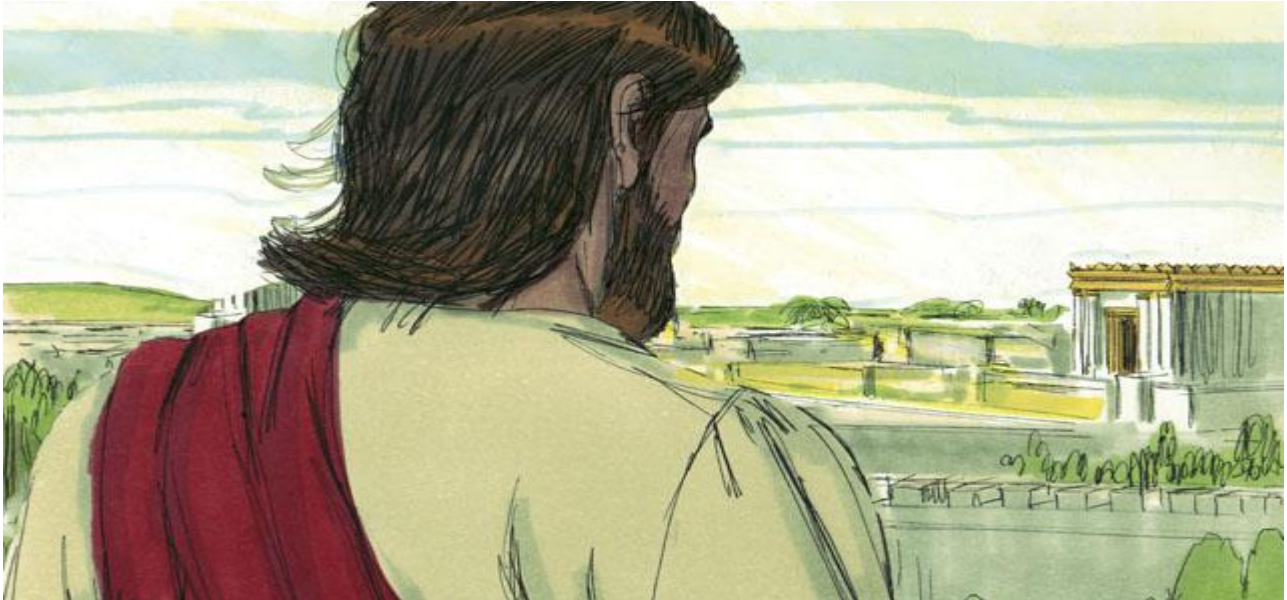
This could mean 'to put the New Covenant into effect.'

**Translation Words**

- prophets (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- death
- God (p.1272)
- raise
- resurrection (p.1397)
- save (p.1410)
- sinned (p.1419)

**Translation Questions****What would God accomplish through the death and resurrection of the Messiah?**

God would start the New Covenant and save people who had sinned against him.

**21:15**

God revealed to the prophets many things about the Messiah, but the Messiah did not come during the time of any of those prophets. More than 400 years after the last of these prophecies was given, at exactly the right time, God sent the Messiah into the world.

**Translation Notes****but the Messiah did not come during the time of any of those prophets**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the many prophecies about the Messiah given to the prophets with the Messiah not coming during their life time. It is not expected that so much detail would be given when it would be another 400 years until the Messiah came.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**More than 400 years after the last of these prophecies was given, at exactly the right time**

This is background information about what happened before the Messiah came.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**400 years**

This could also be written in words: “four hundred years.”

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**into the world**

This could be translated as: “to the people of the world.” The Messiah would be sent not only to the Jews, but to all people.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- prophets (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)

## Translation Questions

**How much time passed between the last prophecy about the Messiah and his coming into the world?**

More than 400 years had passed.

## 22. The Birth of John

*A Bible story from: Luke 1*

### **The Birth of John**

This title can also be translated as: "About how John the Baptist was born" or "What happened when John the Baptist was born?"

**22:01**

In the past, God had spoken to his prophets so they could speak to his people. Then came 400 years of silence in which he did not speak to men. Then God sent an angel to a priest named Zechariah. Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, honored God. They were very old, and she had never born any children.

**Translation Notes**

**In the past, God had spoken to his prophets so they could speak to his people. Then came 400 years of silence in which he did not speak to men.**

This is background information about the prophets of God, and the 400 years that God did not send them.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**his people**

This could be translated as: "his people, the Israelites" or "his people, the Jews." But only include the added information if it is not clearly understood who these people were.

**Then came 400 years of silence**

Other ways to say this are: "Then 400 years of silence passed" or "Then there were 400 years of silence." The last Old Testament prophet, Malachi, has prophesied 400 years before.

**in which he did not speak to men**

This could mean 'during which God did not give any messages to the prophets for his people.'

**Then God sent an angel**

This introduces the birth of John the Baptist as a new event.



See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

### **Then God sent an angel to a priest named Zechariah**

This introduces the angel and Zechariah as new characters in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

### **Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, honored God. They were very old, and she had never born any children.**

This is background information about the kind of people who Zechariah and Elizabeth were.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- angel (p.1209)
- prophets (p.1381)
- priest (p.1377)
- Zechariah (p.1443)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How many years had passed since God had spoken to his people?**

400 years had passed.

#### **What problem did Elizabeth, Zechariah's wife, have?**

She was very old, and had never born any children.

**22:02**

The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him John. God will fill him with the Holy Spirit, and John will get the people ready to accept the Messiah!” Zechariah responded, “My wife and I are too old to have children! How can I know you are telling me the truth?”

**Translation Notes****The angel**

This refers to the angel that came to Zechariah in [22:01](#).

**You will name him John.**

This is a command. The angel is telling Zechariah exactly what he must name John.

**fill him with the Holy Spirit**

This could mean ‘give him wisdom and power through the Holy Spirit.’

**My wife and I are too old to have children!**

This sentence emphasizes that Zechariah and Elizabeth were far too old to have children by natural means. That would require God to work a miracle.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**How can I know you are telling me the truth?**

Here, **know** means to learn by experience, suggesting Zechariah was asking for a sign as proof. Alternate translation: “What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?”

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **Translation Words**

- angel (p.1209)
- Zechariah (p.1443)
- John (p.1315)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- Messiah (p.1230)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did the angel tell Zechariah to name his son?**

He was to name him John.

**What did the angel say John would do in his life?**

John would get people ready to accept the Messiah.

**Why did Zechariah not believe Elizabeth would have a son?**

They were too old to have children.

**22:03**

The angel responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news. Because you did not believe me, you will not be able to speak until the child is born.” Immediately, Zechariah was unable to speak. Then the angel left Zechariah. After this, Zechariah returned home and his wife became pregnant.

**Translation Notes**

**The angel responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news. Because you did not believe me, you will not be able to speak until the child is born.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “The angel answered and told Zechariah that he was sent by God to bring him this good news. But because Zechariah did not believe him, Zechariah will not be able to speak until the child was born.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Immediately, Zechariah was unable to speak**

The connecting word **Immediately** introduces a sequential clause. First the angel said Zechariah would not be able to speak, and the next thing that happened was Zechariah could not speak.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**Because you did not believe me, you will not be able to speak until the child is born.**

The connecting word **Because** connects the reason (Zechariah did not believe the good news), with the result (Zechariah could not speak until the baby was born).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- angel (p.1209)

- God (p.1272)
- believe (p.1220)
- Zechariah (p.1443)

## Translation Questions

**How did the angel punish Zechariah because he did not believe?**

Zechariah was not able to speak until John was born.

**22:04**

When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel suddenly appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was Mary. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus. He will be the Son of the Most High God and will rule forever."

**Translation Notes****When Elizabeth was six months pregnant**

The connecting word **When** introduces a background clause. The main event is Mary's pregnancy and visit to Elizabeth. The background event that was already happening is Elizabeth was six months pregnant.

See TA article: **Connect — Background Information (p.1079)**

**Elizabeth**

She was Zechariah's wife. An angel told Zechariah that Elizabeth would give birth to a son.

**six months pregnant**

Either she had already been pregnant for six months or she was in the sixth month of her pregnancy.

**pregnant**

Different languages have different idioms to talk about pregnancy, such as 'she was with child' or 'she had one in her body' or 'she had belly.' Some languages have special ways of speaking about it politely, such as 'she was expecting.' Use an expression that will not be embarrassing to readers.

### **Elizabeth's relative**

Many translations say, 'cousin' here but we don't know exactly how these two women were related. A general term like, 'kin' or 'cousin' could be used.

### **She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph**

This is background information about Mary.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

### **was engaged**

This could mean 'was promised.'

### **Son of the Most High God**

This is an important title for Jesus. Mary will bear **a son** who will be called **the Son of the Most High**. Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

## **Translation Words**

- angel (p.1209)
- Mary (p.1344)
- virgin (p.1437)
- Joseph (p.1317)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Son of the Most High God (p.1423)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How long had Elizabeth been pregnant when the angel appeared to Mary?**

She was six months pregnant.

### **What did the angel say was going to happen to Mary?**

She would become pregnant and give birth to a son.

### **Who did the angel say Jesus was going to be?**

He would be the Son of the Most High God.

**22:05**

Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a virgin?" The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will come to you. So the baby will be holy, and he will be the Son of God." Mary believed what the angel said.

**Translation Notes****Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a virgin?"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Mary asked him how this could be, since she was a virgin."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**How can this be**

This could mean 'How can I become pregnant' Mary was not doubting the truth of the angel's words, but asking how it would happen.

**Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will come to you**

These are two ways of saying the same thing: 'By the power of God, the Holy Spirit will miraculously cause you to become pregnant.' Make sure the translation of this sentence does not sound like there was any physical contact involved. This was a miracle.

**Holy Spirit**

This introduces the Holy Spirit as a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**



## **the baby will be holy**

The word **holy** here means the baby will belong to God.

## **Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

## **Translation Words**

- Mary (p.1344)
- virgin (p.1437)
- angel (p.1209)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- power
- God (p.1272)
- holy (p.1292)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- believed (p.1220)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why was Jesus' birth a miracle?**

Mary was a virgin.

### **Whose son is Jesus?**

Jesus is the Son of God.

**22:06**

Soon after this happened, Mary went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Mary greeted her, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her. The women rejoiced together about what God had done for them. After Mary visited Elizabeth for three months, Mary returned home.

**Translation Notes****Soon after this happened**

The connecting word **Soon** introduces a sequential clause. The angel came to Mary and soon after Mary left to visit Elizabeth.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**Elizabeth**

See the note about Elizabeth on [22:04](#).

**baby jumped inside her**

The baby moved suddenly inside Elizabeth's womb in response to Mary's greeting to Elizabeth.

**what God had done for them**

This refers to the fact that both women were pregnant through God's supernatural intervention. Mary had conceived without a man, and Elizabeth had conceived with Zechariah after she was past the age of childbearing.

**Translation Words**

- Mary (p.1344)

- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

**Who did Mary go to visit after after the angel left her?**

She went to visit Elizabeth.

**22:07**

After this, Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy. Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby John, as the angel had commanded. Then God made Zechariah able to speak again. Zechariah said, "Praise God, because he has remembered to help his people! You, my son, will be the prophet of the Most High God. You will tell the people how they can receive forgiveness for their sins!"

**Translation Notes****Elizabeth**

See the note about Elizabeth on [22:04](#).

**Then God made Zechariah able to speak again**

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. After Zechariah and Elizabeth named their baby John, Zechariah was able to speak again.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship** (p.1096)

**Praise God, because he has remembered to help his people!**

This sentence emphasizes that God is worthy of praise because of how he helped his people.

See TA article: **Exclamations** (p.1114)

**Praise God**

This could mean 'We should all praise God.'

## **the prophet**

This could mean 'the very important prophet.' John would be the prophet that the Old Testament prophets had predicted would come before the Messiah.

## **the Most High God**

Other ways to say this are: "the God who is greater than everything" or "the God who rules over everything."

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- Zechariah (p.1443)
- John (p.1315)
- angel (p.1209)
- God (p.1272)
- Zechariah (p.1443)
- Praise (p.1372)
- prophet (p.1381)
- forgiveness (p.1266)
- sins (p.1419)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did Zechariah say about John?**

He said John would be a prophet of the Most High God and would tell the people how they could receive forgiveness for their sins.

## **23. The Birth of Jesus**

*A Bible story from: Matthew 1-2; Luke 2*

### **The Birth of Jesus**

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus was born" or "What happened when Jesus was born?"

**23:01**

Mary was engaged to a righteous man named Joseph. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, he knew it was not his baby. However, he did not want to shame Mary, so he decided to have mercy on her and to divorce her quietly. But before he could do that, an angel came to him in a dream and spoke to him.

**Translation Notes****Mary was engaged to a righteous man named Joseph**

Parents normally arranged the marriages of their children. Alternate translation: “The parents of Mary had promised her in marriage to a righteous man named Joseph”

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**engaged**

This could mean ‘promised to be married.’

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**he knew it was not his baby**

This could mean ‘he knew that he was not the one who had caused her to be pregnant.’

**However, he did not want to shame Mary**

The connecting word **However** contrasts Mary being pregnant with what Joseph believed to be another man’s child, with Joseph’s desire not to shame Mary. You would expect Joseph to be angry and want to shame her but, instead, he responds with mercy.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**to shame Mary**

This could mean 'to cause Mary to be publicly disgraced' or 'to embarrass Mary publicly.' Joseph was merciful to Mary even though it seemed like she was an adulteress.

**to divorce her quietly**

This could also be translated as: "to divorce her without telling others why," or "to divorce her without telling others about her pregnancy." Because Joseph was righteous, he wanted to resolve the situation in the best way possible, which in this culture would be to divorce her quietly.

**divorce her**

Joseph had not married Mary yet, but when a man and woman promised to marry each other, Jews considered them husband and wife though they did not live together. This is why a divorce was necessary rather than simply breaking an engagement. For some languages, it may be better to say: "break their engagement."

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**in a dream**

This could mean 'while he was asleep and dreaming.'

**Translation Words**

- Mary (p.1344)
- righteous (p.1398)
- Joseph (p.1317)
- angel (p.1209)
- dream (p.1251)

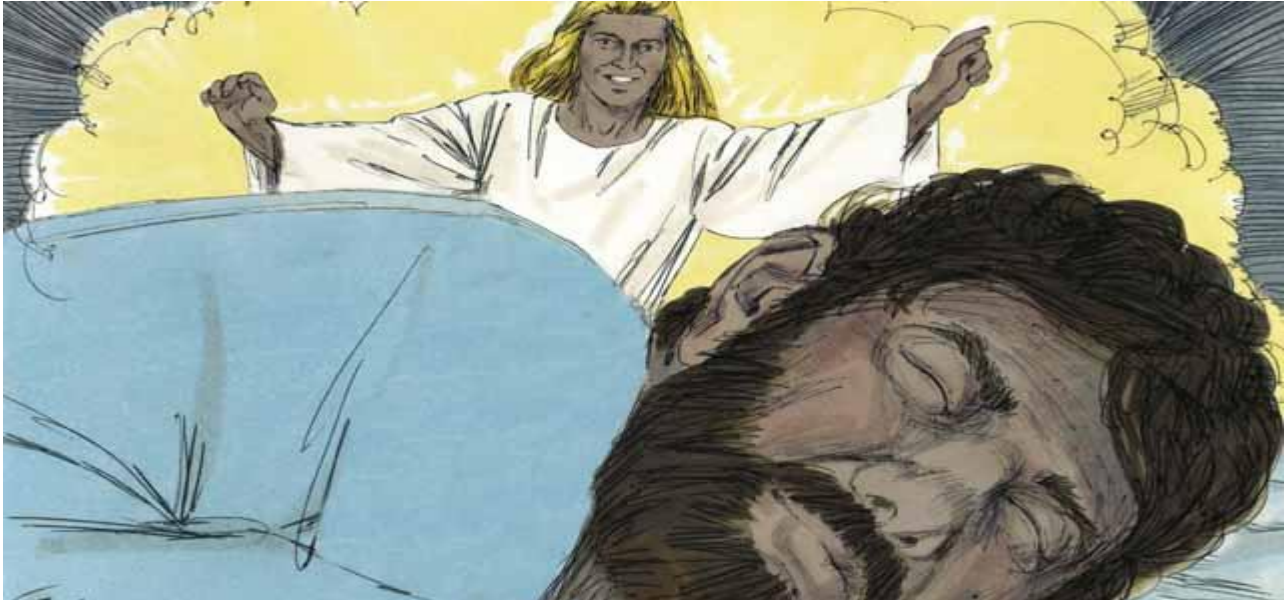
**Translation Questions****What kind of man was Joseph?**

He was a righteous man.

**What did Joseph plan to do with Mary since she was pregnant?**

He planned to divorce her quietly.



**23:02**

The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby that is in her is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

**Translation Notes****do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife**

This can also be translated as: "Stop thinking that you shouldn't marry Mary" or "Do not hesitate to have Mary as your wife."

**The baby that is in her is from the Holy Spirit**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**is from the Holy Spirit**

This could mean 'was conceived by a miracle of the Holy Spirit.'

**She will give birth to a son**

Because God sent the angel, the angel knew the baby was a boy.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**Name him Jesus**

This is a command from God telling Joseph exactly what to name the baby.

## **because he will save the people from their sins**

The connecting word **because** connects the result (Joseph was to name the baby Jesus, which means God saves), with the reason (Jesus will save the people from their sins).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

### **Translation Words**

- angel (p.1209)
- Joseph (p.1317)
- Mary (p.1344)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- son
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Yahweh (p.1441)
- save (p.1410)
- sins (p.1419)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What caused Joseph to change his mind and marry Mary?**

An angel came and spoke to him in a dream and said, "Do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife."

#### **What is the meaning of the name Jesus?**

It means 'Yahweh saves.'

**23:03**

So Joseph married Mary and took her home as his wife, but he did not sleep with her until she had given birth.

**Translation Notes****So Joseph married Mary**

The connecting word **So** connects the result (Joseph took Mary as his wife) with the reason (the angel told him the baby was not another man's child conceived in sin, but the Son of God conceived by the Holy Spirit).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**but he did not sleep with her**

The connecting word **but** contrasts Joseph taking Mary to be his wife, with him not sleeping with her. It would be expected that a man would sleep with the woman he took as his wife, but Joseph did the unexpected.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**he did not sleep with her**

He kept her a virgin until the birth of the baby. In order to be polite, a euphemism is used to say Joseph did not have sexual intercourse with Mary. Alternate translation: "he did not have sexual relations with her"

See TA article: **Euphemism (p.1112)**

**Translation Words**

- Joseph (p.1317)
- Mary (p.1344)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**23:04**

When the time was near for Mary to give birth, she and Joseph made a long journey to the town of Bethlehem. They had to go there because the Roman officials wanted to count all the people in the land of Israel. They wanted everyone to go to where their ancestors had lived. King David had been born in Bethlehem, and he was the ancestor of both Mary and Joseph.

**Translation Notes****When the time was near for Mary to give birth**

This could mean 'When it was near the end of Mary's pregnancy.'

**They had to go there because the Roman officials wanted to count all the people in the land of Israel. They wanted everyone to go to where their ancestors had lived. King David had been born in Bethlehem, and he was the ancestor of both Mary and Joseph.**

This is background information about why Joseph and Mary had to travel to Bethlehem.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**the Roman officials**

Rome had conquered and ruled over Israel at this time.

**to count all the people**

This could mean 'to write their names on a list.' They probably did this so they could tax the people.

**Translation Words**

- Mary (p.1344)

- Roman (p.1400)
- Joseph (p.1317)
- Bethlehem (p.1223)
- David (p.1243)

## Translation Questions

### **Why did Joseph and Mary make the long journey to Bethlehem?**

They had to go there because the Roman government told everyone to go to where their ancestors had lived in order to be counted.

23:05



Mary and Joseph went to Bethlehem, but there was no place for them to stay except for where some animals were kept. It was there that Mary gave birth to her baby. She laid him in a feeding trough since there was no bed for him. They named him Jesus.

### Translation Notes

#### **but there was no place for them to stay**

This is background information about why Jesus was born in a place where animals slept.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

#### **no place for them to stay**

This could mean 'no usual place for them to stay.' Because Bethlehem was so crowded at that time, the usual rooms for guests were already full of people.

#### **where some animals were kept**

This was a place for sheltering animals, not a place where people lived. Translate this with a term that would normally be used for a place where animals were kept.

#### **a feeding trough**

This could mean 'an animal feed box' or 'a wooden or stone box for feeding animals.' The box could have been filled with hay to provide a padded surface for the baby to lie on.

### Translation Words

- Bethlehem (p.1223)

- Jesus (p.1310)

### **Translation Questions**

**In what kind of place was Jesus born?**

He was born in a place where animals stayed.

**23:06**

That night, there were some shepherds in a nearby field guarding their flocks. Suddenly, a shining angel appeared to them, and they were terrified. The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”

**Translation Notes****guarding their flocks**

A **flock** is a group of sheep. The shepherds were caring for their sheep, and protecting them from harm or theft.

**a shining angel**

This could also be translated as: “an angel surrounded by a bright light.” The shining light would have seemed even brighter in contrast to the darkness of the night.

**they were terrified**

The shepherds were very afraid when a supernatural angel appeared.

**The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “The angel told them not to be afraid, because he had some good news for them. The Messiah, the Master, had been born in Bethlehem!”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**



## **Do not be afraid**

This often means 'stop being afraid.' The angel spoke this command to the shepherds in order to comfort them. The shepherds were very afraid when they saw the angel, so he was telling them they did not need to be afraid. Alternate translation: "You do not need to be afraid"

## **The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!**

This sentence emphasizes the exciting message that the Messiah—for whom the Israelites had so long been waiting—had finally come!

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

## **Translation Words**

- shepherds (p.1416)
- angel (p.1209)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- Master (p.1340)
- Bethlehem (p.1223)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What was the angel's message to the shepherds?**

The angel told them, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"

**23:07**

“Go search for the baby, and you will find him wrapped in pieces of cloth and lying in a feeding trough.” Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels. They were praising God. They said, “May all honor be to God in heaven. May there be peace on earth to the people he favors!”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

The angel continued speaking.

**Go search for the baby, and you will find him wrapped in pieces of cloth and lying in a feeding trough.**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “The angel told them to go and search for the baby, and they would find him wrapped in pieces of cloth and lying in a feeding trough.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**and you will find him wrapped in pieces of cloth and lying in a feeding trough**

The connecting word **and** introduces a sequential clause. After they go and search for the baby, they will find him wrapped in cloth and lying in a trough.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**wrapped in pieces of cloth**

The custom of that time was to tightly wrap newborn babies in long strips of cloth. It may be necessary to say “wrapped in long strips of cloth, in the customary way.”

### **a feeding trough**

This could mean 'an animal feeding box.' Also see how you translated this in [23:05](#).

### **filled with angels**

This means that there were so many angels that they seemed to fill the sky.

### **May all honor be to God**

This can also be translated as: "Let us all honor God!" or "Our God deserves all honor!" or "We all give honor to God!"

### **peace on earth**

Another way to say this would be: "may there be peace on earth."

### **the people he favors**

This might be translated as: "people that God looks upon with favor, delight, or good will."

## **Translation Words**

- angels (p.1209)
- God (p.1272)
- heaven (p.1285)
- peace (p.1363)

## **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**23:08**

Then the angels left. The shepherds left their sheep to look for the baby. They soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them. They were very excited. Then the shepherds returned to the fields where their sheep were. They were praising God for everything they had heard and seen.

**Translation Notes****Then the angels left**

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. The angels gave their praise, and then they left.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**everything they had heard and seen**

This included the glorious angels and their amazing message, as well as seeing the newborn Messiah himself.

**Translation Words**

- shepherds (p.1416)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- angel (p.1209)
- praising (p.1372)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****How would the shepherds know the baby when they found him?**

He would be lying in a feeding trough.

**What did the shepherds do after they had seen the baby?**

They returned to the fields, praising God for what they had heard and seen.

**23:09**

There were some men in a country far to the east. They studied the stars and were very wise. They saw an unusual star in the sky. They said that it meant that a new king of the Jews had been born. So they decided to travel from their country to see the child. After a long journey, they came to Bethlehem and found the house where Jesus and his parents were staying.

### Translation Notes

#### **There were some men in a country far to the east.**

This introduces as new characters in the story. These men came from the east to worship Jesus.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

#### **They studied the stars and were very wise**

This is background information about why these men knew Jesus had been born and came to see him.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

#### **They studied the stars**

These men may also have had access to the Old Testament prophets' writings that predicted the birth of the Messiah.

#### **an unusual star**

The star that they noticed was not a normal star. It was something that appeared at the time of Jesus' birth.

### **So they decided to travel from their country to see the child**

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (a new king of the Jews had been born), with the result (the men decided to travel to see the child).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

#### **the child**

As much as a year or two passed before the men arrived in Bethlehem. Jesus was no longer a baby.

#### **the house**

They were no longer staying in the place for animals where he was born.

### **Translation Words**

- wise (p.1438)
- king of the Jews (p.1328)
- Bethlehem (p.1223)
- Jesus (p.1310)

### **Translation Questions**

**Later, how did the wise men from the east know that a new king of the Jews had been born?**

They saw an unusual star in the sky.

**23:10**

When these men saw Jesus with his mother, they bowed down and worshiped him. They gave Jesus expensive gifts. Then they returned home.

**Translation Notes****When these men saw Jesus with his mother**

The connecting word **When** introduces a simultaneous clause. When they saw Jesus, the wisemen bowed down and worshiped. It was their simultaneous response to seeing him.

See TA article: **Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship (p.1098)**

**bowed down**

This could mean 'bowed low to the ground.' At that time, this was the customary way of showing great respect or reverence.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**expensive**

This could mean 'very valuable.'

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- worshiped (p.1383)



## **Translation Questions**

**What did the wise men do when they saw Jesus?**

They bowed down and worshiped Jesus, and gave him expensive gifts.

## 24. John Baptizes Jesus

*A Bible story from: Matthew 3; Mark 1; Luke 3; John 1:15-37*

### John Baptizes Jesus

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when John the Baptist baptized Jesus" or "What happened when John the Baptist baptized Jesus?"

**24:01**

John, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.

**Translation Notes**

**John, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet.**

This introduces a new event—John preaching as an adult.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair**

This is background information about how John lived.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**the wilderness**

This could mean ‘the desert’ or ‘a remote, desert-like place.’ There were few people living out in this area.

**wild honey**

This honey was the natural product of bees in the wilderness; it was not cultivated by people. If that is what people would understand by the word **honey**, you may not need to call it **wild**.

**locusts**

These were large, hopping insects with wings, like very large grasshoppers. Some people who live in the desert eat them.

### **wore clothes made from camel hair**

This clothing symbolizes that John was a prophet like the prophets from long ago, especially the prophet Elijah.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

### **clothes made from camel hair**

This could mean 'coarse clothes made of camel hair.' These clothes would not quickly wear out in the wilderness as other clothes would.

### **camel hair**

A camel is an animal that has very rough hair. People could make clothing out of it. This could be translated as: "rough animal hair."

## **Translation Words**

- John (p.1315)
- Zechariah (p.1443)
- prophet (p.1381)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Where did John live when he grew up?**

He lived in the wilderness.

**24:02**

Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”

**Translation Notes****the wilderness**

See how you translated this word in [24:01](#).

**He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “He preached to them, telling them to repent, for the kingdom of God was near!”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!**

This sentence emphasizes the urgent reason for them to repent—the kingdom of God was near!

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Repent**

This is a command. It might be better to say: “Repent from your sins.”

**the kingdom of God is near**

This could mean ‘the kingdom of God is ready to appear’ or ‘the kingdom of God will arrive soon.’ This refers to God’s ruling over people. This can also be translated as: “God’s reign is about to begin” or “God will soon rule over us as king.”

## Translation Words

- John (p.1315)
- preached (p.1375)
- Repent (p.1395)
- kingdom of God (p.1332)

## Translation Questions

**What message did John preach to the people?**

He said, "Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!"

**24:03**

When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John baptized them. Many religious leaders also came to see John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.

**Translation Notes****When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John baptized them**

The connecting word **When** introduces a sequential clause. First, they heard John's message, then they would repent and John would baptize them.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**repented from their sins**

This could also be translated as: "repented concerning their sins" or "changed their minds about their sins" or "turned away from their sins."

**did not repent**

This could mean 'did not turn away from their sins.'

**confess their sins**

To confess is to acknowledge that something is true. These leaders did not want to acknowledge that they had sinned. This may be translated as: "confess that they had sinned."

**Translation Words**

- John (p.1315)

- repent (p.1395)
- sins (p.1419)
- baptized (p.1215)
- religious leaders (p.1313)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did John do to the people who repented from their sins?**

He baptized them.



**24:04**

John said to the religious leaders, “You poisonous snakes! Repent and change your behavior. God will cut down every tree that does not bear good fruit, and he will throw them into the fire.” John fulfilled what the prophets had said, “See, I will soon send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”

**Translation Notes****You poisonous snakes**

John speaks of the religious leaders as if they were poisonous snakes. Poisonous snakes are dangerous and represent evil. Alternate translation: “You are evil like poisonous snakes!”

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**God will cut down every tree that does not bear good fruit, and he will throw them into the fire**

John speaks of the religious leaders as if they were trees that bear bad fruit. This metaphor means God is ready to punish sinners. Alternate translation: “God has his axe and he is ready to cut down and burn any tree that grows bad fruit” or “As a person gets his axe ready to cut down and burn a tree that grows bad fruit, God is ready to punish you for your sins”

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**God will cut down every tree that does not bear good fruit, and he will throw them into the fire**

This means: ‘He will judge them person who does not do good deeds and punish them.’

### **every tree that does not bear good fruit**

John is not really talking about trees. This is an expression that compares good fruit to good actions and attitudes that come from God.

### **John fulfilled what the prophets had said, "See, I will soon send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way."**

In some languages it would be more natural to use an indirect quote for this sentence, such as: John fulfilled what the prophets had said. They told of God's promise to send his messenger ahead of Jesus to prepare his way.

### **John fulfilled**

This could mean 'John was doing' what the prophet said God's messenger would do.

### **See**

This could be translated as: "Look and see" or "Pay attention!"

### **my messenger**

This could mean 'I, Yahweh, will send my messenger.'

### **ahead of you**

In this phrase, the word **you** refers to the Messiah.

### **prepare your way**

God's messenger will prepare the people to listen to the Messiah.

## **Translation Words**

- John (p.1315)
- religious leaders (p.1313)
- Repent (p.1395)
- fulfilled (p.1268)
- prophets (p.1381)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Which group of people did John compare to poisonous snakes?**

He spoke this way about many of the religious leaders who refused to repent.

**24:05**

Some religious leaders asked John if he was the Messiah. John replied, "I am not the Messiah, but he is coming after me. He is so great that I am not even worthy to untie his sandals."

**Translation Notes****He is so great**

This could be translated as: "He is so important."

**I am not even worthy to untie his sandals**

Untying the straps of sandals was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy to be his slave.

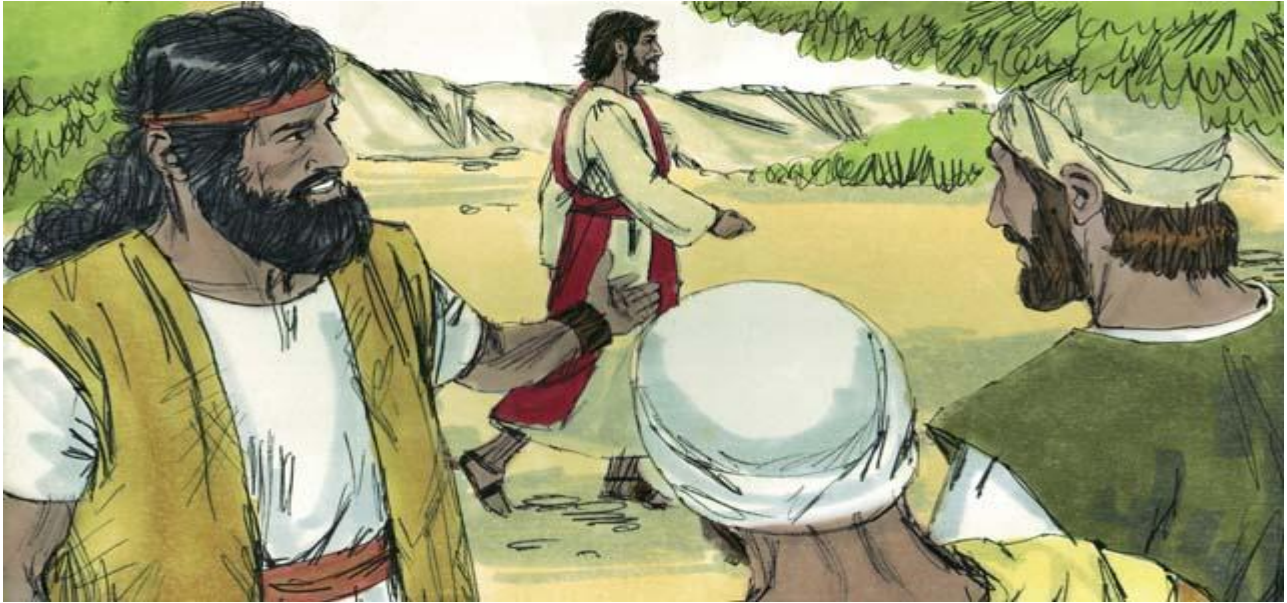
See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**Translation Words**

- John (p.1315)
- Messiah (p.1230)

**Translation Questions****What was John's answer when the Jews asked him if he was the Messiah?**

He said he was not the Messiah.

**24:06**

The next day, Jesus came for John to baptize him. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

**Translation Notes****Look!**

This sentence emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**There is**

For some languages, this would be translated as: “Here is” or “That man is.”

**the Lamb of God**

John speaks of Jesus as if Jesus is a lamb from God. This is a metaphor that represents God’s perfect sacrifice. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**will take away**

The sacrifice of Jesus causes God to look at our sin as if it never existed.

**world**

The word **world** is a metonym and refers to all the people in the world. Alternate translation: “all the people in the world” or “every person in the world”

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

### **the sin of the world**

This could mean 'the sin of the people in the world.'

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- baptize (p.1215)
- John (p.1315)
- Lamb (p.1335)
- God (p.1272)
- sin (p.1419)

### **Translation Questions**

**What title did John use for Jesus when he saw him coming to be baptized?**

He called him the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.

**24:07**

John said to Jesus, "I am not worthy to baptize you. You should baptize me instead." But Jesus said, "You should baptize me, because it is the right thing to do." So John baptized him even though Jesus had never sinned.

**Translation Notes****John said to Jesus, "I am not worthy to baptize you. You should baptize me instead."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "John told Jesus that he was not worthy to baptize him, but that Jesus should baptize John instead."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**I am not worthy to baptize you**

This could be translated as: "I am not good enough to baptize you" or "I am sinful, so I should not baptize you."

**But Jesus said, "You should baptize me, because it is the right thing to do."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "But Jesus said that John should baptize him because it was the right thing to do."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**it is the right thing to do**

This might also be translated as: "it is the proper thing to do" or "this is what God wants me to do."

## **even though Jesus had never sinned**

The connecting words **even though** introduce a factual condition. Baptism is sign of repentance, but Jesus never sinned, so he had no need to repent. Jesus' sinlessness was not questioned even though the evidence, his baptism, would seem to say he had repented of sin.

See TA article: **Connect — Factual Conditions (p.1086)**

## **Translation Words**

- John (p.1315)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- baptize (p.1215)
- sinned (p.1419)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why did Jesus not need to repent of his sins before John baptized him?**

Jesus did not need to repent because he had never sinned.

### **Why did Jesus say that John should baptize him?**

He said John should baptize him because it was the right thing to do.

**24:08**

When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, the Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him. At the same time, God spoke from heaven. He said, "This is my Son. I love him, and I am very pleased with him."

**Translation Notes****after being baptized**

This can be stated in active form: "After John baptized Jesus"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him**

Possible meanings are 1. this is a simile, and the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2. the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus.

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

**This is my Son**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- baptized (p.1215)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- heaven (p.1285)
- my Son (p.1423)



- love (p.1342)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Who came to rest on Jesus after he was baptized?**

The Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and rested on Jesus.

#### **What did God say after Jesus was baptized?**

He said, "This is my Son. I love him, and I am very pleased with him."

**24:09**

God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and stay on someone you baptize. That person is the Son of God.” There is only one God. But when John baptized Jesus, he heard God the Father speak, saw God the Son, who is Jesus, and he saw the Holy Spirit.

**Translation Notes**

**God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and stay on someone you baptize. That person is the Son of God.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God had told John that the Holy Spirit would come down and stay on someone he baptized, and that that person would be the Son of God.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**God had told John**

This could mean ‘Before this, God had told John’ or ‘Before Jesus came to be baptized, God had told John.’

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**But when John baptized Jesus**

The connecting word **But** contrasts the fact that there is only one God, with the fact that there is God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- John (p.1315)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- baptize (p.1215)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- God the Father (p.1274)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Son of God (p.1423)

## **Translation Questions**

**Whom did God say the person would be upon whom the Holy Spirit would come down and rest?**

That person would be the Son of God.

**How many gods are there?**

There is only one God.

## 25. Satan Tempts Jesus

*A Bible story from: Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13; Luke 4:1-13*

### Satan Tempts Jesus

This title can also be translated as: "About how Satan tried to get Jesus to sin" or "What happened when Satan tried to get Jesus to sin?"

**25:01**

Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness. Jesus was there for 40 days and 40 nights. During that time he fasted, and Satan came to Jesus and tempted him to sin.

**Translation Notes****Immediately after Jesus was baptized**

This is a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**the Holy Spirit led him**

This could mean 'the Holy Spirit guided him' or 'the Holy Spirit prompted him to go.'

**the wilderness**

This could also be translated as: "the desert" or "a remote, barren place with few people." This place probably had very few trees or other plants, so most people would not be able to live there.

**40 days and 40 nights**

This means: '40 days, both during the day and during the night.' Make sure the translation of this phrase does not sound like a period of eighty days.

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**tempted him to sin**

Since Jesus did not sin, make sure you use a word that does not imply that Satan succeeded in convincing Jesus to sin. This phrase could also be translated as: "tried to convince him to sin."

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- baptized (p.1215)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- fasted (p.1265)
- Satan (p.1407)
- tempted (p.1432)
- sin (p.1419)

## Translation Questions

**Where did Jesus go after he was baptized?**

Jesus went into the wilderness.

**Who led Jesus into the wilderness?**

The Holy Spirit led him.

**What did Jesus do in the wilderness?**

He fasted there for 40 days and 40 nights.

## 25:02



First, Satan said to Jesus, “If you are the Son of God, turn these rocks into bread so you can eat!”

### Translation Notes

**Satan said to Jesus, “If you are the Son of God, turn these rocks into bread so you can eat!”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Satan told Jesus that if he was the Son of God, he should turn these rocks into bread so he can eat!”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**If you are the Son of God**

Satan knew that Jesus was indeed **the Son of God**.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**the Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**turn these rocks into bread**

This may also be translated as: “make these rocks become bread” or “supernaturally change these rocks into bread.”

## **bread**

For languages where bread is not a common food, this could be translated as: “food.” In the Jews’ culture, bread was the main food.

See TA article: **Synecdoche (p.1194)**

## **Translation Words**

- Satan (p.1407)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Son of God (p.1423)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did Satan tempt Jesus to do with the rocks?**

He told Jesus to turn the rocks into bread so he could eat.



**25:03**

But Jesus said to Satan, "It is written in God's word, 'People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!'"

**Translation Notes****But Jesus said to Satan, "It is written**

Jesus refused to do what Satan asked. This can be clearly stated: "But Jesus said to Satan, 'No, I will not do that because it is written ...'"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**Jesus said to Satan, "It is written in God's word, 'People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!'"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told Satan that it is written in God's word, 'People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!'"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**'People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!'**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "It is written in God's word that people do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!"

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**bread**

Make sure that you use the same word to translate **bread** here as you did in [25:02](#).

See TA article: **Synecdoche (p.1194)**

**but they need everything that God tells them!**

Another way to translate this would be, "Rather, people need to listen to and obey everything God says."

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God's word (p.1439)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did Jesus say people need just as much as bread?**

People need everything that God tells them.

**25:04**

Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the Temple. He said to him, "If you are the Son of God, jump off to the ground, because it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"

**Translation Notes**

**He said to him, "If you are the Son of God, jump off to the ground, because it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "He told him that if he was the Son of God, he should jump off to the ground, because it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**If you are the Son of God**

Satan knew that Jesus was indeed **the Son of God**.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**the Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**jump off to the ground**

This could mean 'jump off this building to the ground.'

**it is written**

This can be stated in active form: "a prophet of God wrote long ago"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**because it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "because it is written that God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone."

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**so your foot does not hit a stone**

This means: 'so that you will not be hurt at all; not even your foot will be injured on a stone.' It could also be translated as: "so that even your foot will not strike against a stone; you will not be injured at all."

**Translation Words**

- Satan (p.1407)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Temple (p.1430)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- God (p.1272)
- angels (p.1209)

**Translation Questions****What did Satan tempt Jesus to do next?**

He told Jesus to throw himself down from the Temple.

**Who did Satan say would protect Jesus?**

God would command his angels to protect Jesus.

**25:05**

But Jesus did not do what Satan asked him to do. Instead, he said, "God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"

**Translation Notes**

**he said, "God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "he said that God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**"God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"**

This could be translated as: an indirect quote: "God tells everyone not to test the Lord your God."

**he said, "God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "he tells everyone not to test the Lord your God" or "he says that no one should test the Lord your God."

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**Do not test the Lord your God**

This could be translated as: "Do not make the Lord your God prove himself to you" or "Do not challenge God to take care of you even when you do not obey him."

## **the Lord your God**

This could mean 'Yahweh, your God' or 'Yahweh, who is God and has authority over you.'

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Satan (p.1407)
- Lord (p.1340)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What did Jesus say in response to Satan?**

Jesus said that God's Word says not to test the Lord your God.

**25:06**

Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world. He showed him how powerful they were, and how wealthy they were. He said to Jesus, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."

**Translation Notes****He said to Jesus, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "He said to Jesus that he would give him all this if Jesus would bow down and worship him."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**the kingdoms of the world**

This refers to all the greatest cities, countries, and other territories of the world.

**I will give you all this**

This could be translated as: "I will give you all the wealth and power of these kingdoms" or "I will make you the ruler over all these countries, cities and people."

**I will give you**

It can be stated that Satan indeed had this authority: "I have the authority to give you"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**bow down**

This means that Jesus would serve and worship Satan.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

### **Translation Words**

- Satan (p.1407)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- kingdoms (p.1330)
- worship (p.1383)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did Satan then offer to give Jesus?**

Satan offered to give him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory.

**What did Satan ask Jesus to do in order to receive these kingdoms?**

Satan wanted Jesus to bow down and worship him.



25:07



Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'"

### Translation Notes

**Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told Satan to get away from him! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'"**

Jesus refused to do what Satan asked. This can be clearly stated: "But Jesus said to Satan, 'No, I will not do that. Get away from me, Satan.'"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**Get away from me**

This imperative may also be translated as: "Leave me" or "Leave me alone."

**he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "he commands his people to worship only the Lord their God, and to honor only him as God."

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

## **the Lord your God**

Translate this phrase the same way as you did in [25:05](#).

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Satan (p.1407)
- God's word (p.1439)
- Worship (p.1383)
- Lord (p.1340)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Did Jesus agree to worship Satan?**

No, he would only worship God and only honor him as God.

## 25:08



Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him. Then angels came and took care of Jesus.

### Translation Notes

#### **did not give in to**

This could be translated as: "did not do the things that Satan was tempting him to do."

#### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Satan (p.1407)
- temptations (p.1432)
- angels (p.1209)

### Translation Questions

#### **Was Satan able to make Jesus sin?**

No, he was not.

#### **What happened after Satan left Jesus?**

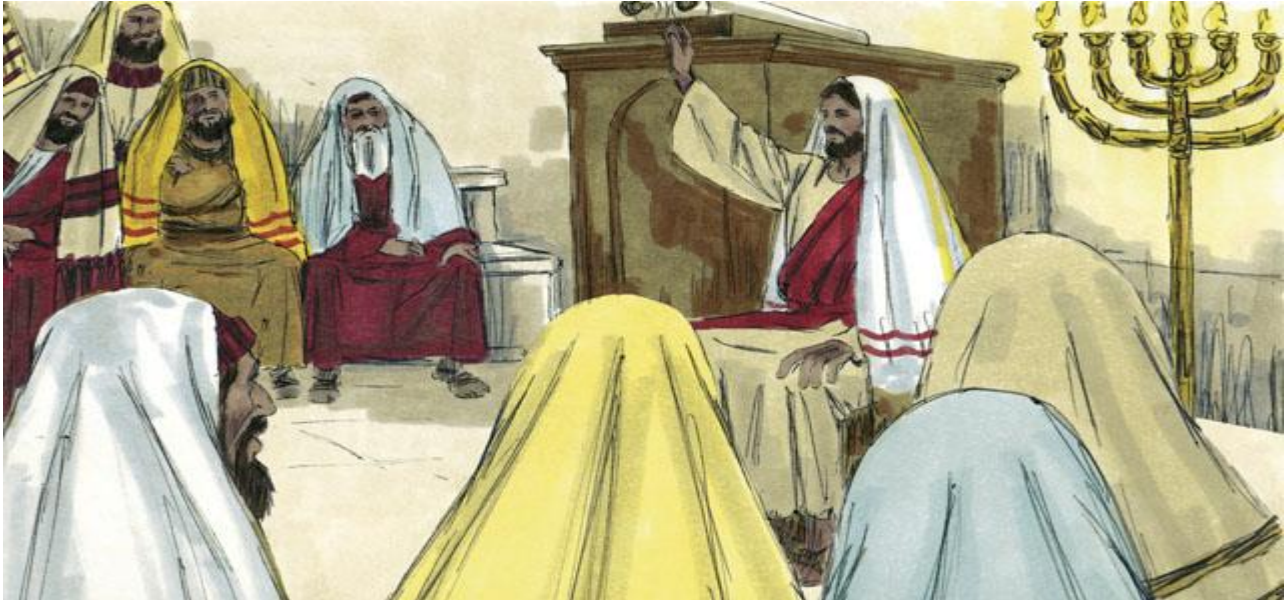
Angels came and took care of Jesus.

## 26. Jesus Starts His Ministry

*A Bible story from: Matthew 4:12-25; Mark 1-3; Luke 4*

### Jesus Starts His Ministry

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus began to minister to the Jews" or "What happened when Jesus began to minister to the Jews?"

**26:01**

After Jesus refused Satan's temptations, he returned to the region of Galilee. This is where he lived. The Holy Spirit was giving him much power, and Jesus went from place to place and taught people. Everyone said good things about him.

**Translation Notes****After Jesus refused Satan's temptations, he returned**

You may prefer to make this into shorter sentences and say: "Jesus did not do the wrong things Satan tried to get him to do. Jesus defeated Satan. After that, Jesus returned." The word **refused** can also be translated as: "rejected" or "resisted."

**After Jesus refused Satan's temptations**

This begins a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**went from place to place**

That is, he "traveled to different towns and other places."

**Everyone**

This could mean 'Everyone who knew him or heard about him.'

**Translation Words**

- Satan's (p.1407)
- temptations (p.1432)

- Jesus (p.1310)
- power
- Spirit (p.1290)
- Galilee (p.1269)

### **Translation Questions**

**Where did Jesus go after he overcame Satan's temptations?**

Jesus went to the region of Galilee where he lived.

**26:02**

Jesus went to the town of Nazareth. This is the village where he had lived when he was a child. On the Sabbath, he went to the place of worship. The leaders handed him a scroll with the messages of the prophet Isaiah. They wanted him to read from it. So Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.

**Translation Notes****the place of worship**

This could mean 'the building where the Jews gathered to worship God.' This can also be translated as: "the worship building."

**a scroll**

A scroll was a long sheet of paper or leather that was rolled up and had writing on it.

**a scroll with the messages of the prophet Isaiah**

This could mean 'a scroll that had the words that the prophet Isaiah had written.' Isaiah had written on a scroll hundreds of years before. This was a copy of that scroll.

**opened up the scroll**

This could be translated as: "rolled open the scroll" or "unrolled the scroll."

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Nazareth (p.1355)
- Sabbath (p.1401)

- worship (p.1383)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Isaiah (p.1299)

### **Translation Questions**

**What was the name of the city where Jesus lived as a child?**

He lived in Nazareth.

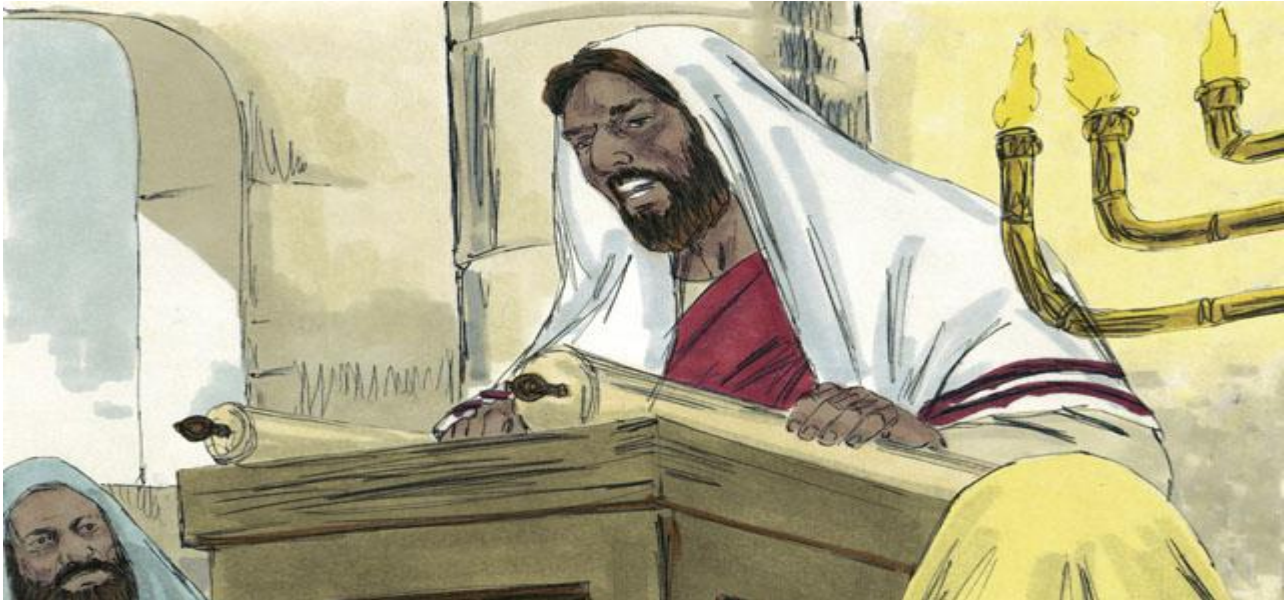
**Where did Jesus go on the Sabbath?**

He went to the place of worship.

**Why did the people in the place of worship hand Jesus the scroll of Isaiah?**

They wanted Jesus to read from it.



**26:03**

Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor. He has sent me to set prisoners free, to make the blind people see again, and to free those whom others are oppressing. This is the time when the Lord will be merciful to us and help us."

**Translation Notes**

**Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor. He has sent me to set prisoners free, to make the blind people see again, and to free those whom others are oppressing. This is the time when the Lord will be merciful to us and help us."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus read that God had given him his Spirit so that he could proclaim good news to the poor. He had sent him to set prisoners free, to make the blind people see again, and to free those whom others are oppressing. This is the time when the Lord will be merciful to us and help us."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**proclaim good news to the poor**

This could mean 'to tell poor and needy people the good message that God will help them.'

**to set prisoners free**

This could mean 'to tell people who are wrongfully in prison that they will be released.'

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Spirit (p.1290)

- good news (p.1278)
- Lord (p.1340)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**26:04**

Then Jesus sat down. Everybody was watching him closely. They knew the passage of scripture that he had just read was about the Messiah. Jesus said, "The things I just read to you, they are happening right now." All the people were amazed. "Isn't this the son of Joseph?" they said.

**Translation Notes****Jesus said, "The things I just read to you, they are happening right now."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus said that the things he just read to them, they are happening right now."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**The things I just read to you, they are happening right now**

Other ways to translate this would be "The things you just heard me read are being fulfilled right now" or "Today the things I read to you came true as you heard them."

**amazed**

Translate the word **amazed** with a term that means that they were surprised, shocked, and confused about how this could be possible.

**Isn't this the son of Joseph?**

This is a rhetorical question. This could also be translated as: "This man is only the son of Joseph!" or "Everyone knows he is just Joseph's son!" The people were not asking if he was Joseph's son or not. They were wondering how he could be the Messiah since they thought he was only the son of an ordinary man.

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- scripture (p.1439)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- Joseph (p.1317)

## Translation Questions

**The passage of Scripture that Jesus read was about what person?**

It was about the Messiah.

**What did Jesus say about the Scripture that he had just read?**

He said those things were happening right then.

**How did the people of Jesus' hometown react to his words?**

They were amazed and asked, "Isn't this the son of Joseph?"

**26:05**

Then Jesus said, “It is true that people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in. During the time of the prophet Elijah, there were many widows in Israel. But when it did not rain for three and a half years, God did not send Elijah to help a widow from Israel. Instead, he sent Elijah to a widow in a different nation.”

**Translation Notes**

**Then Jesus said, “It is true that people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in. During the time of the prophet Elijah, there were many widows in Israel. But when it did not rain for three and a half years, God did not send Elijah to help a widow from Israel. Instead, he sent Elijah to a widow in a different nation.”**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus said that it was true that people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in. He also said that during the time of the prophet Elijah, there were many widows in Israel, but when it did not rain for three and a half years, God did not send Elijah to help a widow from Israel. Instead, he sent Elijah to a widow in a different nation.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in**

This proverb means ‘people do not recognize the authority of a prophet who has grown up among them.’

See TA article: **Proverbs (p.1178)**

**During the time of the prophet Elijah**

This is background information about what happened when Elijah was alive.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- true
- prophet (p.1381)
- Elijah (p.1253)
- Israel (p.1301)
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

**What example did Jesus give of God's prophets helping people from other nations when Elijah was a prophet?**

God sent Elijah to help a widow during a drought.

**26:06**

Jesus continued, saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not heal any of them. He only healed the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” But the people who were listening to Jesus were Jews. So when they heard him say this, they were furious at him.

**Translation Notes****Jesus continued, saying, “And during**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus continued, saying that during ...”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**during the time of the prophet Elisha**

This is background information about what happened when Elisha was alive.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Elisha**

Elisha was God’s prophet who came after Elijah. Like Elijah, Elisha confronted Israelite kings who were sinning against God and he did miracles that God gave him power to do.

**a commander**

This could mean ‘a military leader.’

## **they were furious at him**

The Jews did not want to hear that God had blessed any people besides themselves, so they were very angry at what Jesus said.

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Israel (p.1301)
- heal
- Naaman (p.1353)
- Jews (p.1312)

### **Translation Questions**

**What example did Jesus give of God's prophets helping people from other nations when Elisha was a prophet?**

Jesus said that Elisha healed Naaman, a commander of Israel's enemies.



**26:07**

The people of Nazareth seized Jesus and dragged him out of the place of worship. They took him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him. But Jesus walked through the crowd and left the town of Nazareth.

**Translation Notes****the place of worship**

This could mean 'the building where the Jewish people gathered to worship God.' This can also be translated as: "the worship building." See how you translated it in [26:02](#).

**But Jesus walked through the crowd**

To show that the people were not able to do to Jesus what they had planned to do, **But** could be translated with a strong contrast word or phrase such as: "But instead" or "However."

**Translation Words**

- Nazareth (p.1355)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- worship (p.1383)

**Translation Questions****How did the people respond when Jesus told them these stories?**

They seized Jesus and tried to throw him off a cliff in order to kill him.

**How did Jesus escape from the crowd?**

Jesus walked through the crowd and left the town.

## 26:08



Then Jesus went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or disabled. There were some who were blind, others who were crippled, deaf, or mute, and Jesus healed them.

### Translation Notes

#### **went throughout the region of Galilee**

This could mean 'all around in Galilee' or 'from place to place in Galilee.'

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Galilee (p.1269)
- healed

### Translation Questions

#### **How did the crowds in Galilee respond to Jesus?**

They brought many people who were sick or handicapped to him so he could heal them.

**26:09**

Also, many people who had demons in them were brought to Jesus. Jesus commanded the demons to come out of them, so the demons came out. The demons often shouted, "You are the Son of God!" The crowds of people were amazed, and they praised God.

**Translation Notes****who had demons in them**

This could mean 'who were controlled by evil spirits.'

**Jesus commanded the demons**

This could also be translated as: "Jesus gave the command to the demons."

**The demons often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "The demons often shouted that he was the Son of God!"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**"You are the Son of God!"**

This is a strong statement that Jesus is the Messiah.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**the Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

### **Translation Words**

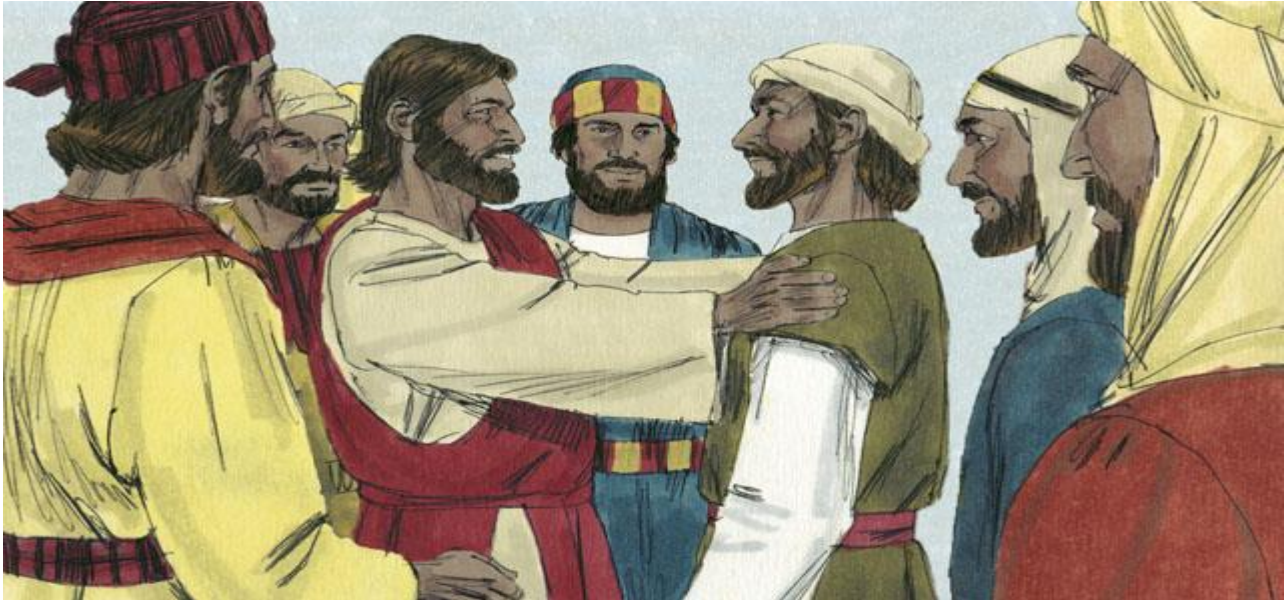
- demons (p.1246)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- demons (p.1246)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

**Who did the demons acknowledge Jesus to be when he commanded them to come out of people?**

They said Jesus was the Son of God.

## 26:10



Then Jesus chose 12 men from among his disciples to be his special representatives. He called them "apostles." These apostles traveled with Jesus and learned from him.

### Translation Notes

#### learned from him

This could mean 'learned from what he taught them' or 'learned from everything he said and did.'

#### A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- apostles (p.1211)

### Translation Questions

#### How many men did Jesus choose to be his apostles?

He chose 12 men to be his apostles.

## 27. The Story of the Good Samaritan

*A Bible story from: Luke 10:25-37*

### **The Story of the Good Samaritan**

This title can also be translated as: "About how a good man from Samaria helped a Jewish man" or "What happened when a good man from Samaria helped a Jewish man?"

**27:01**

One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus. He wanted to show everyone that Jesus was teaching wrongly. So he said, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?" Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**an expert in the Jewish law**

This man was someone who studied and taught the laws God had given the Israelites, as well as other Jewish laws.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**he said, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "called Jesus **Teacher** and asked what he had to do to inherit eternal life."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**to inherit eternal life**

This could mean 'to have life with God forever' or 'so that God will give me life with him forever' or 'to receive eternal life from God.' The law expert was asking how he could be worthy to receive eternal life as an inheritance from God the Father.



## **eternal life**

This refers to life forever with God after the mortal body dies. See the key term page for eternal life.

## **Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus asked him what was written in God's law."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

## **What is written in God's law?**

This could mean 'What is written in God's law about this?' Jesus asked this question because he wanted the man to think about what God's law really teaches.

## **What is written**

This can be stated in active form: "What did God say"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Teacher (p.1429)
- inherit (p.1295)
- eternal (p.1255)
- God's law (p.1337)

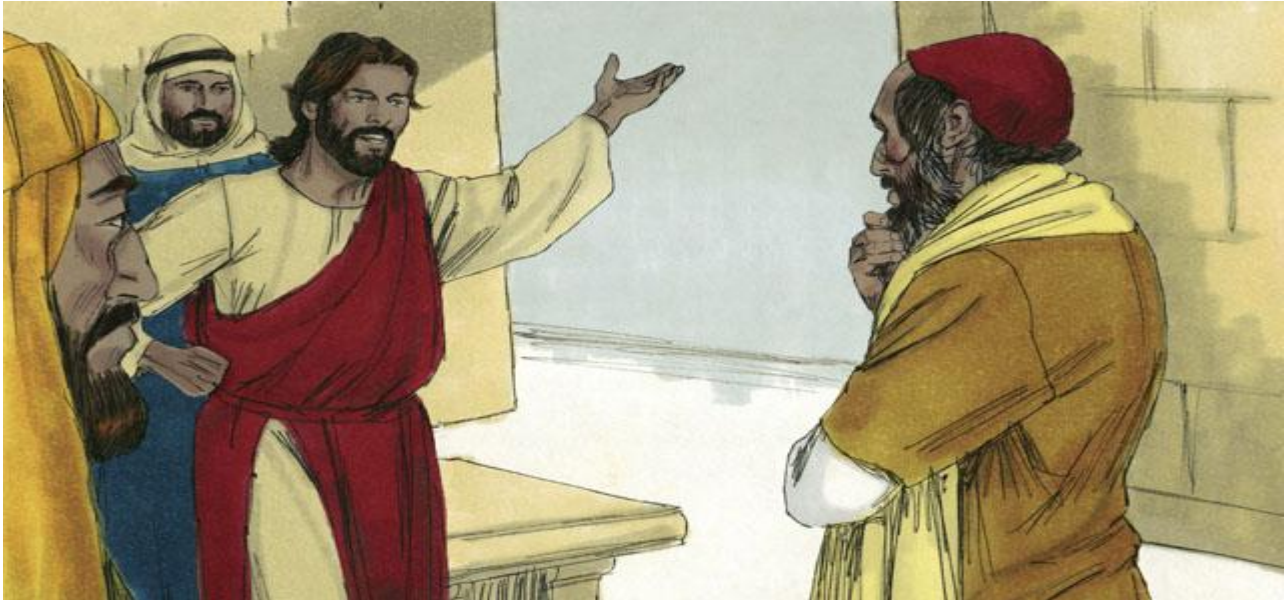
## **Translation Questions**

### **What question did the expert in the Jewish law ask Jesus?**

He asked Jesus, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

### **What question did Jesus ask the expert in response?**

He asked him, "What is written in God's law?"

**27:02**

The man said, "It says, 'Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself.'" Jesus answered, "You are correct! If you do this, you will have eternal life."

**Translation Notes**

**The man said, "It says, 'Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself.'"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "The man said that we must love the Lord our God with all our heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love our neighbor as ourself."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Love the Lord your God**

You may choose to say: "We must love the Lord our God." Make sure it does not sound like the man is commanding Jesus. Rather, he is quoting what God's law commands people to do.

**with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind**

This could mean 'with your whole self' or 'with every part of yourself.' In some languages this might be translated as: "with all your liver, breath, strength, and thoughts." The focus is not on each of these parts, but on all of us. Use the concepts in your language that make up the whole person.

**heart**

The heart refers to the part of a person that has desires and emotions.

## **soul**

The soul refers to the nonphysical, spiritual part of a person.

## **strength**

Strength refers to the physical body and all of its abilities.

## **mind**

The mind refers to the part of a person that thinks, plans, and has ideas.

## **neighbor**

Although the word **neighbor** normally refers to a person who lives near us, the Jews applied the term to everyone except close relatives, foreigners, and enemies.

## **love your neighbor as yourself**

This is an ellipse. The missing information can be stated: "love your neighbor as you love yourself."

See TA article: **Ellipsis (p.1108)**

## **as yourself**

That is, he should love his neighbor to the same extent that he loves himself.

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

## **Jesus answered, "You are correct! If you do this, you will have eternal life."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told him that he was correct! If he did this, he would have eternal life."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

## **you will have eternal life**

This can be stated in active form: "God will give you eternal life."

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

## **Translation Words**

- love (p.1342)
- Lord (p.1340)
- God (p.1272)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- life

## **Translation Questions**

**Who does God's law say we should love?**

We should love the Lord our God and our neighbor.

**27:03**



But the law expert wanted to show the people that his way of living was correct. So he asked Jesus, "Well then, who is my neighbor?"

### **Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

### **Translation Words**

- love (p.1342)
- Lord (p.1340)
- God (p.1272)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- life

### **Translation Questions**

**Why did the expert in the Jewish law ask who his neighbor was?**

He wanted to prove that his way of living was correct.

**27:04**

Jesus answered the law expert by telling a story. “There was a Jewish man who was traveling along the road from Jerusalem to Jericho.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

The cloud-like frame around this picture indicates that Jesus is telling a story, and not necessarily explaining a historical event.

**the law expert**

See how you translated this term in [27:01](#).

**a story**

The story is in the form of a parable.

See TA article: **Parables (p.1170)**

**There was a Jewish man**

This introduces a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**from Jerusalem to Jericho**

In some languages you could translate this as: “from the city of Jerusalem to the city of Jericho” or “from Jerusalem City to Jericho City.”

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Jewish man (p.1312)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Jericho (p.1306)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**27:05**



“But some robbers saw him and attacked him. They took everything he had and beat him until he was almost dead. Then they went away.”

### **Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

### **Translation Words**

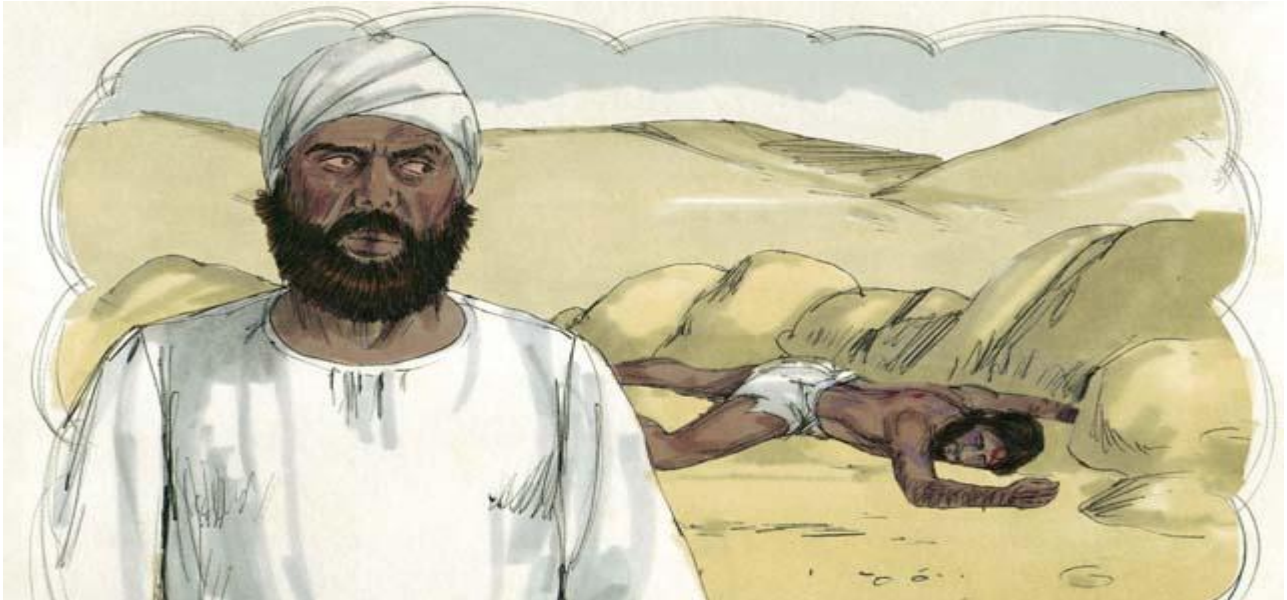
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Jewish man (p.1312)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Jericho (p.1306)

### **Translation Questions**

**In Jesus’ story, what happened to the Jewish man while he was traveling?**

Robbers attacked him, took everything he had, and beat him until he was almost dead.



**27:06**

“Soon after that, a Jewish priest happened to walk down that same road. This priest saw that man lying in the road. When he saw him, he moved to the other side of the road and kept on going. He completely ignored that man.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues to tell the story.

**Soon after that, a Jewish priest**

This introduces a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**happened to walk down**

This could mean ‘happened to be traveling along.’ For some languages, it may be necessary to use a word like ‘travel’ rather than **walk** since the priest was not just walking on the road but was traveling to get to another city.

**kept on going**

This could mean ‘continued traveling down the road.’

**He completely ignored that man**

This was surprising because the priests were very religious, and would have been expected to help their fellow Jew.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### **ignored that man**

This could mean 'did not help that man' or 'showed no concern for that man.'

### **Translation Words**

- Jewish (p.1312)
- priest (p.1377)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Who was the first person to see the wounded man?**

The first person was a Jewish priest.

#### **What did the priest do when he saw the wounded man?**

He ignored him and passed by on the other side of the road.

## 27:07



“Not long after that, a Levite came down the road. (Levites were a tribe of Jews who helped the priests at the Temple.) The Levite also crossed over to the other side of the road. He also ignored that man.”

### Translation Notes

#### General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

#### Not long after that, a Levite

This introduces a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

#### came down the road

This could mean ‘was traveling down that same road.’

#### (Levites were a tribe of Jews who helped the priests at the Temple.)

This is background information to tell the reader who the Levites were.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

#### Levites were a tribe of Jews

This could mean ‘Levites were from the Israelite tribe of Levi’ or ‘Levites were from the Israelite clan of Levi.’

## **He also ignored that man**

This was surprising because the Levites served in the Temple, and would have been expected to help their fellow Jew.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **ignored**

This could mean 'did not help.'

## **Translation Words**

- Jews (p.1312)
- priests (p.1377)
- Temple (p.1430)

## **Translation Questions**

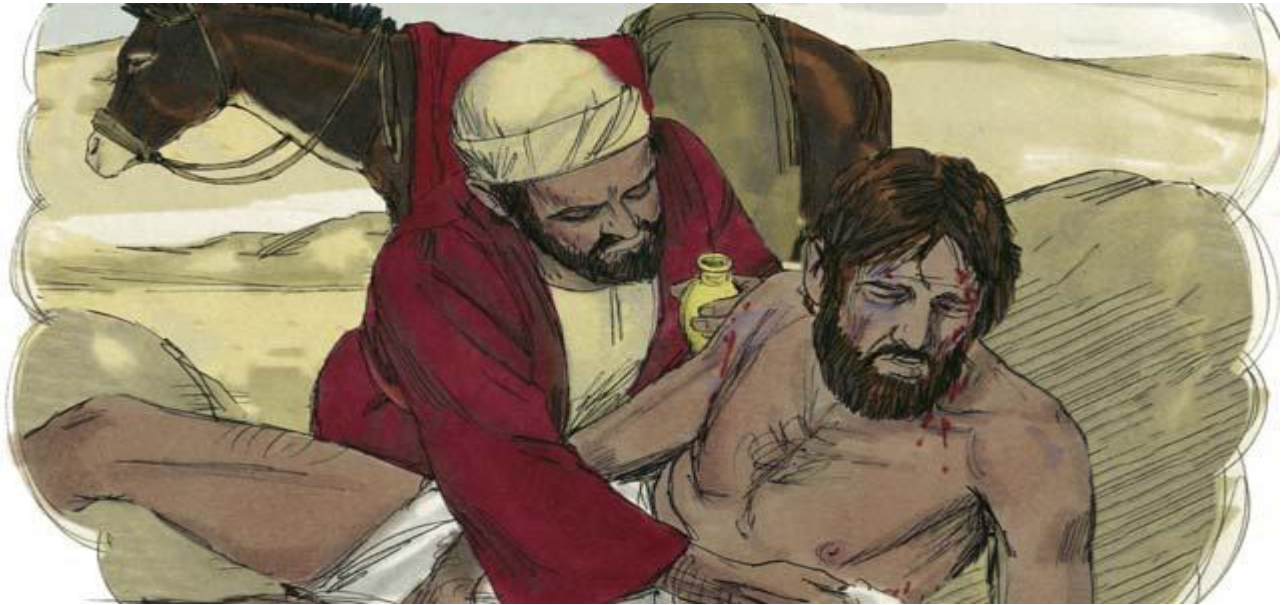
### **Who was the second person to see the wounded man and pass by?**

A Levite came next.

### **What did the Levite do when he saw the wounded man?**

He ignored him and passed by on the other side of the road.

27:08



“The next person to walk down that road was a man from Samaria. (Samaritans and Jews hated each other.) The Samaritan saw the man in the road. He saw he was Jewish, but he still had very strong compassion for him. So he went to him and bandaged his wounds.”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

### The next person to walk down that road was a man from Samaria

This introduces a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

### to walk down

This could mean ‘to travel along.’ These people were traveling from one city to another. Make sure that it does not sound like they were just taking a walk.

### (Samaritans and Jews hated each other.)

This is background information to tell the reader that the Samaritans and Jews were enemies.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

### He saw he was Jewish, but he still had very strong compassion for him

This was surprising because the the Jews and Samaritans hated each other, so he would not have been expected to help the Jewish man.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### **Translation Words**

- Samaritan (p.1405)
- Jews (p.1312)

### **Translation Questions**

**Who was the third person to see the wounded man?**

He was a Samaritan.

**What was the relationship between Jews and Samaritans?**

They hated each other.

27:09



“Then the Samaritan lifted the man onto his own donkey. He took him to an inn by the road. There he continued to take care of him.”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

### his own donkey

Make sure it is clear that **his** refers to the Samaritan.

### an inn by the road

This could mean ‘a lodging place along the road.’ This is a place where travelers could get food and stay overnight.

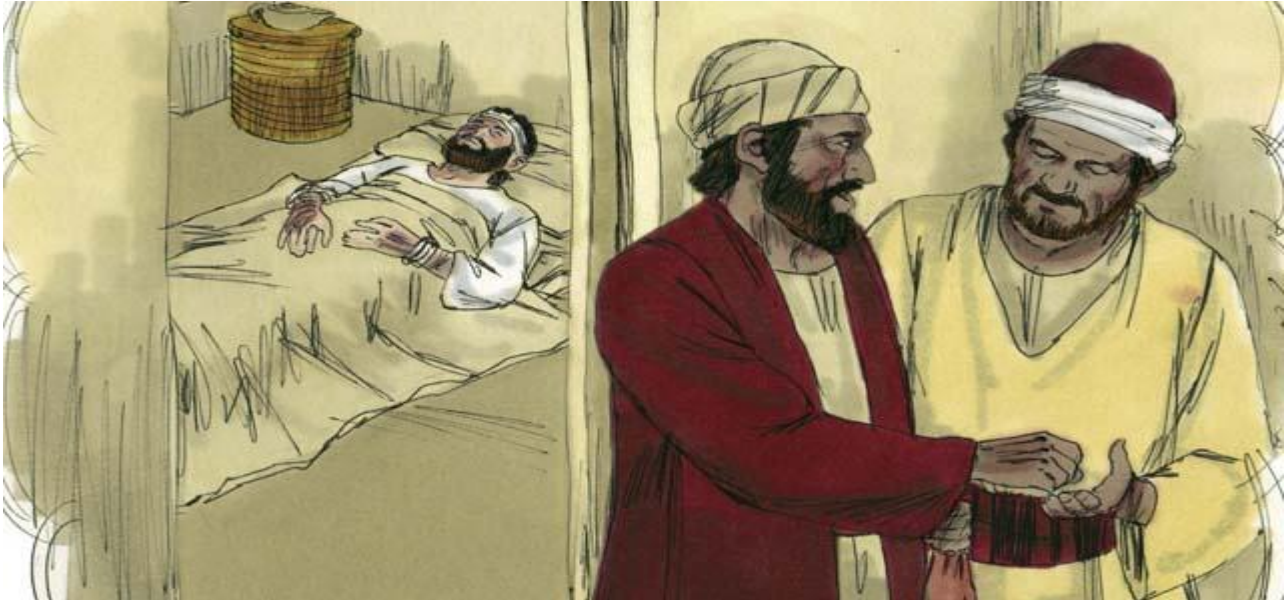
## Translation Words

- Samaritan (p.1405)

## Translation Questions

### How did the Samaritan help the wounded man?

He put him on his own donkey, took him to a roadside inn, and took care of him.

**27:10**

“The next day, the Samaritan needed to continue his journey. He gave some money to the person in charge of the inn. He said to him, ‘Take care of this man. If you spend any more money than this, I will repay those expenses when I return.’”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues to tell the story.

**to continue his journey**

This could be translated as: “to continue traveling toward his destination.”

**in charge of**

This could mean ‘who managed.’ It could be that this person also owned this lodging place.

**He said to him, ‘Take care of this man. If you spend any more money than this, I will repay those expenses when I return.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “He told him to take care of the man, and if he spent any more money than this, he would repay those expenses when he returned.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**



### **Take care of this man**

In order for it to be clear that this was a polite request, not an order, for some languages, it may be preferable to say: "Please take care of this man."

### **will repay those expenses**

This could also be translated as: "will repay you" or "will pay back that money" or "will repay it."

### **Translation Words**

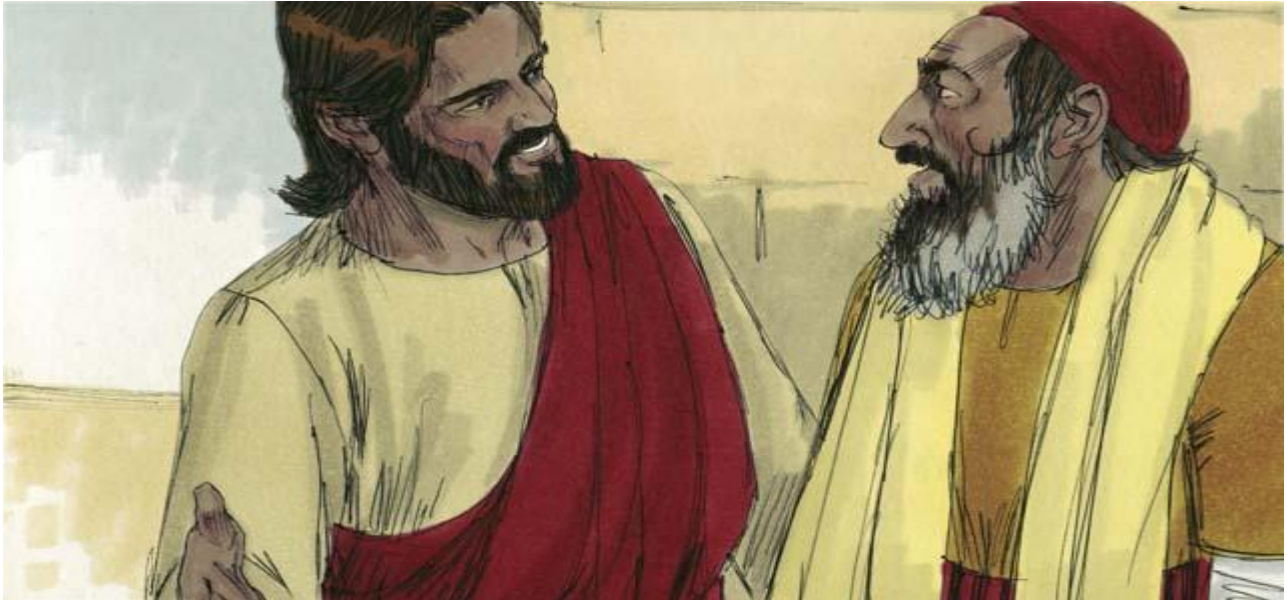
- Samaritan (p.1405)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What did the Samaritan tell the person in charge of the inn?**

He told him to take care of the man, and he would repay him for those expenses when he returned.

## 27:11



Then Jesus asked the law expert, "What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?" He replied, "The one who was merciful to him." Jesus told him, "You go and do the same."

### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Samaritan (p.1405)

### Translation Questions

**Which of the three men acted like a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?**

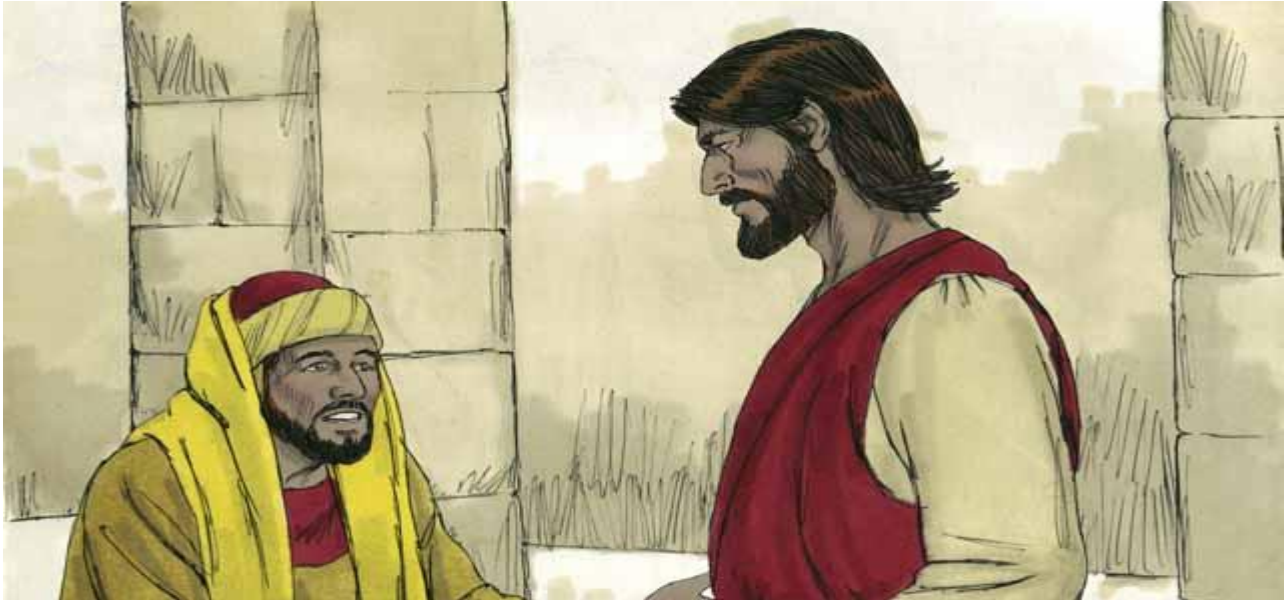
The Samaritan who was merciful to the man was a neighbor to him.

## **28. The Rich Young Ruler**

*A Bible story from: Matthew 19:16-30; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 18:18-30*

### **The Rich Young Ruler**

This title can also be translated as: "About how a wealthy and important young man came to speak to Jesus" or "What happened when a wealthy and important young man came to speak to Jesus?"

**28:01**

One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good’? There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**a rich young ruler**

This man was already a rich and powerful political official, even though he was still young.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**came up to Jesus**

This could mean ‘approached Jesus.’

**asked him, “Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?”**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “asked him what he must do to have eternal life.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

## Good teacher

This could mean 'righteous teacher.' He was not saying that Jesus was simply a skilled teacher.

## to have eternal life

This could mean 'to receive eternal life' or 'to live with God forever.' Also consider how **eternal life** was translated in [27:01](#) and see the note about that there.

## Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good'? There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus asked him why he called him 'good' since there is only one who is good, and that is God. Then he told him to obey God's laws in order to have eternal life."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

## Why do you call me 'good'?

Jesus is not denying that he is good. Rather, he is asking if the ruler understands that Jesus is God.

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

## There is only one who is good, and that is God

Other ways to say this are: "The only one who is truly good is God" or "God is the only one who is truly good."

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- good (p.1280)
- teacher (p.1429)
- eternal (p.1255)
- God (p.1272)
- obey
- God's laws (p.1337)

## Translation Questions

### What did the rich young ruler ask Jesus?

He asked Jesus what he must do to have eternal life.

### What did Jesus tell the young man to do in order to have eternal life?

He told him to obey God's laws.

**28:02**

“Which ones do I need to obey?” he asked. Jesus replied, “Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not lie. Honor your father and mother, and love your neighbor as you love yourself.”

**Translation Notes****“Which ones do I need to obey?” he asked**

This could mean ‘Which laws do I need to obey in order to receive eternal life?’ This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “He asked him which laws he needed to obey”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Jesus replied, “Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not lie. Honor your father and mother, and love your neighbor as you love yourself.”**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus replied that he must not commit murder, or commit adultery, or steal, or lie, and must honor his father and mother, and love his neighbor as he loves himself.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**as you love yourself**

This could mean ‘as much as you love yourself’ or ‘to the same degree that you love yourself.’

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- adultery (p.1205)
- love (p.1342)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**28:03**

But the young man said, “I have obeyed all these laws ever since I was a boy. What do I still need to do in order to live forever?” Jesus looked at him and loved him.

**Translation Notes**

**the young man said, “I have obeyed all these laws ever since I was a boy. What do I still need to do in order to live forever?”**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “the young man said that he had obeyed all these laws ever since he was a boy, and asked what he still needed to do in order to live forever.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**ever since I was a boy**

Another way to say this would be: “from the time I was a child until now.”

**What do I still need to do**

This could mean ‘What else do I need to do’ or ‘What do I need to do in addition to these’

**loved him**

Jesus had compassion on him. Choose a word for love that is consistent with the kind of love God has for people.

**Translation Words**

- obeyed
- laws (p.1337)



- Jesus (p.1310)
- loved (p.1342)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did the young ruler say about the laws that Jesus listed?**

He said he had obeyed those laws ever since he was a boy.

**28:04**

Jesus answered, "If you want to be perfect, then go and sell everything you own and give the money to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come and follow me."

**Translation Notes**

**Jesus answered, "If you want to be perfect, then go and sell everything you own and give the money to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come and follow me."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus answered that if he wanted to be perfect, then he should go and sell everything he owned and give the money to the poor, and he would have treasure in heaven. Then he should come and follow him."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**you**

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the singular form. Jesus was addressing this command to this one man.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

**perfect**

This could mean 'completely righteous.'

**everything you own**

This could mean 'all of your possessions.'

### **the poor**

That is, the poor people.

See TA article: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1163)**

### **treasure in heaven**

The phrase **treasure in heaven** is a metaphor that refers to a reward from God. Alternate translation: "God will reward you in heaven"

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

### **treasure**

This could also be translated as: "riches" or "great wealth."

### **in heaven**

This could also be translated as: "located in heaven when you arrive there." This treasure will exist 'there and then,' as opposed to the wealth that Jesus asked the young man to give up 'here and now.'

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- heaven (p.1285)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What additional thing did Jesus tell the young man to do?**

Jesus told him to sell everything he owned and to give the money to the poor, and then to follow Jesus.

### **What reward did Jesus promise the rich young ruler if he would do this?**

He would have treasure in heaven.

**28:05**



When the young man heard what Jesus said, he became very sad because he was very rich and did not want to give away all the things he possessed. He turned and went away from Jesus.

### **Translation Notes**

#### **heard what Jesus said**

This could mean 'heard Jesus tell him to give away what he owned.'

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Why did the young ruler become sad and then go away from Jesus?**

He was very rich and did not want to give away all the things he possessed.

**28:06**

Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God."

**Translation Notes**

**Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told his disciples that it is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! He said that it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God!**

This is a strong statement that it is extremely hard for rich people to be saved.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**to enter into the kingdom of God**

This can also be translated as: "to become a citizen in God's kingdom."

**it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God**

This is an exaggerated statement in order to emphasize the difficulty of a rich person being saved.

See TA article: **Hyperbole (p.1130)**

### **a camel**

Camels are very large animals that are often used to carry heavy loads. If camels are not known in your language area, a phrase such as 'a very large animal' or 'a beast of burden' could be used. If you choose to substitute the name of some other large animal, such as 'an ox' or 'a donkey,' make sure that the animal would have been known by the people Jesus was talking to.

### **the eye of a needle**

This refers to the tiny hole in the end of a sewing needle. The idea of something as large as a camel going through the eye of a needle is intended to represent something that is impossible.

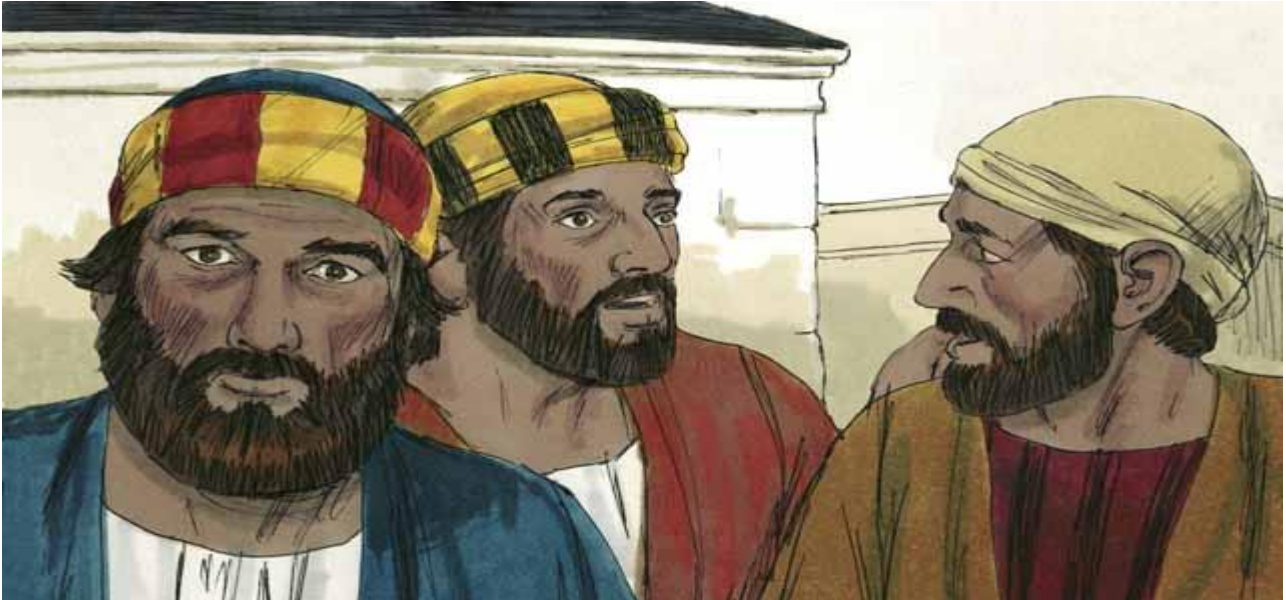
### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- kingdom of God (p.1332)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How difficult is it for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God?**

It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.

**28:07**

When the disciples heard what Jesus said, they were shocked. They said, "If it is like this, who will God save?"

**Translation Notes****they were shocked**

This could mean 'greatly astonished.' They believed that God made people rich because they were more righteous than other people.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**They said, "If it is like this, who will God save?"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "They asked who God would save if it was like this."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**If it is like this, who will God save?**

This could also be translated as: "If God does not allow rich people to have eternal life, how can anyone else be saved?" This is perhaps a rhetorical question that means 'If God does not save rich people, then it seems like he will not save anyone!'

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**save**

Here it refers to God not judging or condemning them for their sin, and allowing them to be citizens in his kingdom.

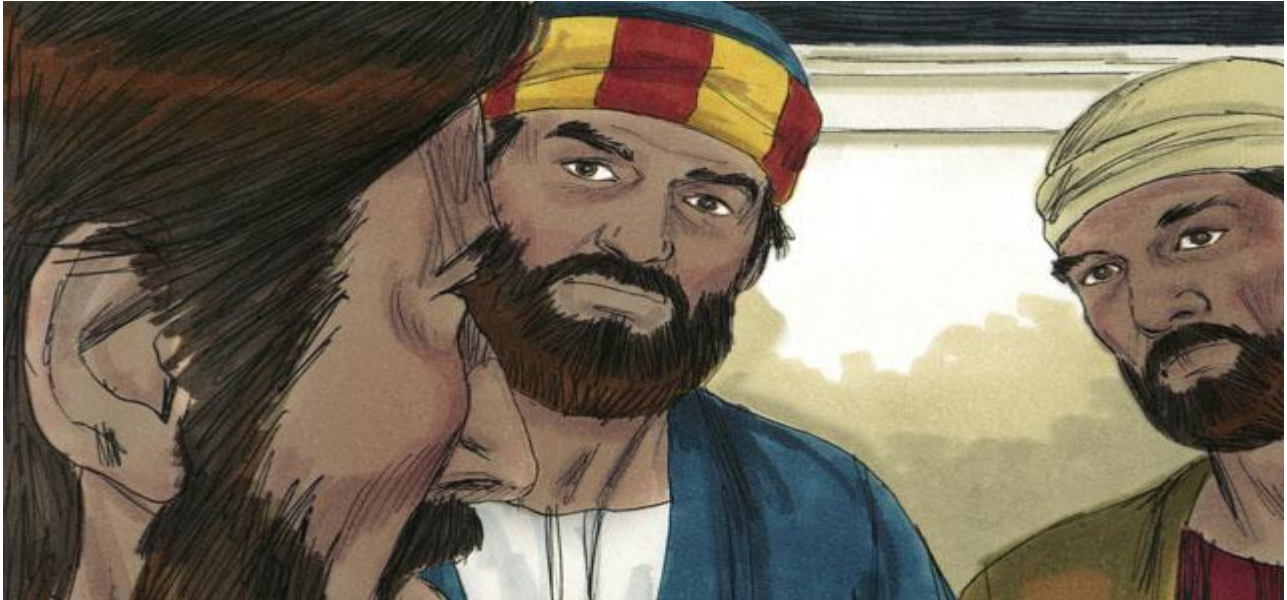
## Translation Words

- disciples (p.1249)
- save (p.1410)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)



**28:08**

Jesus looked at the disciples and said, “It is impossible for people to save themselves. But nothing is impossible for God to do.”

### Translation Notes

**said, “It is impossible for people to save themselves. But nothing is impossible for God to do.”**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “said that it is impossible for people to save themselves, but nothing is impossible for God to do.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**nothing is impossible for God to do**

This could also be translated as: “God is able to do anything, even save a rich person” or “God is able to do impossible things, so he can save even a rich person.”

### Translation Words

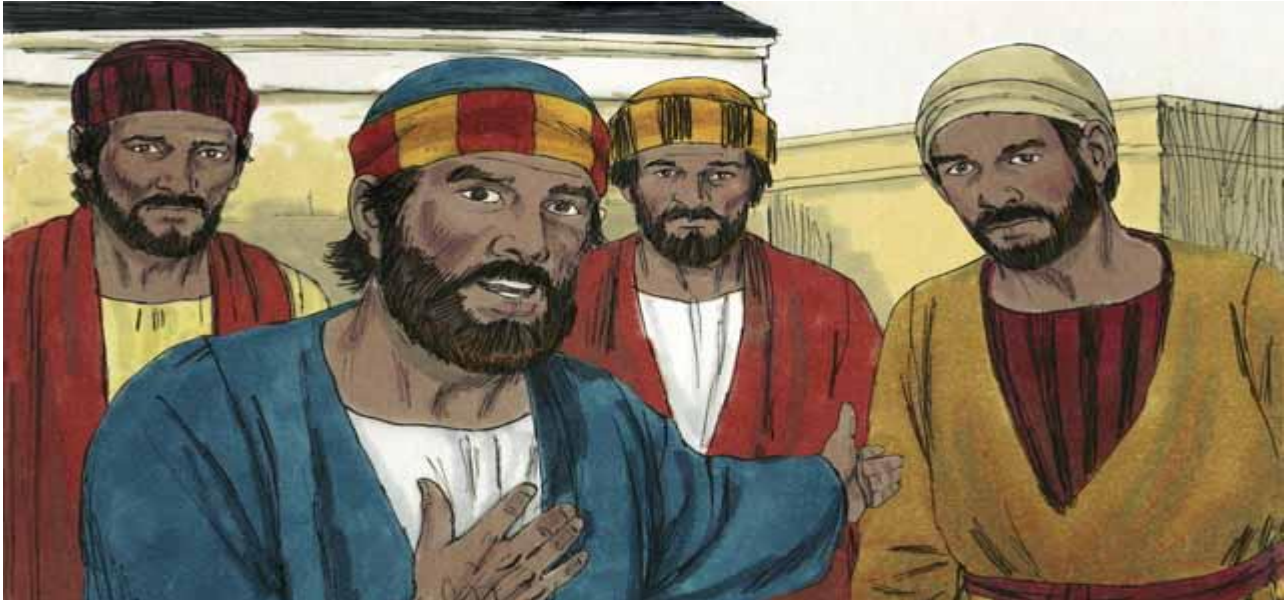
- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- God (p.1272)

### Translation Questions

**Is it possible for a rich man to be saved?**

Yes, everything is possible for God to do.

28:09



Peter said to Jesus, "We disciples have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"

### Translation Notes

**said to Jesus, "We disciples have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "told Jesus that the disciples had left everything and followed him, and asked what their reward would be."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### left everything

This could mean 'left everything behind' or 'given up everything we owned.'

### What will be our reward?

Other ways to say this are: "What reward will we receive" or "How will we be rewarded?" or "What will God give us as a reward?" It may also be necessary to add, "because we have done this?"

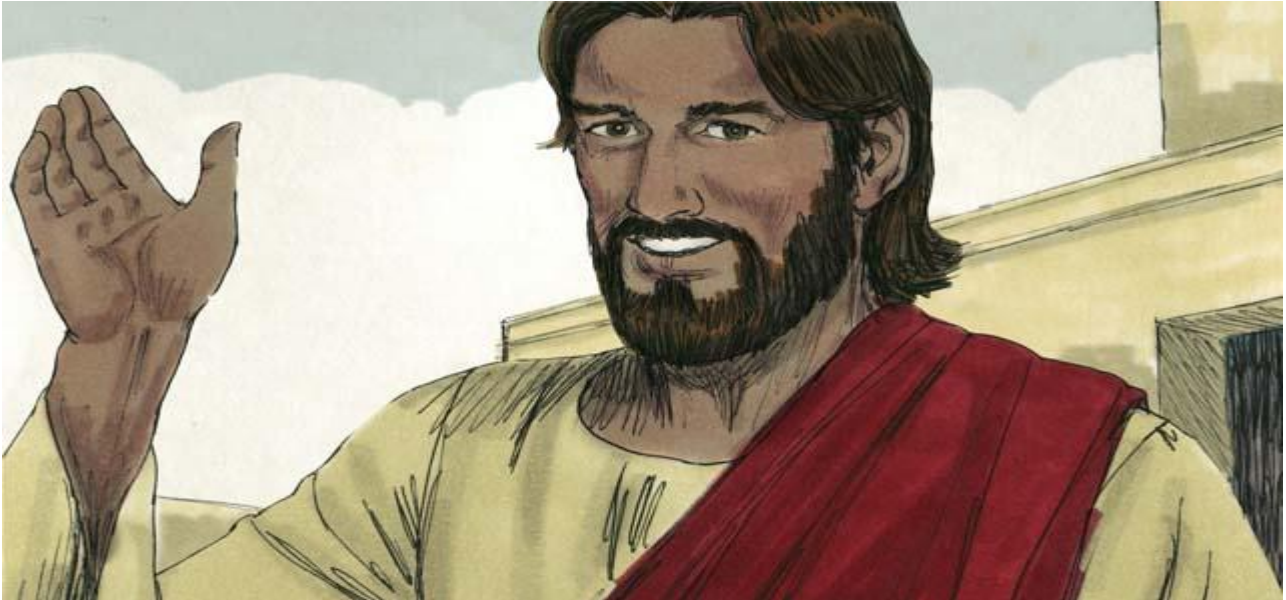
### Translation Words

- Peter (p.1368)
- Jesus (p.1310)

### Translation Questions

**What had the disciples left behind in order to follow Jesus?**

They had left everything.

**28:10**

Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my sake will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life. But many who are first will be last, and many who are last will be first."

**Translation Notes**

**Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my sake will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life. But many who are first will be last, and many who are last will be first."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told them that everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for his sake will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life. He said that many who are first will be last, and many who are last will be first."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**has left**

This could mean 'has left behind' or 'has given up' or 'has counted as less important than God.'

**for my sake**

This may also be translated as: "because of me" or "on my account."

**100 times more**

This could mean 'very much more than he had before.'

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

### **many who are first will be last, and many who are last will be first**

Here **first** and **last** refer to people's status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people's status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. Alternate translation: "But many who seem to be important now will be the least important, and many who seem to be unimportant now will be very important"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### **many who are first will be last**

This could mean 'many people who are important now, will not be important then.'

### **many who are last will be first**

This could mean 'many people who are considered to not be very important on earth will be considered very important in heaven' or 'Many people who are considered now to be of little value on earth will be highly valued in heaven.'

### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- eternal (p.1255)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did Jesus say would be their reward?**

They would receive 100 times more in the next world, and also eternal life.

### **Who else can receive this reward?**

Everyone who leaves houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for the sake of Jesus' name.

## 29. The Story of the Unmerciful Servant

*A Bible story from: Matthew 18:21-35*

### The Story of the Unmerciful Servant

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when a servant did not show mercy" or "What happened when a servant did not show mercy?"

**29:01**

One day, Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? Up to seven times?” Jesus said, “Not seven times, but 70 times seven!” By this, Jesus meant that we should always forgive. Then Jesus told this story.

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? Up to seven times?”**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “called Jesus his master and asked him if he should forgive his brother as many as seven times when he sins against him.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Jesus said, “Not seven times, but 70 times seven!”**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus told him to forgive not only seven times, but 70 times seven!”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**my brother**

This term sometimes included people who were not actually siblings, but who shared another very strong connection such as religion, ethnic background, etc.

## **sins against me**

This could also be translated as: "does something wrong against me."

## **Not seven times, but 70 times seven!**

This could be translated as: "You should not forgive only seven times, rather you should forgive 70 times seven times." Jesus was not talking about an exact number. He was saying that we should forgive people every time they sin against us.

## **70 times**

This could also be written in words: "seventy times."

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

## **By this, Jesus meant that we should always forgive**

This could be translated as: "Jesus wanted to say that we should always forgive anyone who sins against us."

## **this story**

The story is in the form of a parable.

See TA article: **Parables (p.1170)**

## **Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Master (p.1340)
- forgive (p.1266)
- sins (p.1419)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What question did Peter ask Jesus?**

Peter asked Jesus, "How many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me?"

### **How many times did Peter suggest that he should forgive his brother?**

He suggested that he should forgive him seven times.

### **How many times did Jesus say he should forgive his brother?**

Jesus said he must forgive him 70 times seven.

### **What did Jesus mean when he said, 70 times seven?**



He meant that we should always forgive.

29:02



Jesus said, "The kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants. One of his servants owed a huge debt worth 200,000 years' wages."

### Translation Notes

**Jesus said, "The kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants. One of his servants owed a huge debt worth 200,000 years' wages."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus said that the kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants, one of whom owed a huge debt worth 200,000 years' wages."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### **The kingdom of God is like**

Other ways to say this are: "God's rule over people is like" or "The way God rules people can be compared to."

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

### **is like a king who**

This could be translated as: "is like the kingdom of a king who" or "can be compared with the rule of a king who."

### **to settle accounts with his servants**

This could mean 'to collect the debts his servants owed him' or 'to collect the money his servants had borrowed from him.'

## **200,000**

This can be written in words: "two hundred thousand years." It represents an exceptionally long time.

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

### **Translation Words**

- kingdom of God (p.1332)
- king (p.1329)
- servants (p.1413)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**29:03**

“But the servant could not pay his debt, so the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as slaves to pay his debt.’”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues the story.

**the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as slaves to pay his debt.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “the king said to sell this man and his family as slaves to pay his debt.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**Sell this man and his family as slaves**

This was a command from the king.

**to pay his debt**

This could mean ‘to pay back the money he owed to the king.’

**to pay his debt**

It can be stated that the reason the man would be sold was so that the money received from selling him could pay part of what he owed to they king.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## Translation Words

- servant (p.1413)
- king (p.1329)
- servant (p.1413)

## Translation Questions

**Was the servant able to pay his huge debt to the king?**

No, he was not.

**How did the king decide to punish the servant with the huge debt?**

The king ordered that the man and his family be sold as slaves.

29:04



“The servant fell on his knees before the king and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’ The king felt pity for the servant, so he canceled all of his debt and let him go.”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

### fell on his knees

This could mean ‘quickly knelt down on the ground.’ This was a way to show his humility and his desire for the king to help him. Make sure it doesn’t sound like he fell down accidentally.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

### before the king

This means: ‘in front of the king.’

### and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “and asked him to please be patient with him, and he would pay the full amount that he owed him.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

### felt pity

This could mean ‘felt compassion for’ or ‘felt sorry for.’ The king knew that the servant and his family would suffer greatly if they were sold into slavery.

### **canceled all of his debt**

This can be translated as: "said that the servant did not need to pay back any of the money that he owed the king."

### **Translation Words**

- servant (p.1413)
- king (p.1329)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did the king do when the servant begged him to be patient?**

The king felt pity on the servant and canceled his debt.

29:05



“But when the servant went out from the king, he found a fellow servant who owed him a debt worth four months’ wages. The servant grabbed his fellow servant and said, ‘Pay me the money that you owe me!’”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

### a fellow servant

This refers to another man who was also a servant of the king.

### and said, ‘Pay me the money that you owe me!’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “and told him to pay him the money that he owed him.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

## Translation Words

- servant (p.1413)

## Translation Questions

### What did the servant then do to a fellow servant who owed him a small debt?

He grabbed the servant and demanded that he pay the money that he owed him.



**29:06**

“The fellow servant fell on his knees and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’ But instead, the servant threw his fellow servant into prison until he could pay the debt.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues the story.

**The fellow servant**

Translate this phrase in the same way as in [29:05](#).

**fell on his knees**

This phrase has the same meaning as in [29:04](#).

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “and asked him to please be patient with him, and he would pay the full amount that he owed him.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**threw his fellow servant into prison**

This could also be translated as: “had the man put into prison.” The word **threw** is figurative and means it was done in a forceful way.

## Translation Words

- servant (p.1413)

## Translation Questions

**What did the servant do when his fellow servant fell on his knees and asked him to be patient?**

He threw his fellow servant into prison.

29:07



"Some other servants saw what had happened and were greatly disturbed. They went to the king and told him everything."

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

### what had happened

This could mean 'that the servant had refused to cancel the other servant's debt and had put him into prison.'

### were greatly disturbed

This could mean 'deeply grieved' or 'very distressed.'

### everything

This could mean 'they told the king what the servant had done to his fellow servant.'

## Translation Words

- servants (p.1413)
- king (p.1329)

## Translation Questions

**How did the other servants react when he threw his fellow servant in prison?**

They were greatly disturbed and told the king about it.

29:08



“The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you begged me. You should have done the same.’ The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

### called the servant

This could mean ‘commanded the servant to come to him’ or ‘ordered his guards to bring the servant to him.’

### and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you begged me. You should have done the same.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “and called him a wicked servant. He said that he had forgiven him his debts because he begged him. He should have done the same.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

### You wicked servant!

The king said this to emphasize how wicked the servant was.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **begged me**

This could be translated as: “pleaded with me” or “urgently asked me to be merciful.”

### **You should have done the same**

This could mean ‘You should have forgiven the man who owed you, just as I forgave you.’

### **threw**

This could mean ‘commanded his guards to put.’ Consider how **threw** was translated in frame [29:06](#).

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **Translation Words**

- king (p.1329)
- servant (p.1413)
- forgave (p.1266)
- begged (p.1219)
- wicked (p.1258)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How did the king punish the servant who did not forgive his fellow servant?**

He threw him into prison until he could pay back all his debt.

**29:09**

Then Jesus said, "This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."

**Translation Notes****Then Jesus said**

Some languages may add: "to his disciples."

**Jesus said, "This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus said that his heavenly Father will do this to every one of his disciples if they do not forgive their brother from their heart."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**This**

**This** refers back to the way the king punished the unforgiving servant in [29:08](#).

**you & you & your & your**

All occurrences of these words are plural. Jesus is speaking to his disciples, but this parable teaches a general truth that applies to all believers.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

**my heavenly Father**

This could mean 'my Father in heaven.' Jesus is expressing his unique, personal relationship to God the Father.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

### **your brother**

See how you translated this in [29:01](#).

### **from your heart**

The phrase **from your heart** is an idiom that means 'sincerely.' Alternate translation: "with sincerity" or "truly" or "genuinely" or "honestly."

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

### **heart**

Here **heart** is a metonym for a person's inner being.

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- heavenly Father (p.1274)
- forgive (p.1266)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Will God forgive us if we do not forgive others from our heart?**

No, he will not.



## 30. Jesus Feeds Thousands of People

*A Bible story from: Matthew 14:13-21; Mark 6:31-44; Luke 9:10-17; John 6:5-15*

### Jesus Feeds Thousands of People

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus fed thousands of people" or "What happened when Jesus fed thousands of people?"

## 30:01



Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages. When they returned to where Jesus was, they told him what they had done. Then Jesus invited them to go with him to a quiet place across the lake to rest for a while. So, they got into a boat and went to the other side of the lake.

### Translation Notes

#### a quiet place

This refers to a place with few people where they could be by themselves.

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- apostles (p.1211)
- preach (p.1375)

### Translation Questions

#### What did Jesus send his apostles to do in the villages?

He sent them to preach and teach.

#### Why did Jesus take his apostles to the other side of the lake?

He invited them to a quiet place to rest for a while.

**30:02**

But there were many people who saw Jesus and the disciples leave in the boat. These people ran along the shore of the lake to get to the other side ahead of them. So when Jesus and the disciples arrived, a large group of people was already there, waiting for them.

**Translation Notes****General Information**

This is background information about how the crowd came to be with Jesus when he performed a miracle by feeding 5,000 people.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**arrived**

This could mean 'got to the other side of the lake' or 'got there.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)

**Translation Questions****Were Jesus and his apostles able to be alone and rest?**

No, many people ran to the other side ahead of them.

**30:03**

The crowd had over 5,000 men in it, not counting the women and children. Jesus felt great compassion towards the people. To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a shepherd. So he taught them and healed the people among them who were sick.

**Translation Notes****5,000 men**

This can be written in words: "five thousand men"

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**not counting the women and children**

This could mean 'not counting the women and children who were with them' or 'and there were also women and children in addition to the men.' Another way to translate this could also be, "in addition, there were many women and children."

**To Jesus**

This could mean 'Jesus knew that' or 'Jesus understood that.'

**like sheep without a shepherd**

This could be translated as: "vulnerable and lost, just like sheep are when they have no shepherd to take care of them."

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- sheep (p.1260)
- shepherd (p.1416)
- healed

## Translation Questions

**What was Jesus' attitude toward the crowd that was waiting for them?**

He felt great compassion towards them.

**How did Jesus demonstrate his compassion for the people?**

He taught them and healed the sick.

**30:04**

Late in the day, the disciples told Jesus, “It is late and there are no towns nearby. Send the people away so they can go get something to eat.”

**Translation Notes****Late in the day**

This could also be translated as: “When it was almost evening.”

**told Jesus, “It is late and there are no towns nearby. Send the people away so they can go get something to eat.”**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “told Jesus that it was late and there were no towns nearby. So they asked him to send the people away so they could go get something to eat.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Send the people away**

This could be translated as: “Please tell the people to go to a town” or “Shouldn’t you tell the people to go somewhere?” or “Let the people go to a town.” Make sure it sounds like a polite request, not an order.

**Translation Words**

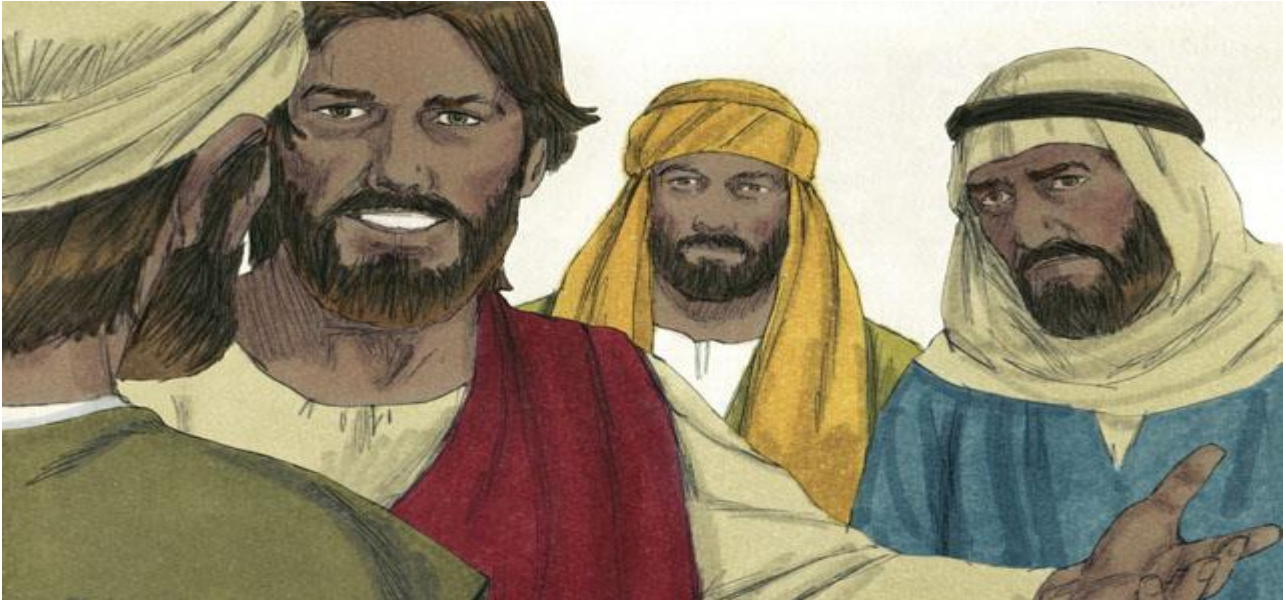
- disciples (p.1249)
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions**

**Why did the disciples want to send the people away?**

It was late in the day and the people needed to get something to eat.

30:05



But Jesus said to the disciples, "You give them something to eat!" They responded, "How can we do that? We only have five loaves of bread and two small fish."

### Translation Notes

**said to the disciples, "You give them something to eat!"**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "told the disciples to give them something to eat."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**You give them something to eat!**

Jesus said this to emphasize that the disciples themselves should find food for the people.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**You**

The word **You** is plural, referring to the disciples.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

**They responded, "How can we do that? We only have five loaves of bread and two small fish."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "They asked how they could do that, since they only had five loaves of bread and two small fish."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**



### **How can we do that?**

This could be translated as: "We cannot do that!" or "It is impossible to do that!" The disciples were not asking an actual question. Rather, they were strongly expressing that they did not think this was possible.

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Why were the disciples unable to feed all the people?**

They only had five loaves of bread and two small fish.

## 30:06



Jesus told his disciples to tell the people in the crowd to sit down on the grass in groups of 50 people each.

### Translation Notes

**Jesus told his disciples to tell the people in the crowd to sit down on the grass in groups of 50 people each.**

This is an indirect quotation. It can be stated as a direct quotation: "Jesus told his disciples, 'Tell the people in the crowd to sit down on the grass in groups of 50 people each.'"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

### 50 people

This can be written as numerals: "fifty people"

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

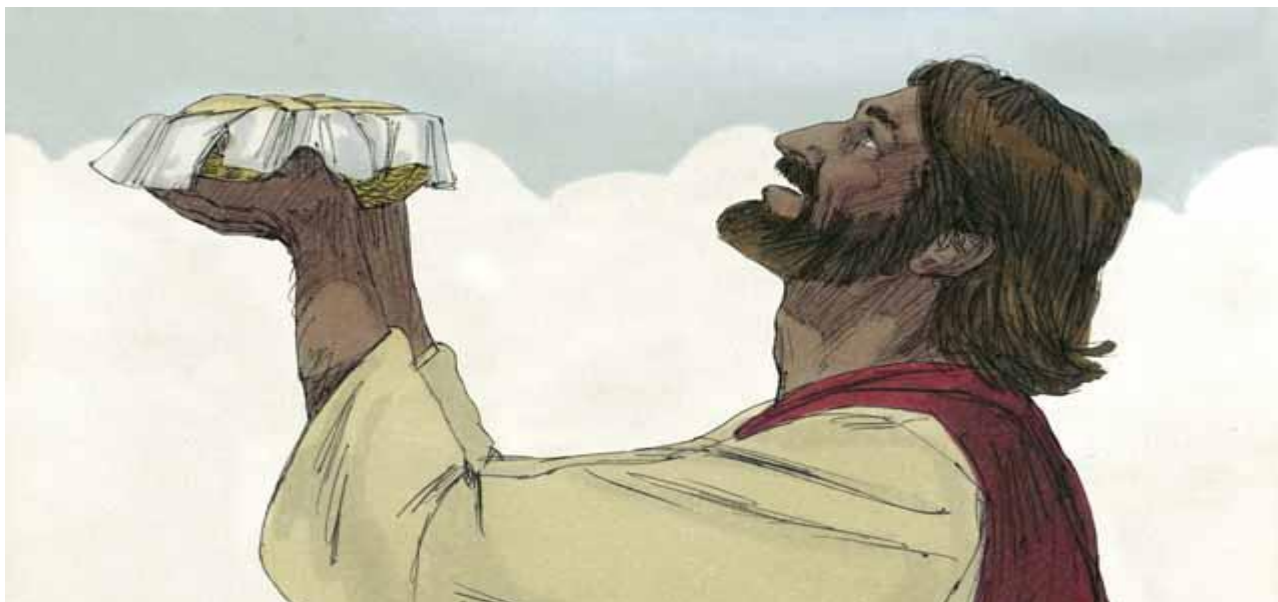
### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 30:07



Then Jesus took the five loaves of bread and the two fish, looked up to heaven, and thanked God for the food.

### Translation Notes

#### **Jesus took the five loaves of bread**

He did not steal the loaves. Alternate translation: "Jesus held the five loaves of bread in his hands"

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

#### **looked up to heaven**

This refers to looking up, toward the sky. The Jews believed that heaven was located above the sky.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- heaven (p.1285)
- God (p.1272)

### Translation Questions

#### **What did Jesus do with the five loaves of bread and the two fish?**

He looked up to heaven and thanked God for the food.

## 30:08



Then Jesus broke the bread and the fish into pieces. He gave the pieces to his disciples to give to the people. The disciples kept passing out the food, and it never ran out! All the people ate and were satisfied.

### Translation Notes

#### **broke the bread and the fish**

This could mean 'tore the bread and the fish.'

#### **it never ran out!**

Another way to say this would be: "there was always more left!"

#### **were satisfied**

This could mean 'were no longer hungry' or 'were not hungry anymore.'

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)

### Translation Questions

#### **What did Jesus do with the five loaves of bread and the two fish after he broke them?**

He thanked His Father in heaven, and gave the pieces to his disciples so they could give them to the people.

## 30:09



After that, the disciples collected the food that had not been eaten. It was enough to fill 12 baskets! All the food came from the five loaves of bread and two fish.

### Translation Notes

#### 12 baskets

This can be stated with words: "twelve baskets"

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

#### A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### Translation Words

- disciples (p.1249)

### Translation Questions

#### How much food was left over after everyone had eaten?

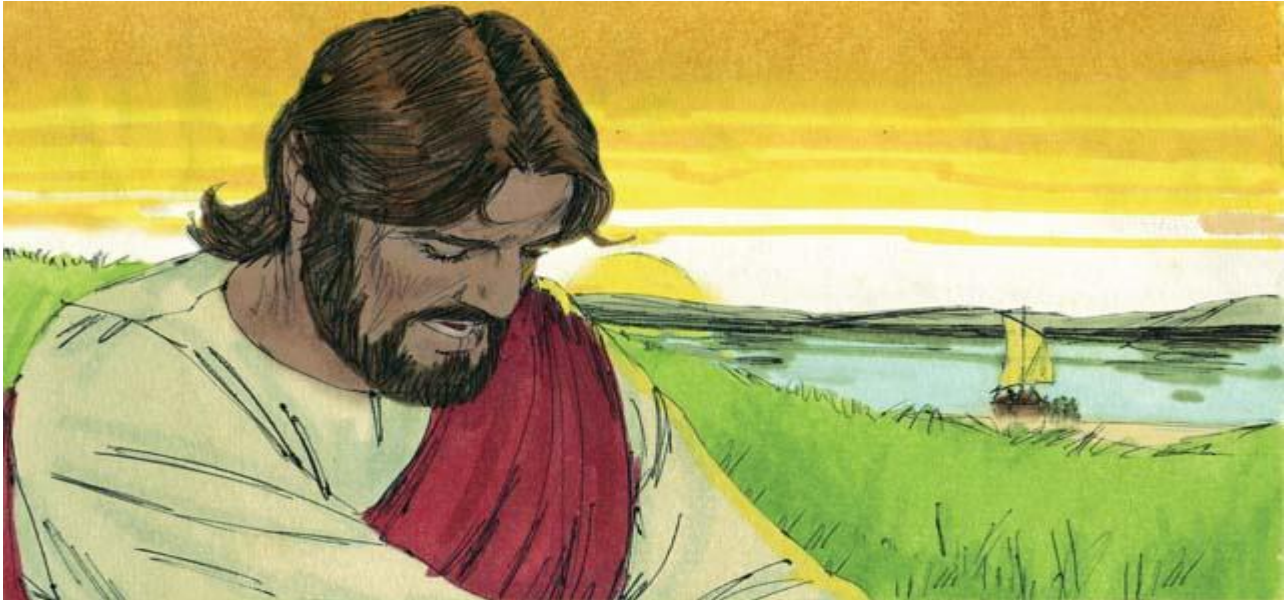
There was enough to fill 12 baskets.

## 31. Jesus Walks on Water

*A Bible story from: Matthew 14:22-33; Mark 6:45-52; John 6:16-21*

### Jesus Walks on Water

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus walked on the sea" or "What happened when Jesus walked on the sea?"

**31:01**

After Jesus fed the crowd, he told the disciples to get into a boat. He told them to sail to the other side of the lake while he stayed behind for a little while. So the disciples left, and Jesus sent the crowd to their homes. After that Jesus went up on a mountainside to pray. He was there all alone, and he prayed until late at night.

**Translation Notes**

**After Jesus fed the crowd, he told the disciples to get into a boat.**

This introduces a new event. Jesus would come to the disciples on the water.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**a mountainside**

This could mean 'the side of a mountain.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- pray (p.1373)

**Translation Questions**

**What did Jesus tell the disciples to do while he dismissed the crowd?**

He told them to get into a boat and to sail to the other side of the lake.

**What did Jesus do after he sent the disciples away in their boat?**

He went up on a mountainside alone to pray.



## 31:02



During this time, the disciples were rowing their boat, but the wind was blowing hard against them. When it was late in the night, they had only reached the middle of the lake.

### Translation Notes

#### During this time

This could mean 'While Jesus was praying on the mountainside.'

#### rowing their boat

The boat had a sail, but it would not have worked when the wind was against them.

### Translation Words

- disciples (p.1249)

### Translation Questions

#### What problem did the disciples have during the night?

The wind was against them, so they only reached the middle of the lake.

## 31:03



At that time, Jesus finished praying and started to go back to meet his disciples. He walked on top of the water toward their boat.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- praying (p.1373)

### Translation Questions

**How did Jesus get to their boat?**

He walked to it on top of the water.

**31:04**

Then the disciples saw him. They were very afraid because they thought he was a ghost. Jesus knew that they were afraid, so he called out to them and said, “Do not be afraid. It is I!”

**Translation Notes****a ghost**

This could mean ‘a spirit.’ They thought Jesus was a spirit, since normally a human being cannot walk on water.

**so he called out to them and said, “Do not be afraid. It is I!”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “so he called out to them and told them not to be afraid, for it was he!”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Do not be afraid**

For some languages, it may be more natural to say here: “Stop being afraid.”

**It is I!**

For some, it might be more natural to translate this as: “It is me, Jesus.”

**Translation Words**

- disciples (p.1249)
- Jesus (p.1310)

## Translation Questions

**How did the disciples react when they first saw Jesus?**

They were very afraid because they thought he was a ghost.

**What did Jesus say to them to calm their fear?**

He said, "Do not be afraid. It is I!"

31:05



Then Peter said to Jesus, “Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water.” Jesus told Peter, “Come!”

### Translation Notes

#### if it is you

This could mean ‘if it is really you, and not a ghost.’

#### Jesus told Peter, “Come!”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus told Peter to come to him!”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

#### Come!

This could mean ‘Come here’ or ‘Come to me’ or ‘Come, walk to me.’

### Translation Words

- Peter (p.1368)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Master (p.1340)

### Translation Questions

#### Why did Jesus tell Peter to come to him on the water?

Jesus told Peter to come to him because Peter asked him to do that.

### 31:06



So, Peter got out of the boat and started walking to Jesus on the surface of the water. But after walking a short distance, he turned his eyes away from Jesus and began to look at the waves and to feel the strong wind.

#### Translation Notes

**turned his eyes away from**

This expression means 'looked away from.' It could also be translated as: "stopped looking at."

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

#### Translation Words

- Peter (p.1368)
- Jesus (p.1310)

#### Translation Questions

**What did Peter begin to notice when he turned his eyes away from Jesus?**

He began to look at the waves and to feel the strong wind.

**31:07**

Then Peter became afraid and began to sink in the water. He cried out, “Master, save me!” Right away, Jesus reached out and grabbed him. Then he said to Peter, “You have so little faith! Why did you not trust me to keep you safe?”

**Translation Notes****You have so little faith!**

This may also be translated as: “You have so little faith in me!” or “You do not trust me very much!”

**Why did you not trust me to keep you safe?**

Jesus uses a question to tell Peter that he should not have doubted. Alternate translation: “you should not have doubted!”

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**Why did you not trust me to keep you safe?**

You can make explicit what Peter should not have doubted. Alternate translation: “you should not have doubted that I could keep you from sinking!”

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- Master (p.1340)
- save (p.1410)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- faith (p.1261)

## Translation Questions

**What happened to Peter when he became afraid of the wind and the waves?**

He began to sink into the water.

**What did Jesus do when Peter called out for help?**

Jesus reached out and grabbed Peter.

**What did Jesus say as a rebuke to Peter?**

Jesus said, "You have so little faith! Why did you not trust me to keep you safe?"



**31:08**

Then Peter and Jesus got into the boat, and the wind immediately stopped blowing. The water became calm. The disciples were amazed and bowed down to Jesus. They worshiped him and said to him, "Truly, you are the Son of God."

**Translation Notes****The disciples were amazed**

If you need to be more specific, it can be stated what they were amazed by. Alternate translation: "They were completely amazed at what he had done"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**They worshiped him and said to him, "Truly, you are the Son of God."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "They worshiped him and said to him that he was truly the Son of God."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Truly, you are the Son of God**

Other ways to say this would be: "You really are the Son of God" or "It really is true that you are the Son of God."

**the Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- worshiped (p.1383)
- Truly
- Son of God (p.1423)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What happened after Jesus got into the boat?**

The wind immediately stopped blowing and the water became calm.

### **How did the disciples respond to this miracle?**

They bowed down to Jesus, worshiped him, and said, "Truly, you are the Son of God."

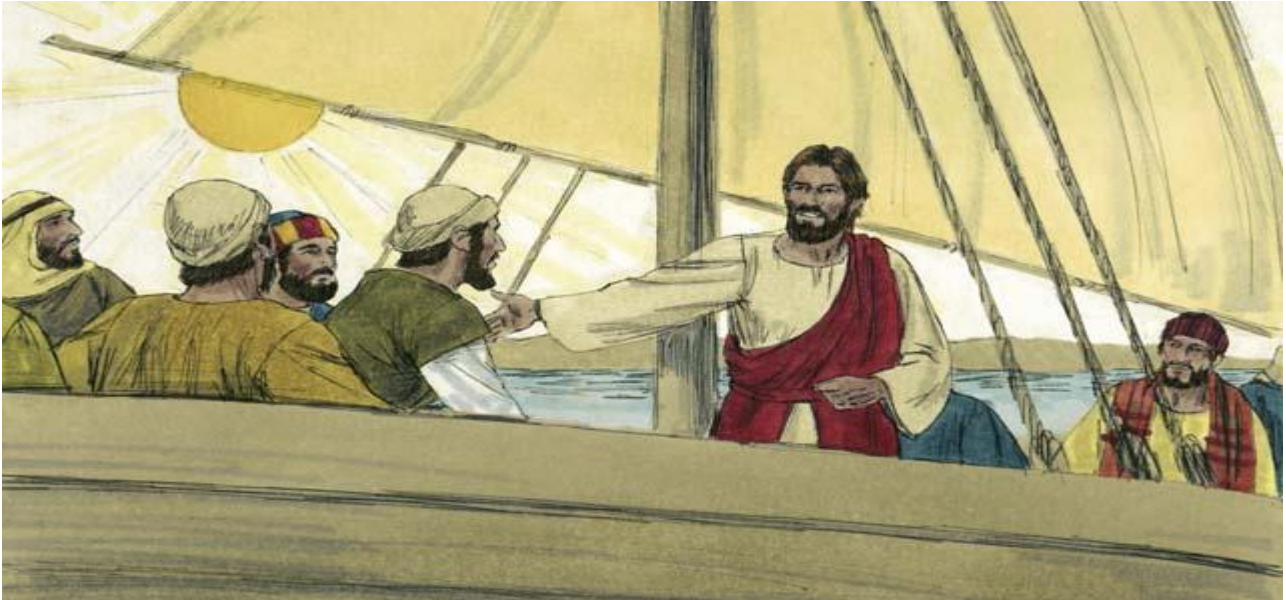
## 32. Jesus Heals a Demon-Possessed Man & a Sick Woman

*A Bible story from: Matthew 8:28-34; 9:20-22; Mark 5; Luke 8:26-48*

### Jesus Heals a Demon-Possessed Man & a Sick Woman

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus healed a sick woman and a man who was possessed by a demon" or "What happened when Jesus healed a sick woman and a man who was possessed by a demon?"

## 32:01



Jesus and his disciples went in their boat to the region where the Gerasene people lived. They reached land and got out of their boat.

### Translation Notes

#### the Gerasene people

The Gerasenes lived in an area along the eastern shore of the Sea of Galilee. They were descendants of the Jews, but we know few details about them.

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 32:02



Now there was a man there who was demon possessed.

### Translation Notes

#### **was demon possessed**

This could mean 'had demons in him' or 'was controlled by evil spirits.'

### Translation Words

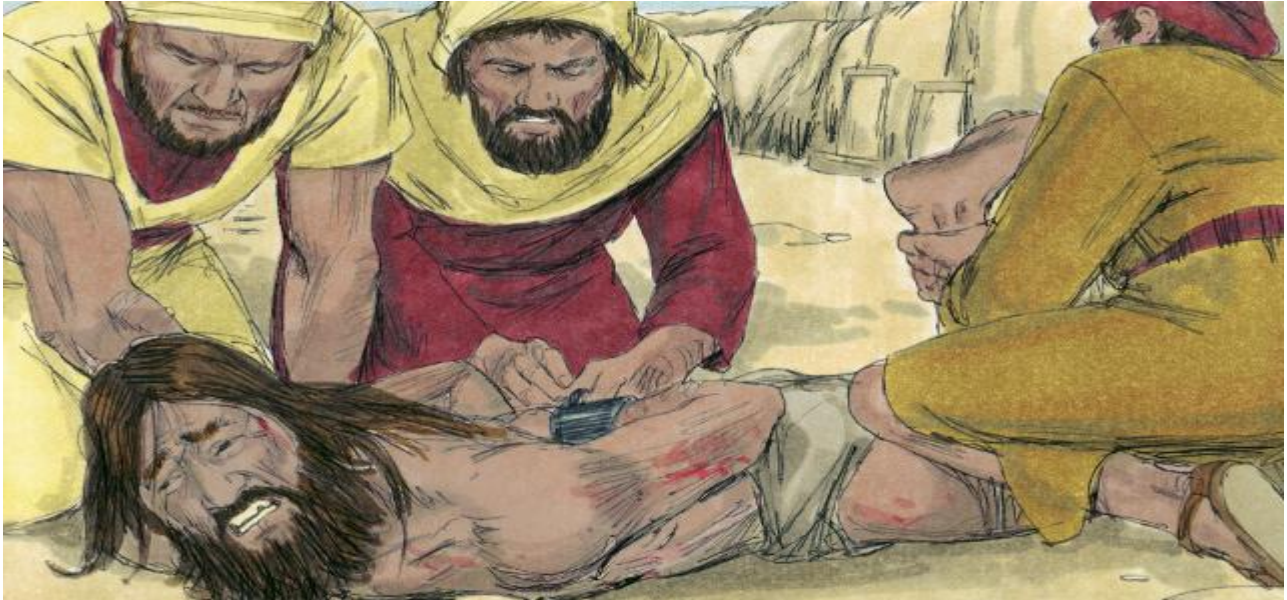
- demon possessed (p.1247)

### Translation Questions

**Whom did Jesus meet when he arrived where the Gerasene people lived?**

He met a man there who was demon possessed.

### 32:03



This man was so strong that nobody could control him. Sometimes people even fastened his arms and legs with chains, but he kept breaking them.

#### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

#### Translation Words

- demon possessed (p.1247)

#### Translation Questions

**Why were people unable to restrain the demon-possessed man?**

The demon made him so strong that he would break the chains they used to bind him.

**32:04**



The man lived among the tombs in the area. This man would scream all day and all night. He did not wear clothes, and he often cut himself with stones.

### **Translation Notes**

#### **among the tombs**

This could mean 'near the tombs' or 'around the tombs.'

### **Translation Words**

- tombs (p.1282)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How did the man act?**

He lived among the tombs, screaming all day and night, not wearing clothes, and cutting himself with stones.

## 32:05



This man ran up to Jesus and knelt down in front of him. Then Jesus spoke to the demon in the man and said, "Come out of this man!"

### Translation Notes

#### **knelt down in front of him**

This was a symbolic action to show that he was submitting to Jesus and asking for his help.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

#### **said, "Come out of this man!"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "told him to come out of the man!"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

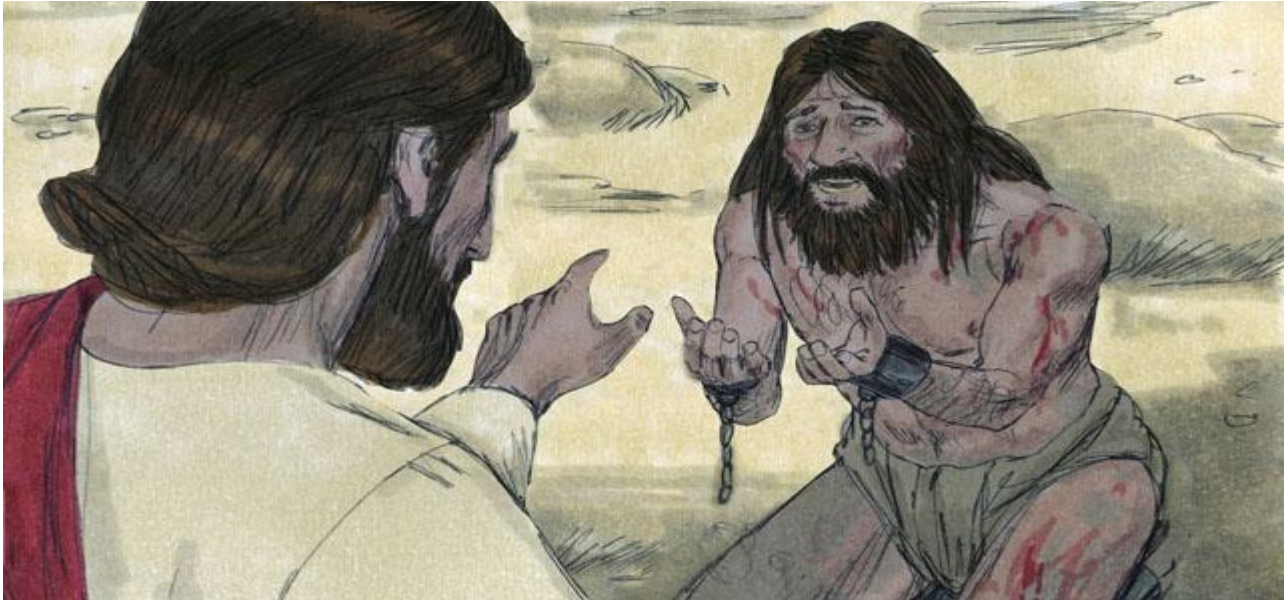
### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- demon (p.1246)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)



**32:06**

The demon cried out in a loud voice, “What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!” Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is Legion, because we are many.”

**Translation Notes****cried out**

This could mean ‘shouted’ or ‘exclaimed.’

**What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?**

This is not a real question asking for information. The demon was terrified that Jesus would judge him. Some languages will have to express this as a statement such as: “Please do not judge me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God!”

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**What do you want with me**

This expression means ‘What are you going to do to me?’

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

**Son of the Most High God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

## the Most High God

This could mean 'the Supreme God' or 'the Most Sovereign God' or 'the Most Powerful God.' The meaning of **high** here refers to God's greatness. It does not refer to altitude or being tall.

### **"My name is Legion, because we are many."**

A legion was a group of several thousand soldiers in the Roman army. The name **Legion** is a metaphor that speaks of the demons as if they were a large group of soldiers.

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

## Legion

This was the name of the group of demons, but it also indicates that the evil spirits were very numerous. Use the name if the note that follows will make the meaning clear in your language. If not, you may need to translate the word as something like 'Army' or 'Crowd' or 'Thousands.'

### **we are many**

This could mean 'there are many of us' or 'we are many demons.'

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Son of the Most High God (p.1423)
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

### **What was the demon's name?**

His name was Legion.

### **What did the name Legion mean?**

A 'legion' was a group of several thousand soldiers in the Roman army. This name meant that there were many demons in the man.

**32:07**

The demons begged Jesus, "Please do not send us out of this region!" There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So the demons begged Jesus, "Please send us into the pigs instead!" Jesus said, "Alright, go into them!"

### Translation Notes

#### **do not send us**

This could mean 'do not make us go.'

#### **There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill.**

This is background information about the pigs.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

#### **Please send us**

This could mean 'Please let us go.' Here **us** is exclusive. It refers to the demons only, and does not include Jesus.

See TA article: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1117)**

#### **instead**

This could mean 'instead of making us go away.'

### Translation Words

- demons (p.1246)
- begged (p.1219)
- Jesus (p.1310)

## Translation Questions

**Where did the demons beg Jesus to send them when they left the man?**

They asked Jesus to send them into a herd of pigs.

**32:08**

So the demons came out of the man and entered the pigs. The pigs ran down a steep bank into the lake and drowned. There were about 2,000 pigs in the herd.

**Translation Notes****2,000 pigs**

This can be written in words: "two thousand pigs"

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

**herd**

This could mean 'herd of pigs' or 'group of pigs.' Many languages have specific names for groups of animals, such as "flock of sheep," "herd of cattle," "pack of dogs," and "school of fish." Use a word that can appropriately be used for a large group of pigs.

**Translation Words**

- demons (p.1246)

**Translation Questions****What happened to the pigs when the demons entered them?**

They ran down a steep bank into the lake and drowned.

**How many pigs drowned when the demons sent them into the lake?**

There were 2,000 pigs in the herd that drowned.

**32:09**

There were people taking care of those pigs. When they saw what happened, they ran into the town. There they told everyone what Jesus had done. The people from the town came and saw the man who used to have the demons. He was sitting calmly, wearing clothes, and acting like a normal person.

### Translation Notes

#### **what happened**

This could mean 'how Jesus sent the demons out of the man and into the pigs.'

#### **who used to have the demons**

This could mean 'in whom the demons had lived' or 'who had been controlled by the evil spirits.'

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- demons (p.1246)

### Translation Questions

#### **How did the man behave after the demons left him?**

He sat calmly, wore clothes, and acted like a normal person.

**32:10**

The people were very afraid and asked Jesus to leave. So Jesus got into the boat. The man who used to have the demons begged to go along with Jesus.

**Translation Notes****The people**

Some languages may prefer to say: "The people from that region" or "The Gerasene people."

**were very afraid and asked Jesus to leave**

This is an ellipse. The missing information can be stated: "were very afraid of Jesus and asked him to leave."

See TA article: **Ellipsis (p.1108)**

**begged to go along with Jesus**

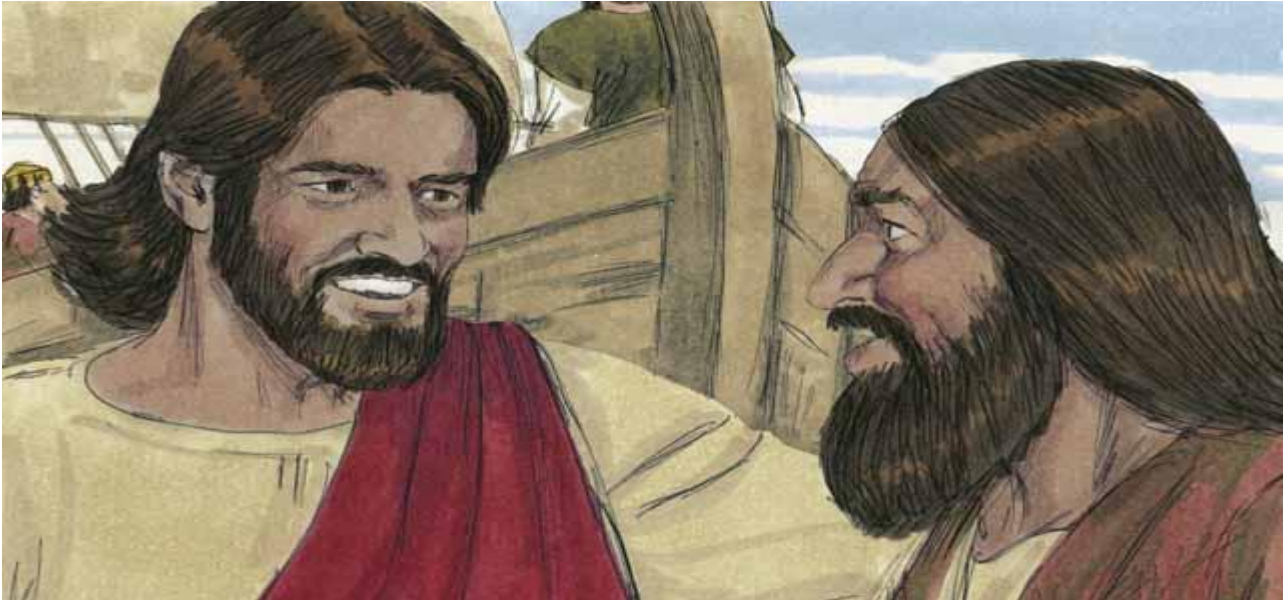
This could mean 'begged Jesus to let him go with him' or 'earnestly asked Jesus if he could go with him.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- begged (p.1219)

**Translation Questions****How did the people react when they saw the man who was healed and the dead pigs?**

They were afraid and asked Jesus to leave them.

**32:11**

But Jesus said to him, “No. I want you to go home and tell everyone what God has done for you. Tell them how he has had mercy on you.”

**Translation Notes**

**Jesus said to him, “No. I want you to go home and tell everyone what God has done for you. Tell them how he has had mercy on you.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus told him to go home and tell everyone what God has done for him, and to tell them how God had mercy on him.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**how he has had mercy on you**

This can be translated as: “how he has shown mercy to you” or “that he has been merciful to you.”

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- mercy (p.1346)

**Translation Questions**

**What did Jesus tell the healed man to do instead of going with Jesus?**

Jesus told him to go home and tell his friends and family what God had done for him and how God had mercy on him.



## 32:12



So the man went away and told everyone about what Jesus had done for him. Everyone who heard his story was amazed.

### Translation Notes

#### heard his story

This could mean 'heard the man tell what had happened to him.'

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**32:13**

Jesus returned to the other side of the lake. After he arrived there, a large crowd gathered around him and pressed in on him. In the crowd was a woman who had suffered from a bleeding problem for 12 years. She had paid all of her money to doctors so they would heal her, but she only got worse.

**Translation Notes****Jesus returned to the other side of the lake**

It is implied that the disciples were with Jesus. This can be clearly stated: "Jesus and his disciples returned to the other side of the lake"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**pressed in on him**

This could mean 'pushed tightly against him' or 'crowded in tightly around him.'

**In the crowd was a woman**

This introduces the woman as a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**a bleeding problem**

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition.

See TA article: **Euphemism (p.1112)**

### **she only got worse**

This could mean 'her condition only got worse' or 'her health got worse instead of better' or 'instead she became more sick.'

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- heal

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**32:14**

She had heard that Jesus had healed many sick people and thought, 'I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be healed too!' So she came up behind Jesus and touched his clothes. As soon as she touched them, the bleeding stopped!

**Translation Notes**

**I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be healed too!**

She said this to herself before she touched Jesus' garment. This tells why she touched Jesus' garment.

See TA article: **Order of Events (p.1168)**

**if I can just touch Jesus' clothes**

According to Jewish law, she was not supposed to touch anyone. She touches his clothes so that Jesus' power would heal her and yet (she thought) he would not know that she touched him.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**I will be healed**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will heal me" or "his power will heal me"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- healed

### **Translation Questions**

**Why did the woman with the bleeding problem come to Jesus?**

She thought that if she touched Jesus' clothes, she would be healed.

**What happened as soon as the woman touched Jesus' clothes?**

Her bleeding stopped.

**32:15**

Immediately, Jesus realized that power had gone out from him. So he turned around and asked, “Who touched me?” The disciples replied, “There are many people crowding around you and bumping into you. Why did you ask, ‘Who touched me?’”

**Translation Notes****power had gone out from him**

This may be translated as: “healing power had flowed from him into someone else” or “his power had healed someone.” Jesus did not lose any power because of this.

**he turned around and asked, “Who touched me?”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “he turned around and asked who touched him.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Why did you ask, ‘Who touched me?’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Why did you ask who touched you?”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- power
- disciples (p.1249)

## Translation Questions

**How did Jesus know someone had touched him?**

He realized that power had gone out from him.

## 32:16



The woman fell on her knees before Jesus, shaking and very afraid. Then she told him what she had done, and that she had been healed. Jesus said to her, "Your faith has healed you. Go in peace."

### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- power
- disciples (p.1249)

### Translation Questions

**What did Jesus say to the woman when she fell down before him?**

He told her, "Your faith has healed you. Go in peace."



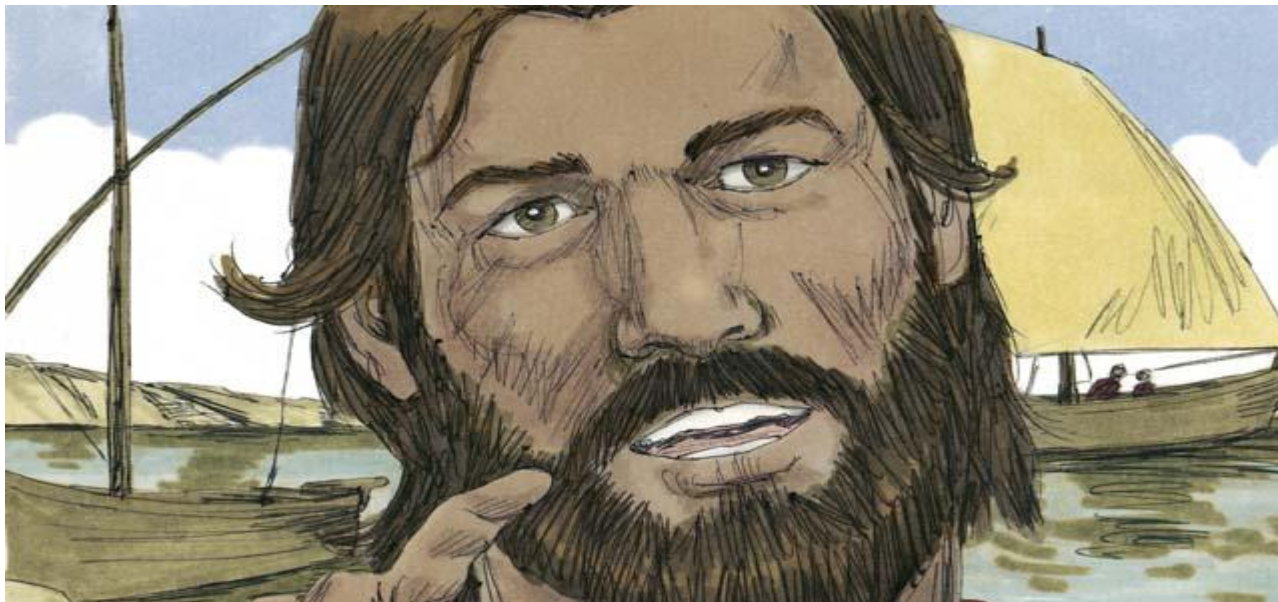
## 33. The Story of the Farmer

*A Bible story from: Matthew 13:1-23; Mark 4:1-20; Luke 8:4-15*

### The Story of the Farmer

This title can also be translated as: "About a farmer who planted some seed" or "What happened when a farmer planted some seed?"

## 33:01



One day, Jesus was near the shore of the lake. He was teaching a very large crowd of people. So many people came to hear him that Jesus did not have enough room to speak to them all. So he got into a boat in the water. There he sat and taught the people.

### Translation Notes

#### One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 33:02



Jesus told this story. "A farmer went out to plant some seed. As he was spreading the seed by hand, some of the seed happened to fall on the path. But birds came and ate all of that seed."

### Translation Notes

#### **this story**

The story is in the form of a parable.

See TA article: **Parables (p.1170)**

#### **spreading the seed by hand**

This could mean 'throwing the seed on the soil' or 'covering all of his crop soil with seed.' This is the way that farmers in the ancient Middle East typically planted grain-bearing crops.

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)

### Translation Questions

#### **What happened to the seed that fell on the path?**

The birds came and ate all of it.

### 33:03



“Other seed fell on rocky ground, where there was very little soil. The seed in the rocky ground sprouted quickly, but its roots were not able to go deep into the soil. When the sun came up and it got hot, the plants withered and died.”

#### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

#### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)

#### Translation Questions

**What happened to the seed that fell on the rocky ground?**

It sprouted quickly, but then withered and died when it got hot.

### 33:04



“Still other seed fell among thorn bushes. This seed began to grow, but the thorns choked it out. So the plants that grew from the seed in the thorny ground did not produce any grain.”

#### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

#### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)

#### Translation Questions

**What happened to the seed that fell among thorn bushes?**

It began to grow, but the thorns choked it out.

## 33:05



“Other seed fell into good soil. This seed grew up and produced 30, 60, or even 100 times as much grain as the seed that had been planted. Whoever wants to follow God, let him pay attention to what I am saying!”

### Translation Notes

#### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

#### good soil

This could mean ‘fertile soil’ or ‘soil that was good for growing plants.’

#### 30, 60, or even 100 times

This can be written in words: “thirty, sixty, or even one hundred times”

See TA article: **Numbers (p.1165)**

### Translation Words

- good (p.1280)

### Translation Questions

#### What happened to the seed that fell on the good soil?

It grew up and produced 30, 60, or 100 times as much grain as the seed that had been planted.

**33:06**

This story confused the disciples. So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it. Then the devil takes the word away from him. That is, the devil keeps him from understanding it."

**Translation Notes****This story confused the disciples.**

This could mean 'The disciples did not understand this story.'

**The seed is the word of God**

The **word** represents God's message. Sowing the message represents teaching it. Alternate translation: "The sowing of the seed is teaching people God's message"

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it**

The **path** represents the person who hears God's word. Alternate translation: "The path is like the person who hears God's message"

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**is a person**

This comparison can also be translated as: "is like a person" or "represents a person" or "refers to a person" or "is speaking about a person."

### **takes the word away from him**

This may also be translated as: "takes God's word away, causing him to forget it" or "steals the word from his heart so he won't believe it and be saved." You may also add the following: 'just as birds eat up the seed that falls on a path.'

### **Translation Words**

- disciples (p.1249)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- word of God (p.1439)
- devil (p.1407)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Did the disciples understand the meaning of the story?**

No, they were confused.

#### **What does the seed represent in the story?**

The seed is the word of God.

#### **What does the path represent?**

The path is the person who hears the word, but does not understand it, and the devil takes it away from him.



**33:07**

“The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he suffers hardships, or when other people make him suffer, he falls away from God. That is, he stops trusting in God.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues to explain the story.

**The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy**

The **rocky ground** represents the person who hears and accepts God’s word for a short time. Alternate translation: “The rocky ground is like the person who hears God’s message and accepts it with joy”

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**The rocky ground**

See how you translated this term in [33:03](#).

**is a person**

See how you translated this comparison in [33:06](#).

**accepts it with joy**

This metaphor speaks of believing God’s word as accepting it. Alternate translation: “joyfully believes it” or “joyfully agrees that it is true”

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

### **he suffers hardships, or when other people make him suffer**

It may be helpful to explain that tribulation comes because people believe God's message. Alternate translation: "he suffers because he believe God's message"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### **falls away**

This could mean 'no longer follows God or obeys him' or 'stops following or obeying God.'

### **Translation Words**

- God's word (p.1439)
- joy (p.1320)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What does the rocky ground represent?**

The rocky ground is the person who hears the word and accepts it with joy, but falls away when hardship and persecution comes.

**33:08**

“The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word. But he begins to worry about many things, and he tries to make a lot of money, and he tries to get many things. After some time, he is not able to love God any longer. So what he learned from God’s word does not make him able to please God. He is like wheat stalks that do not produce any grain.”

**Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

**Translation Words**

- God’s word (p.1439)
- joy (p.1320)

**Translation Questions****What does the thorny ground represent?**

The thorny ground is the person who hears the word, but as time passes, he begins to worry about many things, and he tries to make a lot of money, and he tries to get many things, so that he is not able to please God any longer.

**33:09**



“But the seed in the good soil is a person who hears the word of God, believes it, and produces fruit.”

### **Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

### **Translation Words**

- God’s word (p.1439)
- joy (p.1320)

### **Translation Questions**

**What does the seed in the good soil represent?**

The seed in the good soil is the person who hears the word, believes it, and produces fruit.

## **34. Jesus Teaches Other Stories**

*A Bible story from: Matthew 13:31-46; Mark 4:26-34; Luke 13:18-21; 18:9-14*

### **Jesus Teaches Other Stories**

This title can also be translated as: "About other stories that Jesus taught" or "What other stories did Jesus teach?"

**34:01**

Jesus told many other stories about the kingdom of God. For example, he said, “The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field. You know that the mustard seed is the smallest seed of all.”

**Translation Notes****stories**

Jesus used these stories as parables to teach truths about God’s kingdom. It is not clear if the events actually happened or not. If your language has a term that includes both fictional and real stories, you should use it here.

See TA article: **Parables (p.1170)**

**The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed**

This simile speaks of the kingdom of God as if it were a mustard seed.

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

**the mustard seed is the smallest seed of all**

Mustard seeds were the smallest seeds known to the original hearers.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**a mustard seed**

This probably refers to the seed of the black mustard plant, which has tiny seeds that rapidly grow into very large plants. If there is a word for this plant in your language, you should use it. If not, you may need to substitute the name of another plant which has the same characteristics.

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

### **the smallest seed of all**

That means the smallest of all the seeds that people plant.

### **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- kingdom of God (p.1332)

### **Translation Questions**

**How does a mustard seed compare to other seeds?**

It is the smallest seed of all.

## 34:02



“But when the mustard seed grows, it becomes the largest of all of the garden plants, big enough that even the birds come and rest in its branches.”

### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- kingdom of God (p.1332)

### Translation Questions

**What happens to a mustard seed when it grows?**

It becomes the largest of all the garden plants.



**34:03**

Telling another story, Jesus said, “The kingdom of God is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”

**Translation Notes****story**

The story is in the form of a parable. See how you translated **story** in [34:01](#).

See TA article: **Parables (p.1170)**

**The kingdom of God is like yeast**

The kingdom of God is spoken of as if it were yeast that is mixed into dough.

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

**yeast**

This can also be translated as: “leaven” or “the little bit of leaven.” It is added to bread dough to make it rise. A little bit of yeast mixed into a large amount of dough makes the whole batch of dough rise.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**bread dough**

This is a mixture of flour and liquid that can be shaped and baked into bread. If you do not have words for dough or flour, you can borrow a word for flour or call it ‘ground-up grain.’

**it spreads throughout the dough**

This could mean ‘every part of the dough has yeast in it’ or ‘the yeast grows throughout all the dough.’

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- kingdom of God (p.1332)

## Translation Questions

**What happens to yeast when it is mixed into bread dough?**

It spreads throughout the dough, causing it to rise.

**34:04**

“The kingdom of God is also like treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and wanted it very much. So he buried it again. He was so filled with joy that he went and sold everything he had so he could buy that field where the treasure was.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus told another story.

**The kingdom of God is also like treasure**

The kingdom of God is spoken of as if it were a hidden treasure in a field.

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

**treasure**

This means something that is very valuable.

**buried it again**

It is also possible to add: “so that no one else would find it.”

**filled with joy**

Other ways to say this are: “very happy” or “excited.”

### **so he could buy that field where the treasure was**

The implied information is that the person buys the field to take possession of the hidden treasure. This can be clearly stated: "so he could buy that field to make the treasure his own."

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### **Translation Words**

- kingdom of God (p.1332)
- joy (p.1320)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **What did the man do after he found the treasure that was hidden in the field?**

He buried it again, sold all that he had, and used the money to buy the field.

## 34:05



“The kingdom of God is also like a perfect pearl of great value. When a pearl merchant found it, he sold all that he had so he could buy it.”

### Translation Notes

#### General Information

Jesus continues with another story about the kingdom of God.

#### The kingdom of God is also like a perfect pearl of great value

The kingdom of God is spoken of as if it were a perfect pearl that was worth a lot of money.

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

#### a perfect pearl

This means ‘a pearl without any defects.’

#### a pearl

If pearls are unknown, this can be translated as: “a beautiful stone” or “a beautiful stone-like thing.”

#### of great value

This could mean ‘that was very valuable’ or ‘that was worth a lot of money.’

### **a pearl merchant**

This could mean 'a pearl dealer' or 'a pearl trader.' This refers to a person whose business is buying and selling pearls.

### **Translation Words**

- kingdom of God (p.1332)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did the pearl merchant do when he found a perfect pearl?**

He sold all that he had and used the money to buy it.

**34:06**

There were some people who thought God would accept them because they were doing good things. These people despised others who did not do those good things. So Jesus told them this story: "There were two men, both of whom went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader."

**Translation Notes****Jesus told them this story**

Jesus told this story in the form of a parable. It may or may not refer to an event that actually happened.

See TA article: **Parables (p.1170)**

**story**

See how you translated this term in [34:01](#).

**despised others**

This could mean 'considered other people to be inferior to them' or 'looked down on other people.'

**a tax collector & a religious leader**

Religious leaders thought that they themselves were the best examples of righteous good people, and they thought that tax collectors were the most unrighteous sinners.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Temple (p.1430)

- pray (p.1373)
- religious leader (p.1313)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **To whom did Jesus tell the story of the two men praying at the Temple?**

He told the story to people who thought God would accept them because they were doing good things, and who despised other people.



**34:07**

“The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector over there.’”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues the story.

**The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector over there.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “The religious leader prayed and thanked God that he was not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like the tax collector.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**The religious leader prayed like this**

Other ways to say this are: “This is how the religious leader prayed” or “The religious leader prayed in this way.”

**I am not a sinner like**

This could mean ‘I am not sinful like’ or ‘I am righteous, not like.’

**such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector**

The Pharisees believed that tax collectors were as sinful as robbers, unrighteous people, and adulterers. This could be made explicit. Alternate translation: "and I am certainly not like this sinful tax collector who cheats people"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**unjust men**

This could mean 'men who are not righteous' or 'people who do evil things' or 'law breakers.'

**Translation Words**

- religious leader (p.1313)
- God (p.1272)
- sinner (p.1419)
- adulterers (p.1205)

**Translation Questions**

**Why did the religious leader thank God?**

He thanked God because he thought he was not a sinner like other men.

**34:08**

“For example, I fast two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues to tell of the religious leader's prayer.

**‘For example, I fast two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “The religious leader said he fasted fast two times every week and gave God ten percent of all the money and goods that he received.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**I fast**

The religious ruler believed that doing this would earn favor with God.

**ten percent**

This means one-tenth.

**Translation Words**

- fast (p.1265)

## Translation Questions

**Why did the religious leader think he was righteous?**

He fasted two times every week and gave ten percent of his money and goods.

**34:09**

“But the tax collector stood far away from the religious leader. He did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest with his fist and prayed, ‘God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.’”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues the story.

**stood far away**

This can also be translated as: “stood at a distance” or “stayed separate.”

**did not even look up to heaven**

The word **up** indicates that people normally looked up to heaven when praying to God, but that this man did not because he was so ashamed of his sin.

**he pounded on his chest with his fist**

This could also be translated as: “because of his grief, he hit his chest with his fist” or “he pounded his chest in sorrow.” If people would find this hard to understand because they beat their chest for other reasons, you could translate this as: “he showed his despair.”

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**and prayed, ‘God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “and prayed and begged God to be merciful to him because he was a sinner.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

### **Translation Words**

- religious leader (p.1313)
- heaven (p.1285)
- prayed (p.1373)
- God (p.1272)
- merciful (p.1346)
- sinner (p.1419)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did the tax collector request from God?**

He asked God to be merciful to him because he was a sinner.

## 34:10



Then Jesus said, "I tell you, God heard the tax collector's prayer, and declared him to be righteous rather than the religious leader. God will dishonor everyone who is proud, but he will honor whoever humbles himself."

### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

### Translation Words

- religious leader (p.1313)
- heaven (p.1285)
- prayed (p.1373)
- God (p.1272)
- merciful (p.1346)
- sinner (p.1419)

### Translation Questions

**Which man did God declare to be righteous?**

He declared that the tax collector was righteous.

**What will God do to everyone who is humble?**

He will honor them.

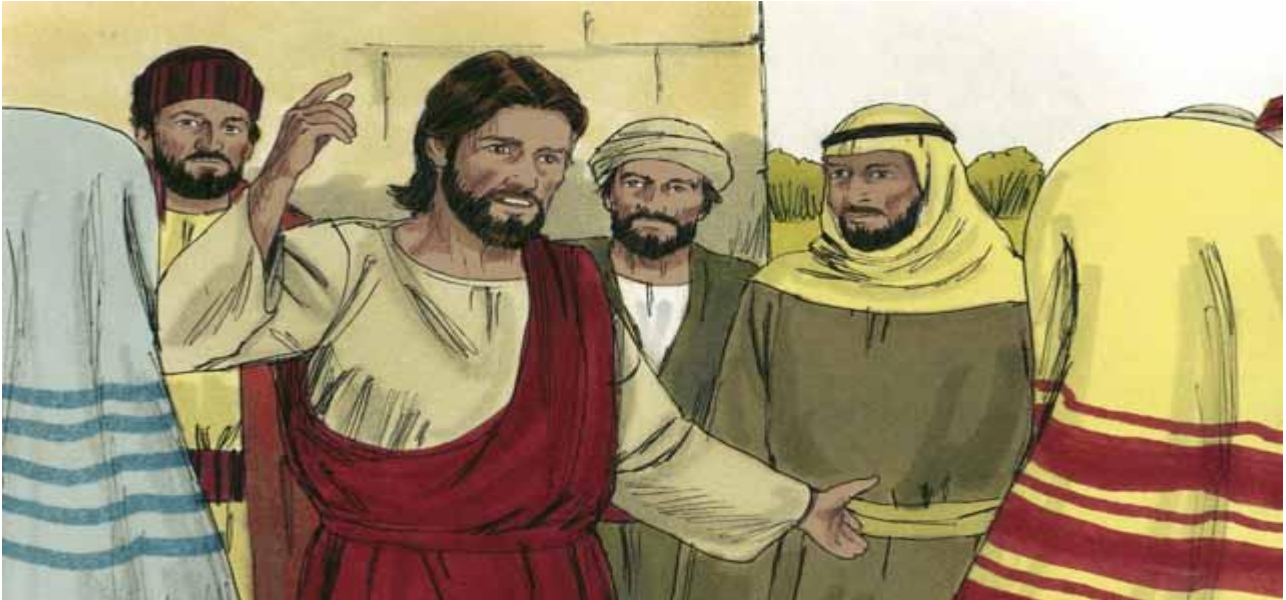
## **35. The Story of the Compassionate Father**

*A Bible story from: Luke 15*

### **The Story of the Compassionate Father**

This title can also be translated as: "About a father who had compassion on his son" or "What happened when a father had compassion on his son?"



**35:01**

One day, Jesus was teaching many people who had gathered to hear him. These people were tax collectors and also other people who did not try to obey the Law of Moses.

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**tax collectors**

Tax collectors were considered to be the worst of sinners because often they stole money from people by collecting a higher tax than the government required and keeping the difference for themselves.

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**35:02**

Some religious leaders saw Jesus talking to these people as friends. So they began to tell each other that he was doing wrong. Jesus heard them talk, so he told them this story.

### Translation Notes

#### story

Jesus used this story to teach truths about God's kingdom. It is not clear if the events actually happened or not. If your language has a term that includes both fictional and real stories, you should use it here.

See TA article: **Parables (p.1170)**

### Translation Words

- religious leaders (p.1313)
- Jesus (p.1310)

### Translation Questions

#### Why did the religious leaders criticize Jesus?

They saw Jesus talking to tax collectors and sinners as his friends.

**35:03**

“There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’ So the father divided his property between his two sons.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus tells the story.

**There was a man**

This introduces a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “told his father that he wanted his inheritance right away!”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**I want my inheritance now!**

The son said this to emphasize that he was not willing to wait until after his father died in order to receive his inheritance.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**my inheritance**

This could be translated as: “the part of your wealth that will be rightfully mine when you die.”

## **property**

This could mean 'wealth' or 'possessions.' This property would probably have included land, animals, and money.

## **Translation Words**

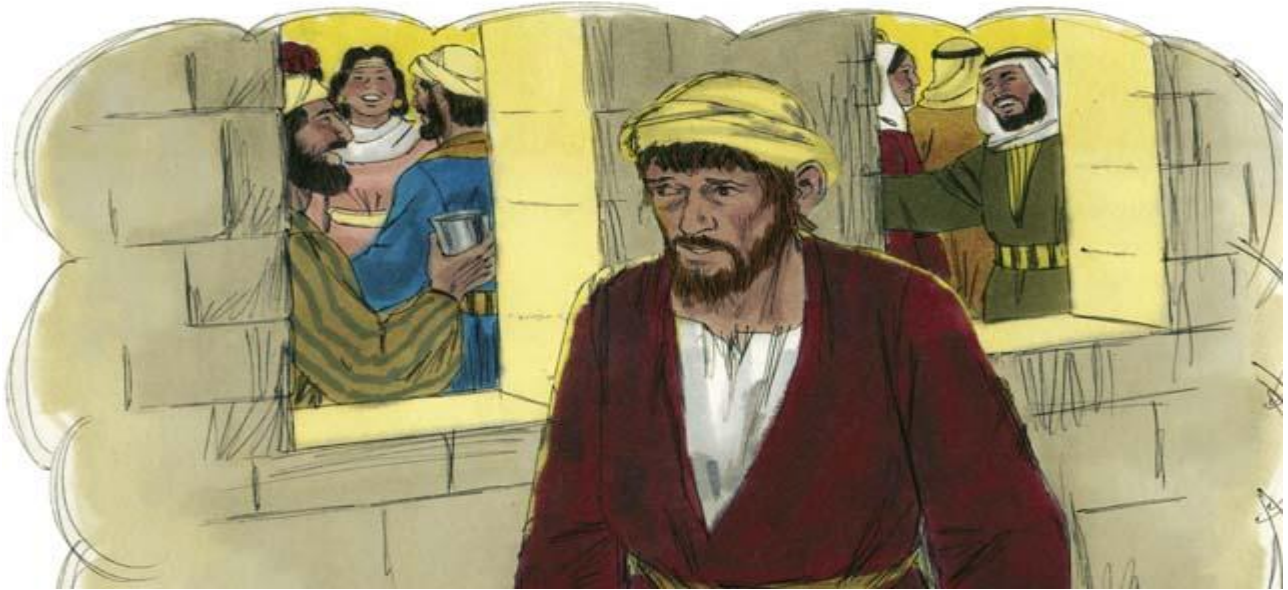
- son
- inheritance (p.1295)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did the younger son demand from his father?**

He wanted his inheritance right away.

## 35:04



“Soon the younger son gathered all that he had and went far away and wasted his money in sinful living.”

### Translation Notes

#### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

#### wasted his money

This could mean ‘spent all his money without getting anything of value in exchange.’ In some languages it can be translated as: “threw his money away” or “ate all his money.”

#### sinful living

This could mean ‘doing sinful things.’

### Translation Words

- sinful (p.1419)

### Translation Questions

#### What did the younger son do with his inheritance?

He wasted it in sinful living.

**35:05**



“After that, a severe famine occurred in the land where the younger son was, and he had no money to buy food. So he took the only job he could find, feeding pigs. He was so miserable and hungry that he wanted to eat the pigs’ food.”

**Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

**Translation Words**

- sinful (p.1419)

**Translation Questions**

**What happened in the land where the younger son went to live?**

There was a severe famine.

**What did the younger son do to survive during the famine?**

He took a job feeding pigs.

**35:06**

“Finally, the younger son said to himself, ‘What am I doing? All my father’s servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving. I will go back to my father and ask to be one of his servants.’”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues the story.

**said to himself, ‘What am I doing? All my father’s servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving. I will go back to my father and ask to be one of his servants.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “asked himself what he was doing! All his father’s servants have plenty to eat, and yet he was there starving. He decided to go back to his father and ask to be one of his father’s servants.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**What am I doing?**

The son isn’t really asking a question, so some languages will have to translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: “Why am I living like this?” or “I should not be living like this!” or “It doesn’t make sense for me to live like this.”

**Translation Words**

- servants (p.1413)

## Translation Questions

### **Why did the younger son decide to return home?**

He realized that father's servants had plenty to eat, and yet he was starving.

### **What was the younger son planning to ask his father?**

He was going to ask his father to let him be one of his servants.



**35:07**

“So the younger son started back towards his father’s home. When he was still far away, his father saw him and felt compassion for him. He ran to his son and hugged him and kissed him.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues the story.

**still far away**

This can also be translated as: “within sight of his father’s home, but still a distance away.” The son was getting close to his father’s house but was still far enough away that most people in the house would not have seen him. Make sure it does not sound like he was still in a different country.

**felt compassion**

This could mean ‘felt deep love and pity.’

**hugged him and kissed him**

The father did this to show his son that he loved him and was glad that the son was coming home. If people think that it is strange or wrong for a man to embrace or hug and kiss his son, you can substitute a way that men in your culture show affection to their sons. Alternate translation: “welcomed him affectionately”

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**Translation Words**

- son

## Translation Questions

**What did the father do when he saw the younger son approaching?**

He felt compassion for him, ran to him, hugged him, and kissed him.

35:08



“The son said, ‘Father, I have sinned against God and against you. I am not worthy to be your son.’”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

**said, ‘Father, I have sinned against God and against you. I am not worthy to be your son.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “told his father that he had sinned against God and against his father, and was not worthy to be his son.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**sinned against God and against you**

This could be translated as: “sinned against God, and I have also sinned against you.”

**I am not worthy**

It is also possible to say: “So I am not worthy” or “As a result, I am not worthy.”

## Translation Words

- son
- sinned (p.1419)
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

**What did the younger son say to his father when they met?**

He said, "Father, I have sinned against God and against you. I am not worthy to be your son."

35:09



“But his father told one of his servants, ‘Go quickly and bring the best clothes and put them on my son! Put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet. Then kill the best calf so we can have a feast and celebrate, because my son was dead, but now he is alive! He was lost, but now we have found him!’”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

**servants, ‘Go quickly and bring the best clothes and put them on my son! Put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet. Then kill the best calf so we can have a feast and celebrate, because my son was dead, but now he is alive! He was lost, but now we have found him!’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “servants to go quickly and bring the best clothes and put them on his son, and to put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet! He also told him to kill the best calf so they could have a feast and celebrate, because his son was dead, but now he is alive! He was lost, but now he had found him!”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

### Put a ring on his finger

A ring was a sign of authority that men wore on one of their fingers.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

### put sandals on his feet

Wealthy people of that time wore sandals. However, in many cultures the modern equivalent would be ‘shoes.’

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### **the best calf**

This could also be translated as: "the fattest calf." This was the calf that had been fattened so that, when cooked, it would taste the best.

### **my son was dead, but now he is alive!**

The father is using this expression to show how happy he is that his son has come home.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **my son was dead, but now he is alive!**

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were lost. This could mean 'This is like my son was dead and is alive again!' or 'I grieved as if my son had died, but now I rejoice because it is as if he has come back to life!'

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

### **He was lost, but now we have found him!**

The father is using this expression to show how happy he is that his son has come home.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **He was lost, but now we have found him!**

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were lost. This could mean 'This is like my son was lost and I have found him again!' or 'I grieved as if my son were lost, but now I rejoice because it is as if I have found him again!'

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

## **Translation Words**

- servants (p.1413)
- son
- dead
- alive

## **Translation Questions**

### **How did the father respond to the younger son's confession?**

He put clothes, a ring, and sandals on the younger son and had a feast to celebrate his return.

### 35:10



“So the people began to celebrate. Before long, the older son came home from working in the field. He heard the music and dancing and wondered what was happening.”

#### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

#### Translation Words

- servants (p.1413)
- son
- dead
- alive

#### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 35:11



“When the older son found out that they were celebrating because his brother had come home, he was very angry and would not go into the house. His father came out and begged him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”

### Translation Notes

#### General Information

Jesus continues the story.

### Translation Words

- son
- begged (p.1219)

### Translation Questions

**How did the older son react when he learned that his brother had come home?**

He was very angry and refused to go into the house.



**35:12**

“The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never disobeyed you, and still you did not give me even one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends. But this son of yours has wasted your money doing sinful things. When he came home, you killed the best calf to celebrate!’”

**Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

**Translation Words**

- son
- begged (p.1219)

**Translation Questions****What was the older son’s complaint to his father?**

The older son said he had worked faithfully for his father, and his father did not give him even a small goat to celebrate. But he killed the best calf for his son who had consumed his father’s money.

### 35:13



“The father answered, ‘My son, you are always with me, and everything I have is yours. But it is right for us to celebrate because your brother was dead, but now is alive. He was lost, but now we have found him!’”

#### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

#### Translation Words

- son
- begged (p.1219)

#### Translation Questions

**How much of the father’s possessions now belonged to the older son?**

Everything the father had now belonged to the older son.

**What reason did the father give for celebrating the return of his younger son?**

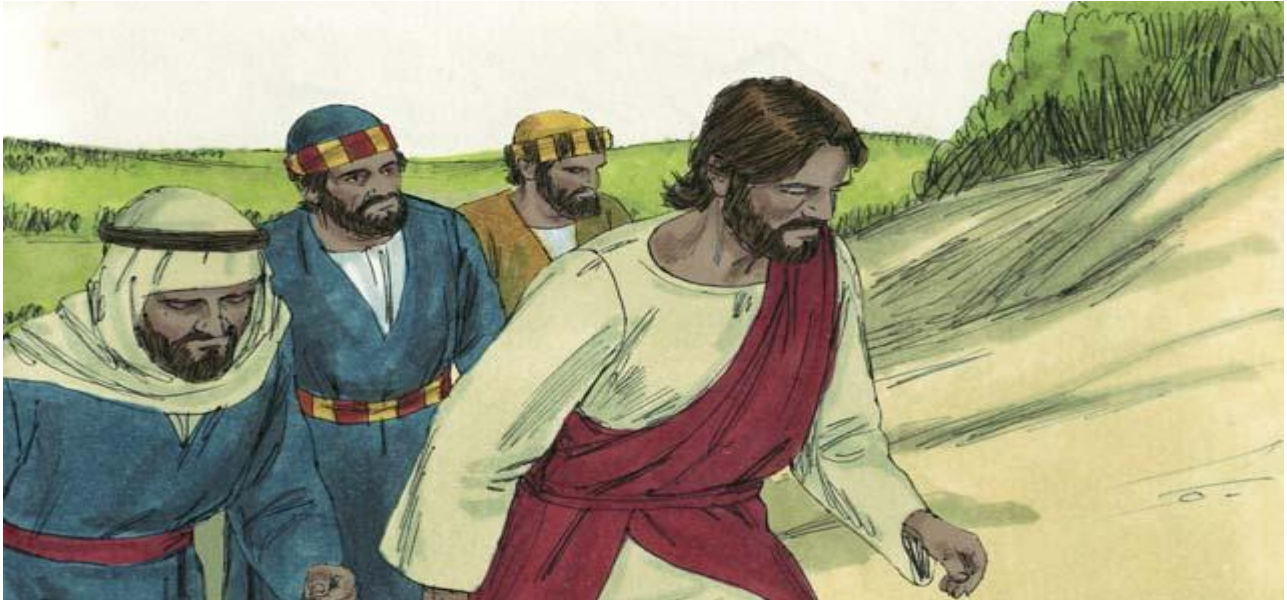
His son had been dead, but now was alive. He had been lost, but now was found.

## 36. The Transfiguration

*A Bible story from: Matthew 17:1-9; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36*

### The Transfiguration

This title can also be translated as: "About when the disciples saw Jesus change before them" or "What happened when the disciples saw Jesus change before them?"

**36:01**

One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and John, with him. (The disciple named John was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves to pray.

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**James**

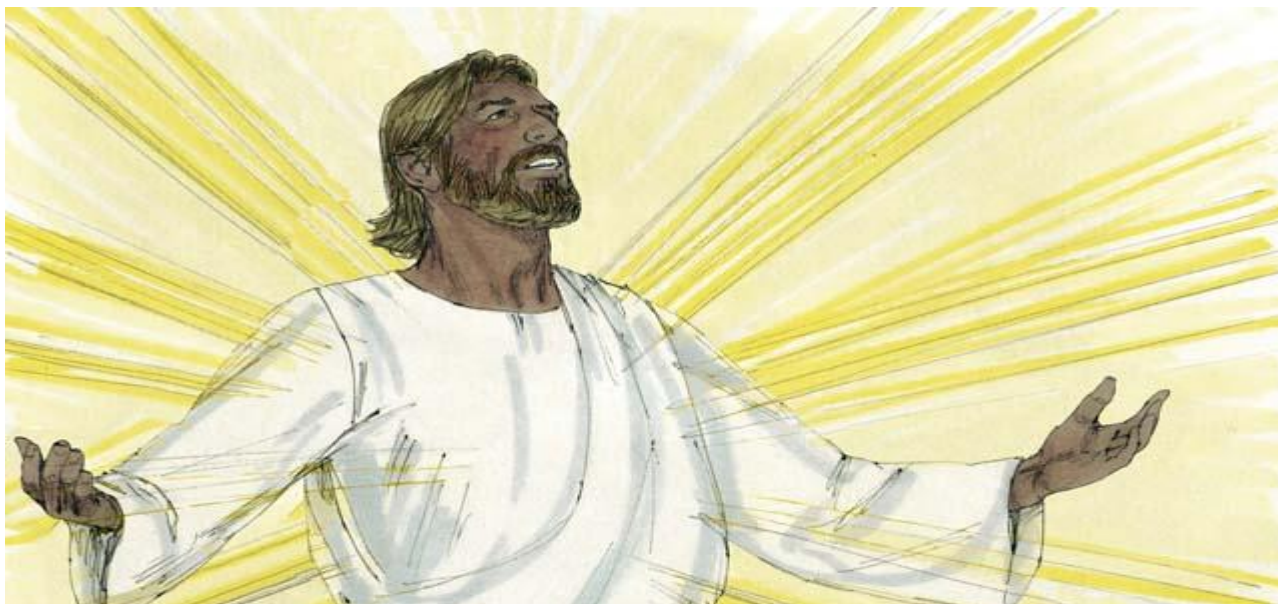
This is a different James than the one who wrote the Book of James in the Bible. To make this clear, some languages may need to use two slightly different names or to spell them differently.

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciple (p.1249)
- Peter (p.1368)
- John (p.1314)
- baptized (p.1215)

**Translation Questions****Who did Jesus take with him up the mountain?**

He took three of his disciples—Peter, James, and John.

**36:02**

As Jesus was praying, his face became as bright as the sun. His clothes became as white as light, whiter than anyone on earth could make them.

**Translation Notes****his face became as bright as the sun**

This simile emphasizes how bright Jesus' appearance became.

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

**His clothes became as white as light**

This simile emphasizes how white Jesus' clothes became.

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

**whiter**

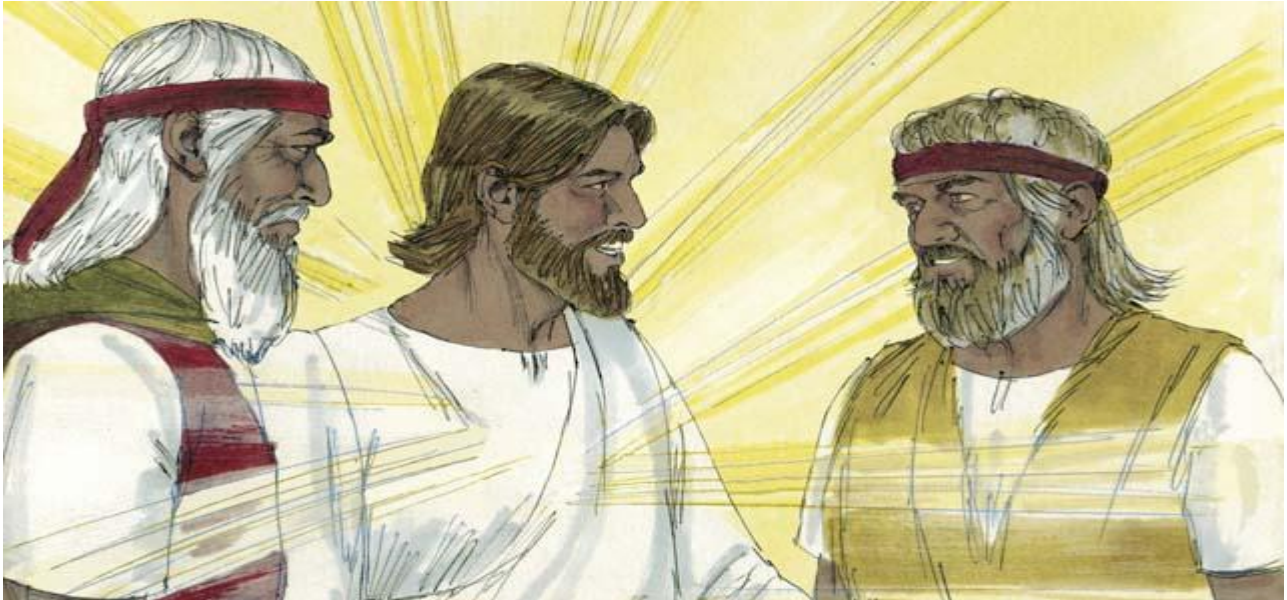
This could mean 'more white.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- praying (p.1373)

**Translation Questions****What change happened to Jesus as he was praying?**

His face became as bright as the sun and his clothes became as white as light.

**36:03**

Then Moses and the prophet Elijah appeared. These men had lived on the earth hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death, because he would soon die in Jerusalem.

**Translation Notes****appeared**

It is also possible to say: "appeared out of nowhere." They suddenly were there.

**in Jerusalem**

Some languages may prefer to say: "in the city of Jerusalem."

**Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Elijah (p.1253)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- death
- Jerusalem (p.1308)

**Translation Questions****Who were the two men who appeared with Jesus?**

Moses and the prophet Elijah appeared.

**Why was it miraculous that Moses and Elijah appeared with Jesus?**

They both lived hundreds of years before this.

**What were Moses and Elijah discussing with Jesus?**

They talked about Jesus' death.

**Where was Jesus going to die?**

He was going to die in Jerusalem.

**36:04**

As Moses and Elijah were talking with Jesus, Peter said to Jesus, “It is good for us to be here. Let us make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah.” But Peter did not know what he was saying.

**Translation Notes****It is good for us to be here**

It is not clear whether **us** refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

See TA article: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1117)**

**shelters**

This can also be translated as: “lean-tos” or “garden huts” or “tents.” It refers to small, individual, temporary shelters like the Jews made from tree branches during an annual Jewish holiday.

**did not know what he was saying**

This could mean ‘was speaking without understanding what was happening’ or ‘spoke without thinking clearly because he was so excited.’ This is background information about why Peter said what he did.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- Elijah (p.1253)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Peter (p.1368)
- good (p.1280)



## Translation Questions

**What did Peter suggest that they do for Jesus, Moses, and Elijah?**

He wanted to make three shelters, one for Jesus, one for Moses, and one for Elijah.

**36:05**

As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down and surrounded them. Then they heard a voice coming from the cloud. It said, “This is my Son whom I love. I am pleased with him. Listen to him.” The three disciples were terrified and fell on the ground.

**Translation Notes****a voice coming from the cloud. It said**

Here **a voice** is a metonym that refers to someone who spoke. This can also be translated as: “a voice spoke from the cloud saying” or “God spoke from the cloud and said.”

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

**my Son**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**Listen to him**

This could be translated as: “He is the one you must listen to.”

**terrified**

This could mean ‘extremely scared.’

**fell on the ground**

This could mean ‘quickly bowed to the ground’ or ‘immediately got down on the ground.’ Make sure the translation of **fell** does not sound like an accident. They probably did this intentionally out of awe and fear.

## Translation Words

- Peter (p.1368)
- Son (p.1423)
- love (p.1342)
- disciples (p.1249)

## Translation Questions

**What did the voice from the bright cloud say to the disciples?**

It said, "This is my Son whom I love. I am pleased with him. Listen to him."

**36:06**

Then Jesus touched them and said, “Do not be afraid. Get up.” When they looked around, the only one still there was Jesus.

**Translation Notes****touched them**

This could mean ‘put his hand on them.’ Some languages may prefer to specify where he touched them. If so, this could be translated as: “he touched them on the shoulder” or “he put his hand on each one’s shoulder.”

**said, “Do not be afraid. Get up.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “told them not to be afraid, and to get up.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Do not be afraid**

This could also be translated as: “Stop being afraid.”

**Get up**

This could also be translated as: “Stand up” or “Please get up.” Make sure that it sounds like Jesus spoke this with kindness.

**the only one still there was Jesus**

It is also possible to add: “Moses and Elijah had left.”

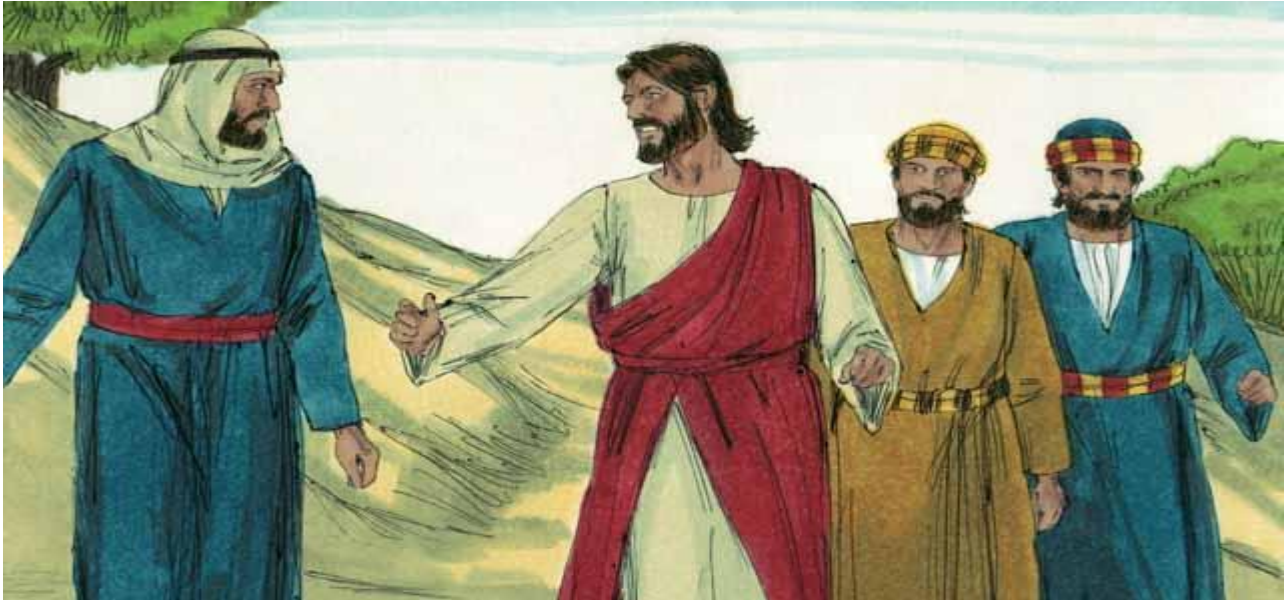
## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 36:07



Jesus and the three disciples went back down the mountain. Then Jesus said to them, "Do not tell anyone yet about what happened here. I will soon die and then come back to life. After that, you may tell people."

### Translation Notes

#### A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- die
- life

### Translation Questions

#### What did Jesus tell the disciples to do about what they had seen?

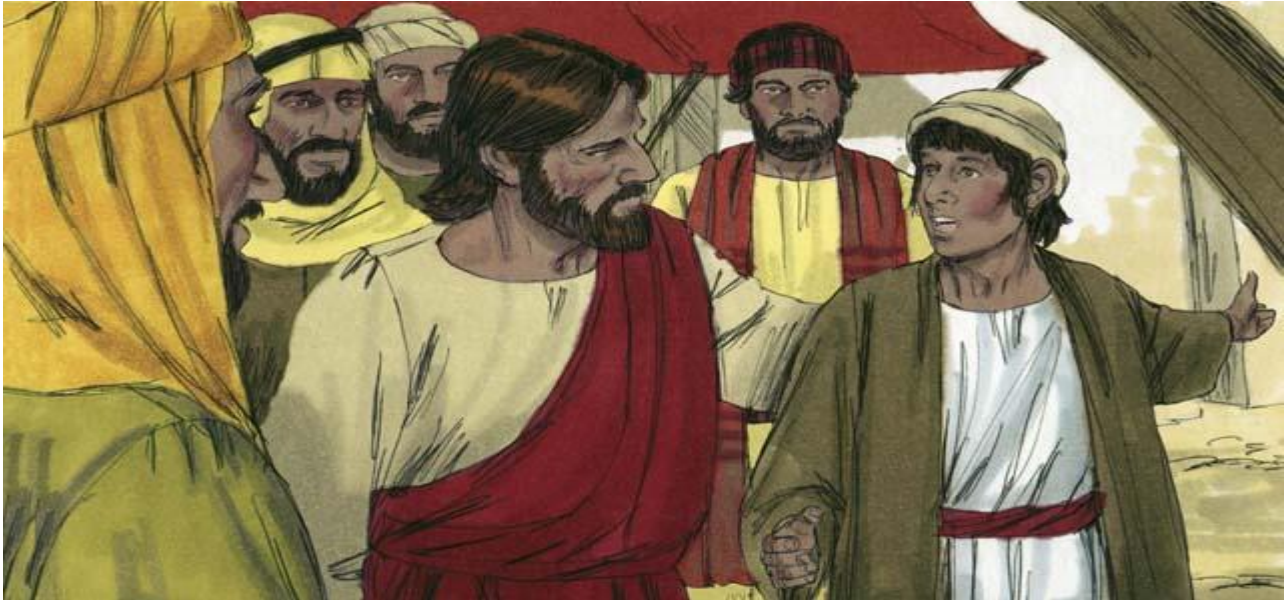
He told them not tell anyone about what happened on the mountain until after he died and came back to life.

## **37. Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead**

*A Bible story from: John 11:1-46*

### **Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead**

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus made Lazarus alive again" or "How did Jesus make Lazarus alive again?"

**37:01**

There was a man named Lazarus. He had two sisters named Mary and Martha. They were all close friends of Jesus. One day someone told Jesus that Lazarus was very sick. When Jesus heard this, he said, "This sickness will not end with Lazarus dying. Instead, it will cause people to honor God."

**Translation Notes****There was a man named Lazarus. He had two sisters named Mary and Martha.**

This introduces Lazarus and his sisters as new characters in the story, and also provides background information about their relationship to Jesus.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**They were all close friends of Jesus.**

This provides background information about the relationship of Lazarus and his sisters to Jesus.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**Mary**

Jesus' mother was also named Mary. This was a different woman.



## **This sickness will not end with Lazarus dying**

This can also be translated as: "The final result of this sickness will not be the death of Lazarus" or "Lazarus is sick, but death is not the final result of this sickness." Jesus' disciples probably thought this meant that Lazarus would not die. But Jesus knew that, although Lazarus would die from his sickness, he would live in the end.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Lazarus (p.1339)
- dying
- God (p.1272)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did Jesus say would be the end result of Lazarus' sickness?**

It would be for the glory of God.

**37:02**

Jesus loved his friends, but he waited where he was for two days. After those two days he said to his disciples, "Let's go back to Judea." "But Teacher," the disciples answered, "just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!" Jesus said, "Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep, and I must wake him."

**Translation Notes****Jesus loved his friends**

This is background information about Jesus' relationship to Lazarus and his sisters.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**but he waited where he was for two days**

This could be translated as: "but he stayed where he was for two days, even though they wanted him to go and heal Lazarus."

**just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!**

The disciples said this to emphasize the great danger Jesus faced if he went to Judea.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Judea**

This refers to the southern section of Israel, which was settled by the tribe of Judah. Some languages will prefer to say: "the region of Judea."

### **has fallen asleep**

This is an idiom that means Lazarus has died. Translate this phrase with the normal word for **asleep** in your language. Although Jesus was using this word with a different meaning, the disciples did not understand that yet.

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

### **I must wake him**

Here **wake** is an idiom that means Jesus would make Lazarus alive again. Translate this phrase with the normal word for **wake** in your language. Although Jesus was using this word with a different meaning, the disciples did not understand that yet.

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- Teacher (p.1429)
- Lazarus (p.1339)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did Jesus do after he heard about Lazarus' sickness?**

He waited where he was for two more days.

### **Why were the disciples concerned when Jesus decided to go to Judea?**

They were concerned because the people in Judea wanted to kill Jesus.

**37:03**

Jesus' disciples replied, "Master, if Lazarus is sleeping, then he will get better." Then Jesus told them plainly, "Lazarus is dead. I am glad that I was not there, so that you may believe in me."

**Translation Notes****he will get better**

The disciples intended this in the sense of: 'there is no reason for us to go to him now, since he will get well.'

**I am glad**

This could be translated as: "I am happy" or "It is good that." It does not mean he was happy that Lazarus died, but rather that he was happy that God was going to show how great he is.

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- Master (p.1340)
- Lazarus (p.1339)
- dead
- believe (p.1220)

**Translation Questions**

**What did the disciples think Jesus meant when he said that Lazarus had fallen asleep?**

They thought he was just asleep and would get better.

**What did Jesus plainly tell the disciples about Lazarus?**

Jesus said that Lazarus had died.

**Why was Jesus glad that he was not there when Lazarus died?**

Jesus was glad because something would happen that would make the disciples believe in him.

**37:04**

When Jesus arrived at Lazarus' hometown, Lazarus had already been dead for four days. Martha went out to meet Jesus and said, "Master, if only you had been here, my brother would not have died. But I believe God will give you whatever you ask from him."

**Translation Notes****When Jesus arrived at Lazarus' hometown, Lazarus had already been dead for four days**

This is background information about the setting and about what has happened before Jesus arrived.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Martha**

Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary (See: [37:01](#)).

**went out to meet Jesus**

This could mean 'went to meet Jesus as he was coming into the town.'

**if only you had been here, my brother would not have died**

Martha is stating a hypothetical situation—what could have happened if Jesus had not waited for Lazarus to die before he came.

See TA article: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1134)**

### **my brother would not have died**

This could mean 'you would have healed my brother and he would not have died' or 'you could have prevented my brother from dying.'

### **will give you whatever you ask from him**

This could mean 'will do whatever you ask him to do.'

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Lazarus (p.1339)
- died
- Master (p.1340)
- believe (p.1220)
- God (p.1272)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How long had Lazarus been dead?**

He had been dead for four days.

### **Did Martha believe that Jesus could have healed Lazarus?**

Yes, she believed that he could.

**37:05**

Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?" Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the Son of God."

**Translation Notes****I am the Resurrection and the Life**

This is one of several very powerful *\*I am \**statements in which Jesus says something about his essential nature. In this one, Jesus indicates that he is the provider or source of resurrection and life. If possible, translate this phrase in a way that makes it clear that this is his essential nature. This can also be translated as: "I am the one who resurrects people and causes them to live."

**will live, even though he dies.**

This could mean 'will live forever, even though he dies.' The English word, **he** does not only refer to men. Women who believe in Jesus will also live forever.

**will never die**

This can also be translated as: "will live forever."

**Martha**

Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary (See: [37:01](#)).

**the Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.



See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Resurrection (p.1397)
- live
- believe (p.1220)
- dies
- Master (p.1340)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- Son of God (p.1423)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What will happen to believers because Jesus is the Resurrection and the Life?**

Whoever believes in Jesus will live, even though he dies, and everyone who believes in Jesus will never die.

### **Who did Martha believe that Jesus was?**

She believed he was the Messiah, the Son of God.

**37:06**

Then Mary arrived. She fell at the feet of Jesus and said, “Master, if only you had been here, my brother would not have died.” Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the tomb. Come and see.” Then Jesus wept.

**Translation Notes****Mary**

This was the same woman as in [37:01](#), not the mother of Jesus.

**fell at the feet of Jesus**

This could mean ‘knelt down at Jesus’ feet’ as a sign of respect.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**if only you had been here, my brother would not have died**

Mary is stating a hypothetical situation—what could have happened if Jesus had not waited for Lazarus to die before he came.

See TA article: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1134)**

**my brother would not have died**

This could mean ‘you could have kept my brother from dying’ or ‘you could have prevented my brother’s death’ or ‘my brother would still be alive.’

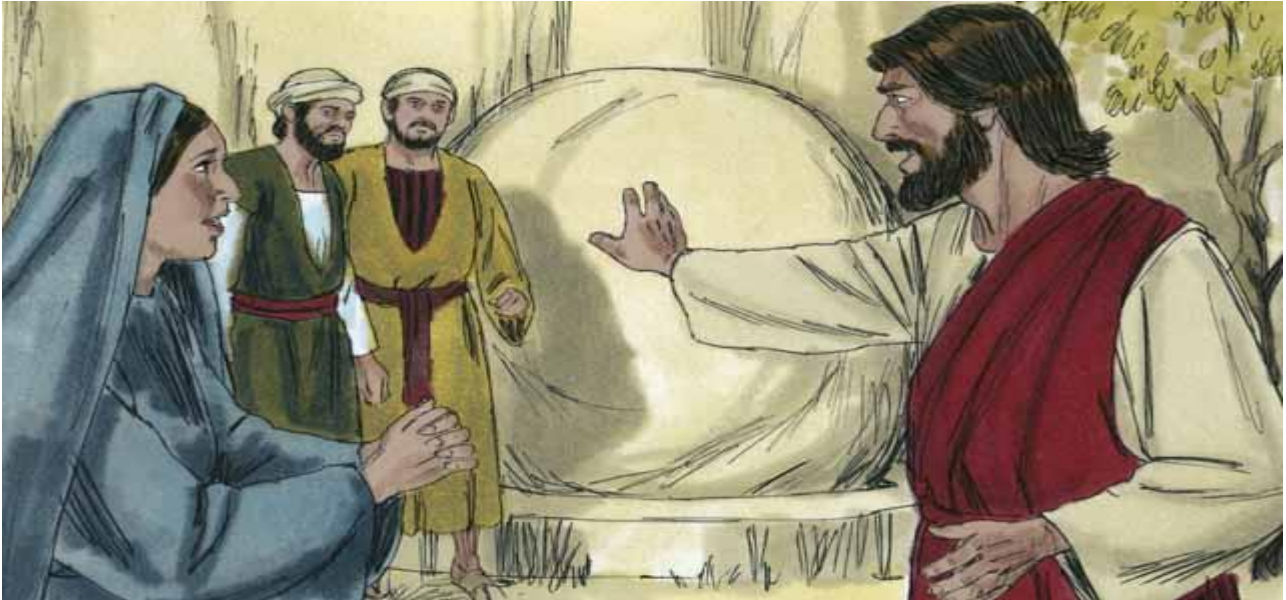
**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)

- Master (p.1340)
- died
- Lazarus (p.1339)
- tomb (p.1282)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**37:07**

The tomb was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening. When Jesus arrived at the tomb, he told them, “Roll the stone away.” But Martha said, “He has been dead for four days. There will be a bad smell.”

**Translation Notes****The tomb was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening**

This is background information about the tomb where they had buried Lazarus.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**he told them, “Roll the stone away.”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “he told them to roll the stone away.”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**he told them**

This could mean ‘he told the men there.’ He was probably not telling Mary and Martha to roll the stone away.

**Roll the stone away**

Some languages may prefer to say: “Roll the stone away from the opening of the tomb.”

**Martha**

Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary (See: [37:01](#)).

## **He has been dead for four days**

This could also be translated as: "He died four days ago and his body is lying there."

### **Translation Words**

- tomb (p.1282)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- dead

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How long had Lazarus been dead?**

He had been dead for four days.

**37:08**

Jesus answered, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's power if you believe in me?" So they rolled the stone away.

**Translation Notes****Did I not tell you that you would see God's power if you believe in me?**

This could mean 'Remember that I told you that you would see God's power if you believe in me.' Jesus is not asking this question in order to get an answer, so some languages should translate this as a command.

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**see God's power**

This could mean 'see the power of God displayed' or 'see God show how powerful he is.'

**rolled the stone away**

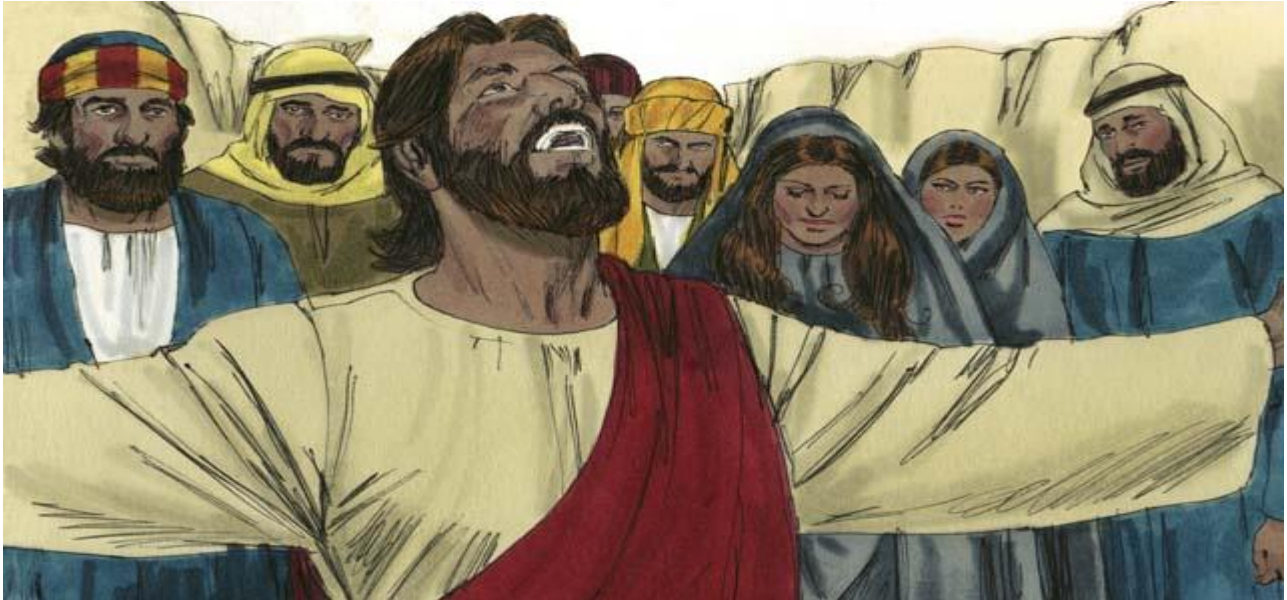
Some languages should say: "rolled the stone away from the opening of the tomb."

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God's (p.1272)
- believe (p.1220)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**37:09**

Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me. I know you always listen to me, but I say this in order to help all these people standing here, so that they will believe you sent me." Then Jesus shouted, "Lazarus, come out!"

## Translation Notes

### Father

This is an important title for God the Father.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

### hearing me

This could mean 'listening to me.' It may be helpful to add: "as I pray to you" or "when I talk to you."

### Lazarus, come out!

Jesus used this exclamation as a strong command to Lazarus.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### come out

Some languages may prefer to say: "come out of the tomb."

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- heaven (p.1285)
- Father (p.1274)

- believe (p.1220)
- Lazarus (p.1339)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Why did Jesus thank the Father out loud?**

He did that so the people would believe that the Father had sent him.

#### **What did Jesus command Lazarus to do?**

He commanded Lazarus to come out of the tomb!



**37:10**

So Lazarus came out! He was still wrapped in grave clothes. Jesus told them, “Help him take off those grave clothes and release him!” Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.

**Translation Notes****Lazarus came out!**

This exclamation emphasizes the shocking fact that Lazarus, who had been dead, walked out of the tomb. Some languages should say: “Lazarus came out of the tomb!”

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**He was still wrapped in grave clothes**

This background information about Lazarus wearing grave clothes makes clear that Lazarus went directly from being dead to walking out of the tomb at Jesus’ command.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**grave clothes**

This could mean ‘burial clothes.’ This can also be translated as: “burial bandages” or “strips of cloth.”

**Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle**

This sentence tells us what happened after Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

### **because of this miracle**

This could mean 'because God had done this amazing miracle' or 'because Jesus had made Lazarus come alive again.'

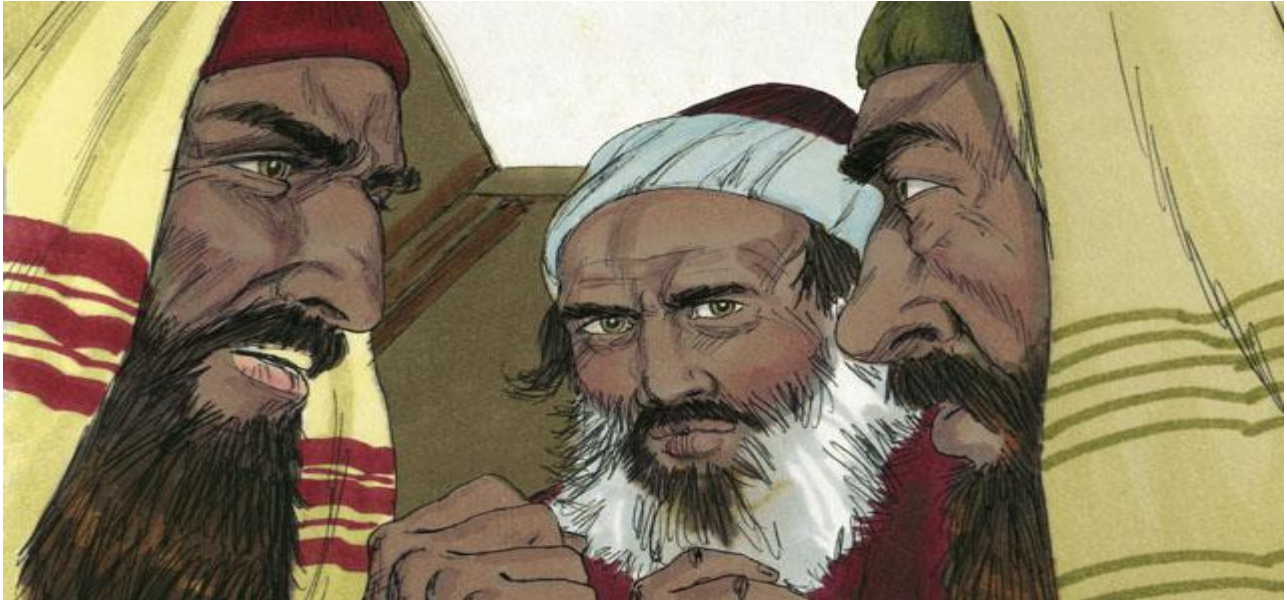
### **Translation Words**

- Lazarus (p.1339)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Jews (p.1312)
- believed (p.1220)
- miracle (p.1349)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

## 37:11



But the religious leaders of the Jews envied Jesus, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.

### Translation Notes

#### **envied**

This could mean 'were envious of Jesus' power and popularity' or 'envious that so many Jews were believing in Jesus.'

#### **gathered together**

This could mean 'met together' or 'joined together.' This was a not a casual meeting, but a meeting for a specific purpose—to plan how to kill Jesus.

#### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### Translation Words

- religious leaders (p.1313)
- Jews (p.1312)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Lazarus (p.1339)

### Translation Questions

**How did the religious leaders of the Jews react when they saw the miracle?**

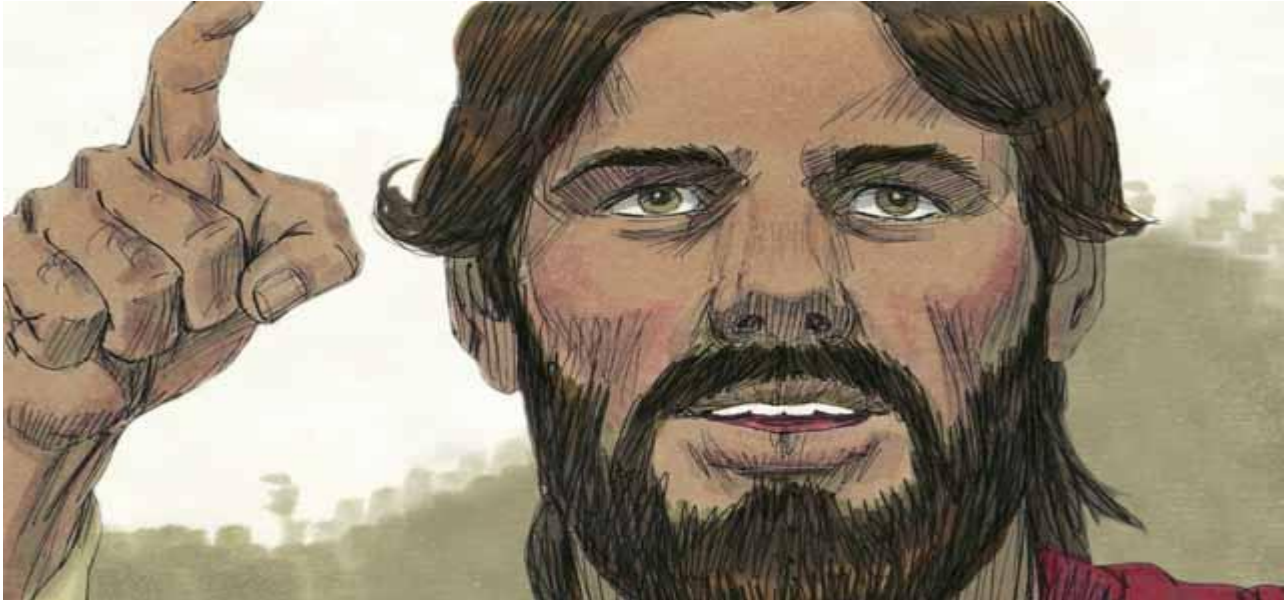
They envied Jesus and planned to kill him and Lazarus.

## **38. Jesus Is Betrayed**

*A Bible story from: Matthew 26:14-56; Mark 14:10-50; Luke 22:1-53; John 18:1-11*

### **Jesus Is Betrayed**

This title can also be translated as: "About when Judas betrayed Jesus" or "How did Judas betray Jesus?"

**38:01**

Every year, the Jews celebrated the Passover. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier. About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.

**Translation Notes**

**Every year, the Jews celebrated the Passover. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.**

This is background information about the Jewish Passover.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**many centuries earlier**

This could mean 'hundreds of years earlier' or 'a very long time before.'

**About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.**

This is background information about why Jesus was in Jerusalem in the Passover, and what would happen to him there.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Translation Words**

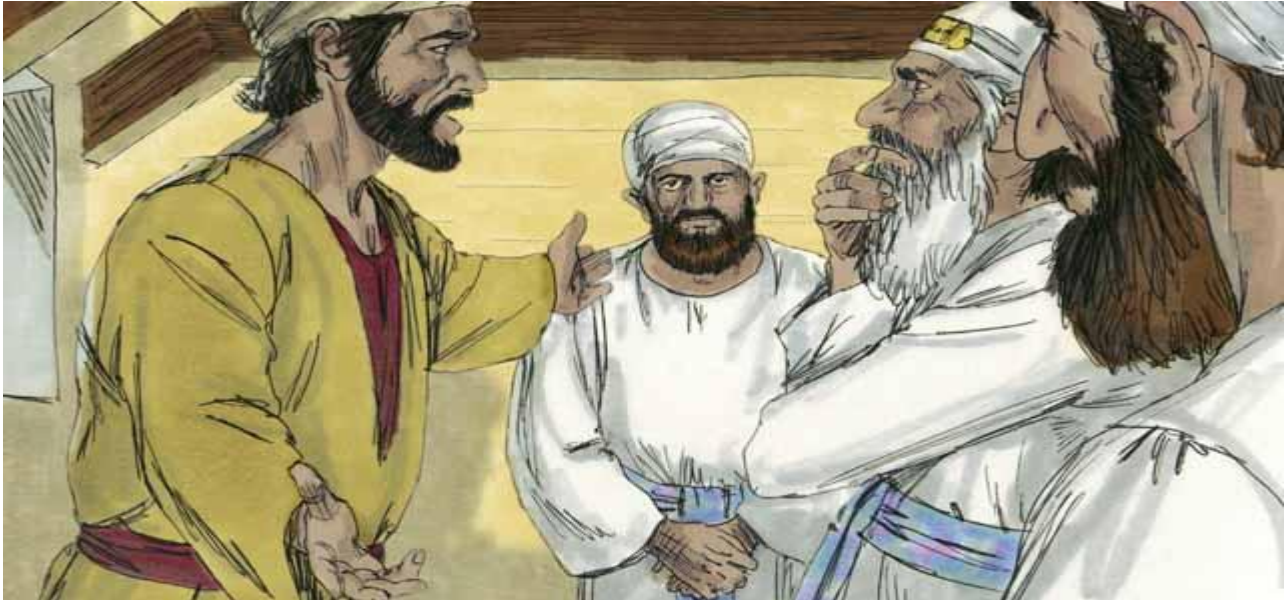
- Jews (p.1312)
- Passover (p.1359)

- God (p.1272)
- saved (p.1410)
- slavery (p.1413)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- preaching (p.1375)
- disciples (p.1249)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)

## Translation Questions

**What was the meaning of Passover that the Jews celebrated every year?**

The Passover was a celebration of how God had freed the ancestors of the Jews from slavery in Egypt.

**38:02**

One of Jesus' disciples was a man named Judas. Judas was in charge of the apostles' moneybag, but he often stole money out of the bag. After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders. He offered to betray Jesus by identifying him to the authorities in exchange for money. He knew that the Jewish leaders did not accept that Jesus was the Messiah. He knew that they wanted to kill him.

**Translation Notes**

**One of Jesus' disciples was a man named Judas. Judas was in charge of the apostles' moneybag, but he often stole money out of the bag. After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders. He offered to betray Jesus by identifying him to the authorities in exchange for money. He knew that the Jewish leaders did not accept that Jesus was the Messiah. He knew that they wanted to kill him.**

This is background information about Judas and his arrangement to betray Jesus.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**in charge of the apostles' moneybag**

This could mean 'responsible to hold the apostles' money' or 'responsible to hold the bag that had the disciples' money in it and to distribute funds from it.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- Judas (p.1323)
- apostles' (p.1211)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)

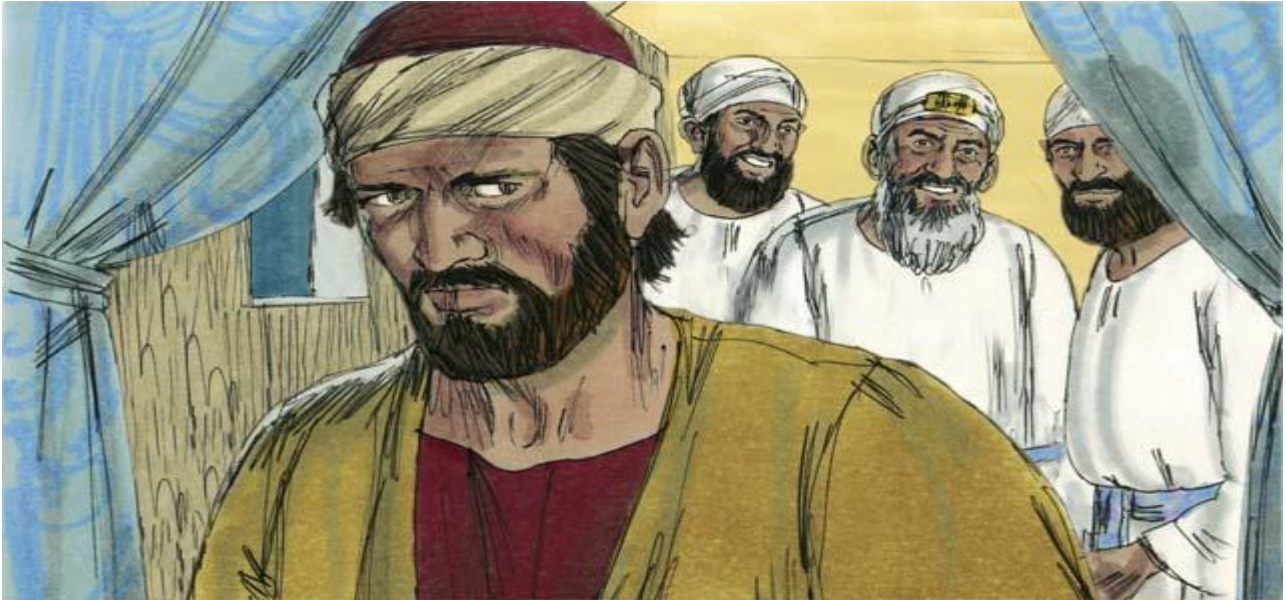


- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- betray (p.1224)
- Messiah (p.1230)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did Judas want in exchange for betraying Jesus to the Jewish leaders?**

He offered to betray Jesus in exchange for money.

**38:03**

The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas 30 silver coins to betray Jesus by handing him over to them. This happened just as the prophets said it would. Judas agreed, took the money, and went away. He began looking for an opportunity to help them arrest Jesus.

**Translation Notes**

**The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas 30 silver coins to betray Jesus by handing him over to them. This happened just as the prophets said it would. Judas agreed, took the money, and went away. He began looking for an opportunity to help them arrest Jesus.**

This is background information about the money Judas received to betray Jesus.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**30 silver coins**

Each of these coins were worth about four days' wages.

**Translation Words**

- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- high priest (p.1288)
- Judas (p.1323)
- betray (p.1224)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- prophets (p.1381)

## Translation Questions

**How much did the Jewish leaders pay Judas to betray Jesus?**

They paid him 30 silver coins.

**38:04**

In Jerusalem, Jesus celebrated the Passover with his disciples. During the Passover meal, Jesus took some bread and broke it. He said, "Take and eat this. This is my body, which I will give for you. Do this to remember me." In this way, Jesus said that he would die for them, that he would sacrifice his body for them.

**Translation Notes****celebrated**

This could mean 'was celebrating.'

**took some bread**

This could be translated as: "picked up a piece of bread" or "picked up a flat loaf of bread."

**broke it**

This means that he broke the bread into pieces for the people to eat. Alternate translation: "broke it into pieces" or "ripped it" or "tore it." He may have divided it into many pieces or he may have divided it into two pieces and given them to the apostles to divide among themselves. If possible, use an expression that would apply to either situation.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**This is my body**

Though most understand this to mean that the bread is a symbol of Jesus' body and that it is not actual flesh, it is best to translate this statement literally. Possible meanings are 1. "This bread is my body" and 2. "This bread represents my body."

See TA article: **Symbolic Language (p.1192)**

### **Do this to remember me**

This could mean 'Do this as a way to remind yourselves of what I am doing for you.' Jesus was referring to his death, which would happen soon.

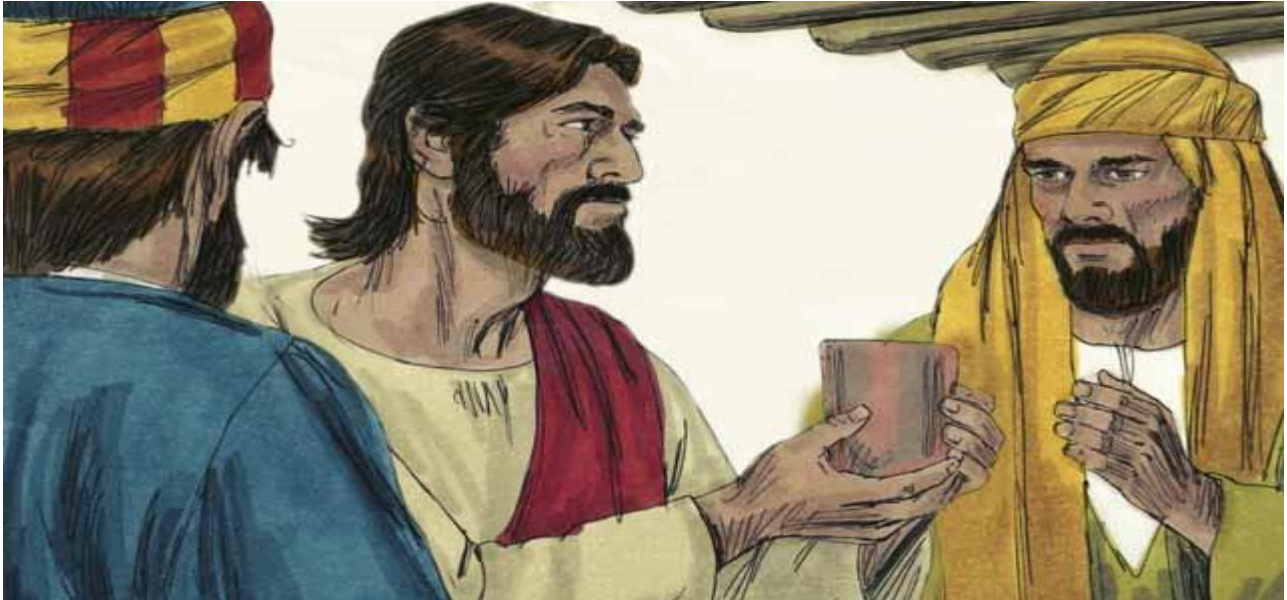
### **Translation Words**

- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Passover (p.1359)
- disciples (p.1249)
- sacrifice (p.1403)

### **Translation Questions**

**At the Passover meal, what did Jesus say about the bread?**

He said, "This is my body, which is given for you."

**38:05**

Then Jesus picked up a cup of wine and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that I will pour out so that God will forgive your sins. Do what I am doing now, to remember me every time you drink it.”

**Translation Notes****Drink this**

This could mean ‘Drink what is in this cup’ or ‘Drink from this cup.’ The drink in the cup was made from grapes so that it had a deep red color.

**It is my blood**

Though most understand this to mean that the wine is a symbol of Jesus’ blood and that it is not actual blood, it is best to translate this statement literally.

See TA article: **Symbolic Language (p.1192)**

**blood of the New Covenant**

This could be translated as: “blood that makes the New Covenant possible” or “blood that is the basis for the New Covenant.”

**I will pour out**

This could be translated as: “I will bleed out.”

**remember me**

This could mean ‘celebrate me’ or ‘commemorate me.’ It could also be translated as: “especially focus on me” or “remind you of me.”

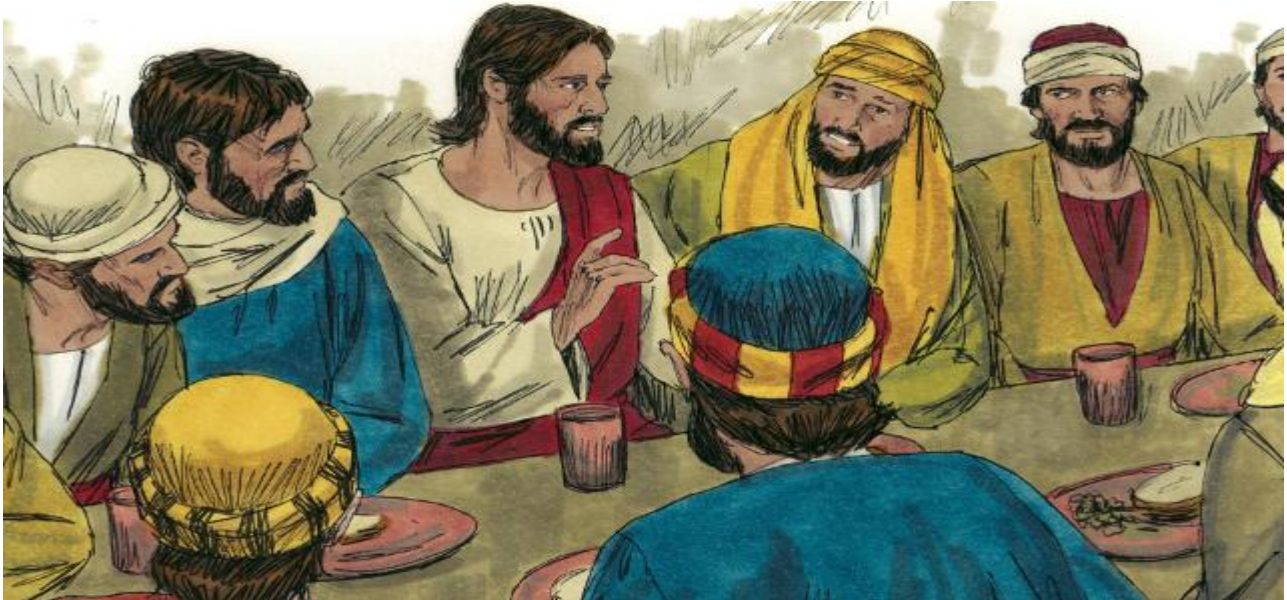
## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- blood
- forgive (p.1266)
- sins (p.1419)

## Translation Questions

### What did Jesus say about the cup?

He said, "It is my blood of the New Covenant that I will pour out so that God will forgive your sins."

**38:06**

Then Jesus said to the disciples, "One of you will betray me." The disciples were shocked, and asked who would do such a thing. Jesus said, "The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the betrayer." Then he gave the bread to Judas.

**Translation Notes****said to the disciples, "One of you will betray me."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "told his disciples that one of them would betray him."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**said, "The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the betrayer."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "said that the person to whom he would give the piece of bread was the betrayer."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**give this piece of bread**

This could mean 'hand this piece of bread.'

**is the betrayer**

This could also be translated as: "will betray me" or "is the one who will betray me."

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)



- disciples (p.1249)
- betray (p.1224)
- Judas (p.1323)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Who did Jesus say would betray him?**

Jesus said the one to whom he would give the bread would betray him.

## 38:07



After Judas took the bread, Satan entered into him. Judas left and went to help the Jewish leaders arrest Jesus. It was nighttime.

### Translation Notes

#### **Satan entered into him.**

This could mean 'Satan went into him' or 'Satan took control of him.'

#### **Judas left and went**

Some languages may prefer to say: "Judas left the meal and went" or "Judas left the room and went outside."

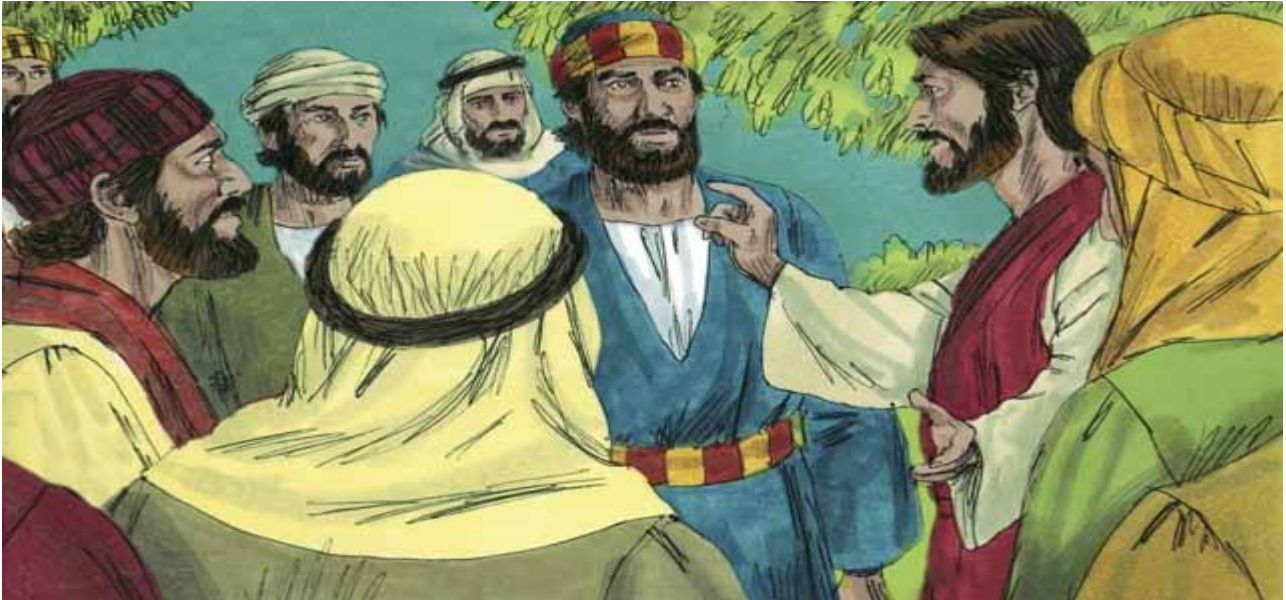
### Translation Words

- Judas (p.1323)
- Satan (p.1407)
- Jewish leaders (p.1313)

### Translation Questions

#### **What happened to Judas after he took the bread from Jesus?**

Satan entered into Judas.

**38:08**

After the meal, Jesus and his disciples walked to the Mount of Olives. Jesus said, "You will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the sheep will be scattered.'"

**Translation Notes****Mount of Olives**

This is the name of a hill covered with olive trees, just outside the walls of the city of Jerusalem. It can also be translated as: "Olive Tree Hill."

**abandon me**

This could mean 'desert me' or 'leave me.'

**It is written**

This could mean 'It is written in God's word' or 'It is written in the scriptures' or 'One of God's prophets wrote.' It is also possible to say: "What is written will happen" or "It will be like what is written." This prophecy refers to Jesus' death and his followers' desertion.

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**I will strike**

This could mean 'I will kill.' Here **I** refers to God. It is implied that God will cause or allow people to harm and kill Jesus.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **the shepherd and all the sheep**

Do not use Jesus' name in this quote because the prophet who first wrote it would not have known the shepherd's name. Also, do not refer to the sheep being the disciples. It is best to use words that mean **shepherd** and **sheep** in your translation.

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

## **all the sheep will be scattered**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will scatter all the sheep of the flock" or "the sheep of the flock will run off in all directions"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- shepherd (p.1416)
- sheep (p.1260)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did Jesus predict would happen to the disciples that night?**

He said they would all abandon him.

**38:09**

Peter replied, “Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!” Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny three times that you even know me.”

**Translation Notes****replied, “Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!”**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “replied that even if all the others abandoned Jesus, he would not!”

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!**

Peter said this to emphasize that he would never abandon Jesus.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Even if all the others abandon you**

Peter is stating a hypothetical situation—the other disciples might abandon Jesus.

See TA article: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1134)**

**abandon you**

Check to see how you translated this in [38:08](#).

**I will not**

This is an ellipsis. The missing information can be stated: replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not abandon you."

See TA article: **Ellipsis (p.1108)**

**to have all of you**

This could mean 'to completely control you' or 'to get you to serve him completely.' The word **you** is plural in this phrase. All of the words **you** and **your** that follow are singular.

**that your faith will not fail**

This could mean 'that you will not stop believing in me.'

**before the rooster crows**

Roosters often crow about the time the sun comes up, so the hearers might have understood these words as a metonym for the sun coming up. However, the actual crowing of a rooster is an important part of the story later on, so keep the word **rooster** in the translation. Alternate translation: "Before the rooster crows at dawn tomorrow" or "before the rooster crows tomorrow morning."

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

**Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Satan (p.1407)
- prayed (p.1373)
- faith (p.1261)

**Translation Questions****What did Jesus say that Peter would do before the rooster crowed?**

He said that Peter would deny three times that he knew Jesus.

**38:10**

Peter then said to Jesus, "Even if I must die, I will never deny you!" All the other disciples said the same thing.

**Translation Notes**

**said to Jesus, "Even if I must die, I will never deny you!"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "said to Jesus that even if he had to die, he would never deny Jesus!"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**deny you**

This could mean 'deny that I know you' or 'deny that I am your disciple' or 'disown you.'

**Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- die
- disciples (p.1249)

**Translation Questions**

**How did the disciples respond to Jesus' predictions about them?**

They said that they would die rather than deny Jesus.

**38:11**

Then Jesus went with his disciples to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation. Then Jesus went to pray by himself.

**Translation Notes****Then Jesus went with his disciples to a place called Gethsemane**

This introduces a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**a place called Gethsemane**

This could be translated as: "a nearby place called Gethsemane" or "a place called Gethsemane at the foot of the Mount of Olives."

**they would not enter into temptation**

This could be translated as: "they would not be tempted" or "Satan would not tempt them."

**by himself**

This could be translated as: "alone."

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- pray (p.1373)
- temptation (p.1432)



## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**38:12**

Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of suffering. But if there is no other way for people’s sins to be forgiven, then let your will be done.” Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an angel to strengthen him.

**Translation Notes****My Father**

This is an important title for God the Father.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**if it is possible**

This means ‘if God would allow it to happen.’ Alternate translation: “if you will allow it”

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**drink this cup of suffering**

Jesus speaks of the work that he must do, including dying on the cross, as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink from a cup. Alternate translation: “go through this suffering” or “suffer what is about to happen” or “endure this suffering.”

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**let your will be done**

This expression means ‘do what you have planned’ or ‘do what needs to be done.’

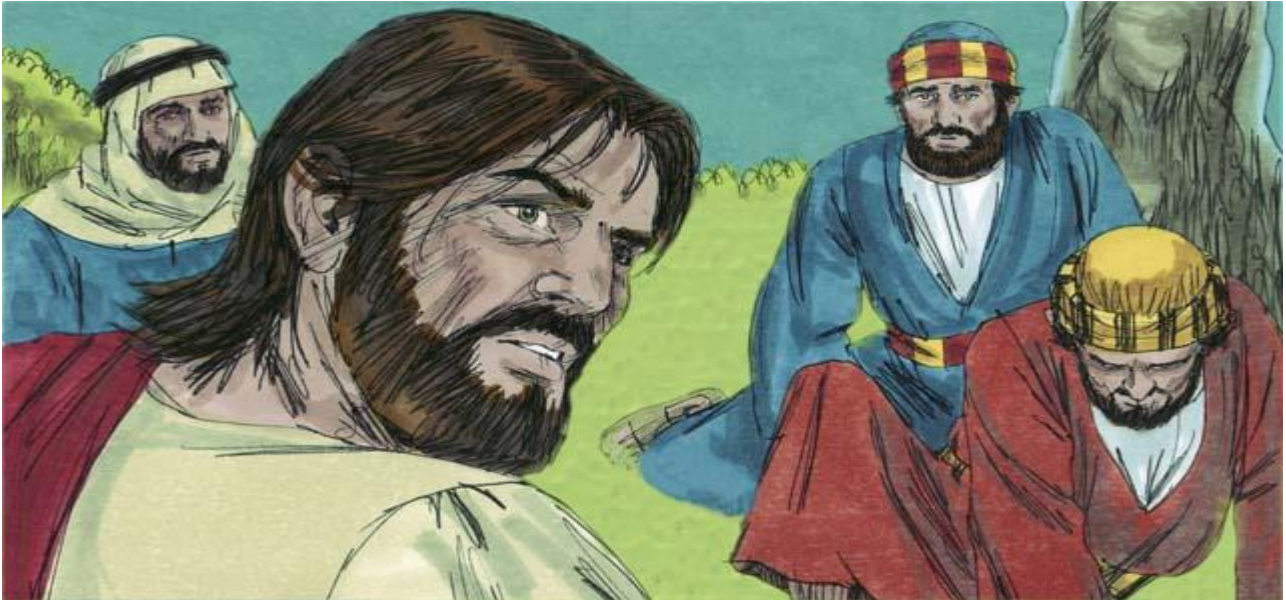
## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- prayed (p.1373)
- Father (p.1274)
- suffering (p.1427)
- sins (p.1419)
- forgiven (p.1266)
- blood
- God (p.1272)
- angel (p.1209)

## Translation Questions

### What did Jesus pray to his Father at Gethsemane?

He asked his Father not to make him drink the cup of suffering, but for God's will to be done if there was no other way for people's sins to be forgiven.

**38:13**

After each time of prayer, Jesus came back to his disciples, but they were asleep. When he returned the third time, Jesus said, "Wake up! My betrayer is here."

**Translation Notes****After each time of prayer**

This could mean 'Every time Jesus prayed that prayer.' This refers to the three times he prayed, as mentioned in [38:12](#).

**said, "Wake up! My betrayer is here."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "told them to wake up, for his betrayer was there!"

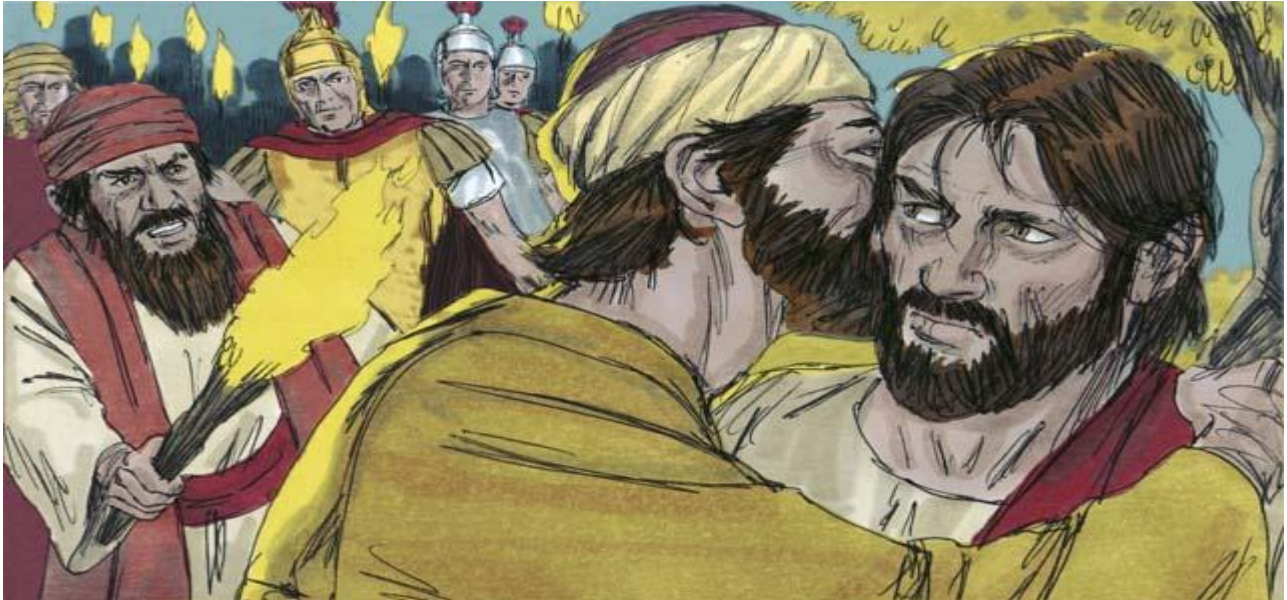
See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Translation Words**

- prayer (p.1373)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- betrayer (p.1224)

**Translation Questions****What were the disciples doing while Jesus prayed?**

They were sleeping.

**38:14**

Judas came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were carrying swords and clubs. Judas came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, Teacher;" and kissed him. He did this to show the Jewish leaders the man to arrest. Then Jesus said, "Judas, are you betraying me with a kiss?"

**Translation Notes****Judas came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were carrying swords and clubs**

This is background information about the people who came with Judas.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**came to**

Some languages may prefer to say: "went to."

**Greetings**

This can also be translated as: "Hello" or "Peace" or "Good evening."

**kissed him**

Good friends would kiss each other on the cheek, but a disciple would probably kiss his master on the hand to show respect. No one knows for sure how Judas kissed Jesus.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

### **are you betraying me with a kiss?**

This could mean 'are you really going to betray me with a kiss?' Jesus is not looking for an answer to this question, so some languages would translate it as a statement, such as: "you are betraying me by kissing me!" or "you make your betrayal even worse by kissing me!"

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

### **Translation Words**

- Judas (p.1323)
- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Teacher (p.1429)
- betraying (p.1224)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How did the soldiers know which person was Jesus?**

Judas kissed Jesus as a sign for them to arrest him.

**38:15**

As the soldiers were seizing Jesus, Peter pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of a servant of the high priest. But Jesus said, "Put the sword away! I could ask the Father for an army of angels to defend me, but I must obey my Father." Jesus healed the man's ear. Then all the disciples ran away.

**Translation Notes****pulled out his sword**

This could mean 'pulled out his sword from the place where he was carrying it.'

**the Father & my Father**

This is an important title for God the Father.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**I must obey my Father**

This could mean 'I won't do that because I must obey my Father's will and allow myself to be arrested.'

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Peter (p.1368)
- servant (p.1413)
- high priest (p.1288)

- Father (p.1274)
- angels (p.1209)
- obey
- healed
- disciples (p.1249)

## Translation Questions

### **What did Peter do in order to defend Jesus?**

He pulled out a sword and cut off the ear of a servant of the high priest.

### **Why did Jesus say that he did not need Peter to defend him?**

Jesus said he could ask the Father for an army of angels.

### **What did the disciples do after Jesus was arrested?**

They all ran away.



## 39. Jesus Is Put on Trial

*A Bible story from: Matthew 26:57-27:26; Mark 14:53-15:15; Luke 22:54-23:25; John 18:12-19:16*

### Jesus Is Put on Trial

This title can also be translated as: "About when the Jews judged Jesus" or "What happened when the Jews judged Jesus?"

**39:01**

It was now the middle of the night. The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the high priest because he wanted to question Jesus. Peter was following far behind them. When the soldiers took Jesus into the house, Peter stayed outside and warmed himself by a fire.

**Translation Notes****It was now the middle of the night**

This introduces a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**the middle of the night**

This expression means 'halfway through the night' or 'very late at night.'

**to question Jesus**

This could mean 'to ask Jesus questions to try to find something they could accuse Jesus of doing wrong.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- high priest (p.1288)
- Peter (p.1368)

**Translation Questions**

**What time of the day was it when the Jewish leaders began to question Jesus?**

It was the middle of the night.

**39:02**

Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him. However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was guilty of anything. Jesus did not say anything.

**Translation Notes****put Jesus on trial**

This could be translated as: "had a formal meeting to accuse Jesus of doing something wrong." Usually a trial is held to find out if someone is innocent or guilty of a certain crime. In this case, the leaders were determined to have Jesus found guilty.

**lied about him**

This could mean 'told lies about him' or 'falsely accused him of doing something wrong.'

**their statements did not agree with each other**

This could be translated as: "they said things about Jesus that were very different from each other" or "the witnesses said things about Jesus that contradicted each other."

**he was guilty of anything**

This could mean 'that he had done anything wrong.'

**Translation Words**

- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- Jesus (p.1310)

- guilty (p.1283)

### **Translation Questions**

**Why could the Jewish leaders not prove Jesus was guilty of anything?**

The statements of the false witnesses did not agree with each other.

39:03



Finally, the high priest looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”

## Translation Notes

### Finally

This could mean ‘After they were unable to find any evidence against him’ or ‘After they were unable to prove that he was guilty.’

### the Son of the living God

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: [Translating Son and Father \(p.1199\)](#)

## Translation Words

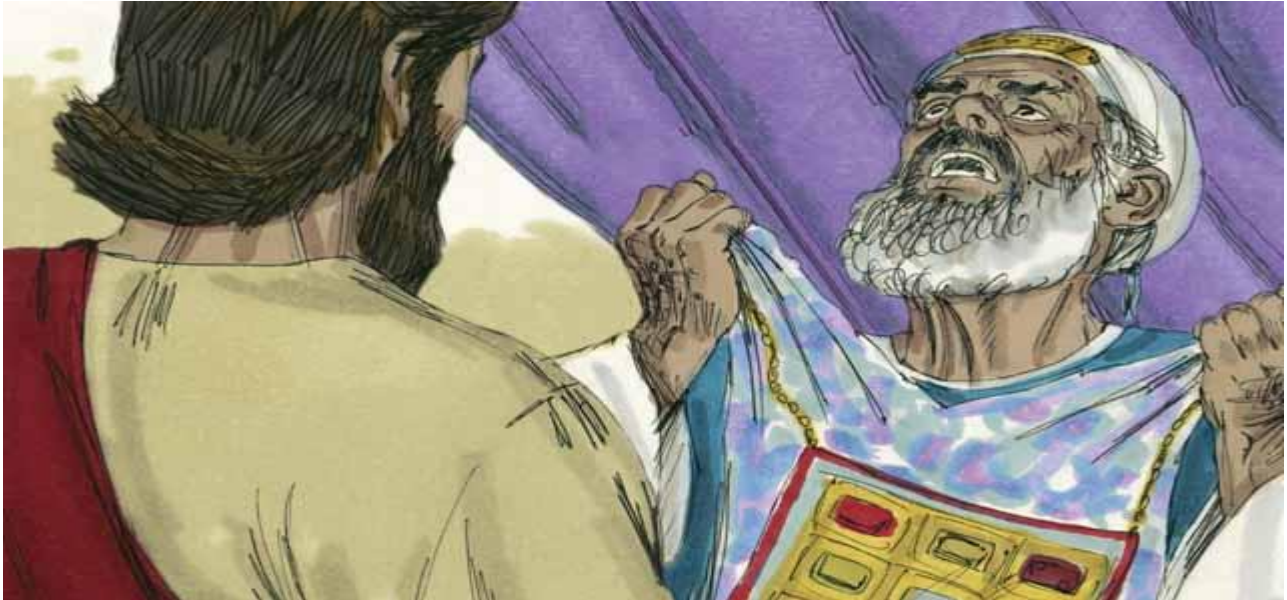
- high priest (p.1288)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- Son of the living God (p.1423)

## Translation Questions

### What question did the high priest finally ask Jesus?

He asked Jesus, “Are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”

39:04



Jesus said, "I am, and you will see me seated with God and coming from heaven." The high priest tore his clothes because he was angry at what Jesus said. He shouted to the other leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses to tell us what this man has done! You yourselves have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your decision about him?"

## Translation Notes

### **I am**

This could mean 'I am as you said' or 'I am the Messiah and the Son of God.' **I am** is also the name of God (See: [09:14](#)). By saying simply **I am**, Jesus was also saying that he is God. If possible, translate this so that people will see a similarity between Jesus' answer and the name of God.

### **seated with God**

This could be translated as: "reigning with God." Because God is the ruler over all, people talk about him as sitting on a throne in heaven. By saying that he would be seated with God, Jesus claimed that he had authority to rule with the Father.

### **seated with God and coming from heaven**

This could be translated as: "sitting beside God and then coming from heaven."

### **tore his clothes because he was angry**

The Jews would tear their clothes to show grief or anger. If tearing the clothes means something else in your language, you may want to substitute a phrase such as "he was extremely angry."

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

## **We do not need any more witnesses to tell us what this man has done!**

The high priest said this to emphasize the he thought they had already proved that Jesus was guilty of blasphemy.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

## **You yourselves**

These pronouns are plural, and refer to all the members of the council.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

## **the Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

## **What is your decision about him?**

This could mean 'Tell us what have you decided: Is he innocent or guilty?' The chief priest wanted the religious leaders to condemn Jesus for claiming to be equal with God.

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- heaven (p.1285)
- high priest (p.1288)
- leaders (p.1313)
- Son of God (p.1423)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What answer did Jesus give to the high priest?**

Jesus said, "I am, and you will see me seated with God and coming from heaven."

### **What was the crime that the high priest said that Jesus had committed?**

He said that Jesus had claimed he was the Son of God.



**39:05**

The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, "He deserves to die!" Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and mocked him.

**Translation Notes****He deserves to die!**

The Jewish leaders said this to emphasize how angry they were with Jesus.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**they blindfolded Jesus**

You could translate this as: "they covered Jesus' eyes so that he could not see."

**spit on him**

This could also be translated as: "spit on him to insult him" or "spit on him in order to say that he was worthless." This was a way of showing contempt for someone.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**Translation Words**

- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- high priest (p.1288)
- die
- Jesus (p.1310)
- mocked (p.1351)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**39:06**

As for Peter, he was waiting outside the house. A servant girl saw him. She said to him, "You also were with Jesus!" Peter denied it. Later, another girl said the same thing, and Peter denied it again. Finally, some people said, "We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from Galilee."

**Translation Notes****You also were with Jesus!**

The servant girl said this to accuse Peter of being a criminal.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**denied it**

This can be translated as: "said that it was not true" or "said that he was not with Jesus" or "said, 'No. That is not true.'"

**Peter denied it again**

This could be translated as: "Peter denied knowing Jesus a second time" or "again Peter said he had not been with Jesus."

**We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from Galilee**

The servant girl could probably tell Peter was from Galilee from the way he talked.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **are from Galilee**

This could also be translated as: "are Galileans." The people could tell from the way Jesus and Peter talked that they came from the region of Galilee.

## **Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- servant (p.1413)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Galilee (p.1269)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Where was Peter during Jesus' trial?**

Peter was waiting outside the house of the high priest.

### **Why did the people think that Peter had been with Jesus?**

Peter and Jesus were both from Galilee.

**39:07**

Then Peter said, “May God curse me if I know this man!” Immediately after Peter swore like this, a rooster crowed. Jesus turned around and looked at Peter.

**Translation Notes****May God curse me if I know this man!**

This is a curse that means ‘May God cause harm to me if what you say is true!’ or ‘May God punish me if I am lying to you!’ In this way Peter was saying very strongly that he did not know Jesus. He also referred to Jesus as **this man** to make it sound like he did not know him.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**a rooster crowed**

**Crowed** is the loud sound that a rooster makes. Compare how you translated this in [38:09](#).

**Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- God (p.1272)
- curse (p.1241)
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions****What did Peter say when the people asked if he knew Jesus?**

Peter denied three times that he knew Jesus.

**What happened immediately after Peter denied Jesus the third time?**

A rooster crowed, and Jesus turned and looked at Peter.

**39:08**

Peter went away and cried bitterly. At the same time, Judas, the one who had betrayed Jesus, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. Judas became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Translation Notes

#### **cried bitterly**

This could mean 'cried, feeling deep sorrow' or 'cried, feeling deep regret.'

#### **the one who had betrayed Jesus**

This could mean 'who had helped the leaders arrest Jesus.'

#### **had condemned Jesus to die**

This could mean 'had said that Jesus was guilty and must die.'

### Translation Words

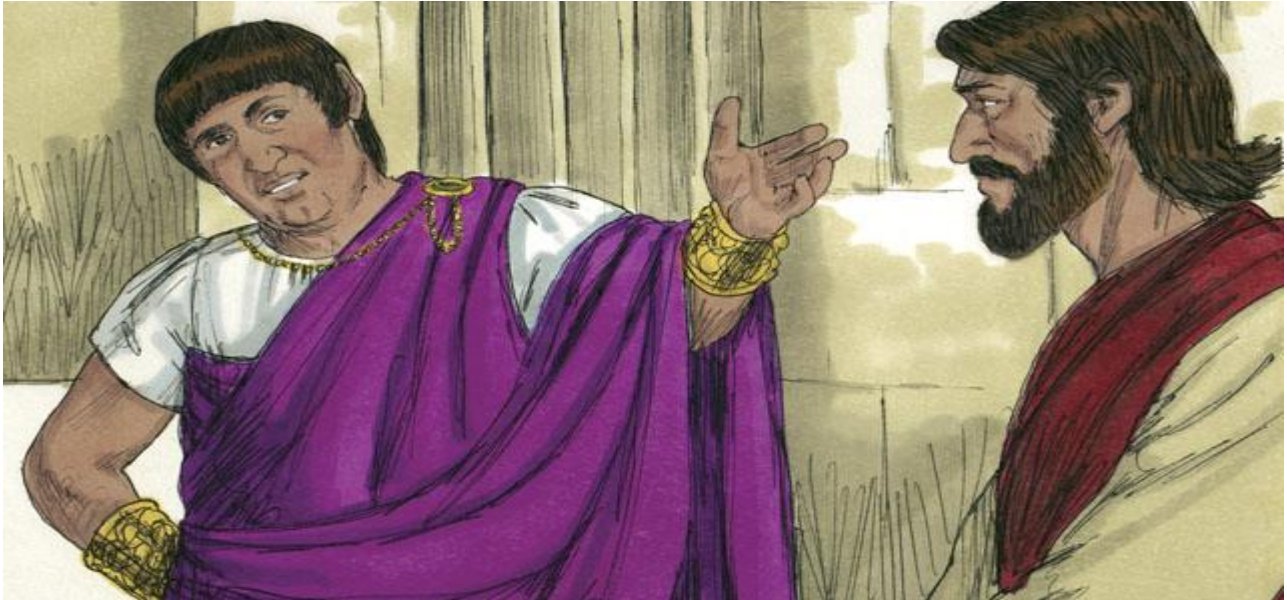
- Peter (p.1368)
- Judas (p.1323)
- betrayed (p.1224)
- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- Jesus (p.1310)

### Translation Questions

**What did Judas do when he saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus?**

Judas became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.



**39:09**

Now Pilate was the governor of Judea. He worked for Rome. The Jewish leaders brought Jesus to him. They wanted Pilate to condemn Jesus and kill him. Pilate asked Jesus, "Are you the king of the Jews?"

**Translation Notes****He worked for Rome**

The Roman government had appointed Pilate to govern the region of Judea in Israel.

**condemn Jesus and kill him**

As governor, Pilate had the authority to condemn Jesus to death and to give approval for his crucifixion, or he could set him free. The Jewish religious leaders did not have the authority to have someone killed.

**asked Jesus, "Are you the king of the Jews?"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "asked Jesus if he was the king of the Jews."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Translation Words**

- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Pilate (p.1371)
- Rome (p.1400)
- king of the Jews (p.1328)

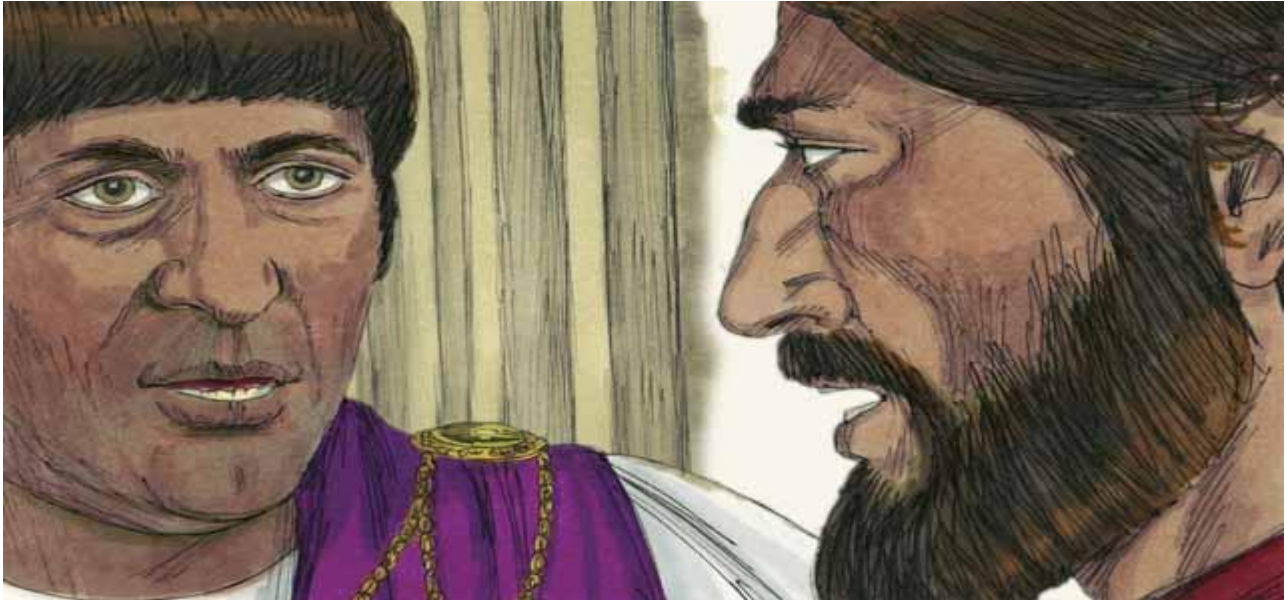
## Translation Questions

### **Why did the Jewish leaders take Jesus to the Roman governor Pilate?**

They wanted Pilate to condemn Jesus and kill him because they didn't have the authority to do it themselves.

### **What was the first question that Pilate asked Jesus?**

He asked, "Are you the king of the Jews?"

**39:10**

Jesus answered, "You have said the truth. But my kingdom is not here on earth. If it were, my servants would fight for me. I have come to earth to tell the truth about God. Everyone who loves the truth listens to me." Pilate asked, "What is truth?"

**Translation Notes****my kingdom is not here on earth**

This could mean 'my kingdom is not like earthly kingdoms.'

**my servants would fight for me**

This could mean 'my disciples would fight to protect me' so that I could establish my kingdom.

**listens to me**

This could be translated as: "hears my teaching and obeys me." It includes not just hearing Jesus' words, but also doing what he says.

**What is truth?**

This remark appears in the form of a question to reflect Pilate's belief that no one really knows what truth is. Alternate translation: "Can anyone know what is true?"

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**Translation Words**

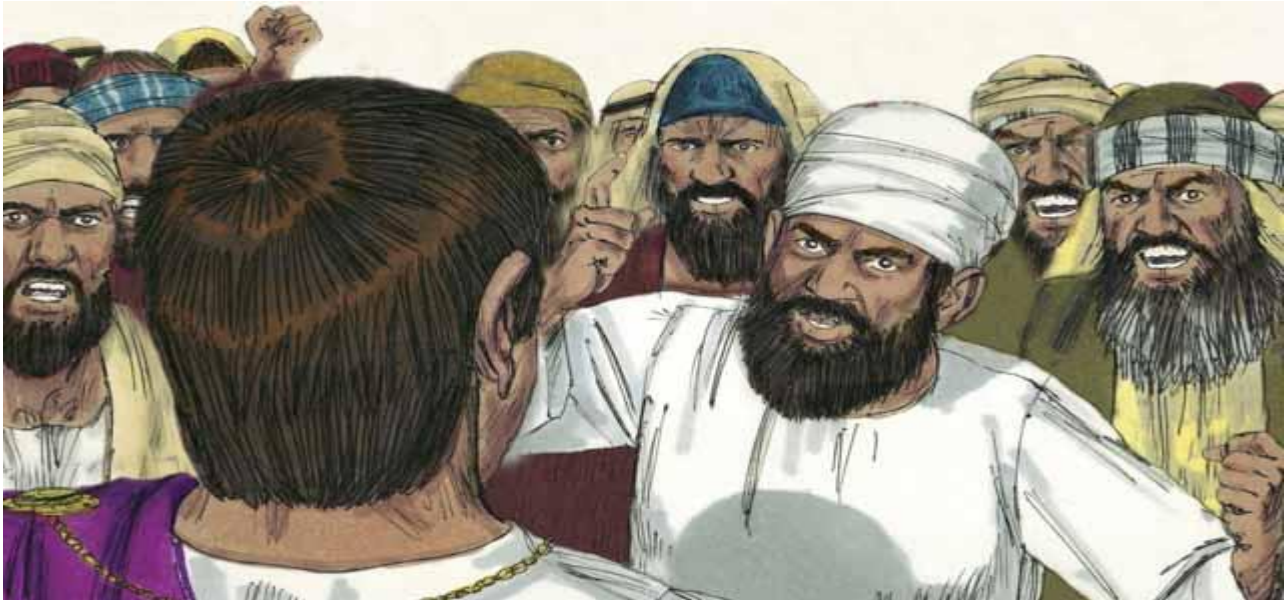
- Jesus (p.1310)
- kingdom (p.1332)

- servants (p.1413)
- truth
- God (p.1272)
- loves (p.1342)
- Pilate (p.1371)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did Jesus say was the reason he came to earth?**

Jesus said he came to earth to tell the truth about God.

**39:11**

After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, "I cannot find any reason that this man deserves to die." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" Pilate replied, "He is not guilty of doing anything wrong." But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, "He is not guilty!"

**Translation Notes****He is not guilty**

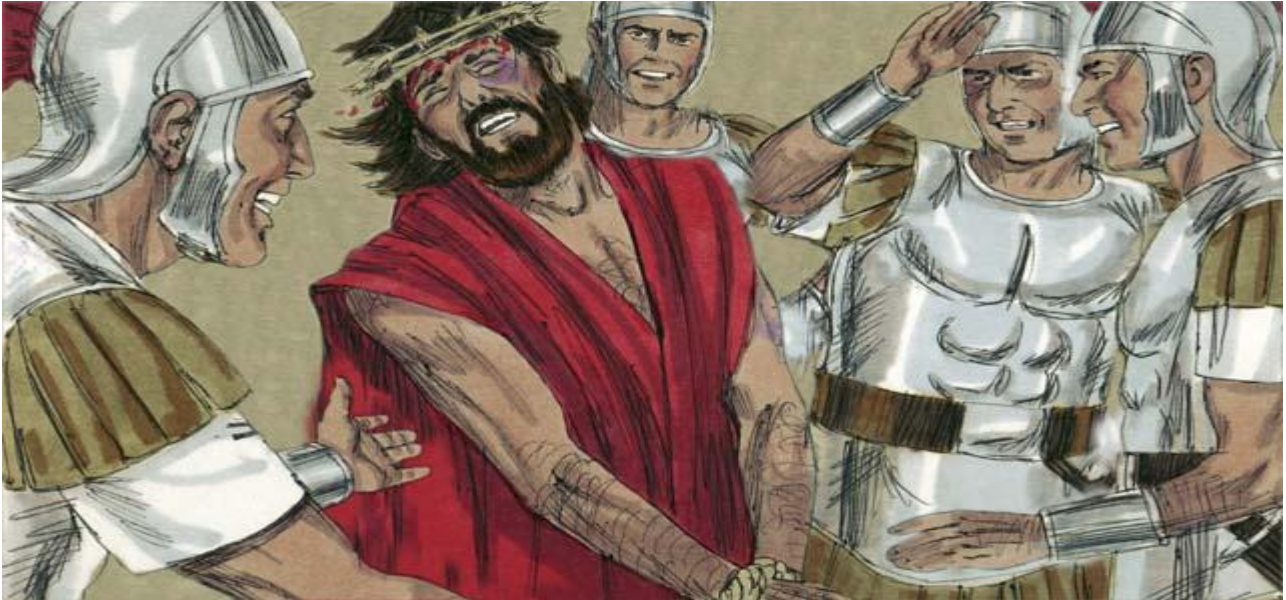
This could mean 'He has done nothing wrong!'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Pilate (p.1371)
- guilty (p.1283)
- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- Crucify (p.1240)

**Translation Questions****How many times did Pilate say to the crowd that Jesus was not guilty?**

He said three times that Jesus was not guilty.

**39:12**

Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he agreed to have his soldiers crucify Jesus. The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"

**Translation Notes****begin to riot**

This could mean 'start doing violent things in their anger.'

**he agreed to have**

Pilate did not want to kill Jesus because he believed that Jesus was innocent. But he was forced to tell his soldiers to crucify Jesus because of his fear of the crowd. If possible, translate this phrase in a way that shows his reluctance.

**put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him**

They put the robe and crown on Jesus to mock him.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**a royal robe**

This could mean 'a robe like a king's robe.' This robe had a bright color, so it looked like the kind of robe that a king would wear.

**a crown made of thorns**

This could mean 'a ring woven from thorns.' A king would wear a crown of gold.

### **Look, the King of the Jews!**

They were saying this to mock Jesus. They were calling Jesus “King of the Jews,” but they did not really believe he was a king.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

### **Look, the King of the Jews!**

They were saying this to mock Jesus. They did not really believe he was a king, and yet what they were saying was true.

See TA article: **Irony (p.1148)**

### **Look**

This could mean ‘Look at’ or ‘Here is.’

### **the King of the Jews**

Since the soldiers were mocking Jesus, this could be translated as: “the so-called King of the Jews.”

### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- Pilate (p.1371)
- crucify (p.1240)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Roman (p.1400)
- mocked (p.1351)
- King of the Jews (p.1328)

## **Translation Questions**

### **If he believed Jesus was innocent, why did Pilate allow Jesus to be crucified?**

Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot.

### **How did the Roman soldiers treat Jesus?**

They whipped Jesus, put a royal robe and a crown of thorns on him, and mocked him.

## 40. Jesus Is Crucified

*A Bible story from: Matthew 27:27-61; Mark 15:16-47; Luke 23:26-56; John 19:17-42*

### Jesus Is Crucified

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus died on a cross" or "What happened when Jesus died on a cross?"



## 40:01



After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.

### Translation Notes

#### **After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him**

This introduces a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

#### **led him away**

This could mean 'forced him to go with them.' This could also be translated as: "took him away."

#### **to crucify him**

This could mean 'to kill him on a cross.'

### Translation Words

- mocked (p.1351)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- crucify (p.1240)
- cross (p.1239)

### Translation Questions

**When the soldiers led Jesus away to crucify him, what did they make him carry?**

They made him carry the cross on which he would die.

**40:02**

The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called 'the Skull' and nailed his hands and feet to the cross. But Jesus said, "Father, forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing." They also put a sign on the cross above his head. It said, "King of the Jews." This is what Pilate had told them to write.

**Translation Notes****a place called 'the Skull'**

This can be stated in active form: "a place that people called 'the Skull'"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**the Skull**

This is a small escarpment near Jerusalem with a rocky, white face which looks somewhat like a skull.

**Father**

This is an important title for God the Father.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing**

This could mean 'they do not understand the meaning of what they are doing, so please forgive them.' The soldiers thought Jesus was only a criminal who deserved to die. They did not understand that he was the Son of God. Alternate translation: "for they do not really know whom they are crucifying"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- cross (p.1239)
- Father (p.1274)
- forgive (p.1266)
- Pilate (p.1371)
- King of the Jews (p.1328)

## Translation Questions

**What was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified?**

It was called 'the Skull.'

**How did the soldiers attach Jesus to the cross?**

They nailed his hands and feet to the cross.

**What did Jesus pray concerning the people who were crucifying him?**

He prayed, "Father, forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing."

**What was written on the sign above Jesus' head?**

The sign said, "King of the Jews."

**40:03**

Then the soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing. When they did this, they fulfilled a prophecy that said, "They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing."

**Translation Notes****the soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing**

This could mean 'played a game of chance to win Jesus' clothes.' We do not know how they did this, but in some cultures it could be translated as: "tossed stones on the ground to win Jesus' clothing" or "chose sticks to decide who could take Jesus' clothes." The winner received his clothing.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**they fulfilled a prophecy that said**

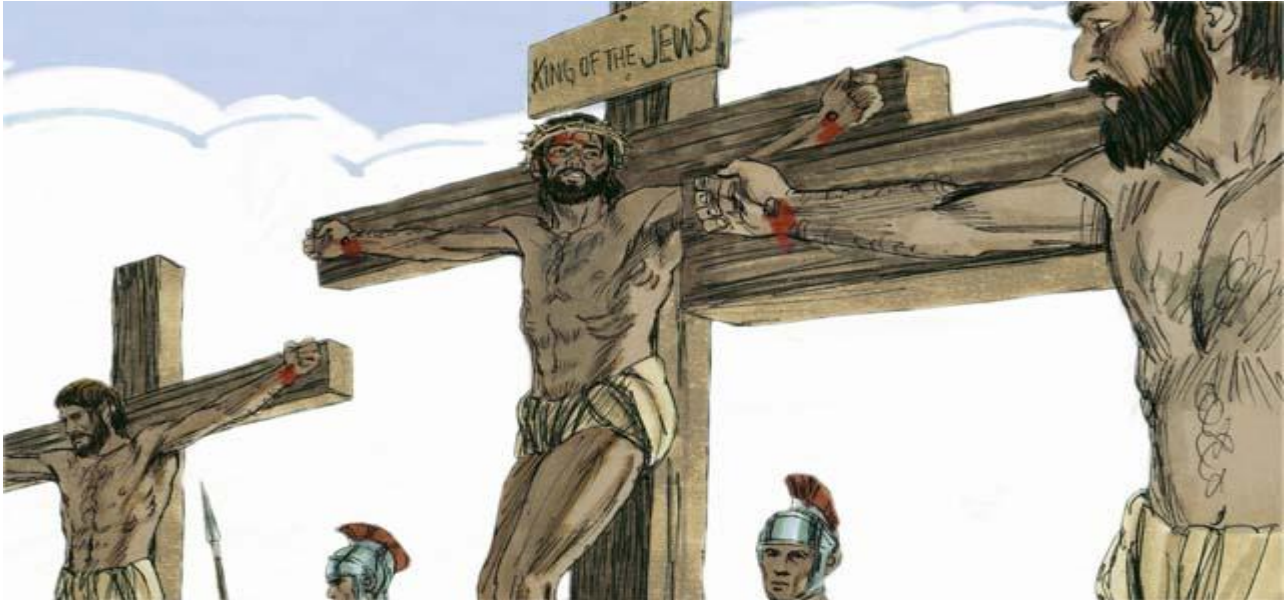
This could mean 'they did what the scriptures had long ago predicted would happen to the Messiah' or 'they did what a prophet wrote long ago.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus' (p.1310)
- fulfilled (p.1268)
- prophecy (p.1381)

**Translation Questions****How did the soldiers divide up Jesus' clothes?**

They gambled for his clothing as had been prophesied.

**40:04**

There were also two robbers whom the soldiers crucified at the same time, putting them on either side of Jesus. One of the robbers mocked Jesus, but the other said to him, “Do you not fear that God will punish you? We are guilty of doing many bad things, but this man is innocent.” Then he said to Jesus, “Please remember me when you become king in your kingdom.” Jesus answered him, “Today you will be with me in Paradise.”

**Translation Notes****two robbers**

This could also be translated as: “two bandits.” This refers to criminals who used force or violence to steal things.

**Do you not fear that God will punish you?**

The robber does not expect an answer to this question; it is a way that some languages use to make a strong statement. If your language does not use questions in this way, then translate this as: “You should fear God!”

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**We are guilty of doing many bad things, but this man is innocent**

This could be translated as: “You and I have done evil things and deserve to die, but this man, Jesus, has done nothing wrong and does not deserve to die.”

**We are guilty**

**We** here includes both robbers, but does not include Jesus.

See TA article: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1117)**

### **this man**

This phrase refers to Jesus.

### **Please remember me**

This could mean 'Please accept me' or 'Please welcome me' or 'Please allow me to be with you.' **Remember** here does not mean to recall something after forgetting it. Translate this in a way that communicates a humble request.

### **in your kingdom**

This is a metonym that refers to the time when Jesus will rule. Alternate translation: "when you establish your kingdom" or "when you are ruling as king"

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

### **Paradise**

This is another name for 'heaven.'

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- crucified (p.1240)
- mocked (p.1351)
- God (p.1272)
- guilty (p.1283)
- innocent (p.1297)
- kingdom (p.1332)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did the robber who did not mock Jesus ask him to do?**

He asked Jesus to remember him in his kingdom.

### **What was Jesus' answer to the request of the robber?**

Jesus said, "Today, you will be with me in Paradise."

**40:05**

The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you."

**Translation Notes****If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself!**

The people were mocking Jesus. Alternate translation: "We do not believe you are the King of the Jews, but if you are"

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**If you are the Son of God**

The people were suggesting what Jesus should do if he was indeed the Son of God. They did not believe that to be true.

See TA article: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1134)**

**If you are the Son of God**

The people were mocking Jesus, but he truly was the Son of God.

See TA article: **Irony (p.1148)**

**the Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**



## **believe you**

This could mean 'believe in you' or 'believe that you are the Messiah.'

### **Translation Words**

- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- mocked (p.1351)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- cross (p.1239)
- save (p.1410)
- believe (p.1220)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did the crowd want Jesus to do to prove that he was the Son of God?**

They told him to come down from the cross and save himself.

## 40:06



Then the sky over the whole region became completely dark, even though it was the middle of the day. It became dark at noon and stayed dark for three hours.

### Translation Notes

(No translation words for this frame)

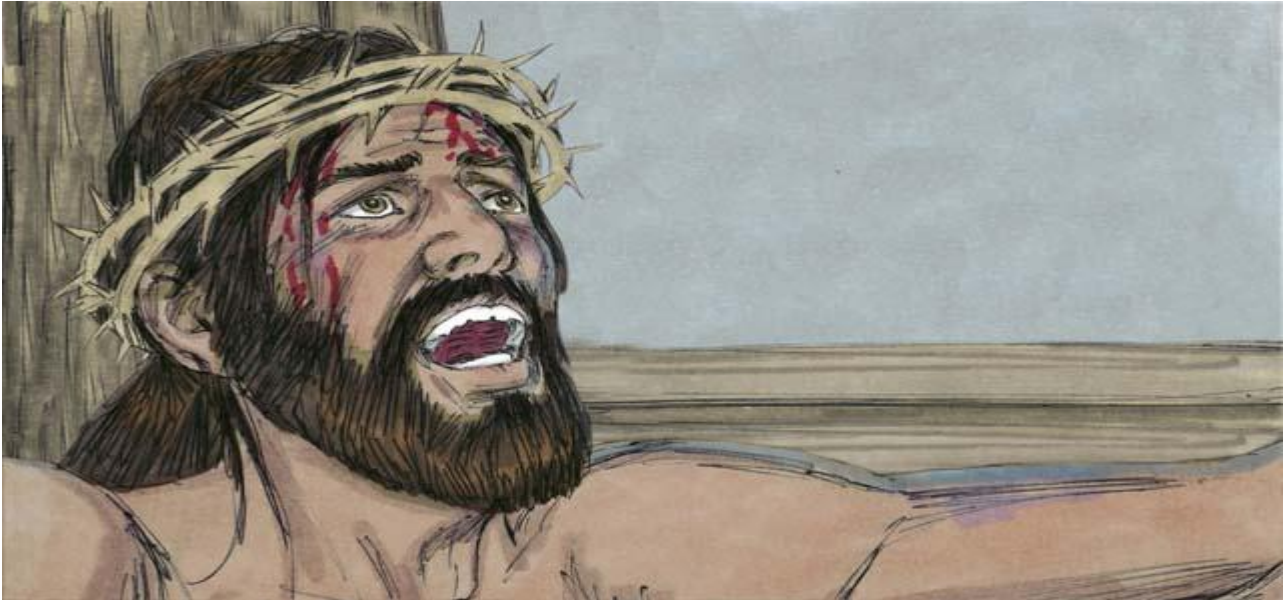
### Translation Words

- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- mocked (p.1351)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- cross (p.1239)
- save (p.1410)
- believe (p.1220)

### Translation Questions

**What unusual thing happened in the sky in the middle of the day?**

It became completely dark at noon and stayed dark for three hours.

**40:07**

Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I am giving my spirit into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his spirit. When he died, there was an earthquake. In the Temple, the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God was torn in two from the top to the bottom.

**Translation Notes****It is finished!**

This could also be translated as: "It is completed" or "I have finished it" or "I have completed the work." This means that Jesus' work of salvation was complete.

**Father**

This is an important title for God the Father.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**I am giving my spirit into your hands**

This statement is a metonym that refers to God's care. Alternate translation: "I entrust my spirit to your care" or "I give my spirit to you, knowing you will care for it"

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

**bowed his head**

This could mean 'lowered his head.'

**gave up his spirit**

This is a polite way to say that Jesus died. This could be translated as: “gave up his spirit to God” or “released his spirit to God and died”

See TA article: **Euphemism (p.1112)**

**In the Temple, the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God was torn in two**

This can be stated in active form: “God tore in two the large curtain in the Temple that separated the people from his presence”

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**the large curtain**

This was a large, strong fabric hung in the Temple. It was like a wall separating one room from another. It can also be translated as: “The thick curtain” or “The hanging fabric” or “The screen.”

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Father (p.1274)
- spirit (p.1425)
- died
- God (p.1272)
- Temple (p.1430)

**Translation Questions****What were the last words Jesus cried out from the cross?**

Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.”

**What miraculous things happened immediately after Jesus died?**

There was an earthquake and the large curtain in the Temple was torn in two, from top to bottom.

**40:08**

Through his death, Jesus opened the way for people to come to God. When a soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that had happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was innocent. He was the Son of God."

**Translation Notes****Through his death**

This could mean 'By means of his death' or 'By dying.'

**opened the way**

This could mean 'made it possible.'

**come to God**

This could mean 'come near to God' or 'go near to God' or 'approach God' or 'know God personally.' The tearing of the curtain showed that the barrier between God and people had been removed.

**the Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**Translation Words**

- death
- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- innocent (p.1297)

- Son of God (p.1423)

## Translation Questions

**What did Jesus accomplish through his death?**

Jesus opened the way for people to come to God.

**40:09**

Then two Jewish leaders named Joseph and Nicodemus came and asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They believed that Jesus was the Messiah. They wrapped his body in cloth, took it to a tomb cut out of rock and placed it inside. Then they rolled a large stone in front of the tomb to block the opening.

**Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

**Translation Words**

- death
- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- innocent (p.1297)
- Son of God (p.1423)

**Translation Questions****Who asked Pilate for Jesus' body?**

Two Jewish leaders named Joseph and Nicodemus asked for his body.

**What did they do with the body?**

They wrapped the body in cloth and placed it in a tomb cut out of rock, and then rolled a large stone in front of the tomb.

## **41. God Raises Jesus from the Dead**

*A Bible story from: Matthew 27:62-28:15; Mark 16:1-11; Luke 24:1-12; John 20:1-18*

### **God Raises Jesus from the Dead**

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made Jesus alive again" or "How did God make Jesus alive again?"



**41:01**

After the soldiers crucified Jesus, the Jewish leaders said to Pilate, “That liar, Jesus, said he would rise from the dead after three days. Someone must guard the tomb to make sure that his disciples do not steal the body. If they do, they will say he has risen from the dead.”

**Translation Notes****After the soldiers crucified Jesus**

The connecting word **After** introduces a sequence of events. The Jewish leaders spoke to Pilate after he had had Jesus crucified.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**That liar, Jesus, said**

This could also be translated as: “That man, Jesus, lied and said.” They refused to believe that Jesus told the truth about being the Son of God.

**rise from the dead**

This could mean ‘come back to life’ or ‘become alive again.’

**If they do, they will say he has risen from the dead**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. The Jewish leaders thought that the disciples would only be able to say Jesus had risen from the dead if they were able to steal his body.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

## Translation Words

- crucified (p.1240)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- Pilate (p.1371)
- rise
- dead
- tomb (p.1282)
- disciples (p.1249)

## Translation Questions

**What did Jesus say would happen three days after his death?**

He would rise from the dead.

**Did the Jewish leaders believe that Jesus would rise again?**

No, they thought he was lying.

**What were the Jewish leaders afraid that the disciples would do?**

They thought the disciples would steal the body and say that Jesus had risen from the dead.

**41:02**

Pilate said, "Take some soldiers and guard the tomb as well as you can." So they placed a seal on the stone at the entrance of the tomb. They also put soldiers there to make sure no one could steal the body.

**Translation Notes****Pilate said, "Take some soldiers and guard the tomb as well as you can."**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Pilate told them to take some soldiers and guard the tomb as well as they could."

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**they placed**

This could mean 'the religious leaders and the soldiers placed.'

**a seal on the stone**

They put a soft material like clay or wax between the stone and the tomb and marked it with an official seal. If anyone moved the stone, the material would break and show that someone had entered the tomb. This could also be translated as: "a mark on the stone to forbid people from moving it."

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**Translation Words**

- Pilate (p.1371)
- tomb (p.1282)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did the Jewish leaders do to secure Jesus' tomb?**

They put soldiers to guard the tomb and placed a seal on the stone at the entrance of the tomb.

**41:03**

The day after Jesus died was a Sabbath day. No one could work on the Sabbath day, so no friends of Jesus went to his tomb. But on the day after the Sabbath, very early in the morning, several women got ready to go to Jesus' tomb. They wanted to put more spices on his body.

**Translation Notes****No one could work on the Sabbath day**

The Sabbath day rules did not permit a Jew to walk very far or to do any other kind of work.

**put more spices on his body**

It was the custom of the Jews to wash the body and then wrap it with strong, pleasant smelling spices to prevent the dead body from smelling bad so quickly. This was also a sign of honor and devotion.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**spices**

This refers to sweet-smelling spices that were placed on a dead body to cover the bad smell. This can also be translated as: "sweet-smelling spices" or "sweet-smelling oils" or "sweet-smelling plants."

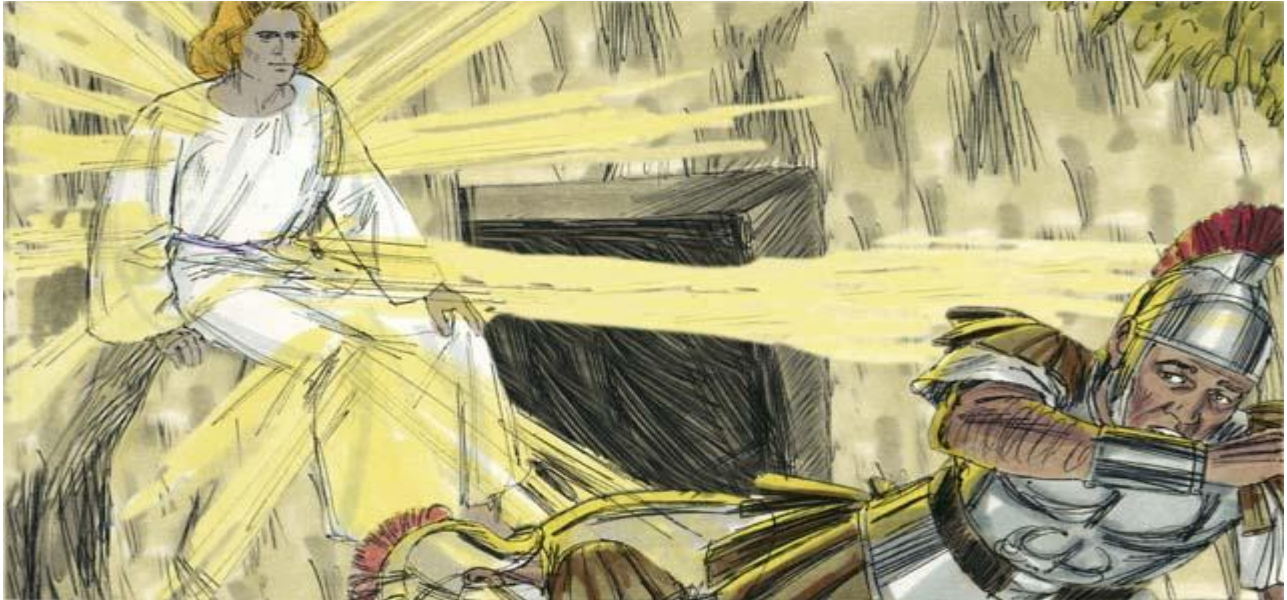
**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Sabbath (p.1401)
- tomb (p.1282)

## Translation Questions

**When did the women go to Jesus' tomb?**

They went there very early on the morning after the Sabbath day.

**41:04**

Before the women arrived, there was a great earthquake at the tomb. An angel came from heaven. He rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the tomb and sat on it. This angel was shining as brightly as lightning. The soldiers at the tomb saw him. They were so terrified that they fell to the ground like dead men.

**Translation Notes****Before the women arrived, there was a great earthquake at the tomb**

The connecting word **Before** introduces a sequential clause. First there was the earthquake and appearance of the angel, and then the women arrived at the tomb.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**there was a great earthquake**

This could also be translated as: “there was a violent earthquake” or “there was a forceful shaking of the ground.” Some languages may prefer to reword this as: “the ground began to shake violently.”

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

**was shining as brightly as lightning**

This could mean ‘whose appearance was as bright as lightning.’

**fell to the ground like dead men**

This is a simile that means the soldiers fell down and did not move, just like dead men do not move. They probably had fainted from fright. To make this clear, this could be translated as: “suddenly fell to the ground and did not move.”

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

## Translation Words

- angel (p.1209)
- heaven (p.1285)
- tomb (p.1282)
- dead

## Translation Questions

**What miraculous events happened at the tomb before the women arrived there?**

There was an earthquake and an angel appeared, rolled away the stone, and sat on it.

**What did the soldiers do when they saw that angel?**

They were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.



**41:05**

When the women arrived at the tomb, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the tomb and see.” The women looked into the tomb and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

**Translation Notes****When the women arrived at the tomb, the angel told them**

The word **When** introduces a simultaneous clause. The two events happened at the same time, the women arrived at the tomb and the angel spoke to them.

See TA article: **Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship (p.1098)**

**Do not be afraid**

This could mean ‘Stop being afraid.’ An angel shining like lightning was a frightening sight!

**He has risen from the dead**

This could be translated as: “He has come back to life.”

**His body was not there!**

This exclamation emphasizes how surprised they were that the body of Jesus was no longer in the tomb.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Translation Words**

- angel (p.1209)
- Jesus (p.1310)

- risen
- dead
- tomb (p.1282)

## Translation Questions

### **What did the angel say to the women when they arrived at the tomb?**

The angel told them not to be afraid, for Jesus had risen from the dead. The angel told them to look in the tomb and see.

**41:06**

Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to Galilee ahead of you.’”

**Translation Notes**

**“Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to Galilee ahead of you.’”**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “Go and tell the disciples that Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to Galilee ahead of you.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**Go and tell the disciples**

This is a command that the angel is giving to the women.

**from the dead**

This could mean ‘from among all those who have died.’ This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

See TA article: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1163)**

**he will go to Galilee ahead of you**

This could mean ‘he will meet you in Galilee’ or ‘he will be in Galilee when you get there.’ **You** here is plural, including the apostles and other disciples.

See TA article: **Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural (p.1122)**

## Translation Words

- angel (p.1209)
- disciples (p.1249)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- risen
- dead
- Galilee (p.1269)

## Translation Questions

### What did the angel tell the women to say to the disciples?

He told them to tell the disciples that Jesus has risen from the dead, and that he would go to Galilee ahead of them.

## 41:07



The women were amazed and very joyful. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

### Translation Notes

#### the good news

This can also be translated as: "the good news that Jesus was alive again." This good news refers to the fact that Jesus had risen from the dead.

### Translation Words

- joyful (p.1320)
- disciples (p.1249)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**41:08**

As the women were on their way to tell the disciples the good news, Jesus appeared to them. They bowed down at his feet. Then Jesus said, "Do not be afraid. Go and tell my disciples to go to Galilee. They will see me there."

**Translation Notes****Do not be afraid. Go and tell my disciples**

These are commands that Jesus is giving to the women.

**bowed down at his feet**

They did this symbolic action to honor Jesus as they would expect to do in the presence of a king.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**will see me**

This could mean 'will meet me' or 'can meet with me.'

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- disciples (p.1249)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Galilee (p.1269)

## Translation Questions

**Who appeared to the women as they were on their way to speak to the disciples?**

Jesus appeared to them.

**What did the women do when they saw Jesus?**

They bowed down at his feet.

## 42. Jesus Returns to Heaven

*A Bible story from: Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:12-20; Luke 24:13-53; John 20:19-23; Acts 1:1-11*

### Jesus Returns to Heaven

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus went back to heaven" or "How did Jesus go back to heaven?"



**42:01**

On the day that God raised Jesus from the dead, two of his disciples were going to a nearby town. As they walked, they talked about what had happened to Jesus. They had hoped that he was the Messiah, but then he was killed. Now the women said he was alive again. They did not know what to believe.

**Translation Notes****They had hoped that he was the Messiah, but then he was killed**

This connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. They thought the Messiah would reign as king of Israel. They did not expect him to die so they could not reconcile Jesus being Messiah with Jesus being crucified. His death was in contrast to their expectations for the Messiah.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- raised
- disciples (p.1249)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- alive
- believe (p.1220)

**Translation Questions****What were the two disciples talking about as they walked along the road?**

They were talking about what had happened to Jesus.

**42:02**

Jesus approached them and started walking with them, but they did not recognize him. He asked what they were talking about. They told him about all the things that had happened to Jesus during the previous few days. They thought they were talking to a foreigner who did not know what had happened in Jerusalem.

**Translation Notes****Jesus approached them and started walking with them, but they did not recognize him**

The connecting word **but** indicates a contrast relationship. They knew Jesus well so you would expect them to recognize him, but they did not.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**did not recognize him**

This could mean 'did not know that it was Jesus.'

**all the things that had happened**

This refers to the teaching and miracles of Jesus, his death, and the reports of his resurrection.

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)

**Translation Questions**

**Who did the two disciples think Jesus was when he approached them on the road?**

They thought he was a foreigner who did not know what had happened in Jerusalem.

**42:03**

Then Jesus explained to them what God's word said about the Messiah. Long ago, prophets had said that evil men would make the Messiah suffer and die. But the prophets also said he would rise again on the third day.

**Translation Notes****on the third day**

Some languages may prefer to say: "on the third day after his death."

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God's word (p.1439)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- prophets (p.1381)
- suffer (p.1427)
- rise

**Translation Questions****What had the prophets said would happen to the Messiah?**

They had said the Messiah would suffer and die, but would rise again on the third day.

**42:04**

When they arrived at the town where the two men wanted to stay, it was almost evening. They invited Jesus to stay with them, so he went into a house with them. They sat down to eat their evening meal. Jesus picked up a loaf of bread, thanked God for it, and then broke it. Suddenly, they recognized that he was Jesus. But at that moment, he disappeared from their sight.

**Translation Notes****it was almost evening**

This can also be translated as: "the day was ending" or "the sun was going down" or "it was starting to get dark."

**he disappeared from their sight**

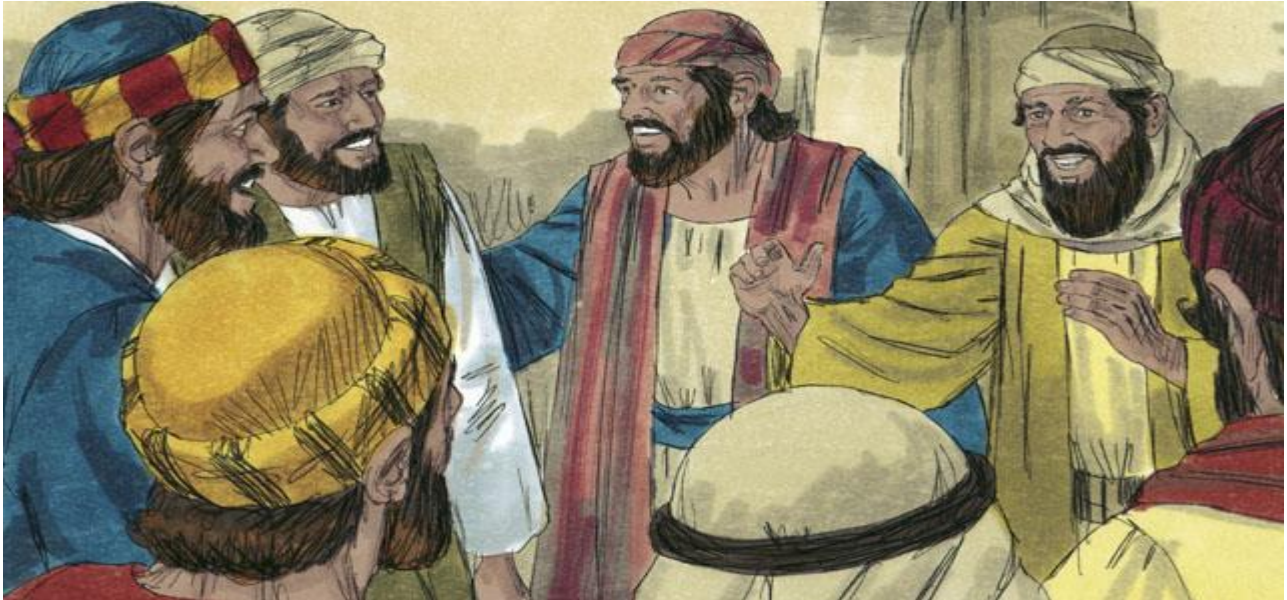
This could also be translated as: "he was gone" or "he was no longer there."

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****What was Jesus doing when the two disciples recognized him?**

He was breaking a loaf of bread and thanking God for it.

**42:05**

The two men said to each other, "That was Jesus! That is why we were so excited when he explained God's word to us!" Immediately they left and went back to Jerusalem. When they arrived, they told the disciples, "Jesus is alive! We have seen him!"

**Translation Notes****That was Jesus!**

This exclamation emphasizes how shocked the disciples were to see Jesus alive again.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**they told the disciples, "Jesus is alive! We have seen him!"**

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "they told the disciples that Jesus was alive, and that they had seen him!"

See TA article: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1104)**

**Jesus is alive!**

The two disciples used this exclamation to emphasize to the other disciples that Jesus was alive.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**We have seen him!**

The two disciples used this exclamation to emphasize that they not only heard that Jesus was alive, but had personally see him.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

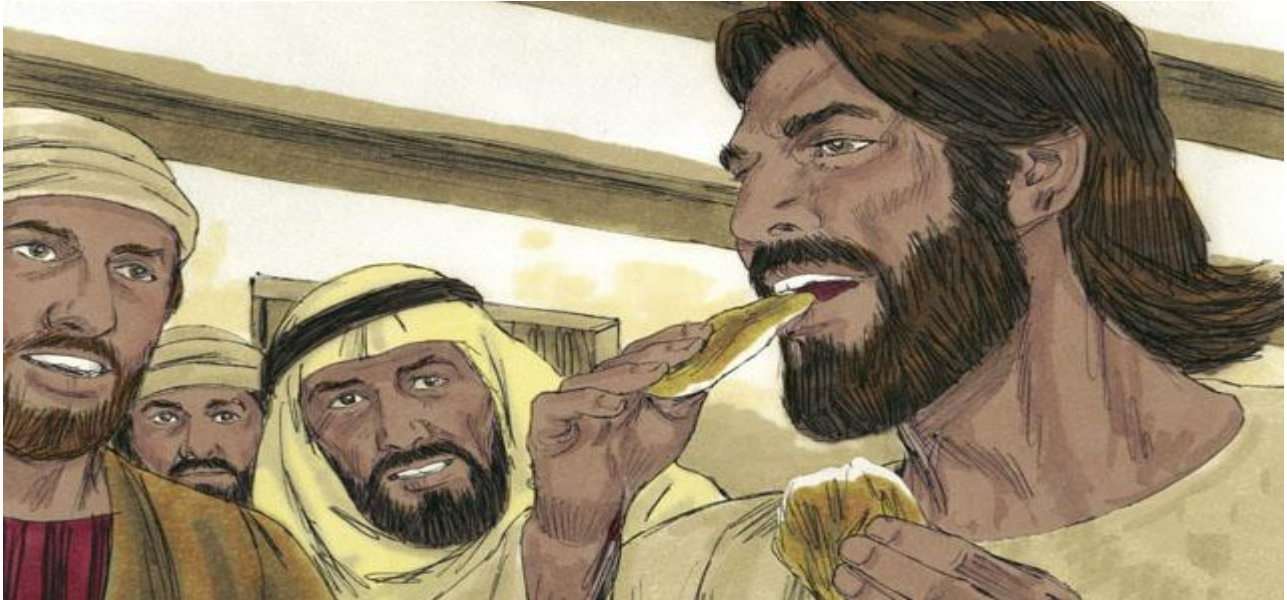
## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God's word (p.1439)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- disciples (p.1249)
- alive

## Translation Questions

### **What did the two disciples do after Jesus left them?**

They returned to Jerusalem and told the other disciples that Jesus was alive and that they had seen him.

**42:06**

As the disciples were talking, Jesus suddenly appeared in the room with them. He said, “Peace to you!” The disciples thought he was a ghost, but Jesus said, “Why are you afraid? Why do you not think it is really I, Jesus? Look at my hands and feet. Ghosts do not have bodies like I do.” To show that he was not a ghost, he asked for something to eat. They gave him a piece of fish, and he ate it.

**Translation Notes****Peace to you**

‘May you have peace’ or ‘May God give you peace!’ The word **you** is plural.

See TA article: **Forms of You (p.1121)**

**a ghost**

This refers to the spirit of a dead person.

**Why are you afraid?**

Jesus uses this rhetorical question to comfort them. Alternate translation: “Do not be frightened.”

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**Why do you not think it is really I, Jesus?**

Jesus uses this rhetorical question to mildly rebuke them. Jesus was telling them not to doubt that he was alive. Alternate translation: “Do not doubt I am Jesus!” or “Stop doubting!”

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**



## Translation Words

- disciples (p.1249)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Peace (p.1363)

## Translation Questions

**How did Jesus prove to the disciples that he was not a ghost?**

He took a piece of fish and ate it.

**42:07**

Jesus said, "Everything about me that God's word says will happen, I have told you that it must happen." Then Jesus made them understand God's word better. He said, "Long ago, prophets wrote that I, the Messiah, would suffer, die, and then rise from the dead on the third day."

**Translation Notes****on the third day**

This could mean 'after three days' or 'three days later.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God's word (p.1439)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- suffer (p.1427)
- die
- rise

**Translation Questions****What enabled the disciples to understand God's word?**

Jesus made them understand God's word better.

**42:08**

“The prophets also wrote that my disciples will proclaim God’s message. They will tell everyone to repent. If they repent, God will forgive their sins. My disciples will proclaim this message starting in Jerusalem. Then they will go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of everything I have said and done, and of everything that happened to me.”

### Translation Notes

#### **proclaim**

This could mean ‘announce’ or ‘preach.’

#### **If they repent, God will forgive their sins**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If people repent, then God will forgive their sins. If they do not repent, then he will not forgive their sins.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

#### **My disciples will proclaim this message starting in Jerusalem**

This could mean ‘My disciples will begin doing this in Jerusalem’ or ‘My disciples will begin to proclaim these things in Jerusalem.’

#### **You are witnesses of everything**

This could mean ‘You will tell other people all the things that.’

### Translation Words

- God’s message (p.1439)

- disciples (p.1249)
- repent (p.1395)
- forgive (p.1266)
- sins (p.1419)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- people groups (p.1365)

## Translation Questions

### **What was the message that Jesus' disciples were to proclaim?**

They would proclaim that everyone should repent so that God would forgive their sins.

### **Where were Jesus' disciples to proclaim this message?**

They would proclaim it first in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.

## 42:09



During the next 40 days, Jesus appeared to his disciples many times. Once, he even appeared to more than 500 people at the same time! In many ways, he proved to his disciples that he was alive, and he taught them about the kingdom of God.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- alive
- kingdom of God (p.1332)

### Translation Questions

**How long did Jesus continue to appear to the disciples?**

He appeared to them for 40 days.

**How big was the largest group of disciples that saw Jesus during this time?**

He appeared to more than 500 disciples at the same time.

**42:10**

Jesus said to his disciples, "God has given me the right to rule over everyone in heaven and on earth. So I am telling you now: go and make disciples in all people groups. In order to do this, you must baptize them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. You must also teach them to obey everything I have commanded you. Remember, I will always be with you."

**Translation Notes****you & You**

Each instance of **you** in this frame is plural, and refers to all the disciples present.

See TA article: **Forms of You (p.1121)**

**make disciples in all people groups**

This could mean 'help people from every people group become my disciples.'

**in the name of**

Here **name** is a metonym that means both, 'by the authority of' and, 'under the authority of.' Consider translating the word **name** literally if it will be understood in this way in your language. This phrase can also be repeated as in, 'in the name of the Father, in the name of the Son, and in the name of the Holy Spirit.'

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

**the Father, the Son**

These are important titles for God the Father and for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

## Holy Spirit

This introduces the Holy Spirit as a new character.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- heaven (p.1285)
- people groups (p.1365)
- baptize (p.1215)
- the Father (p.1274)
- the Son (p.1423)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- obey

## Translation Questions

### What did Jesus command his disciples to go and do?

He told them to go and make disciples of all people groups, baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and teaching them to obey everything he had commanded them.

**42:11**

Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you power. He will do this by sending the Holy Spirit upon you.” Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. Jesus sat down in heaven at the right hand of God to rule over all things.

**Translation Notes****my Father**

This is an important title for God the Father.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**a cloud hid him from their sight**

This could also be translated as: “he disappeared into a cloud.”

**Jesus sat down in heaven at the right hand of God**

To sit down was a symbolic act that indicated that Jesus’ work was completed. Furthermore, sitting at the right hand of God represents taking the place of honor beside him.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**at the right hand of God**

This could also be translated as: “at the right side of God.”

**over all things**

This could mean ‘over everything.’



## **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Father (p.1274)
- power
- Spirit (p.1290)
- heaven (p.1285)
- God (p.1272)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why did Jesus tell the disciples to wait in Jerusalem?**

They were to wait until the Father gave them power when the Holy Spirit came on them.

### **Where did Jesus go 40 days after his resurrection?**

He went up to heaven.

### **What did Jesus do when he arrived in heaven?**

He sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.

## **43. The Church Begins**

*A Bible story from: Acts 1:12-14; 2*

### **The Church Begins**

This title can also be translated as: "About how the Church began" or "How did the Church begin?"

**43:01**

After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The believers there constantly gathered together to pray.

**Translation Notes****After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem**

The connecting word **After** introduces a sequential clause. First Jesus returned to heaven. Then the disciples waited in Jerusalem.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem**

This introduces a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**returned to heaven**

This could mean 'went back to heaven.'

**stayed in Jerusalem**

This could mean 'stayed in Jerusalem for a while.' They didn't stay there permanently.

**Translation Words**

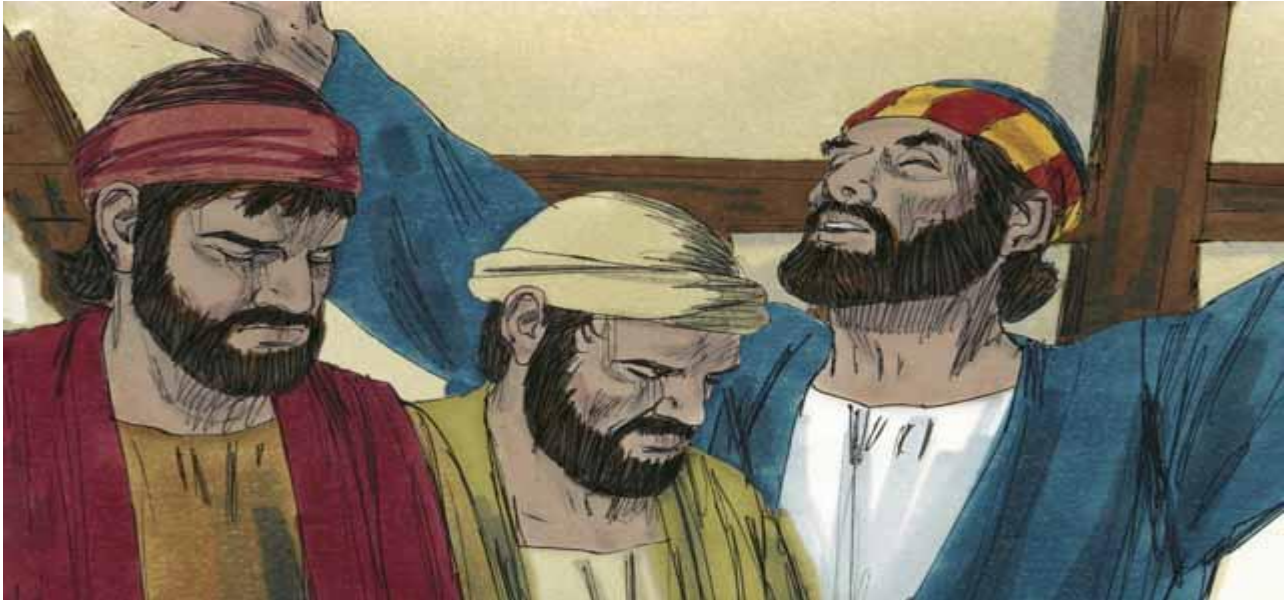
- Jesus (p.1310)
- heaven (p.1285)
- disciples (p.1249)

- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- pray (p.1373)

### **Translation Questions**

**What were the disciples doing while they waited in Jerusalem?**

They constantly gathered together to pray.

**43:02**

Every year, 50 days after the Passover, the Jews celebrated an important day called Pentecost. Pentecost was a time when the Jews celebrated the wheat harvest. Jews came from all over the world to Jerusalem to celebrate Pentecost together. This year the time for Pentecost came about a week after Jesus had gone back to heaven.

**Translation Notes**

**Every year, 50 days after the Passover, the Jews celebrated an important day called Pentecost. Pentecost was a time when the Jews celebrated the wheat harvest. Jews came from all over the world to Jerusalem to celebrate Pentecost together.**

This is background information about Pentecost.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Pentecost**

**Pentecost** means 'fiftieth (day).' You could use the word **Pentecost** in your translation and let the text explain the meaning. Or you could use a term that means '50th day.'

**celebrated the wheat harvest**

The Jews would thank God for the wheat harvest by bringing offerings and celebrate by having special meals. Wheat is a grain crop; if you have no word that means **wheat**, you can use a more general word for grain. This happened in May; other crops were harvested at other times of the year.

**This year the time for Pentecost came about a week after Jesus had gone back to heaven.**

This introduces a new event. It is now the Day of Pentecost, 50 days after Passover.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

### **This year**

This could mean 'In the year that Jesus died.'

### **Translation Words**

- Passover (p.1359)
- Jews (p.1312)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- heaven (p.1285)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **When did the Jews celebrate Pentecost?**

They celebrated Pentecost every year, 50 days after the Passover.

**43:03**

While the believers were all together, suddenly the house where they had gathered was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the believers. They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and they praised God in other languages. They did not know these languages, but these were languages that the Holy Spirit enabled them to speak.

**Translation Notes****While the believers were all together**

The word **While** introduces a simultaneous clause. The two events happened at the same time—the believers were together, and there was a sound like a strong wind.

See TA article: **Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship (p.1098)**

**a sound like a strong wind**

This could mean 'a noise that a strong wind makes' or 'the sound that the wind makes when it blows hard.'

**They were all filled with the Holy Spirit**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled all of those who were there"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**filled with the Holy Spirit**

This could mean 'given ability by the Holy Spirit' or 'given power by the Holy Spirit.'

## **in other languages**

This could be translated as: “in languages other than their own language” or “in foreign languages” or “as people from other places speak.” The believers did not know these languages until the Holy Spirit gave them the power to speak them. Make sure the word used to translate **languages** refers to languages people actually speak and understand.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **Translation Words**

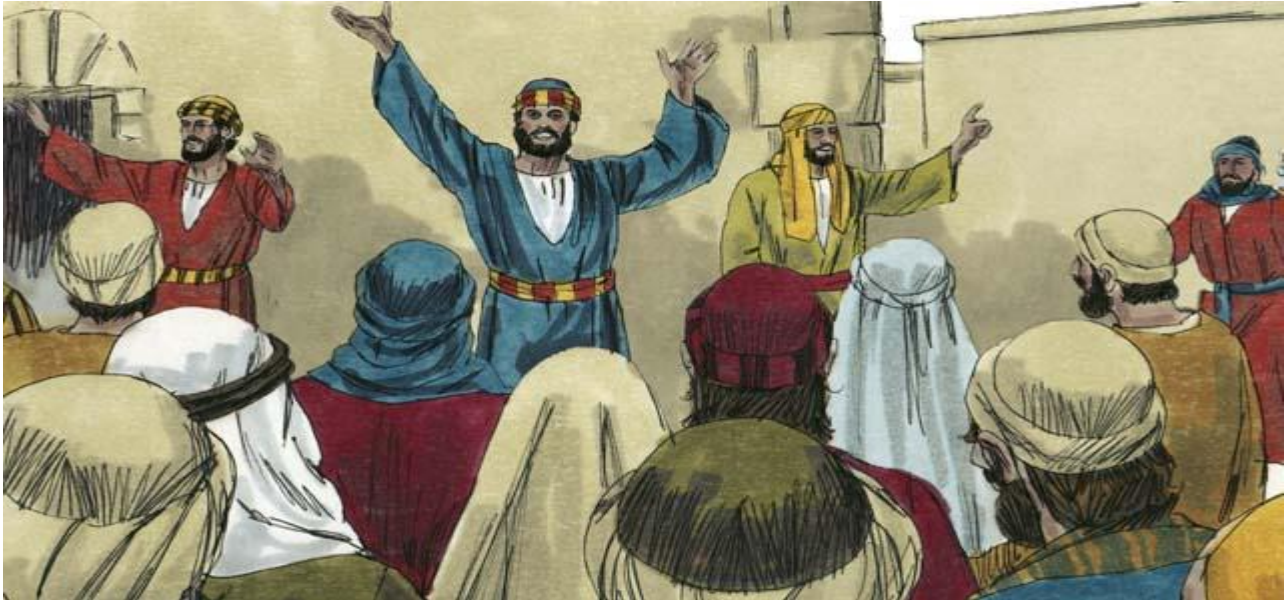
- Spirit (p.1290)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What happened to the believers during the Pentecost after Jesus rose from the dead?**

There was a sound like a strong wind, and something like flames of fire appeared over their heads. They were filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other languages.



**43:04**

When the people in Jerusalem heard this noise, they came together in a crowd to see what was happening. They heard the believers proclaiming the great things God had done. They were astonished because they could understand even though they were from many different countries and spoke many different languages. The disciples were from Israel and spoke Aramaic, Hebrew, or Greek, but the people were each hearing what God had done in their own native language.

**Translation Notes****a crowd**

This could be translated as: "a crowd of people" or "a large group of people."

**Translation Words**

- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****Why were the people in the crowd astonished?**

The people in the crowd were from many different countries, but they each heard the disciples speaking in their native language.

43:05



Some of these people said that the disciples were drunk. But Peter stood up and said to them, “Listen to me! These people are not drunk! Instead, what you see is what the prophet Joel said would happen: God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”

## Translation Notes

### **But Peter stood up and said to them**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. People said the disciples were drunk. But if they were drunk, you would not expect Peter to stand up and speak rationally and with authority.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### **Listen to me!**

Peter stated this command in order to cause the crowd to pay close attention to what he was going to tell them.

### **Joel**

Joel was a prophet in Israel who lived hundreds of years before this happened.

### **God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “God said that in the last days, he would pour out his Spirit.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

## **the last days**

This refers to the final days before the end of the world.

## **I will pour out my Spirit**

Here **pour out** is an idiom that means to give generously and abundantly. Alternate translation: "I will give my Spirit abundantly to all people"

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

## **my Spirit**

This could mean 'my Holy Spirit.'

## **Translation Words**

- disciples (p.1249)
- Peter (p.1368)
- prophet (p.1381)
- Spirit (p.1290)

## **Translation Questions**

**What did some of the people think was the reason the disciples were talking this way?**

They thought the disciples were drunk.

**What did Peter say was causing them to speak these languages?**

Peter said God was pouring out his Spirit.

**43:06**

"Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many wonderful things to show who he was. He did many amazing things by God's power. You know this because you saw these things. But you crucified him!"

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Peter continues preaching to the crowd.

**Men of Israel**

For some languages, it is better to say: "People of Israel" for it to be clear that this included men and women. This could also be translated as: "My fellow people of Israel" or "My fellow Jews" to make it clear that Peter was also a Jew and belonged to the "people of Israel."

**But you crucified him!**

Peter used this exclamation to strongly accuse the people in the crowd of murdering Jesus, the Messiah whom God had sent to them.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**But you crucified him**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. Jesus did many wonderful things, so you would expect people to recognize that he was sent from God. Instead, they crucified him.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## **you crucified him!**

This could also be translated as: “you caused him to be crucified” or “because of you, he was crucified.” The Jews did not actually nail Jesus to the cross. However, the Jewish leaders caused him to be condemned and many of the people in the crowd had shouted for him to be crucified.

### **Translation Words**

- Israel (p.1301)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- amazing things (p.1349)
- power
- God's (p.1272)
- crucified (p.1240)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Who did Peter say was responsible for crucifying Jesus?**

He said the people in the crowd crucified Jesus.

43:07



“Jesus died, but God raised him from the dead. This made come true what a prophet wrote: ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’ We are witnesses that God raised Jesus to life again.”

## Translation Notes

### General Information

Peter continues preaching to the crowd.

### what a prophet wrote: ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “what a prophet wrote, that you would not let your Holy One rot in the grave.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

### You will not let your

**You** and **your** refer to God the Father. To make that clear, this could be translated as: “You, God, will not let your.” Some languages may have a special way of addressing someone, such as: “You, O God.”

### rot in the grave

This could mean ‘decay in the tomb’ or ‘decompose in the grave.’ This refers to the fact that Jesus did not remain in the tomb very long. It is another way of saying that he did not stay dead, but rather, came back to life again.

## **We are witnesses**

The word **We** refers to the disciples and those that witnessed the risen Jesus after his death. It does not include the people in the crowd.

See TA article: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1117)**

## **raised Jesus to life again**

This could mean 'made Jesus alive again.'

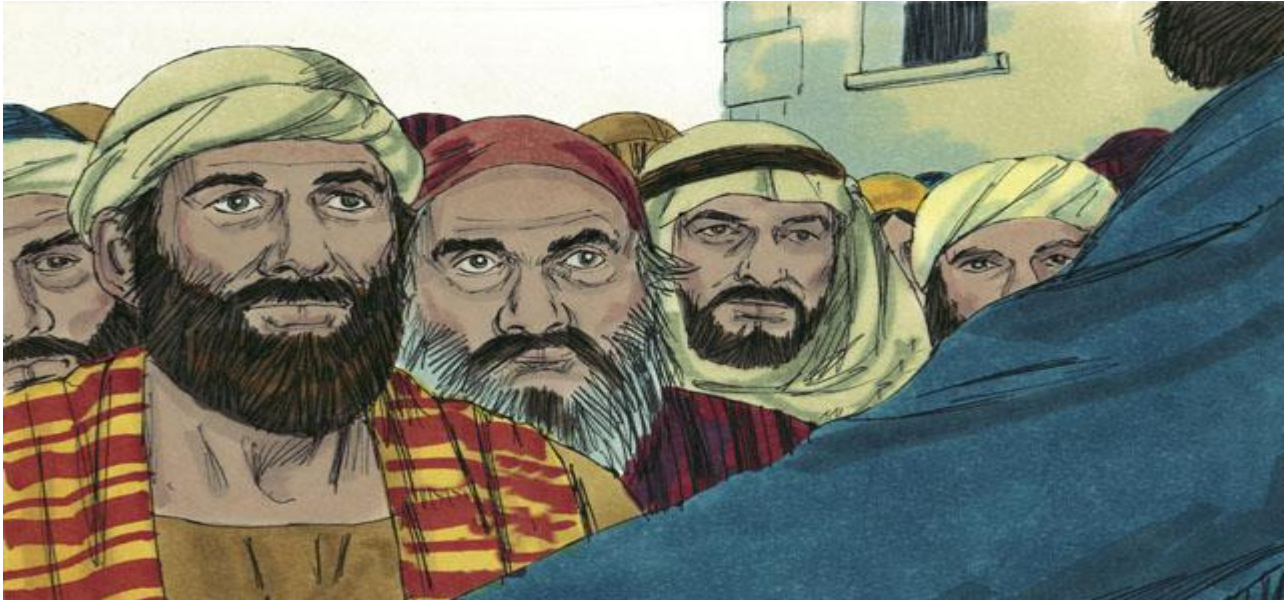
## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- raised
- dead
- prophet (p.1381)
- life

## **Translation Questions**

### **How did Peter say Jesus became alive again?**

God raised him from the dead.

**43:08**

“God the Father has now honored Jesus by making him sit at his right hand. And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit to us just as he promised he would do. The Holy Spirit is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Peter continues preaching to the crowd.

**God the Father**

This is an important title for God.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**at his right hand**

This phrase is an idiom that refers to the highest place of honor and authority. Alternate translation: “in the most important position” or “in the place of highest honor.”

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

**causing**

This could mean ‘enabling the believers to do’ or ‘giving these people the power to do.’

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God the Father (p.1274)
- Spirit (p.1290)

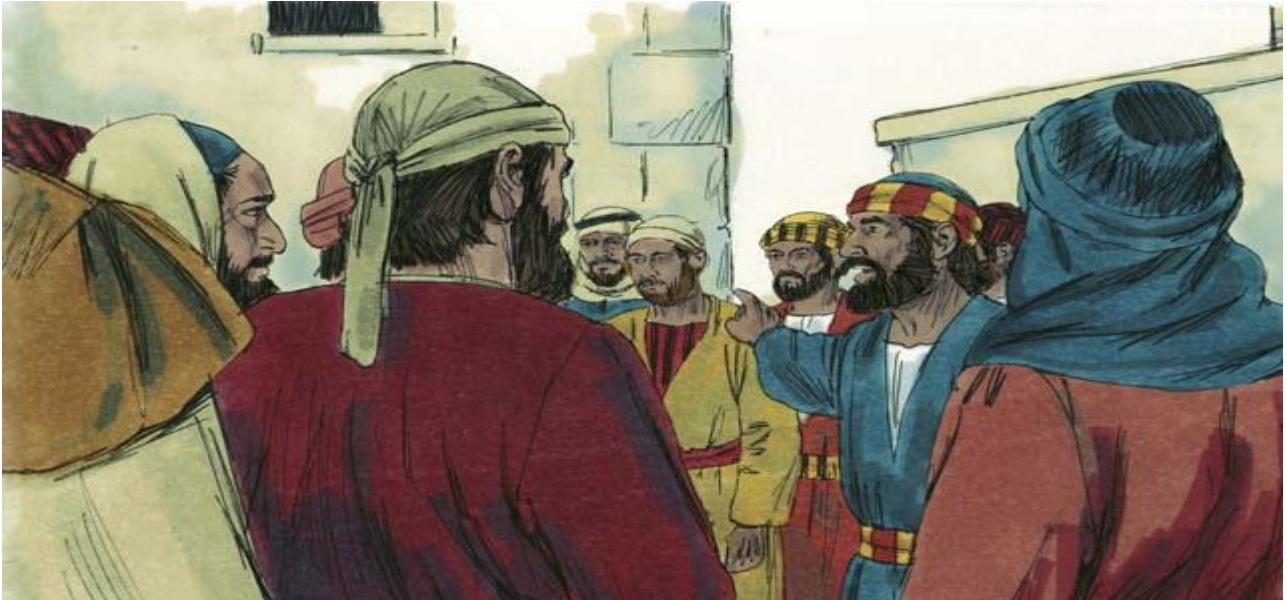


- promised (p.1379)

## **Translation Questions**

**What caused the disciples to be able to speak in other languages?**

The Holy Spirit caused them to be able to speak in other languages.

**43:09**

“You crucified this man, Jesus. But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both the Lord of everything and the Messiah!”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Peter continues preaching to the crowd.

**But know for certain that**

This phrase indicates contrast relationship. The Jews killed Jesus, but God did the opposite—he made Jesus the lord of everything!

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- crucified (p.1240)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- Lord (p.1340)
- Messiah (p.1230)

**Translation Questions**

**What were the two things that Peter said God caused Jesus to become?**

He became Lord and Messiah.

**43:10**

The people listening to Peter were deeply moved by the things that he said. So they asked Peter and the disciples, “Brothers, what should we do?”

**Translation Notes****deeply moved by**

This could mean ‘very troubled by’ or ‘felt very sad when they heard.’ To be **moved** is to feel strong emotions.

**So they asked**

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (they were deeply moved), with the result (they asked Peter and the disciples what they should do).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Brothers**

This was a normal way for a Jew to address fellow Jews. It could also be translated as: “Friends.”

**Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- disciples (p.1249)

**Translation Questions****How did the people respond to Peter’s message?**

They were deeply moved and asked, “Brothers, what should we do?”

**43:11**

Peter answered them, “All of you need God to forgive your sins. So repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ. Then God will also give you the Holy Spirit as a gift.”

**Translation Notes****So repent and be baptized**

The word **So** introduces a goal relationship. The people should repent and be baptized because they want to be forgiven of their sins.

See TA article: **Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship (p.1088)**

**be baptized**

This can be stated in active form: “allow us to baptize you”

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**in the name of**

This phrase means both, ‘by the authority of’ and, ‘under the authority of.’ Consider translating the word **name** literally if it will be understood in this way in your language.

**Christ**

This is the same meaning as ‘Messiah.’ It could be translated as: “Anointed One” or “Chosen One.” Instead of translating the meaning, some translators may choose to keep the word **Christ** and spell it using the sounds in their own language.

## Jesus Christ

Since **Christ** is a title here, some translators may choose to change the order and say: “Christ Jesus.” Both orders are used in the Bible.

## Then God will also give you the Holy Spirit as a gift

The connecting word **Then** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was because they had repented and had been forgiven of their sins, and the result is they would also receive the Holy Spirit.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

## Translation Words

- Peter (p.1368)
- repent (p.1395)
- baptized (p.1215)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- forgive (p.1266)
- sins (p.1419)
- Spirit (p.1290)

## Translation Questions

### What did Peter tell the people to do?

He told them they needed God to forgive their sins, so they should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ.

**43:12**

About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the church at Jerusalem.

**Translation Notes****They were baptized**

This can be stated in active form: "people baptized them"

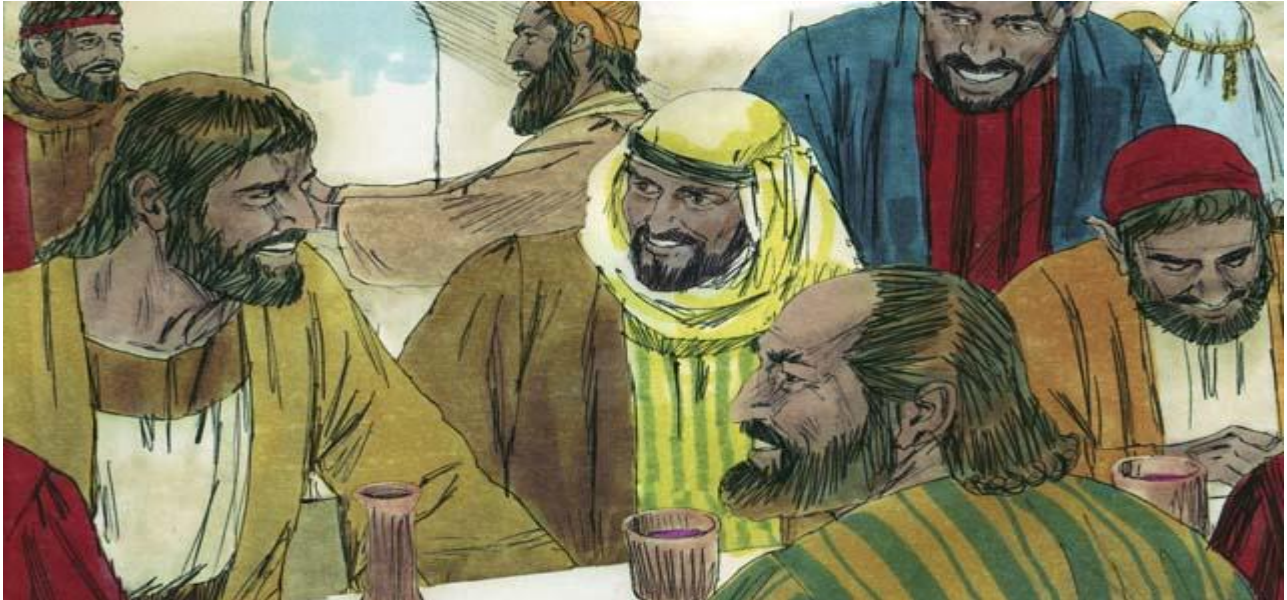
See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**Translation Words**

- believed (p.1220)
- Peter (p.1368)
- disciples (p.1249)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- baptized (p.1215)
- church (p.1233)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)

**Translation Questions****How many people believed and were baptized that day?**

About 3,000 people believed.

**43:13**

The believers continually listened as the apostles taught them. They often met together and ate together, and they often prayed with each other. They praised God together and they shared everything they had with each other. Everyone in the city thought well of them. Every day, more people became believers.

**Translation Notes****thought well of them**

This could mean 'had a positive opinion of them.'

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- apostles (p.1211)
- prayed (p.1373)
- praised (p.1372)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****What did the disciples spend their time doing?**

The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, prayed with each other, praised God together, and shared everything.

## 44. Peter and John Heal a Beggar

*A Bible story from: Acts 3-4:22*

### **Peter and John Heal a Beggar**

This title can also be translated as: "About how Peter and John healed a beggar" or "What happened when Peter and John healed a beggar?"



**44:01**

One day Peter and John went to the Temple. A crippled man was sitting at the gate, begging for money.

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**to the Temple**

They did not go into the Temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: “to the Temple courtyard” or “into the Temple area”

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**A crippled man was sitting at the gate, begging for money.**

This introduces a new character in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**A crippled man**

This could also be translated as: “A lame man.” This refers to a man who did not have full use of his legs, and could not stand or walk.

**Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)

- John (p.1314)
- Temple (p.1430)
- begging (p.1219)

### **Translation Questions**

**What did the crippled man expect Peter and John to give him?**

He was begging for money.

**44:02**

Peter looked at the lame man and said, “I do not have any money to give you. But I will give you what I do have. In the name of Jesus, get up and walk!”

**Translation Notes****I will give you what I do have**

It is understood that Peter has the ability to heal the man.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**In the name of Jesus**

Here **name** is a metonym that refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: “With the authority of Jesus Christ”

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

**get up**

This could mean ‘stand up.’

**Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions**

**What did Peter give to the lame man instead of money?**

In the name of Jesus, Peter told him to get up and walk.

**44:03**

Immediately, God healed the lame man. He began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. The people in the courtyard of the Temple were amazed.

**Translation Notes****Immediately, God healed the lame man**

The connecting word **Immediately** introduces a sequential clause. Peter spoke, and then the lame man was healed. But the writer wants the readers to know there was no delay—the healing took place as soon as Peter spoke.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**the courtyard of the Temple**

Only priests could enter the Temple, but ordinary Jews were allowed to come into this area that surrounded the Temple.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- healed
- praise (p.1372)
- Temple (p.1430)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**44:04**

A crowd of people quickly came to see the man who was healed. Peter said to them, "This man is well, but do not be amazed at this. We did not heal him with our own power or because we honor God. Rather, it is Jesus who healed this man with his power, because we believe in Jesus."

**Translation Notes****We did not heal him with our own power**

**We** here includes Peter and John, but not the crowd to whom Peter is talking.

See TA article: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'** (p.1117)

**because we believe in Jesus**

**We** here includes Peter and John, but not the crowd to whom Peter is talking.

See TA article: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'** (p.1117)

**Translation Words**

- heal
- Peter (p.1368)
- power
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions****What did Peter say caused the crippled man to be healed?**

He said Jesus healed the man with his power because Peter and John believed in Jesus.

**44:05**

“You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the one who gives life to everybody. But God raised him from the dead. You did not understand what you were doing, but when you did those things, what the prophets said came true. They said that the Messiah would suffer and die. God made it happen in this way. So now, repent and turn to God, so that he will wash away your sins.”

**Translation Notes****turn to God**

Here **turn** is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: “start obeying the Lord”

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**he will wash away your sins**

Peter is speaking of God’s forgiveness for sinners as if God were physically washing them.

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**Translation Words**

- Roman (p.1400)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- life
- God (p.1272)
- raised
- die
- prophets (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- suffer (p.1427)
- repent (p.1395)
- sins (p.1419)

## Translation Questions

### **Who did Peter say killed Jesus?**

He said the people in the crowd told the Roman governor to kill Jesus.

### **What prophecies did the people fulfill when they killed Jesus?**

The prophets said that the Messiah would suffer and die.

### **What did Peter tell the people that they should do?**

They should repent and turn to God, so that he would wash away their sins.



**44:06**

When the leaders of the Temple heard Peter and John, they were very upset. So they arrested them and put them into prison. But many people believed what Peter said. The number of men who believed in Jesus grew to about 5,000.

**Translation Notes****So they arrested them and put them into prison**

The connecting word **So** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason is the leaders of the Temple were very upset; the result is they arrested Peter and John and put them into prison.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**But many people believed what Peter said**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that people would not believe, because Peter and John were put in prison. Instead, 5000 men believed!

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**The number of men**

This was in addition to the women and children who believed.

**Translation Words**

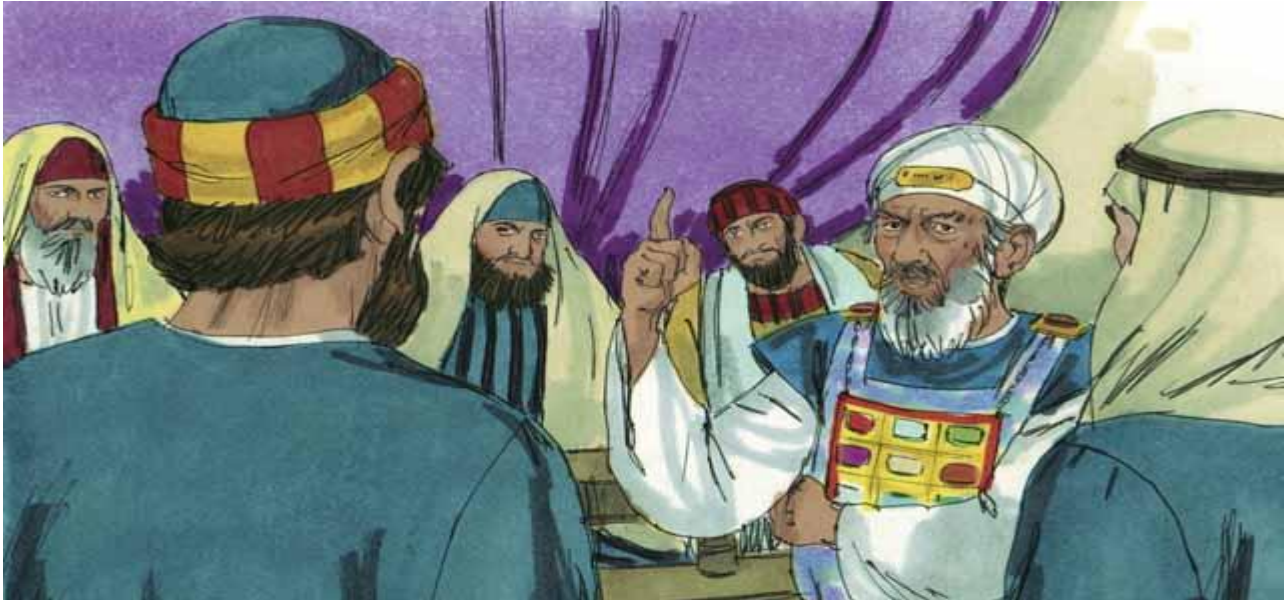
- Temple (p.1430)
- Peter (p.1368)
- John (p.1314)
- believed (p.1220)

## Translation Questions

**How many men believed in Jesus as a result of Peter's message?**

About 5,000 men believed.

## 44:07



The next day the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They also brought the man who had been crippled. They asked Peter and John, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"

### Translation Notes

#### **By what power did you heal**

"Who gave you power to heal"

### Translation Words

- Jewish leaders (p.1313)
- Peter (p.1368)
- John (p.1314)
- high priest (p.1288)
- power

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**44:08**

Peter answered them, “This man standing before you has been healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus!”

**Translation Notes****healed**

This could mean ‘well’ or ‘strong.’

**but God raised him to life again**

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Jesus was crucified, so you would expect him to be dead. But what actually happened is that God raised him to life again.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**God raised him to life again**

Here to **raise** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: “whom God caused to live again”

See TA article: **Idiom (p.1137)**

**rejected him**

This could mean ‘refused to accept him’ or ‘refused to believe in Jesus’ or ‘refused to believe that Jesus is the Savior.’

### **but there is no other way to be saved**

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. The leaders rejected Christ, so you would expect that he was not a person worth anything. However, he is actually the only one with the power to save people.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### **there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus**

This could also be translated as: “the only way to be saved is through the power of Jesus” or “only Jesus can save us by his power.”

### **to be saved**

This can also be translated as: “to be saved from our sins” or “that we can be saved from our sins.”

## **Translation Words**

- Peter (p.1368)
- healed
- power
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- crucified (p.1240)
- God (p.1272)
- raised
- life
- saved (p.1410)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What did Peter say is the only way to be saved?**

He said the only way to be saved is through the power of Jesus.

**44:09**

The leaders were shocked that Peter and John spoke so boldly. They saw that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. So they said to them, "We will punish you very much if you give any more messages to the people about this man Jesus." After saying many things like this, they let Peter and John go.

**Translation Notes****were shocked**

This could mean 'were very surprised' or 'were amazed.'

**ordinary men who were uneducated**

The words **ordinary** and **uneducated** share similar meanings. They emphasize that Peter and John had received no formal training in Jewish law.

See TA article: **Doublet (p.1106)**

**ordinary**

This could mean 'common' or 'lower-class.' Peter and John were simple fishermen.

**who were uneducated**

This could mean 'who did not have a formal education.' This could also be translated as: "who had not gone to religious school."

**then they remembered**

This could also be translated as: "But then they thought about the fact that."

### **had been with Jesus**

This could also be translated as: "had spend time with Jesus" or "had been taught by Jesus."

### **After saying many things like this**

This could mean 'after threatening Peter and John in similar ways.'

### **let Peter and John go**

This could mean 'allowed Peter and John to leave.'

### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

## **Translation Words**

- leaders (p.1313)
- Peter (p.1368)
- John (p.1314)
- Jesus (p.1310)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why were the Jewish leaders shocked at the preaching of Peter and John?**

Peter and John were ordinary, uneducated men.

### **What did the Jewish leaders finally decide to do with Peter and John?**

They threatened them and then let them go.

## 45. Stephen and Philip

*A Bible story from: Acts 6-8*

### Stephen and Philip

This title can also be translated as: "About how Stephen and Philip told people about Jesus" or "What happened when Stephen and Philip told people about Jesus?"



**45:01**

One of the leaders among the first followers of Jesus was a man named Stephen. Everyone respected him. The Holy Spirit gave him much power and wisdom. Stephen did many miracles. Many people believed him when he taught them to trust in Jesus.

**Translation Notes**

**One of the leaders among the first followers of Jesus was a man named Stephen.**

This introduces Stephen as a new character in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**Everyone respected him**

This is background information about the kind of person Stephen was.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Translation Words**

- Spirit (p.1290)
- wisdom (p.1438)
- miracles (p.1349)
- believed (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions**

**What do we learn about Stephen?**

Everyone respected him, and the Holy Spirit gave him much power and wisdom.

**45:02**

One day when Stephen was teaching about Jesus, some Jews who did not believe in Jesus came and began to argue with him. They became very angry, so they went to the religious leaders and told lies about him. They said, "We heard Stephen speak evil things about Moses and God!" So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the high priest and the other leaders of the Jews. More false witnesses came and lied to them about Stephen.

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**so they went to the religious leaders and told lies about him.**

The word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason is the Jews were very angry with Stephen because they could not win arguments with him. The result is they told lies about him.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**We heard Stephen speak evil things about Moses and God!**

They used this exclamation to express how angry they were with Stephen, and to try to make the other people angry with him as well.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Jews (p.1312)

- religious leaders (p.1313)
- evil (p.1258)
- Moses (p.1352)
- God (p.1272)
- high priest (p.1288)

## Translation Questions

**What was the false charge that some Jews brought against Stephen?**

They said they heard Stephen speak evil things about Moses and God.

**45:03**

The high priest asked Stephen, “Are these men telling the truth about you?” Stephen began to say many things in order to answer the high priest. He said that God had done many wonderful things for the people of Israel from the time when Abraham lived to the time of Jesus. But the people had always disobeyed God. Stephen said, “You people are stubborn and rebellious against God. You always reject the Holy Spirit, just as our ancestors always rejected God and always killed his prophets. But you did something worse than they did! You killed the Messiah!”

**Translation Notes****always reject the Holy Spirit**

This could mean ‘never obey the Holy Spirit’ or ‘always refuse to listen to the Holy Spirit.’

**our ancestors**

This could be translated as: “our ancestors, the Israelites.”

**But you did something worse than they did! You killed the Messiah!**

Stephen used these exclamations to accuse the Jews of murdering the Messiah whom God had sent to them.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**Translation Words**

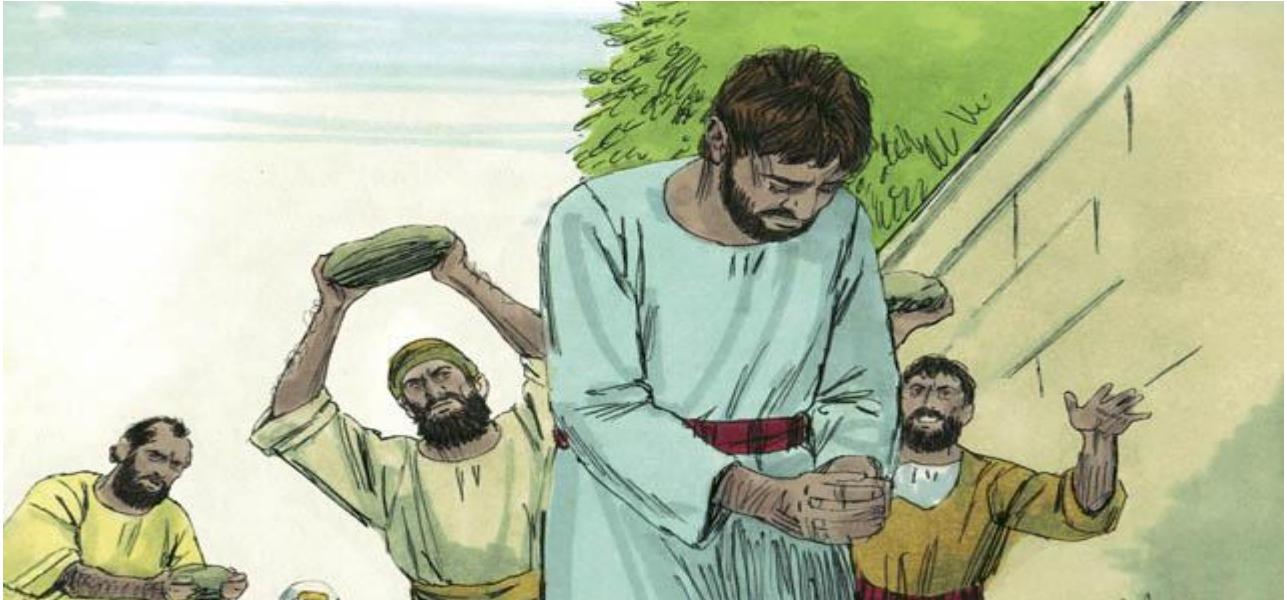
- high priest (p.1288)
- truth
- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- disobeyed

- rebellious (p.1391)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- prophets (p.1381)
- Messiah (p.1230)

## Translation Questions

**What did Stephen say the people had done that was worse than their ancestors?**

They killed the Messiah.

**45:04**

When the religious leaders heard this, they were so angry that they covered their ears and yelled loudly. They dragged Stephen out of the city and threw stones at him in order to kill him.

**Translation Notes****covered their ears**

This was a symbolic action to show that they did not want to hear what Stephen said. This could also be translated as: "They put their hands over their ears."

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**yelled loudly**

They were yelling in anger. Translate this in a way that communicates that they were very upset.

**Translation Words**

- religious leaders (p.1313)

**Translation Questions****How did the religious leaders react to Stephen's accusation?**

They dragged Stephen out of the city and threw stones at him in order to kill him.

**45:05**

As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my spirit." He fell to his knees and cried out again, "Master, do not hold this sin against them." Then he died.

**Translation Notes****As Stephen was dying**

This could mean 'just before Stephen died.'

**cried out**

This could mean 'called out in a loud voice' or 'said very loudly.'

**Jesus, receive my spirit**

This could mean 'take my spirit.' It may be helpful to add 'please' to show that this was a request. Alternate translation: "please receive my spirit"

**He fell to his knees**

This is an act of submission to God.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**do not hold this sin against them**

This could mean 'do not consider them guilty of the sin of killing me.' This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "forgive them for this sin"

See TA article: **Litotes (p.1151)**

## **Then he died**

This is the end of the story about Stephen.

See TA article: **End of Story (p.1110)**

## **Translation Words**

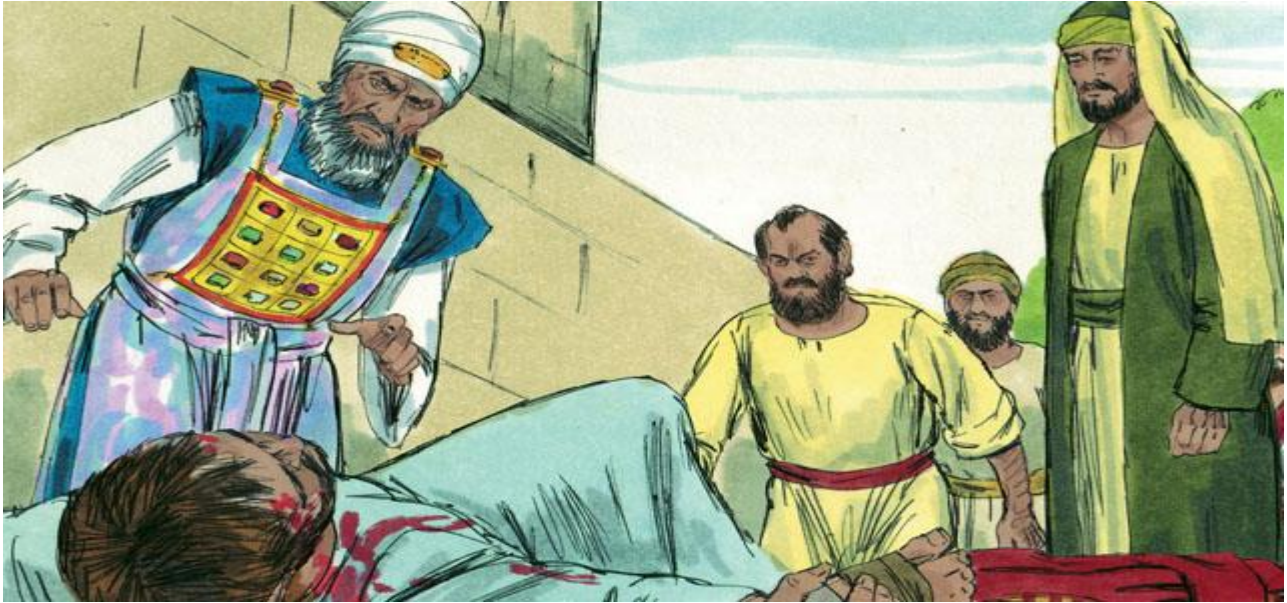
- Jesus (p.1310)
- receive (p.1392)
- spirit (p.1425)
- Master (p.1340)
- sin (p.1419)
- died

## **Translation Questions**

**What was the last thing Stephen said before he died?**

The last thing he said was, "Master, do not hold this sin against them."



**45:06**

That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places. But in spite of opposition, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.

**Translation Notes**

**That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places. But in spite of opposition, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.**

This is background information about the persecution of the believers after the death of Stephen.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**But in spite of opposition**

The Jewish leaders thought they could stop the spread of Jesus' teaching by persecuting his followers. Instead, this caused them to scatter and spread the message even more widely.

**Translation Words**

- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- persecuting (p.1367)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- preached (p.1375)

**Translation Questions**

**What did the believers do when the persecution began in Jerusalem?**

They fled to other places and preached about Jesus wherever they went.

**45:07**

There was a believer in Jesus named Philip. He fled from Jerusalem, as did most other believers. He went to the region of Samaria where he preached to people about Jesus. Many people believed him and were saved. One day, an angel came from God to Philip and told him to go into the wilderness, and to walk down a certain road. Philip went there. As he was walking on the road, he saw a man riding in his chariot. This man was an important official from the land of Ethiopia. The Holy Spirit told Philip to go and talk with this man.

**Translation Notes****There was a believer in Jesus named Philip**

This introduces Philip as a new character in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**This man was an important official from the land of Ethiopia.**

This is background information about the official from Ethiopia.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**Ethiopia**

Ethiopia is a country in Eastern Africa.

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Samaria (p.1405)
- preached (p.1375)
- saved (p.1410)
- angel (p.1209)
- God (p.1272)
- chariot (p.1229)
- Spirit (p.1290)

## Translation Questions

**Who did Philip meet on the road in the wilderness?**

He met an important official from Ethiopia.

**45:08**

So Philip went to the chariot. He heard the Ethiopian reading God's word. He was reading what the prophet Isaiah had written. The man read, "They led him like a lamb to be killed, and as a lamb is silent, he did not say a word. They treated him unfairly and did not respect him. They took his life away from him."

**Translation Notes****the Ethiopian**

That is, a person from the country of Ethiopia. See note on [45:07](#).

**led him like a lamb to be killed, and as a lamb is silent, he did not say a word. They treated him unfairly and did not respect him. They took his life away from him.**

The pronouns **he**, **him**, and **his** in this quotation refer to the Messiah.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

**as a lamb is silent**

This could also be translated as: "like a lamb that is silent even when it is about to be killed."

**Translation Words**

- chariot (p.1229)
- Isaiah (p.1299)
- lamb (p.1335)
- life

## **Translation Questions**

**What was the Ethiopian official doing as Philip approached?**

He was reading what the prophet Isaiah wrote.

45:09



Philip asked the Ethiopian, “Do you understand what you are reading?” The Ethiopian replied, “No. I cannot understand it unless someone explains it to me. Please come and sit next to me. Was Isaiah writing about himself or someone else?”

### Translation Notes

#### “Do you understand what you are reading?”

The Ethiopian was intelligent and could read, but he lacked spiritual discernment. Alternate translation: “Do you understand the meaning of what you are reading?”

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

#### Please come and sit next to me

It is implied here that Philip agreed to travel down the road with him to explain the scriptures.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

#### Was Isaiah writing about

This can also be translated as: “Was Isaiah referring to.”

### Translation Words

- Isaiah (p.1299)

### Translation Questions

**Did the official understand the prophecy that he was reading?**

No, he needed someone to explain it to him.

## 45:10



Philip got into the chariot and sat down. Then he told the Ethiopian man that Isaiah had written about Jesus. Philip also spoke about many other parts of God's word. In this way, he told the man the good news about Jesus.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Isaiah (p.1299)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- God's word (p.1439)
- good news (p.1278)

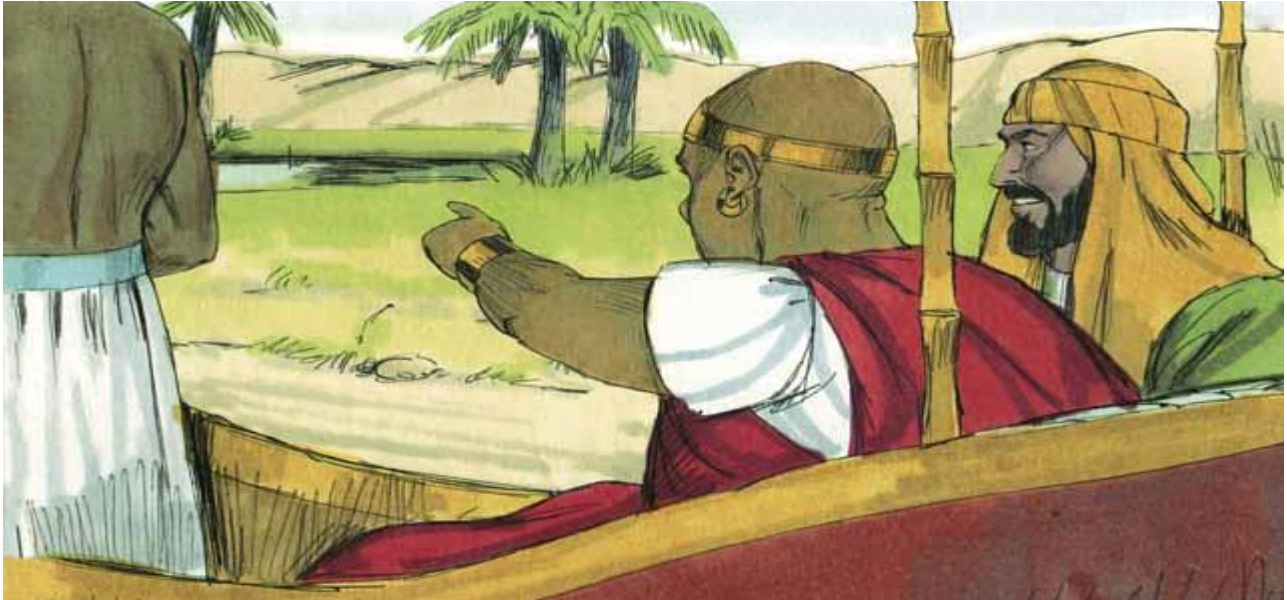
### Translation Questions

**Who did Philip say Isaiah had written about?**

He said Isaiah had written about Jesus.



## 45:11



As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be baptized?” And he told the driver to stop the chariot.

### Translation Notes

#### **some water**

Use a term that means a larger body of water such as a pond, lake, or stream.

#### **May I be baptized?**

This could also be translated as: “Is there any reason that I cannot be baptized?”

### Translation Words

- baptized (p.1215)
- chariot (p.1229)

### Translation Questions

**After Philip explained the prophecy and they came to some water, what did the Ethiopian ask Philip?**

The Ethiopian asked if he could be baptized.

**45:12**

So they went down into the water, and Philip baptized the Ethiopian. After they came up out of the water, the Holy Spirit suddenly carried Philip away to another place. There Philip continued to tell people about Jesus.

**Translation Notes****So they went down into the water**

The connecting word **So** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was the Ethiopian believed what Philip told him, and asked to be baptized when they saw water nearby. The result is Philip baptized him.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**carried Philip away**

This could mean 'took Philip away' or 'snatched Philip away.'

**There Philip continued to tell people about Jesus**

This is the end of the story about Philip.

See TA article: **End of Story (p.1110)**

**Translation Words**

- baptized (p.1215)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- Jesus (p.1310)

## **Translation Questions**

**What happened to Philip after he baptizeded the Ethiopian official?**

The Holy Spirit carried Philip away to another place.

## 45:13



The Ethiopian continued traveling toward his home. He was happy that he now knew Jesus.

### Translation Notes

**The Ethiopian continued traveling toward his home. He was happy that he now knew Jesus.**

This is the end of the story about the Ethiopian official.

See TA article: **End of Story (p.1110)**

### A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)

### Translation Questions

**What did the Ethiopian official do after Philip left him?**

He continued traveling toward his home, happy that he knew Jesus.

## 46. Saul Becomes a Follower of Jesus

*A Bible story from: Acts 8:1-3; 9:1-31; 11:19-26; 13-14*

### **Saul Becomes a Follower of Jesus**

This title can also be translated as: "About how Saul became a follower of Christ" or "How did Saul become a follower of Christ?"

**46:01**

There was a man named Saul who did not believe in Jesus. When he was a young man, he guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. Later he persecuted the believers. He went from house to house in Jerusalem to arrest both men and women and to put them in prison. Then the high priest gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus. He told Saul to arrest followers of Jesus there and to bring them back to Jerusalem.

**Translation Notes****There was a man named Saul who did not believe in Jesus**

This introduces Saul as a new character in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**When he was a young man, he guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen**

This is background information about Saul.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen**

See [45:06](#).

**from house to house**

This could mean 'into many houses.'

**to arrest both men and women**

This refers to men and women who believed in Jesus.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **Damascus**

Damascus is now the capital of the country of Syria. During Saul's time, it was a city belonging to the Roman Empire. Most of the people there were not Jewish, but there were some Jews and also some followers of Jesus living there.

## **to bring them back to Jerusalem**

Paul's purpose can be made clear by adding "so that the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them."

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

## **Translation Words**

- Saul (p.1361)
- believe (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- persecuted (p.1367)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- high priest (p.1288)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why was Saul going to Damascus?**

He went there to arrest followers of Jesus and to bring them back to Jerusalem.

**46:02**

So Saul began to travel to Damascus. Just before he reached the city, a bright light in the sky shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why are you persecuting me?" Saul asked, "Who are you, Master?" Jesus replied to him, "I am Jesus. You are persecuting me!"

**Translation Notes****Just before he reached the city**

This is an expression that marks a change in the story to show something different is about to happen.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**Why are you persecuting me?**

This rhetorical question communicates a rebuke to Saul. In some languages a statement would be more natural. Alternate translation: "You are persecuting me!" or a command "Stop persecuting me!"

See TA article: **Rhetorical Question (p.1184)**

**Translation Words**

- Saul (p.1361)
- persecuting (p.1367)
- Master (p.1340)

**Translation Questions****What question did Jesus ask Saul on the road to Damascus?**

He asked Saul, "Why are you persecuting me?"



## 46:03



When Saul got up, he could not see. His friends had to lead him into Damascus. Saul did not eat or drink anything for three days.

### Translation Notes

#### **Saul did not eat or drink anything for three days**

It is not stated whether he chose not to eat or drink as a form of worship, or if he had no appetite because he was too distressed from his situation. It is preferable not to specify the reason.

See TA article: **Connecting Words and Phrases (p.1100)**

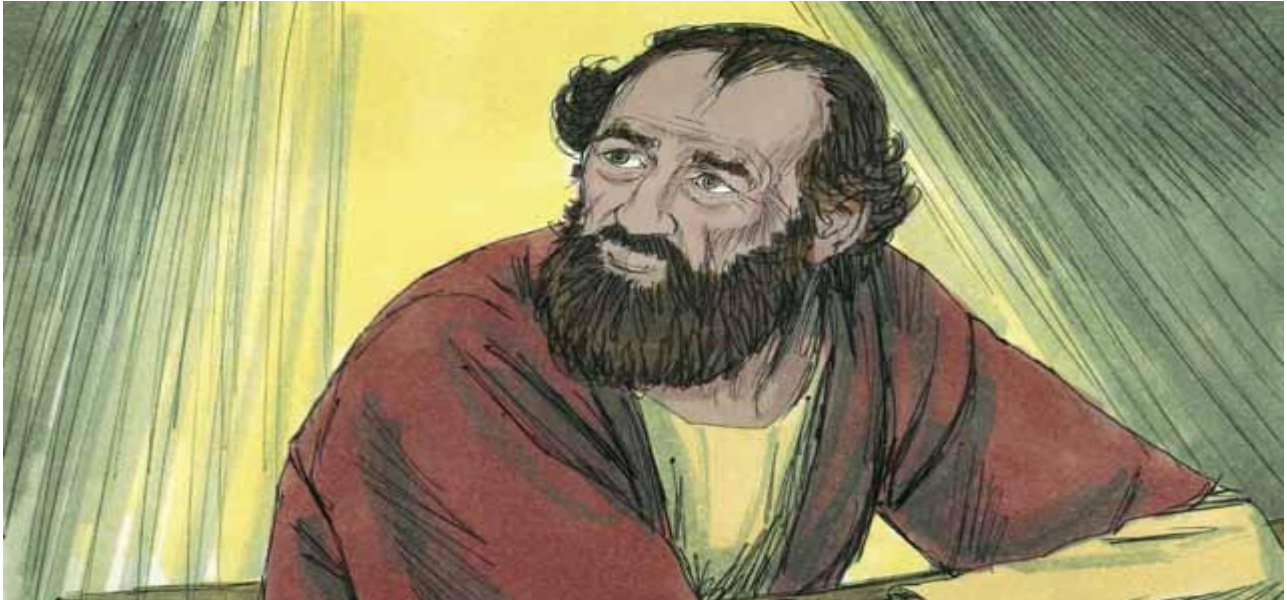
### Translation Words

- Saul (p.1361)

### Translation Questions

#### **What happened to Saul when he got up after seeing the bright light?**

Saul could not see. His friends led him into Damascus and he did not eat or drink for three days.

**46:04**

There was a disciple in Damascus named Ananias. God said to him, "Go to the house where Saul is staying. Place your hands on him so that he can see again." But Ananias said, "Master, I have heard how this man has persecuted the believers." God answered him, "Go! I have chosen him to declare my name to the Jews and to people from other people groups. He will suffer many things for my name."

**Translation Notes****There was a disciple in Damascus named Ananias**

This introduces Ananias as a new character in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**But Ananias said**

If it is not clear why the word **But** is used here, this could be translated as: "But Ananias was afraid, so he said."

**God answered him**

This could be translated as: "To reassure Ananias, God said" to make clear why God said this.

**Go!**

This is a command and also an exclamation. God is emphasizing that Ananias should stop objecting and go to Saul as God instructed him to do.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**to declare my name**

This could mean 'to teach about me' or 'to make me known.'

## **for my name**

Here “my name” is a metonym that refers to Jesus. Saul will suffer many things because he will tell people about Jesus. Alternate translation: “for me” or “because of me” or “because he serves me” or “because he teaches others about me.”

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

## **Translation Words**

- disciple (p.1249)
- God (p.1272)
- Saul (p.1361)
- Master (p.1340)
- persecuted (p.1367)
- suffer (p.1427)

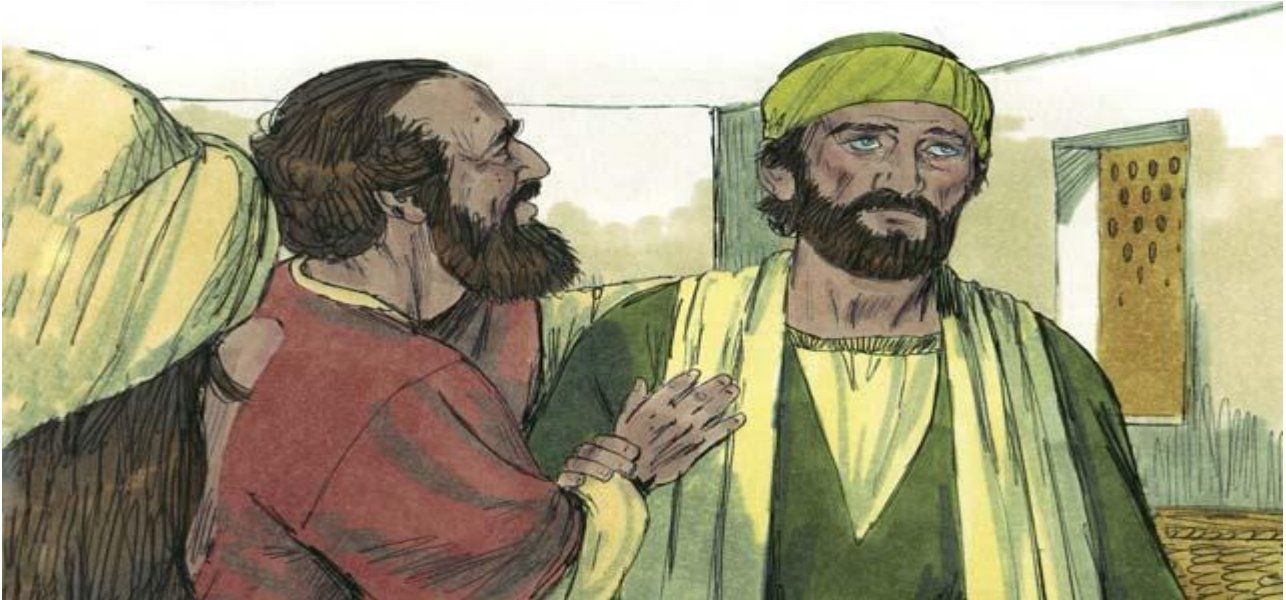
## **Translation Questions**

### **Why was Ananias afraid to speak to Saul?**

He had heard that Saul was persecuting the believers.

### **What did God say was the purpose for which he had chosen Saul?**

God had chosen Saul to declare God’s name to the Jews and to people from other people groups.

**46:05**

So Ananias went to Saul, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus, who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can see again, and so the Holy Spirit will fill you.” Immediately Saul was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him. Then Saul ate some food and became strong again.

**Translation Notes****placed his hands on him**

Ananias put his hands on Saul. This was a symbol of giving a blessing to Saul.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**here**

This could mean ‘to Damascus.’

**Immediately**

This introduces a simultaneous clause. Saul was able to see as soon as Ananias touched him.

See TA article: **Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship (p.1098)**

**Translation Words**

- Saul (p.1361)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- baptized (p.1215)

## Translation Questions

**How did Ananias enable Saul to see again?**

He placed his hands on him.

**What did Ananias do to Saul after he regained his sight?**

Ananias baptized him.

**46:06**

Right away Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus. He said, "Jesus is the Son of God!" The Jews were amazed because Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! Saul argued with the Jews. He showed that Jesus was the Messiah.

**Translation Notes****Right away**

This introduces a new event. This can also be translated as: "Immediately" or "Then."

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**because Saul had tried to kill believers**

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (the change in Saul, that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus), with the result (the Jews were amazed).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**argued with the Jews**

This could also be translated as: "gave the Jews good reasons for believing in Jesus" or "spoke persuasively with the Jews."

## Translation Words

- Saul (p.1361)
- preaching (p.1375)
- Jews (p.1312)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- Messiah (p.1230)

## Translation Questions

**What message did Saul immediately begin preaching to the Jews?**

He preached, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

**46:07**

After many days, the Jews made a plan to kill Saul. They sent people to watch for him at the city gates in order to kill him. But Saul heard about the plan, and his friends helped him escape. One night they lowered him over the city wall in a basket. After Saul escaped from Damascus, he continued to preach about Jesus.

**Translation Notes****After many days**

This introduces a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**the Jews made a plan to kill Saul**

Here **the Jews** refers to the leaders of the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

See TA article: **Synecdoche (p.1194)**

**to watch for him at the city gates**

The gates were the only normal way into or out of the walled cities.

See TA article: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1073)**

**lowered him over the city wall in a basket**

Another way to say this would be: "helped him get into a large basket and lowered the basket with him in it over the city wall."

**Translation Words**

- Jews (p.1312)



- Saul (p.1361)
- preach (p.1375)
- Jesus (p.1310)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How did the Jews respond to Saul's preaching?**

They made a plan to kill Saul.

#### **How did Saul escape from Damascus?**

His friends lowered him over the city wall in a basket so he could escape.

**46:08**

Saul went to Jerusalem to meet with the apostles, but they were afraid of him. Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the apostles. He told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus. After that the apostles accepted Saul.

**Translation Notes****Saul went to Jerusalem**

This introduces a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**but they were afraid of him**

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Saul was now a disciple so you would expect the apostles would want to meet with him, but instead they were afraid.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**accepted Saul**

This could mean 'believed that Saul also was a believer in Jesus.'

**Translation Words**

- Saul (p.1361)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Barnabas (p.1217)
- apostles (p.1211)
- preached (p.1375)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Who helped Saul to be accepted by the disciples in Jerusalem?**

Barnabas took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

**46:09**

Some believers who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, people who were not Jews became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called 'Christians.'

**Translation Notes****the city of Antioch**

This was an ancient city located in what is now the southernmost tip of the modern country of Turkey, near its border with Syria and close to the Mediterranean Sea. It was about 450 miles northwest of Jerusalem.

**to strengthen the church**

This could also be translated as: "to help the church to grow strong spiritually" or "to help the believers in Jesus to grow strong in their faith" or "to help the people to believe more firmly in Jesus."

**believers in Jesus were first called 'Christians.'**

This implies that other people called the believers by this name. This can be stated in active form: "The people of Antioch first called the believers in Jesus 'Christians.'"

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**Translation Words**

- persecution (p.1367)
- Jerusalem (p.1308)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Jews (p.1312)

- Barnabas (p.1217)
- Saul (p.1361)
- church (p.1233)
- Christians (p.1232)

### **Translation Questions**

**What was different about the people who became believers in Antioch?**

They were not Jews.

**What name first began to be used for the believers in Antioch?**

They called them "Christians."

**46:10**

One day, the followers of Jesus at Antioch were fasting and praying. The Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.” So the church in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them out to preach the good news about Jesus in many other places. Barnabas and Saul taught people in different people groups, and many people believed in Jesus.

**Translation Notes****One day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.**

This sentence could also be translated as: “Appoint Paul and Barnabas to do the special work I have chosen them to do.”

**the church**

This could also be translated as: “the believers” or “the followers of Jesus.”

**placed their hands on them**

This act showed that the leaders agreed that the Holy Spirit had called Barnabas and Saul to do this work. This could also be translated as: “blessed them with the power and authority of the Holy Spirit by putting their hands on them” or “put their hands on them as a sign of their unity in the Spirit.” Some languages may have to say where they placed their hands. If so, you could say they placed their hands on their head, shoulder or back.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

### **sent them out**

This could mean 'sent them away' or 'sent them on their journey.'

### **A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

### **Translation Words**

- fasting (p.1265)
- praying (p.1373)
- Spirit (p.1290)
- church (p.1233)
- Barnabas (p.1217)
- Saul (p.1361)
- preach (p.1375)
- good news (p.1278)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- believed (p.1220)

### **Translation Questions**

**What was the church in Antioch doing when the Holy Spirit told them to set apart Barnabas and Saul?**

They were praying and fasting.

**What was the purpose for which the church in Antioch sent out Saul and Barnabas?**

They sent them out to preach the good news about Jesus in many other places.

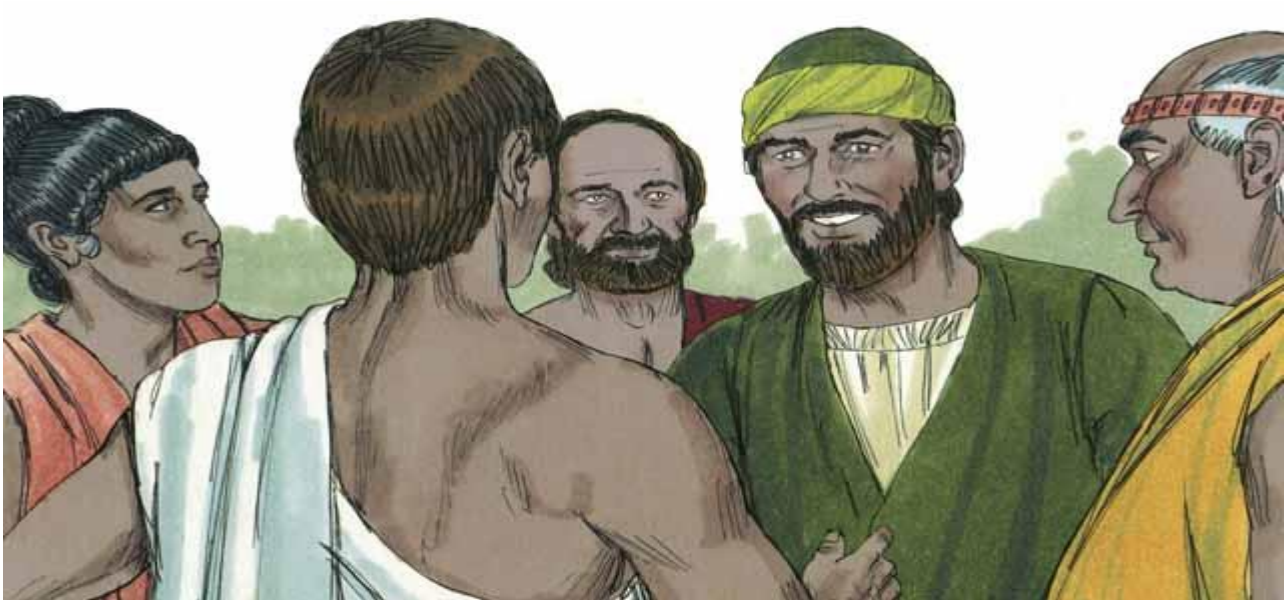
## **47. Paul and Silas in Philippi**

*A Bible story from: Acts 16:11-40*

### **Paul and Silas in Philippi**

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened to Paul and Silas in Philippi" or "What happened to Paul and Silas in Philippi?"



**47:01**

As Saul traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, 'Paul.' One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus. They went to a place by the river outside the city where people gathered to pray. There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.

**Translation Notes**

**As Saul traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, 'Paul.'**

This is background information about why Saul was now called Paul.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**One day**

This introduces a new event.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

**proclaim**

This could mean 'teach' or 'preach.'

**they met a woman named Lydia**

This introduces Lydia as a new character in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.**

This is background information about who Lydia was.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**merchant**

This could also be translated as: “seller” or “business owner.”

**Translation Words**

- Roman (p.1400)
- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- Philippi (p.1370)
- good news (p.1278)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- loved (p.1342)
- worshiped (p.1383)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions**

**What was the Roman name that Saul began to use?**

He began to use the name “Paul.”

**Where did Paul and Silas go in Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus?**

They went to a place by the river outside the city where people gathered to pray.

**47:02**

God enabled Lydia to believe the message about Jesus. Paul and Silas baptized her and her family. She invited Paul and Silas to stay at her house, so they stayed there.

**Translation Notes****She invited Paul and Silas to stay at her house**

This was the normal custom of the day for people to provide hospitality to visitors in their homes. There were no immoral motives in this arrangement.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- believe (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- baptized (p.1215)
- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)

**Translation Questions****What made it possible for Lydia to believe in Jesus?**

God enabled Lydia to understand the message about Jesus.

**What did Paul and Silas do to Lydia after she believed?**

They baptized Lydia and her family.

**47:03**

Paul and Silas often met with people at the place where Jews prayed. Every day as they walked there, a slave girl possessed by a demon followed them. By means of this demon, she predicted the future for people, so she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.

**Translation Notes****a slave girl**

This introduces the unnamed slave girl as a new character in the story.

See TA article: **Introduction of New and Old Participants (p.1145)**

**her masters**

In this case, this could also be translated as: "her owners."

**a fortuneteller**

This could mean 'as someone who told people what would happen to them in the future.' A fortuneteller tried to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a 'diviner' or 'soothsayer.'

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

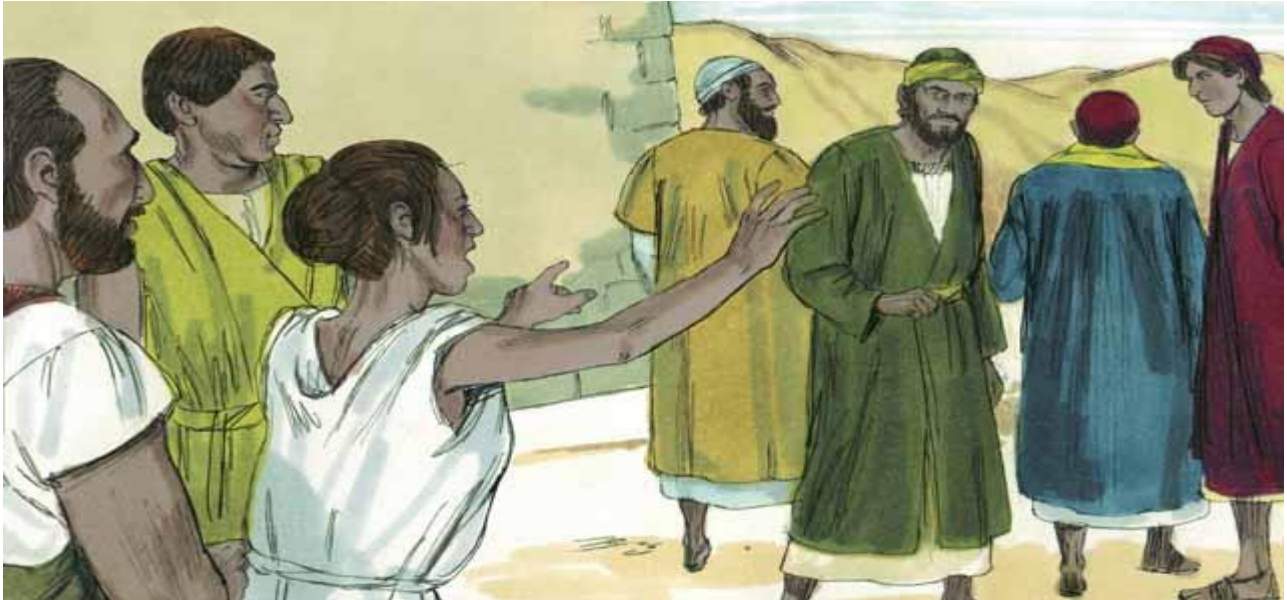
**Translation Words**

- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- prayed (p.1373)
- slave (p.1413)
- possessed by a demon (p.1247)

- demon (p.1246)
- masters (p.1340)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**47:04**

The slave girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. They are telling you the way to be saved!" She did this so often that Paul became annoyed.

### Translation Notes

#### the way to be saved

How a person can be saved is spoken of here as if it were a way or path that a person walks on. Alternate translation: "how you can be saved" or "how God saves people" or "God's plan for saving people"

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

### Translation Words

- servants (p.1413)
- God (p.1272)
- saved (p.1410)
- Paul (p.1361)

### Translation Questions

**What did the demon-possessed slave girl keep yelling when she saw Paul and Silas?**

She yelled, "These men are servants of the Most High God. They are telling you the way to be saved!"

47:05



Finally, one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the demon that was in her, “In the name of Jesus, come out of her.” Right away the demon left her.

### Translation Notes

#### **one day**

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

See TA article: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1142)**

#### **turned to her**

This could mean ‘turned around and looked at her.’

#### **In the name of Jesus**

This could mean ‘by the authority of Jesus.’ Here **name** stands for speaking with the authority or as the representative of Jesus Christ. Because of Jesus’ authority, Paul could command the demon to leave.

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

#### **come out of her**

This could mean ‘leave her’ or ‘go away from her.’

#### **Right away the demon left her**

‘the demon came out immediately’

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

### **Translation Words**

- slave (p.1413)
- Paul (p.1361)
- demon (p.1246)
- Jesus (p.1310)

### **Translation Questions**

**How did Paul respond to the demon's testimony?**

Paul commanded the demon to leave the slave girl.



**47:06**

The men who owned the slave girl became very angry! They realized that, without the demon, the slave girl could not tell people the future. This meant that people would no longer pay her owners to have her tell their future.

**Translation Notes****The men who owned the slave girl became very angry!**

This exclamation emphasizes how angry the men who owned the servant girl became at Paul and Silas.

See TA article: **Exclamations (p.1114)**

**without the demon**

This could mean 'without the power from the demon' or 'now that she did not have the demon.'

**the future**

This could mean 'what would happen to them in the future.'

**This meant that**

This could also be translated as: "Because of this" or "Therefore."

**Translation Words**

- slave (p.1413)

**Translation Questions**

**Why were the owners of the slave girl angry that the demon was gone?**

They realized that people would no longer pay money to them for her to tell people the future.

**47:07**

So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and Silas to the Roman authorities, who beat Paul and Silas, and then threw them into jail.

**Translation Notes****So the owners of the slave girl**

The connecting word **So** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was the owners could no longer make money. The result was they took Paul and Silas to the Roman authorities.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**who beat**

**who** refers to the Roman authorities, not the owners of the slave girl.

See TA article: **Pronouns (p.1176)**

**threw them**

This could mean 'put them.'

**Translation Words**

- slave (p.1413)
- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- Roman (p.1400)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**47:08**

They put Paul and Silas in the part of the prison where there were the most guards. They even attached their feet to large pieces of wood. But in the middle of the night, Paul and Silas were singing songs of praise to God.

**Translation Notes****But in the middle of the night**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. Paul and Silas had been beaten, put in prison with their feet locked into wood. You would expect them to be crying or protesting, but instead of doing that, they were singing songs of praise to God.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**in the middle of the night**

This could be translated as: “very late at night” or “very early in the morning.” This was when it was completely dark outside, when people would normally be asleep.

**singing songs of praise to God**

This can also be translated as: “praising God by singing” or “singing songs to praise God” or “singing songs that gave praise to God.”

**Translation Words**

- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- praise (p.1372)
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

**What were Paul and Silas doing in the middle of the night in jail?**

They were singing songs of praise to God.

**47:09**



Suddenly, there was a violent earthquake! All the prison doors opened wide, and the chains of all the prisoners fell off.

### **Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

### **Translation Words**

- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- praise (p.1372)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

**What happened while Paul and Silas were singing?**

There was a violent earthquake, the prison doors flew open, and the chains of the prisoners fell off.

**47:10**

Then the jailer woke up. He saw that the prison doors were open. He thought that all the prisoners had escaped. He was afraid the Roman authorities would kill him for allowing them to go, so he got ready to kill himself! But Paul saw him and shouted, "Stop! Do not hurt yourself. We are all here."

**Translation Notes****the jailer**

This could mean 'the official in charge of the jail.'

**so he got ready to kill himself**

The connecting word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was the jailer was afraid of the Roman authorities because he thought the prisoners had escaped. The result is he intended to kill himself.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**But Paul saw him and shouted**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that the prisoners had escaped and that the jailer will kill himself. Instead Paul stops him from killing himself, and tells him that all the prisoners are still in the jail.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**We**

Some languages have a special form of the word **We** which does not include the person being talked to. Here the **We** does not include the jailer, only Paul and the rest of the prisoners.

See TA article: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1117)**

## Translation Words

- Roman (p.1400)
- Paul (p.1361)

## Translation Questions

### Why was the jailer afraid?

He thought all the prisoners had escaped, and that the Roman authorities would kill him for letting them go.



**47:11**

The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be saved?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.” Then the jailer took Paul and Silas into his home and washed their wounds. Paul preached the good news about Jesus to everyone in his house.

**Translation Notes****What must I do to be saved?**

The question refers to salvation from being punished by the God who caused the earthquake. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “what must I do for God to save me from my sins?”

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**Believe in Jesus, the Master**

This was addressed to both the jailer and his family, who all then believed and were baptized. Some languages may use a grammatical form of the verb **believe** to indicate that Paul is speaking to the group.

**you and your family will be saved**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will save you and your family” or “God will save you and your family from eternal punishment for your sins.” Make sure it is clear that the salvation referred to here is spiritual, not physical.

See TA article: **Active or Passive (p.1070)**

**Translation Words**

- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- saved (p.1410)

- Believe (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Master (p.1340)
- preached (p.1375)
- good news (p.1278)

## Translation Questions

### **What question did the jailer ask Paul?**

He asked, "What must I do to be saved?"

### **What did Paul say the jailer had to do in order to be saved?**

Paul told him to believe in Jesus, the Master.

**47:12**

The jailer and his whole family believed in Jesus, so Paul and Silas baptized them. Then the jailer gave Paul and Silas a meal, and they rejoiced together.

**Translation Notes****so Paul and Silas baptized them**

The connecting word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was the jailer and his whole family believed in Jesus. The result was that Paul and Silas baptized all of them.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- believed (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- baptized (p.1215)
- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- rejoiced (p.1320)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**47:13**

The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and Silas visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city. The good news about Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.

**Translation Notes****the leaders of the city**

This refers to the officials of the city or the authorities of the city.

**and then left the city**

This indicates that end of the story.

See TA article: **End of Story (p.1110)**

**The good news about Jesus kept spreading**

This could mean 'People in more and more places were hearing the good news about Jesus.'

**the Church kept growing**

This could mean 'more and more people were becoming part of the Church' or 'more and more people were believing in Jesus.'

**Translation Words**

- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- Philippi (p.1370)

- good news (p.1278)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Church (p.1233)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**47:14**

Paul and other leaders of the believers traveled to many cities. They preached and taught people the good news about Jesus. They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the believers in the churches. Some of these letters became books of the Bible.

**Translation Notes**

(No translation words for this frame)

**Translation Words**

- Paul (p.1361)
- Silas (p.1418)
- Philippi (p.1370)
- good news (p.1278)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Church (p.1233)

**Translation Questions**

**What happened to some of the letters Paul and other follower of Jesus leaders wrote to the believers in the churches?**

Some of these letters became books of the Bible.

## 48. Jesus Is the Promised Messiah

*A Bible story from: Genesis 1-3, 6, 14, 22; Exodus 12, 20; 2 Samuel 7; Hebrews 3:1-6, 4:14-5:10, 7:1-8:13, 9:11-10:18; Revelation 21*

### Jesus Is the Promised Messiah

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus Is the Messiah that God promised to send" or "How is Jesus Is the Messiah that God promised to send?"

**48:01**

When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve loved each other, and they loved God. There was no sickness or death. This was the way God wanted the world to be.

**Translation Notes****God created the world**

This could mean 'God made the world out of nothing.'

**perfect**

This could mean 'exactly as it should be' to accomplish all that God intended for it.

**There was no sin**

For some languages, it is not possible to express **sin** as a thing, rather it is an action. In those cases this could be translated as: "No one ever sinned" or "People did not sin" or "Nothing evil had happened."

**There was no sickness or death**

This could mean 'No one got sick and no one died' or 'They did not get sick or die.'

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- sin (p.1419)
- Adam (p.1204)
- Eve (p.1257)
- loved (p.1342)



- death

### **Translation Questions**

**What was the world like when God first created it?**

Everything was perfect, and there was no sin, sickness, or death.

**48:02**

Satan spoke to Eve in the garden through the snake because he wanted to deceive her. Then she and Adam sinned against God. Because they sinned, everyone on earth dies.

**Translation Notes****the garden**

This refers to the garden created by God where he placed the first man and woman.

**deceive her**

This could mean 'lie to her.' Satan lied by leading Eve to doubt what God had said. By doing this, he tricked her into disobeying God.

**Because they sinned, everyone on earth dies**

The connecting word **Because** connects the reason (they sinned), with the result (everyone on earth dies).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- Satan (p.1407)
- Eve (p.1257)
- Adam (p.1204)
- sinned (p.1419)
- God (p.1272)
- dies

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why does everyone on earth die?**

They die because Adam and Eve sinned against God.

**48:03**

Because Adam and Eve sinned, something even worse happened. They became enemies of God. As a result, every person since then has sinned. Every person is an enemy of God from birth. There was no peace between people and God. But God wanted to make peace.

**Translation Notes****But God wanted to make peace**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that God would want to destroy his enemies. Instead God wants to make peace.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- Adam (p.1204)
- Eve (p.1257)
- sinned (p.1419)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****What is the condition of every person who is born?**

They are enemies of God, and have no peace with him.

**48:04**

God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush Satan's head, and Satan would bite his heel. In other words, Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again. The Messiah would take away Satan's power forever. Many years later, God showed that the Messiah is Jesus.

**Translation Notes****crush Satan's head**

This could also be translated as: "step on Satan's head and smash it down flat" or "shatter Satan's head by stepping on it." This (crushing the head) represents a person stepping on the head of a snake. The head is completely crushed, and the snake is dead and therefore harmless.

**bite his heel**

This represents a snake on the ground biting a person's foot. In this case, Satan would cause the Messiah to suffer, but would not destroy him.

**but God would raise him to life again**

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Satan would kill the Messiah, so you would expect him to be dead. Instead, God would raise the Messiah to life again.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**raise him to life again**

This could mean 'make him alive again.'

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- promised (p.1379)
- Eve's (p.1257)
- descendants (p.1248)
- Satan (p.1407)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- raise
- life
- Jesus (p.1310)

## Translation Questions

**What does it mean that Satan will “wound the heel” of Eve’s descendent?**

Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to live again.

**48:05**

God told Noah to build a boat to save his family from the flood he was going to send. This is how God saved the people who believed in him. In the same way, everyone deserves death from God because they have sinned. But God sent Jesus to save everyone who believes in him.

**Translation Notes****But God sent Jesus**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect God to kill everyone because everyone has sinned. Instead, God sent Jesus to save people from their sin.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- save (p.1410)
- believed (p.1220)
- sinned (p.1419)
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions**

**In what way is Jesus like the boat God provided when he destroyed the earth by the flood?**

God sent Jesus as a way to save people who believe in him.

**48:06**

For hundreds of years, priests kept on offering sacrifices to God. This showed people that they committed sin and that they deserved God's punishment. But those sacrifices could not forgive their sins. Jesus did what the priests could not do. He gave himself to be the only sacrifice that could take away everyone's sin. He accepted onto himself the punishment that we should have received for our sins. For this reason, Jesus is the Great High Priest.

**Translation Notes****For hundreds of years, priests kept on offering sacrifices to God**

This is background information about the sacrifices the priests offered to God in the past.

See TA article: **Connect — Background Information (p.1079)**

**But those sacrifices could not forgive their sins**

This indicates an exceptional relationship. The sacrifices could show people their sin and that it deserved punishment, but it could not forgive those sins.

See TA article: **Connect — Exception Clauses (p.1084)**

**He gave himself**

This could also be translated as: "Jesus allowed himself to be killed."

**Translation Words**

- priests (p.1377)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- sin (p.1419)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- High Priest (p.1288)

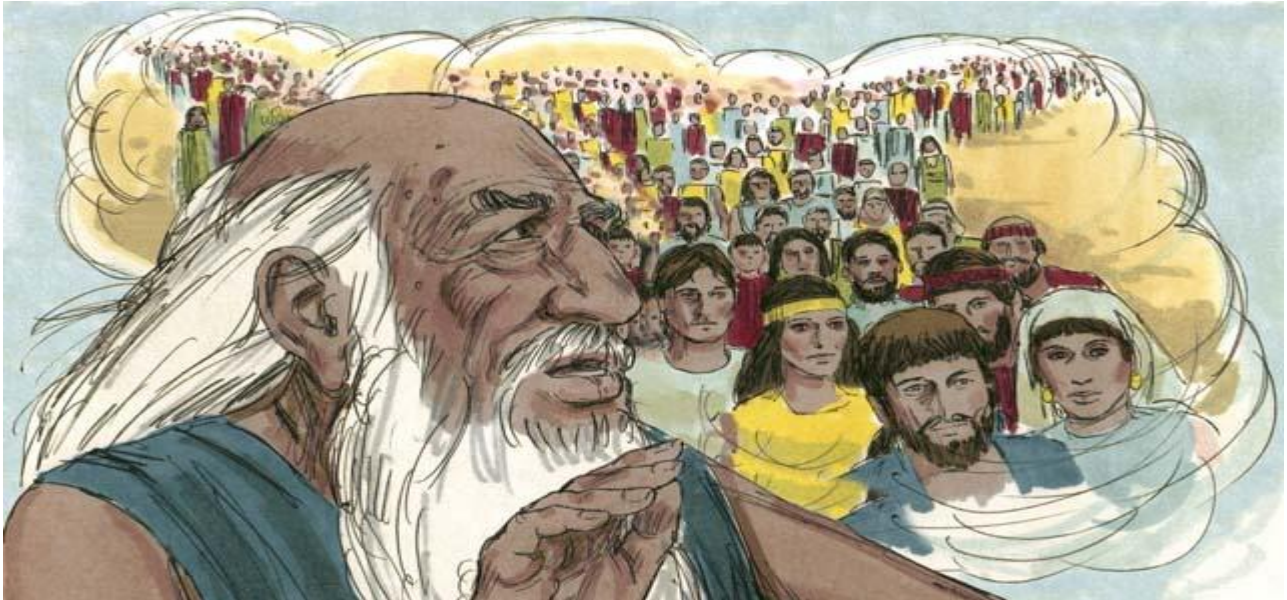


- punishment (p.1387)

### **Translation Questions**

**How is Jesus different than the priests who came before him?**

He offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of everyone.

**48:07**

God had told Abraham, “I will bless all the people groups on the earth through you.” Jesus was a descendant of this Abraham. God blesses all the people groups through Abraham, because God saves from sin everyone who believes in Jesus. When these people believe in Jesus, God considers them to be descendants of Abraham.

**Translation Notes****all the people groups on the earth**

This could also be translated as: “people from all different parts of the world.”

**because God saves from sin everyone who believes in Jesus**

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (God saves from sin those who believe in Jesus), with the result (all the people groups are blessed through Abraham’s descendant Jesus).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**When these people believe in Jesus**

The connecting word **When** connects the reason (people believe in Jesus (Abraham’s descendant)), with the result (God considers people who believe in Jesus to be Abraham’s descendants).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- people groups (p.1365)
- bless (p.1225)
- Jesus (p.1310)

- descendant (p.1248)
- believe (p.1220)
- saves (p.1410)

## Translation Questions

### **How is God's promise to Abraham fulfilled through Jesus?**

God considers everyone who believes in Jesus, from any people group, to be a descendant of Abraham.

**48:08**

God told Abraham to sacrifice his own son, Isaac, to him. But then God gave a ram for the sacrifice instead of Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God gave Jesus to be a sacrifice to die in our place. That is why we call Jesus the Lamb of God.

**Translation Notes****But then God gave a ram for the sacrifice instead of Isaac**

The connecting words **But then** introduces a contrast relationship. God told Abraham to sacrifice his son Isaac, instead of allowing Isaac to be sacrificed, God provided a ram.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**instead of Isaac**

This can also be translated as: "in the place of Isaac" or "in Isaac's place" or "so that he would not have to offer Isaac as a sacrifice."

**deserve to die**

This could mean 'should die.'

**But God gave Jesus**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. We all deserve to die for our sin but instead God gave Jesus to die in our place.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

## **to die in our place**

This can also be translated as: "to die in the place of each of us" or "so that he would not have to kill us."

### **Translation Words**

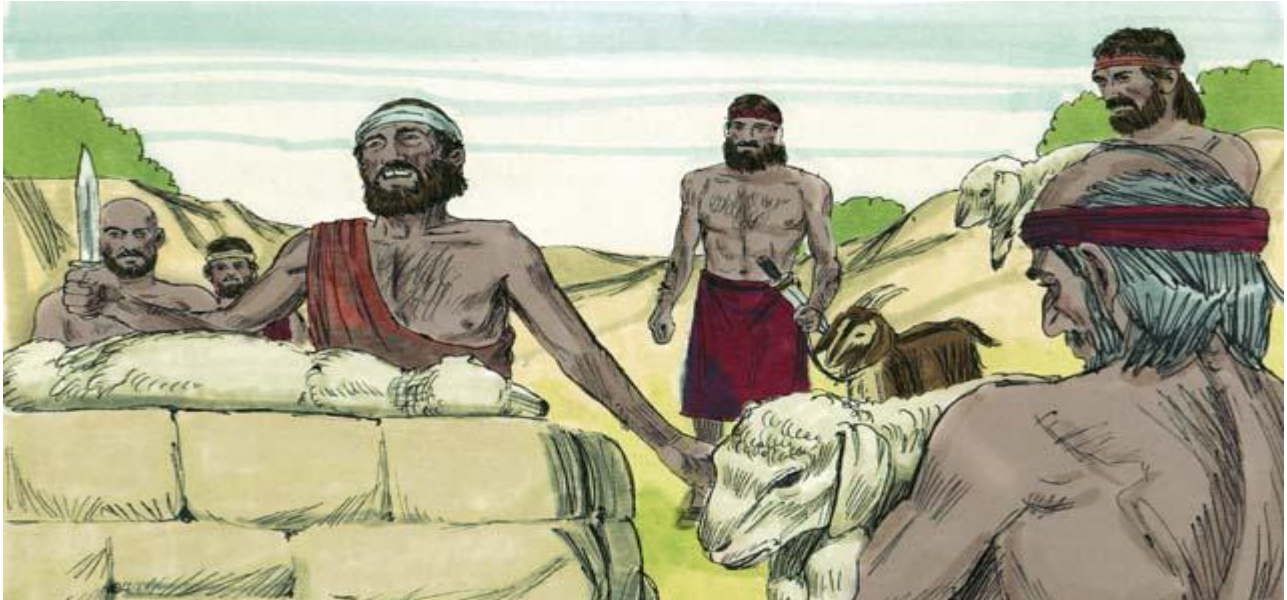
- God (p.1272)
- Abraham (p.1203)
- son
- Isaac (p.1298)
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- Lamb (p.1335)
- die
- sins (p.1419)
- Jesus (p.1310)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **How is Jesus like the ram that was sacrificed instead of Isaac?**

Jesus is the Lamb of God, who God gave to be a sacrifice in our place.

48:09



When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a lamb. The lamb must not have any flaws. Then they had to spread its blood on the tops and sides of their door frames. When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. When this happened, God called this the Passover.

## Translation Notes

### When God sent the last plague on Egypt

This clause gives background information about the time during the last plague on Egypt. The main event is the Passover that shows how God will pay for people's sins.

See TA article: **Connect — Background Information (p.1079)**

### sent the last plague on Egypt

This could mean 'caused the final disaster to come on Egypt.' This was the tenth plague when God caused the firstborn sons of the Egyptians to die.

### its blood

This could mean 'the lamb's blood.'

### door frames

If door frames are not known, this could be translated as: "doors."

### passed over

This could also be translated as: "passed by" or "went by." You may want to connect how this is translated with how **Passover** is translated.

## Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- Egypt (p.1252)
- Israelite (p.1301)
- lamb (p.1335)
- blood
- Passover (p.1359)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**48:10**

Jesus is like a Passover Lamb. He never sinned, so there was nothing wrong with him. He was killed at the time of the Passover festival. When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus pays for that person's sin. It is as if God passed over that person, because he does not punish him.

**Translation Notes****blood of Jesus**

This could be translated as: "The sacrifice that Jesus made of himself when he died for sinners." The word **blood** here also means 'death.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Passover (p.1359)
- Lamb (p.1335)
- believes (p.1220)
- blood
- sin (p.1419)
- God (p.1272)
- punish (p.1387)

**Translation Questions****How is Jesus like the Passover Lamb?**

Jesus never sinned and there is nothing wrong with him, so his blood (his death) causes God to pass over and not punish anyone who believes in Jesus.



**48:11**

God made a covenant with the Israelites because they were the people he had chosen to belong to himself. But God has now made a New Covenant that is for everyone. If anyone in any people group accepts this New Covenant, he joins God's people. He does this because he believes in Jesus.

**Translation Notes****because they were the people he had chosen to belong to himself**

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (the Israelites were God's chosen people), with the result (God made a covenant with them).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**If anyone in any people group accepts this New Covenant**

The connecting word **If** connects the reason (he accepts the New Covenant and believes in Jesus), with the result (he joins God's people).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- covenant (p.1237)
- the Israelites (p.1301)
- people group (p.1365)
- believes (p.1220)

**Translation Questions**

**Who can be part of God's people?**

Anyone from any people group can join God's people through the New Covenant by believing in Jesus.

**48:12**

Moses was a prophet who proclaimed the word of God with great power. But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is God, so all the things he did and said were the actions and words of God. That is why the Scriptures call Jesus the Word of God.

**Translation Notes****the greatest prophet**

This could mean 'the most important prophet.'

**call Jesus the Word of God**

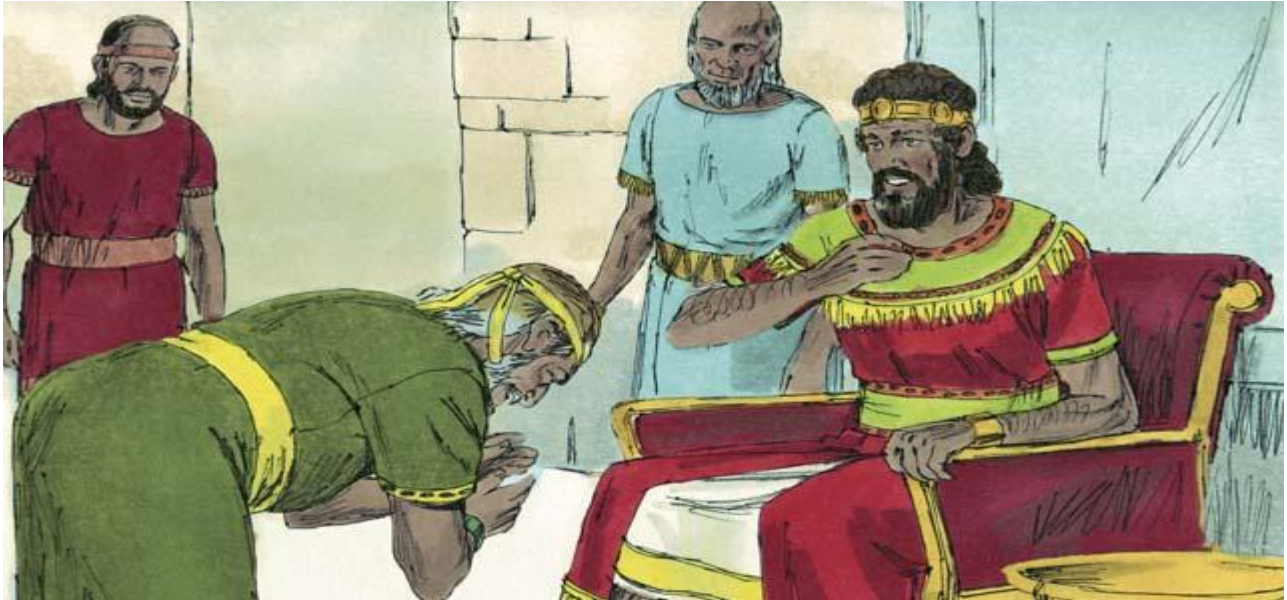
Jesus reveals God's character. The other prophets preached the message God gave them, but Jesus revealed God in his preaching and his actions.

**Translation Words**

- Moses (p.1352)
- prophet (p.1381)
- words of God (p.1439)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)

**Translation Questions****In what way is Jesus the greatest prophet of all?**

He is God, so all the things he did and said were the actions and words of God.

**48:13**

God promised King David that one of his descendants would rule as king over God's people forever. Jesus is the Son of God and the Messiah, so he is the descendant of David who can rule forever.

**Translation Notes**

**so he is the descendant of David who can rule forever**

The connecting word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason is Jesus is the Son of God and the Messiah. The result is he is the descendant of David who can rule forever.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- promised (p.1379)
- David (p.1243)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- descendant (p.1248)
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions**

**How does Jesus fulfill God's promise to King David?**

Because Jesus is the Son of God, he is the descendant of David who can rule forever.

**48:14**

David was a king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace forever.

**Translation Notes****but Jesus is the king of the entire universe**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. David was a king of Israel, so you would expect him to be one of the greatest kings ever. Instead, Jesus is far greater, because he is king of the universe.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**the king of the entire universe**

This could mean 'the king over everyone and everything everywhere.'

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- David (p.1243)
- king (p.1329)
- Israel (p.1301)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- his kingdom (p.1332)
- justice (p.1326)
- peace (p.1363)

## Translation Questions

**In what way is Jesus a greater king than David?**

Jesus is the king of the entire universe.

## 49. God's New Covenant

*A Bible story from: Genesis 3; Matthew 13-14; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 2; 10:25-37; 15; John 3:16; Romans 3:21-26, 5:1-11; 2 Corinthians 5:17-21; Colossians 1:13-14; 1 John 1:5-10*

### God's New Covenant

This title can also be translated as: "About the New Covenant that God made with people" or "What is the New Covenant that God made with people?"

**49:01**

An angel told Mary, a young woman, that she would give birth to God's Son. She was still a virgin, but the Holy Spirit came to her and made her become pregnant. She gave birth to a son and named him Jesus. Therefore, Jesus is both God and human.

**Translation Notes****God's Son**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**but the Holy Spirit came to her**

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Mary was a virgin, so you would not expect her to become pregnant. Instead, the Holy Spirit caused her to become pregnant.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- virgin (p.1437)
- Mary (p.1344)
- God's Son (p.1423)
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions**

**How is Jesus both God and human?**



Jesus became human because he was born of a woman. At the same time, he was and is God, and was born of virgin made pregnant by an act of the Holy Spirit.

**49:02**

Jesus did many miracles that show that he is God. He walked on water and stopped storms. He healed many sick people and drove demons out of many others. He raised dead people to life, and he turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food to feed over 5,000 people.

**Translation Notes****raised dead people to life**

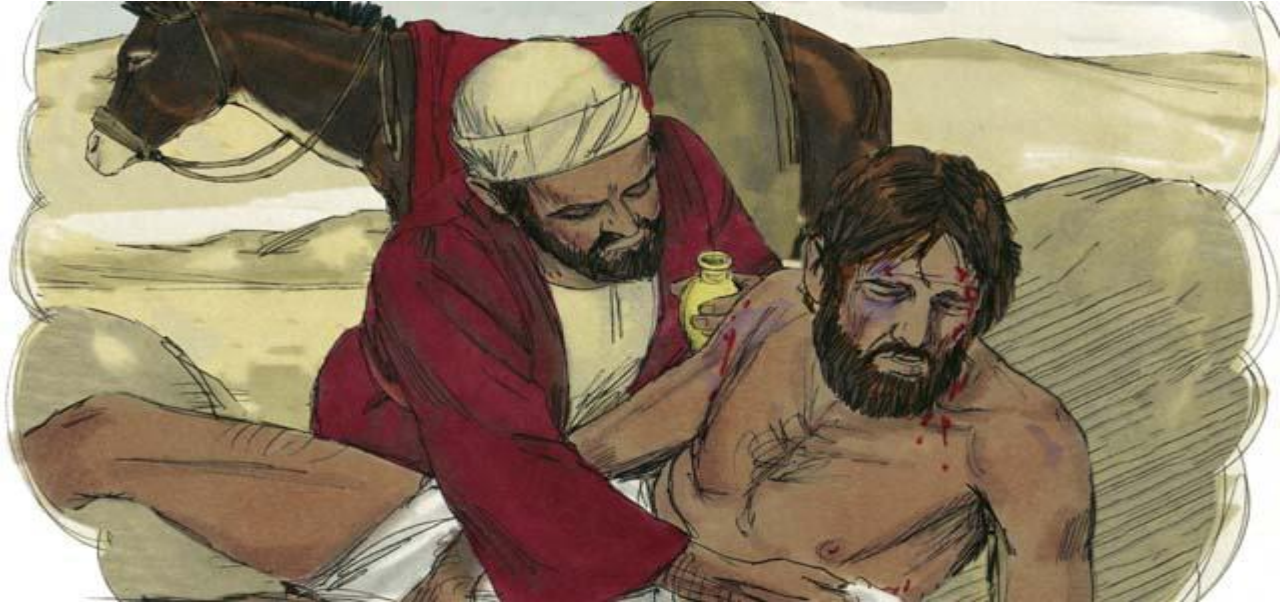
This could also be translated as: "caused dead people to become alive again."

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- miracles (p.1349)
- God (p.1272)
- healed
- demons (p.1246)
- raised
- dead

**Translation Questions****How did Jesus prove that he is God?**

He did many miracles.

**49:03**

Jesus was also a great teacher. Everything he taught, he taught correctly. People should do what he told them to do because he is the Son of God. For example, he taught that you need to love other people the same way you love yourself.

**Translation Notes****a great teacher**

This could mean 'a very important teacher' or 'an excellent teacher.'

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

See TA article: **Translating Son and Father (p.1199)**

**the same way**

This could mean 'as much as' or 'the same amount that' or 'to the same degree that.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- love (p.1342)

**Translation Questions**

**How should we love other people?**

We should love them in the same way as we love ourselves.

**49:04**



He also taught that you need to love God more than you love anything else, including your possessions.

### **Translation Notes**

(No translation notes for this frame)

### **Translation Words**

- love (p.1342)
- God (p.1272)

### **Translation Questions**

**Who should we love more than anything else?**

We should love God more than anything else.

## 49:05



Jesus said that it is better to be in God's kingdom than to have anything else in the world. God must save you from your sins in order for you to enter his kingdom.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- his kingdom (p.1332)
- save (p.1410)
- sins (p.1419)

### Translation Questions

**What is the most important thing for anyone?**

The most important thing is to belong to the kingdom of God.

**49:06**

Jesus said that some people will accept him. God will save these people. However, other people will not accept him. He also said that some people are like good soil. Because they accept the good news about Jesus, God saves them. However, other people are like the hard soil on a path. God's Word is like seed that falls on the path, but nothing grows there. These people reject the message about Jesus. They refuse to enter into his kingdom.

**Translation Notes****other people will not**

This could mean 'other people will not accept him and therefore will not be saved.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- save (p.1410)
- good news (p.1278)
- God's Word (p.1439)
- his kingdom (p.1332)

**Translation Questions****What do people do when they reject the message about Jesus?**

They refuse to enter into his kingdom.

## 49:07



Jesus taught that God loves sinners very much. He wants to forgive them and to make them his children.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- loves (p.1342)
- sinners (p.1419)
- forgive (p.1266)

### Translation Questions

**What does God want to do for sinners?**

He wants to forgive them and make them his children.



## 49:08



Jesus also told us that God hates sin. Because Adam and Eve sinned, all of their descendants also sin. Every person in the world sins and is far from God. Everyone is an enemy of God.

### Translation Notes

(No translation notes for this frame)

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- sin (p.1419)
- Adam (p.1204)
- Eve (p.1257)
- descendants (p.1248)

### Translation Questions

#### What does God hate?

He hates sin.

49:09



But God loved everyone in the world in this way: he gave his only Son so that God will not punish those who believe in Jesus. Instead, believers will live with him forever.

### Translation Notes

#### **But God loved everyone in the world**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. Everyone is an enemy of God, so you would expect God to hate and destroy them. Instead, God loves everyone and gave his son for them.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

#### **gave his only Son**

This could also be translated as: “offered his only Son to the world as a sacrifice for sins” or “gave us his only Son to be a sacrifice for our sins.”

#### **Instead, believers will live with him forever**

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Those who believe in God still sin, so you would expect them to be punished. Instead, they will live with God forever.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

### Translation Words

- God (p.1272)
- loved (p.1342)
- his only Son (p.1423)
- believe (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)

- punish (p.1387)
- live

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**49:10**

You deserve to die because you have sinned. It would be right for God to punish you, but Jesus took the punishment for sin in our place. God punished Jesus by killing him on a cross.

**Translation Notes****because you have sinned**

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (you have sinned), with the result (you deserve to die).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**but Jesus took the punishment for sin in our place**

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect God to be angry with you because of your sin. Instead, he punished Jesus.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**Translation Words**

- sin (p.1419)
- die
- God (p.1272)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- cross (p.1239)
- punish (p.1387)

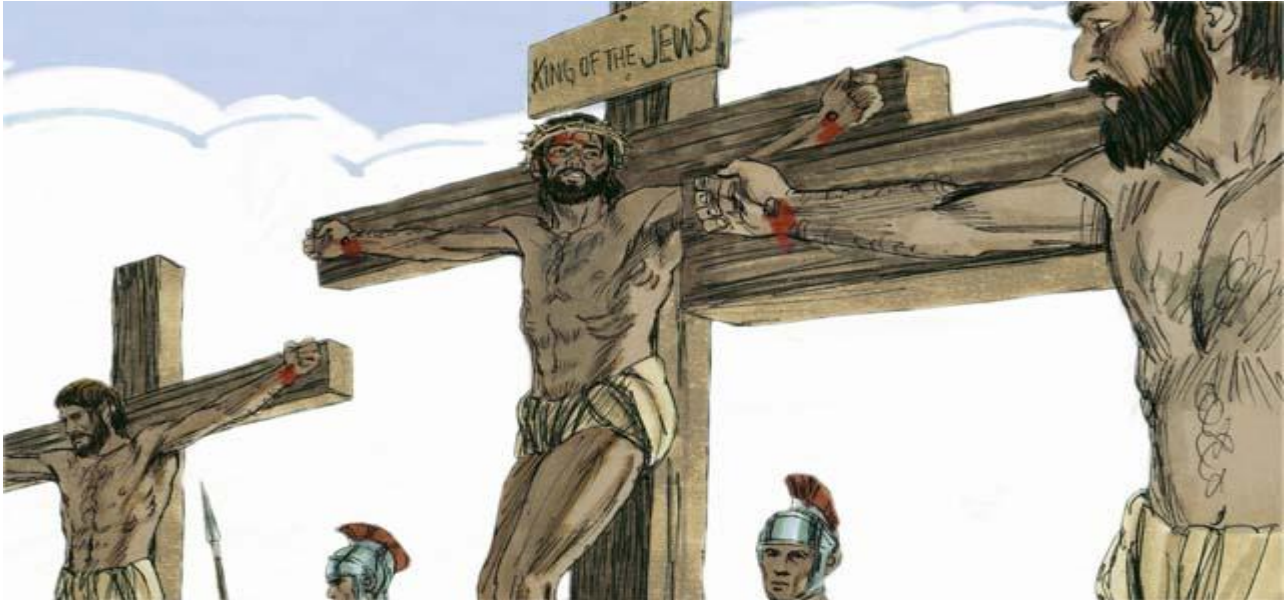
**Translation Questions**

**What do we deserve from God because of our sin?**

We deserve to die.

**What did God do to Jesus when he died on the cross?**

God punished Jesus for the sin of mankind, you and me.

**49:11**

Jesus never sinned. He accepted the punishment for sin, including the worst possible death. In this way, he was the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world. Jesus sacrificed himself to God, so God will forgive any sin, even terrible sins, of the people who believe in Jesus.

**Translation Notes****take away**

This could mean 'remove the penalty of' or 'remove the punishment for.' The sacrifice of Jesus causes God to look at our sin as if it never existed.

**so God will forgive any sin**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Jesus sacrificed himself), with the result (God forgives people's sin).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

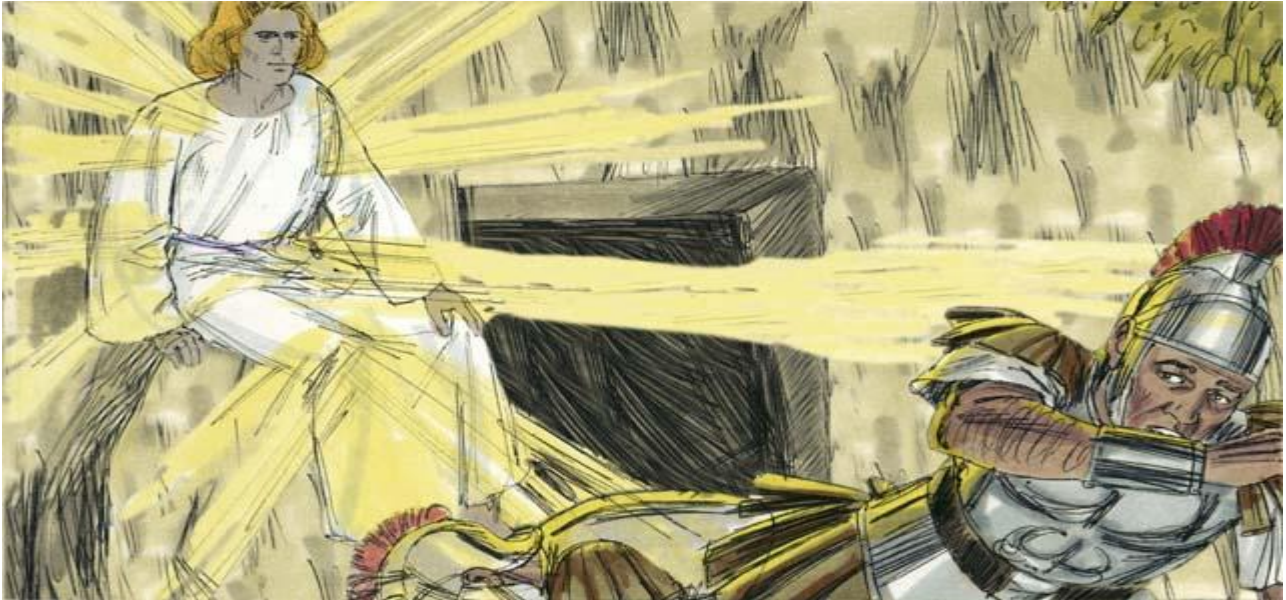
**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- sin (p.1419)
- punishment (p.1387)
- death
- sacrifice (p.1403)
- God (p.1272)
- forgive (p.1266)

## Translation Questions

**Why was Jesus' sacrifice able to take away the sins of every person in the world?**

Jesus could take away our sins because he never sinned and was the perfect sacrifice.

**49:12**

Even if you do many very good things, this will not make God save you. There is nothing you can do on your own to become friends with him. Instead, you should believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God raised him to life again. If you believe this, God will forgive you for having sinned.

**Translation Notes****Instead**

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that doing good things might save you, or that nothing could make you God's friend. Instead, believing in Christ saves you and makes you God's friend.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**instead of you**

This could mean 'in your place.'

**raised him to life again**

This could also be translated as: "made him alive again."

**If you believe this**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you believe in Christ, then God will forgive your sins.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

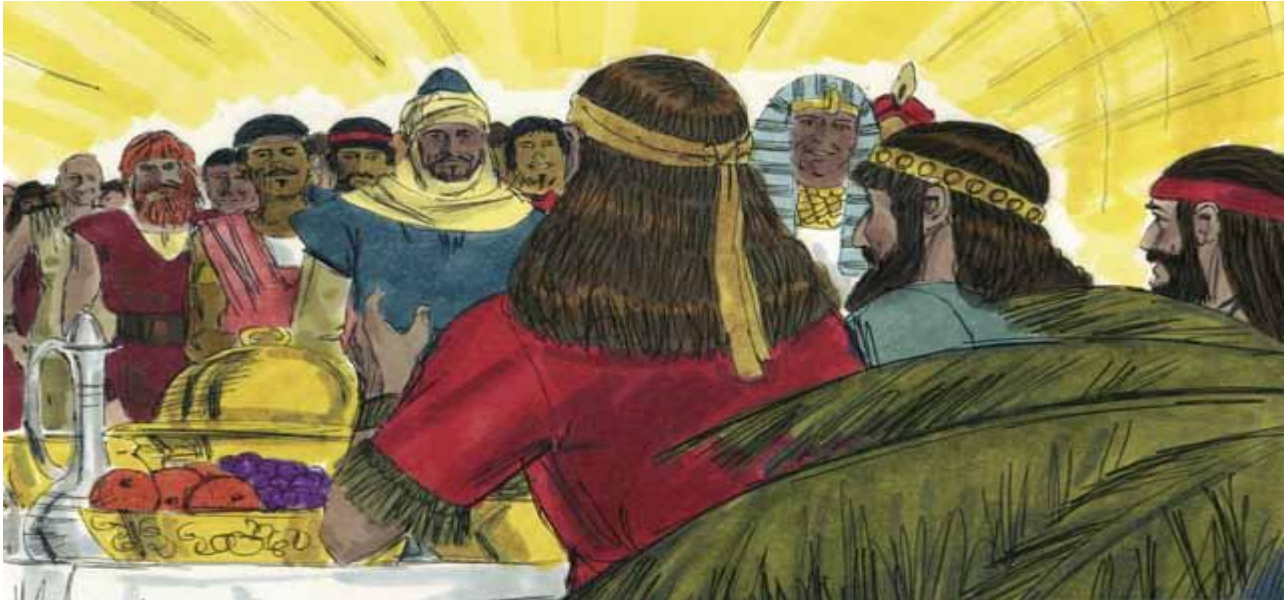


## Translation Words

- save (p.1410)
- God (p.1272)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- sinned (p.1419)
- believe (p.1220)
- Son of God (p.1423)
- died
- cross (p.1239)
- raised
- life

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**49:13**

God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and accepts him as their Master. But he will not save those who do not believe in him. It does not matter if you are rich or poor, man or woman, old or young, or where you live. God loves you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can be a friend to you.

**Translation Notes****But he will not save**

The connecting word **But** introduces an exceptional relationship. God saves everyone who believes. But people who do not believe are excluded from the **everyone**. Alternate translation: "God will only save those who believe in Jesus and accept him as their Master. He will not save those who do not believe in him."

See TA article: **Connect — Exception Clauses (p.1084)**

**so he can be a friend to you.**

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (you believe in Jesus), with the result (he can be a friend to you).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- save (p.1410)
- believe (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Master (p.1340)
- loves (p.1342)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Who will God save?**

God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and accepts him as his Master.

**49:14**

Jesus is calling you to believe in him and to be baptized. Do you believe that Jesus is the Messiah, the only Son of God? Do you believe that you are a sinner and that you deserve God's punishment for your sin? Do you believe that Jesus died on the cross to take away your sins?

**Translation Notes****to believe in him**

This can also be translated as: "to trust in him" or "to trust in him to save you" or "to entrust your whole life to him."

**to be baptized**

This could also be translated as: "to have someone baptize you" or "to let them baptize you."

**believe that**

This can also be translated as: "acknowledge that" or "agree that."

**to take away**

See note on [49:11](#).

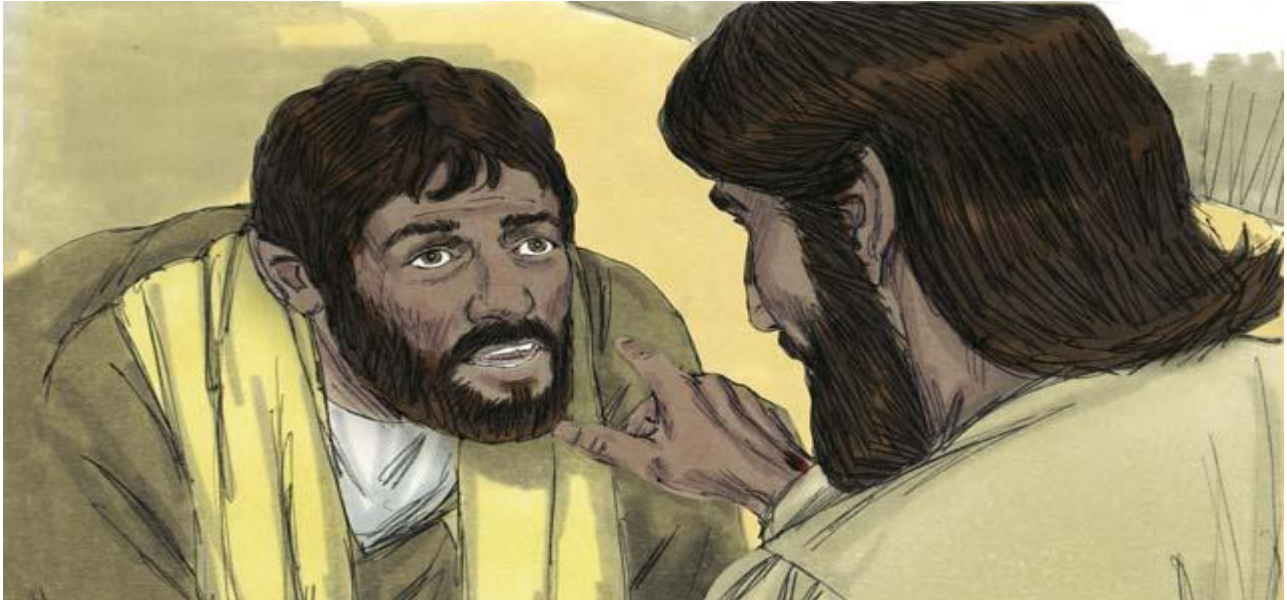
**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- believe (p.1220)
- baptized (p.1215)
- Messiah (p.1230)

- Son of God (p.1423)
- sin (p.1419)
- God (p.1272)
- punishment (p.1387)
- died
- cross (p.1239)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**49:15**

If you believe in Jesus and confess what he has done for you, you are a follower of Jesus! Satan no longer rules you in his kingdom of darkness. God is now ruling over you in his kingdom of light. God has enabled you to no longer sin as you used to do. He has given you a new, right way of living.

**Translation Notes****If you believe in Jesus and confess what he has done for you, you are a follower of Jesus!**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you believe in Jesus and confess what he has done for you, then you are a Christ follower.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**kingdom of darkness**

**Darkness** is used here to refer to sin and everything that is evil. This could be translated as: "evil rule over people, which is like darkness."

**kingdom of light**

**Light** here refers to God's holiness and goodness. This could be translated as: "righteous rule over people, which is like light." The Bible often compares evil to darkness, and goodness to light.

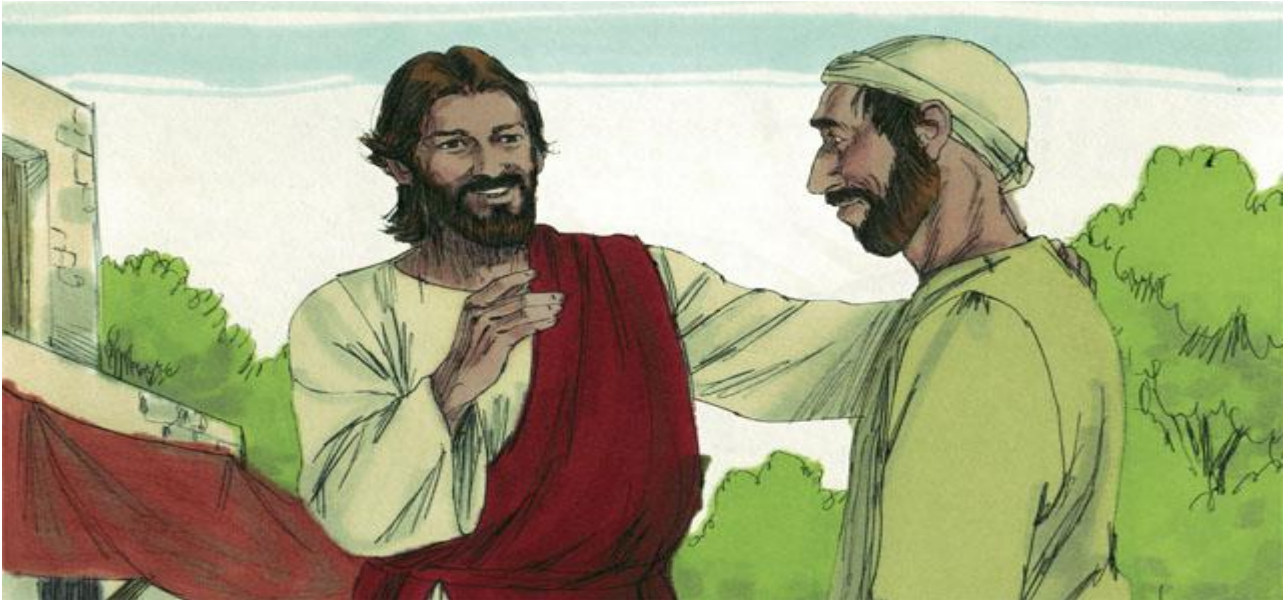
**Translation Words**

- believe (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- Satan (p.1407)
- kingdom (p.1330)

- his kingdom (p.1332)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**49:16**

If you are a follower of Jesus, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did. Now, God considers you to be a close friend instead of an enemy.

**Translation Notes****If you are a follower of Jesus**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you are a Christ follower, then God has forgiven your sins and you are his close friend.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**considers you to be**

This could mean 'thinks of you as' or 'regards you as' or 'calls you.'

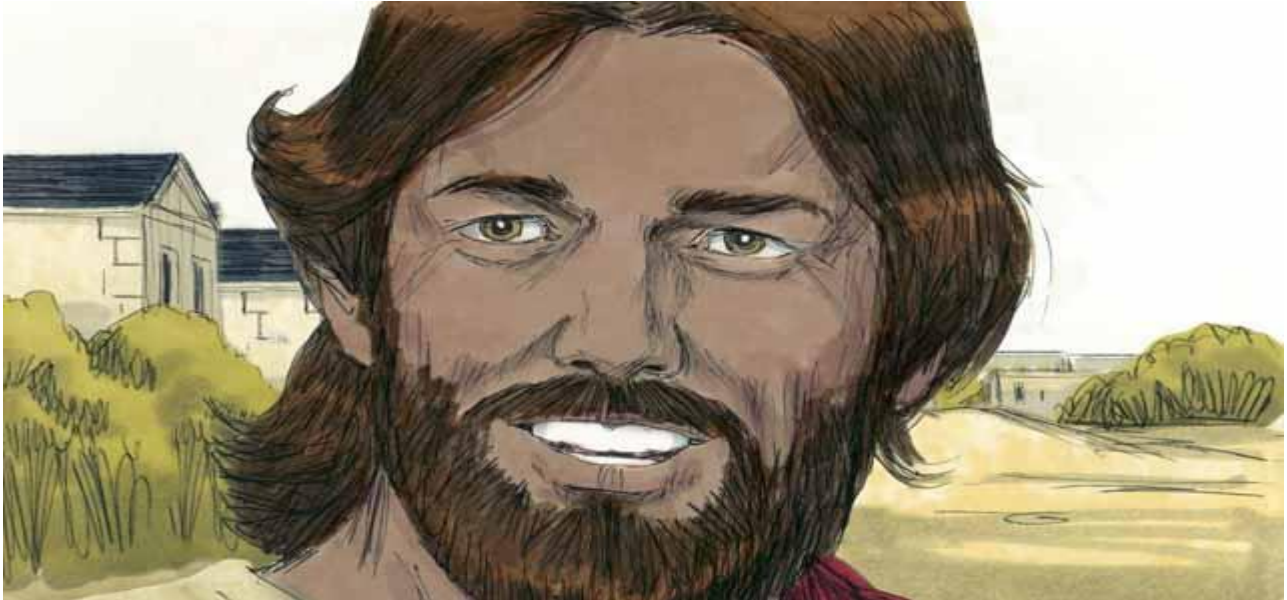
**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- forgiven (p.1266)
- sins (p.1419)
- Jesus (p.1310)

**Translation Questions****If you are a follower of Jesus, are you still an enemy of God?**

No, you are now a close friend of God.



**49:17**

If you are a friend of God and a servant of Jesus the Master, you will want to obey what Jesus teaches you. Even though you are a follower of Jesus, Satan will still tempt you to sin. But God always does what he says he will do. He says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against sin.

**Translation Notes****If you are a friend of God and a servant of Jesus the Master**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you are a friend of God, then you want to obey Jesus.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**But God always does what he says he will do**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that, when Satan tempts you to sin and you do sin, you would become the enemy of God again. Instead, God keeps his promise. He forgives the sin that you do and gives you the strength to stop sinning.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**if you confess your sins**

The connecting word **if** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you confess your sins, then God will forgive you.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**confess your sins**

This could be translated as: "admit to God what you have done wrong."

## **He will give you strength to fight against sin**

This could mean 'He will give you spiritual strength to refuse to sin.'

### **Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- servant (p.1413)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Master (p.1340)
- obey
- tempt (p.1432)
- sin (p.1419)
- forgive (p.1266)

### **Translation Questions**

#### **Are followers of Jesus still tempted to sin?**

Yes, they are tempted.

#### **What should followers of Jesus do when they sin?**

They should confess their sins to God.

#### **What does God promise to do if we confess our sins?**

He promises to forgive us, and to give us strength to fight against sin.

**49:18**

God tells you to pray and to study his word. He also tells you to worship him together with other followers of Jesus. You must also tell other people what he has done for you. If you do all these things, you will become a strong friend of his.

**Translation Notes****If you do all these things**

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you do the things God tells you to do, then you will become a strong friend of his.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- pray (p.1373)
- his word (p.1439)
- worship (p.1383)

**Translation Questions****What are some of the things that God tells followers of Jesus to do?**

He tells us to pray, study his word, worship him, and tell others about what he has done for us.

## 50. Jesus Returns

*A Bible story from: Matthew 13:24-42; 22:13; 24:14; 28:18; John 4:35; 15:20; 16:33; 1 Thessalonians 4:13-5:11; James 1:12; Revelation 2:10; 20:10; 21-22*

### Jesus Returns

This title can also be translated as: "About when Jesus returns to earth again" or "What will happen when Jesus returns to earth again?"

**50:01**

For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The Church has been growing. Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

**Translation Notes**

**For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The Church has been growing.**

This is background information about what has happened to the Church until today.

See TA article: **Background Information (p.1076)**

**The Church has been growing**

This could also be translated as: “The number of people in the Church around the world has been increasing” or “The number of believers in Jesus has been increasing.”

**at the end of the world**

This phrase means ‘right before the present world comes to an end’ or ‘in the final days of this world.’

**Though he has not yet come back**

The connecting word **Though** introduces a contrast relationship. Jesus has not come back for 2,000 years, so you would expect he is not coming back as he promised. Instead, Jesus will come back as he promised.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

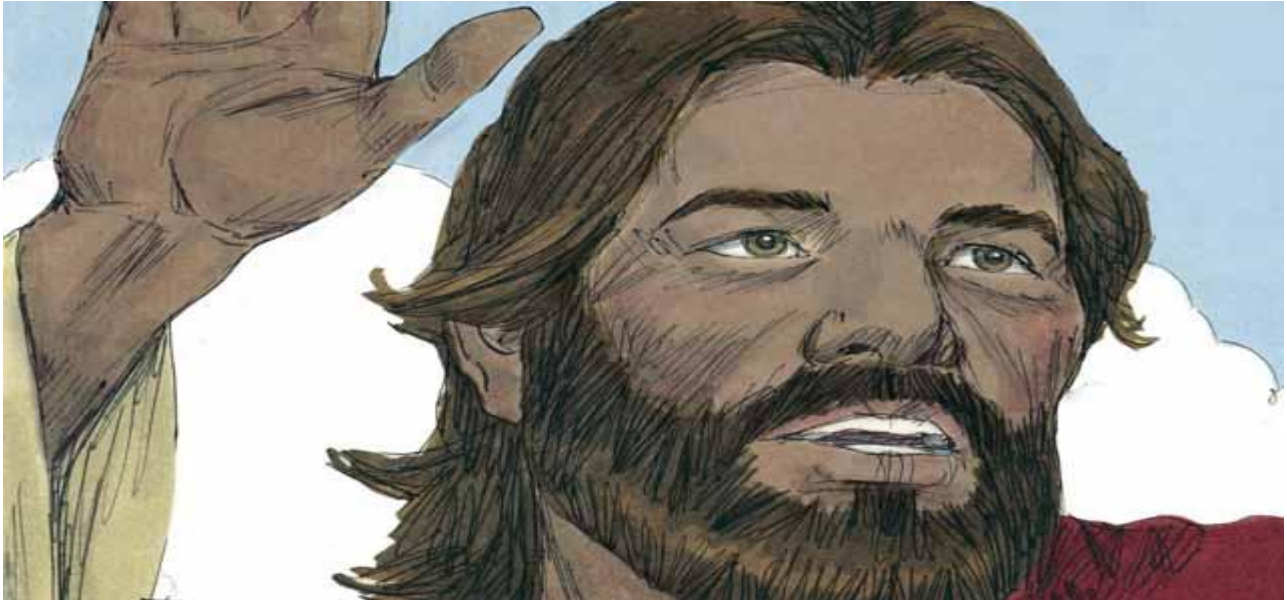
## Translation Words

- good news (p.1278)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- Church (p.1233)
- promise (p.1379)

## Translation Questions

**During the last 2,000 years, what has happened to the number of people who believe in Jesus?**

The number has been increasing.

**50:02**

As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is holy and that honors him. He also wants us to tell others about his kingdom. When Jesus was living on earth, he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

**Translation Notes****the end will come**

This could be translated as: “the end of this world will come” or “the end of this world will happen” or “this present world will end.”

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- God (p.1272)
- holy (p.1292)
- kingdom of God (p.1332)
- disciples (p.1249)
- preach (p.1375)
- good news (p.1278)

**Translation Questions****How does God want us to live as we wait for Jesus to return?**

He wants us to live in a way that is holy and that honors him.

**What did Jesus say would happen before the end of the world comes?**

His disciples would preach the good news of the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world.





**50:03**

Many people groups still have not heard about Jesus. Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told his followers to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it. He said, "Go and make disciples in all people groups!" and "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

**Translation Notes****make disciples**

This has the meaning, 'help people to become my disciples.'

**The fields are ripe for harvest**

The words **fields** and **ripe for harvest** are metaphors. The **fields** represent people. The words **ripe for harvest** mean that people are ready to accept the message of Jesus, like fields that are ready to be harvested. Alternate translation: This could also be translated as: "They are ready to be brought to God like fields that are ripe for harvest" or "They are ready to be gathered and brought to God like fields whose crops are ripe and ready to be gathered."

See TA article: **Metaphor (p.1155)**

**The fields**

In this expression, **The fields** represents the people in the world.

**ripe**

**Ripe** here represents being ready to believe in Jesus.

## **harvest**

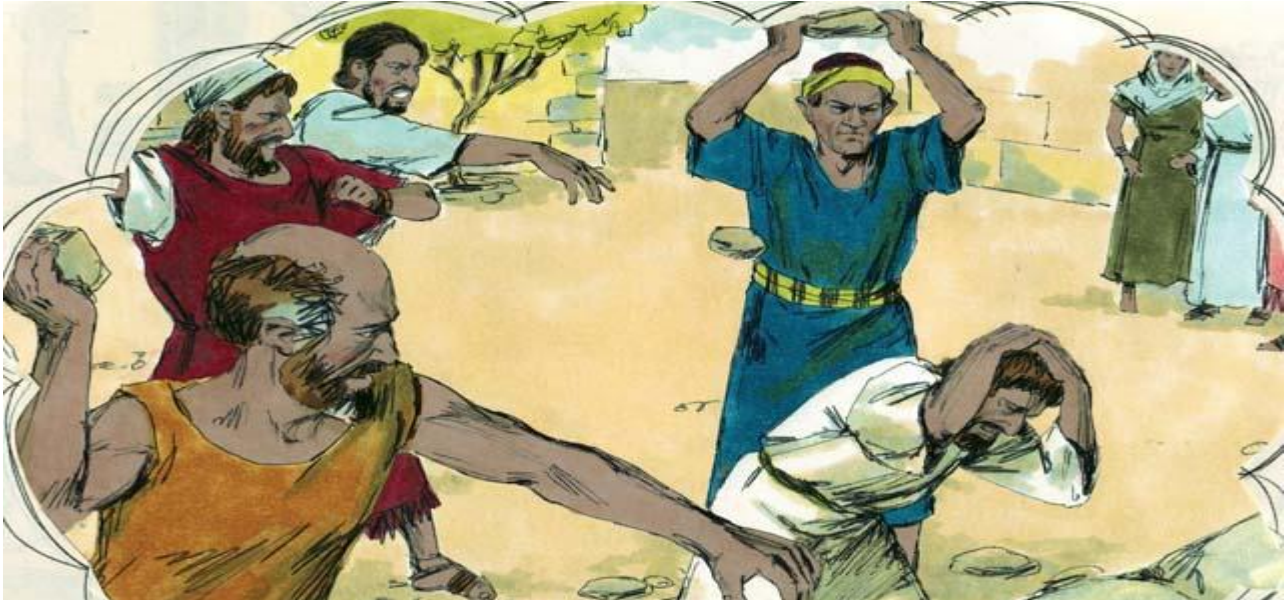
**Harvest** here represents the work of bringing people to God by teaching them about Jesus.

### **Translation Words**

- people groups (p.1365)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- heaven (p.1285)
- good news (p.1278)
- disciples (p.1249)

### **Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**50:04**

Jesus also said, "A man's servant is not greater than his master. The important people in this world have hated me, and they will also torture you and kill you because of me. In this world you will suffer, but be strong, because I have defeated Satan, the one who rules this world. If you remain faithful to me to the end, then God will save you!"

**Translation Notes****not greater than**

This could mean 'not more important than' or in this case, 'not treated better than.'

**because of me**

This could mean 'because you obey me' or 'because you teach people about me' or 'because you belong to me.'

**in this world**

This could also be translated as: "in this lifetime."

**If you remain faithful to me to the end, then God will save you**

The connecting word **if** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you remain faithful to the end, then God will save you.

See TA article: **Connect — Hypothetical Conditions (p.1091)**

**remain faithful to me**

This could mean 'Keep obeying me.'

### **to the end**

This could mean 'to the end of your life.'

### **will save you**

This refers to spiritual salvation rather than physical deliverance from harm. It has already been stated that many believers will be killed or tortured.

## **Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- servant (p.1413)
- master (p.1340)
- suffer (p.1427)
- Satan (p.1407)
- faithful (p.1263)
- save (p.1410)

## **Translation Questions**

### **How will the world that hated Jesus treat his disciples?**

The world will cause his disciples to suffer also.

### **What is God's promise to those who remain faithful to the end?**

He promises that God will save them.

**50:05**

Jesus told his disciples a story to explain what will happen to people when the world ends. He said, “A man planted good seed in his field. While he was sleeping, his enemy came and planted weed seeds among the wheat seeds, and then he went away.”

**Translation Notes****told his disciples a story**

The story is in the form of a parable.

See TA article: **Parables (p.1170)**

**good seed**

This seed was wheat grain. If this type of seed is not known in your language area, it is best to use a general term for **seed**. If there is no general term, it may be necessary to choose a type of grain seed that is known and say, for example: “good seed like rice.”

**weed seeds**

The weed seeds that were planted would grow up as tall grass but could not be eaten. They were useless.

**wheat seeds**

Wheat is a kind of grain that grows like a tall grass. It has seeds that people use for food.

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- disciples (p.1249)

- good (p.1280)

### **Translation Questions**

**In Jesus' story about the end of the world, how did the weeds come to be among the wheat?**

An enemy planted them.

**50:06**

“When the plants sprouted, the servants of the man said, ‘Master, you planted good seed in that field. So why are there weeds in it?’ The man answered, ‘Only my enemies would want to plant them. It is one of my enemies who did this.’”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues to tell the story.

**Master, you planted good seed**

Here **you** is a metonym that refers to his servants. The landowner probably had his servants plant the seeds. Alternate translation: “we planted good seed”

See TA article: **Metonymy (p.1161)**

**The man answered, ‘Only my enemies would want to plant them. It is one of my enemies who did this.’**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “The man answered that only his enemies would want to plant them, so it was one of his enemies who did this.”

See TA article: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1181)**

**Only my enemies would want to plant them**

If possible, translate this in a way that indicates that the speaker did not see this happen.

## Translation Words

- servants (p.1413)
- Master (p.1340)
- good (p.1280)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)



**50:07**

“The servants responded to their master, ‘Should we pull out the weeds?’ The master said, ‘No. If you do that, you will pull out some of the wheat as well. Wait until the harvest. Then gather the weeds into piles so you can burn them. But bring the wheat into my barn.’”

**Translation Notes****General Information**

Jesus continues to tell the story.

**Should we pull out**

Here **we** is exclusive. It refers to the servants but not the master. The servants would not expect the master to pull weeds.

See TA article: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1117)**

**If you do that, you will pull**

Each occurrence of **you** in this frame is plural, referring to all of the servants.

See TA article: **Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural (p.1122)**

**you will pull out some of the wheat as well**

This could mean ‘you will accidentally pull out some of the wheat also.’ It would be too difficult to distinguish young wheat from the weeds, and to pull the weeds without uprooting the wheat.

### **until the harvest**

This could mean 'until the time when the wheat is ready to harvest' or 'until the wheat has grown enough to be harvested.'

### **the wheat**

This could mean 'the harvested wheat grains.'

### **barn**

This refers to the building where the harvested wheat grain was saved and stored. It could also be called a 'storehouse.'

See TA article: **Translate Unknowns (p.1196)**

## **Translation Words**

- servants (p.1413)
- master (p.1340)

## **Translation Questions**

### **Why didn't the servants pull out the weeds?**

Their master did not want them to accidentally pull out the wheat along with the weeds.

**50:08**

The disciples did not understand the meaning of the story, so they asked Jesus to explain it to them. Jesus said, "The man who planted the good seed represents the Messiah. The field represents the world. The good seed represents the people of God's kingdom."

**Translation Notes****The disciples did not understand the meaning of the story, so they asked Jesus to explain it to them**

The connecting word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason is the disciples did not understand the meaning of the story. The result is they asked Jesus to explain it.

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**the Messiah**

Jesus is referring to himself.

See TA article: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1119)**

**the people of God's kingdom**

This refers to the people who belong to or are part of the kingdom of God. It can also be translated as: "the people who live under God's authority" or "the people who have submitted to God's rule" or "the people who will live with God in his kingdom."

See TA article: **Possession (p.1172)**

**Translation Words**

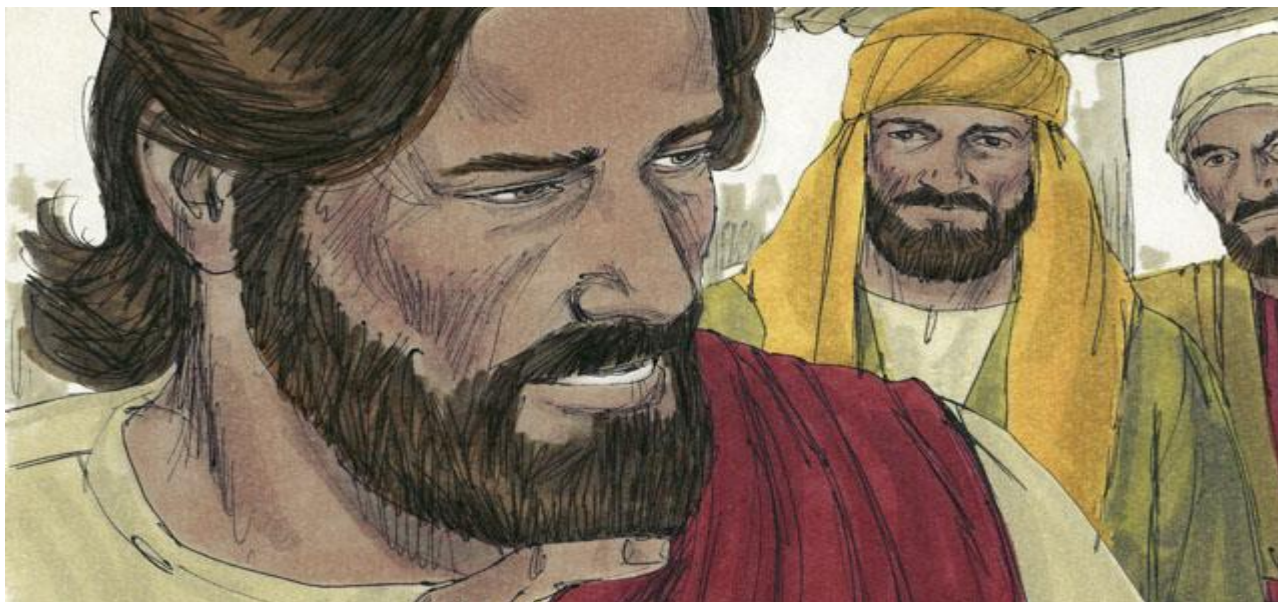
- disciples (p.1249)
- Jesus (p.1310)

- good (p.1280)
- Messiah (p.1230)
- God's kingdom (p.1332)

## Translation Questions

### What does the good seed represent?

The good seed represents the people of God's kingdom.

**50:09**

“The weeds represent the people who belong to the devil, the evil one. The man’s enemy, the one who planted the weeds, represents the devil. The harvest represents the end of the world, and the harvesters represent God’s angels.”

**Translation Notes****who belong to the devil**

This could mean ‘who obey the devil’ or ‘who are ruled by the devil.’

**the devil**

This could also be translated as: “Satan.”

**the evil one**

This is another title for Satan. It could be translated as: “Satan,” but the title, **evil one** describes his character.

**represents the end of the world**

This could mean ‘represents what will happen to people at the end of the world.’

**the harvesters**

This could also be translated as: “the men who harvest the ripe grain” or “the workers who gather in the ripe grain.”

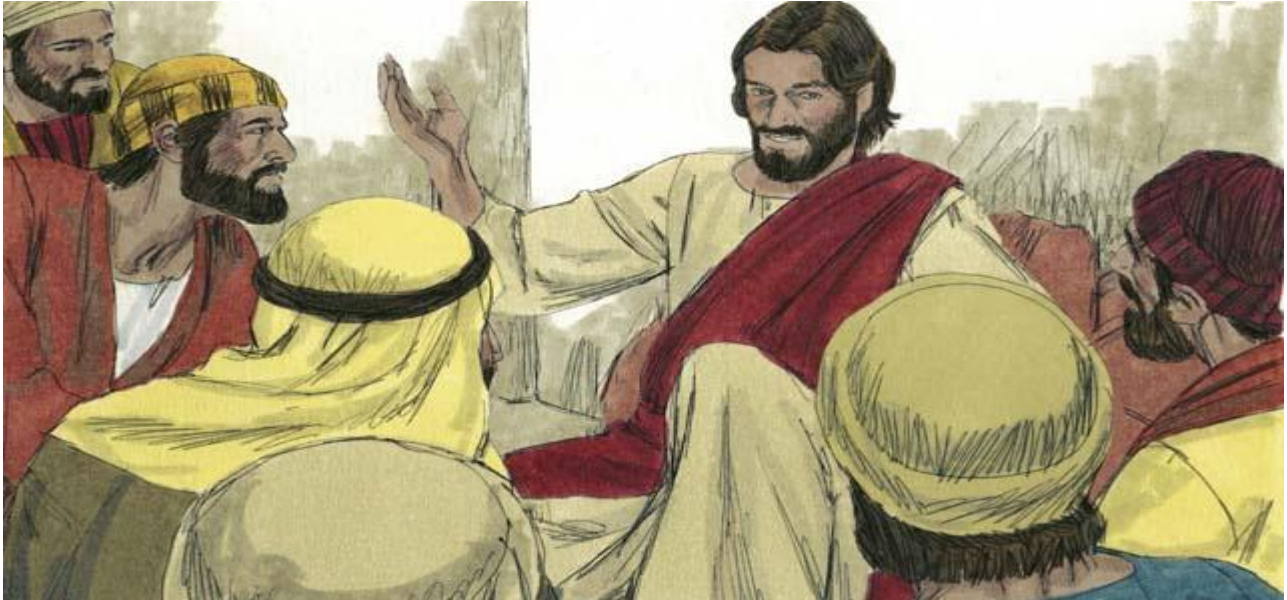
## Translation Words

- evil (p.1258)
- devil (p.1407)
- God's (p.1272)
- angels (p.1209)

## Translation Questions

**What does the harvest represent?**

The harvest represents the end of the world.

**50:10**

“When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the devil. The angels will throw them into a very hot fire. There those people will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering. But the people who are righteous, who have followed Jesus, will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

**Translation Notes****who belong to the devil**

This could also be translated as: “who obey the devil” or “who are ruled by the devil.” This refers to those who do not believe in Jesus but follow the evil ways of the devil.

**cry and grind their teeth**

They will **grind their teeth** as a symbolic act representing their extreme sadness and suffering.

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**But the people who are righteous**

The word **But** introduces an exceptional relationship. The people who are righteous because they followed Jesus will not be thrown in the fire with everyone else.

See TA article: **Connect — Exception Clauses (p.1084)**

**the people who are righteous**

This refers to the people who belong to the Messiah (See: [50:08](#)).

## **shine like the sun**

This could also be translated as: “be glorious like the sun” or “show pure goodness as the sun shows bright light.”

See TA article: **Simile (p.1187)**

## **Translation Words**

- angels (p.1209)
- devil (p.1407)
- suffering (p.1427)
- righteous (p.1398)
- kingdom of God (p.1332)
- Father (p.1274)

## **Translation Questions**

**What will happen to the people who belong to the devil at the end of the world?**

The angels will gather them up and throw them into a very hot fire, where they will suffer terribly.



**50:11**

Jesus also said that he would return to earth just before the world ends. He will come back the same way that he left. That is, he will have a real body, and he will come on the clouds in the sky. When Jesus returns, every follower of Jesus who has died will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky.

**Translation Notes****he left**

This could also be translated as: “he left the earth” or “he left to go back to heaven.”

**will come on the clouds in the sky**

This could mean ‘the clouds in the sky will surround him as he comes’ or ‘the clouds of the sky will carry him along.’

**When Jesus returns**

The connecting word **When** introduces a simultaneous clause. Jesus’ followers who have died will rise and meet him in the sky at the time of Jesus’ return.

See TA article: **Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship (p.1098)**

**Jesus returns**

This could mean ‘Jesus returns to the earth.’

**meet him in the sky**

This could mean ‘join him in the sky.’ Those who believe in Jesus will go up to be near Jesus while he is in the sky.

## Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- dead
- rise

## Translation Questions

### **In what form will Jesus return to the earth?**

He will return the way that he left, with a real body, and on the clouds in the sky.

### **When Jesus returns, what will happen to every follower of Jesus who has died?**

They will also rise to meet him in the sky.

**50:12**

Then the followers of Jesus who are still alive will rise up into the sky and join with the other followers of Jesus who rose from the dead. They will all be with Jesus there. After that, Jesus will live with his people. They will have complete peace forever as they live together.

**Translation Notes****Then the followers of Jesus who are still alive**

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. After the Jesus followers who died rise to meet Jesus in the air, the Jesus followers who are still alive will also join Jesus.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**still alive**

This could mean 'still alive when Jesus returns.'

**After that, Jesus will live with his people**

The connecting words **After that** introduce a sequential clause. After Jesus followers have joined Jesus, they will live together forever.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**Translation Words**

- alive
- rise
- dead
- Jesus (p.1310)

## Translation Questions

**When Jesus returns, what will happen to the followers of Jesus who are still alive?**

The followers of Jesus who are alive will rise up into the sky and join with the other followers of Jesus who rose from the dead.

## 50:13



Jesus promised to give a crown to everyone who believes in him. They will rule with God over everything forever. They will have perfect peace.

### Translation Notes

#### **a crown**

This crown represents our reward for believing in Jesus and serving him in this life.

#### **perfect**

This could mean 'complete' or 'total.'

### Translation Words

- Jesus (p.1310)
- promised (p.1379)
- believes (p.1220)
- God (p.1272)
- peace (p.1363)

### Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**50:14**

But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell. There they will weep and grind their teeth, and they will suffer forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.

**Translation Notes****But God will judge everyone who does not believe**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. In contrast to the wonderful place of peace where Jesus' followers will live, those who did not believe will suffer forever.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**weep and grind their teeth**

See note on [50:10](#).

See TA article: **Symbolic Action (p.1190)**

**Translation Words**

- God (p.1272)
- judge (p.1324)
- believe (p.1220)
- Jesus (p.1310)
- hell (p.1287)

**Translation Questions**

(No translation questions for this frame)

**50:15**

When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy Satan and his kingdom. He will throw Satan into hell. Satan will burn there forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

**Translation Notes****When Jesus returns**

The connecting word **When** introduces a sequential clause. After Jesus returns, he will destroy Satan and his kingdom.

See TA article: **Connect — Sequential Time Relationship (p.1096)**

**his kingdom**

This could also be translated as: "Satan's evil rule over people" or "all the evil things he does and the evil people he controls."

**rather than**

This could mean 'instead of.'

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- Satan (p.1407)
- kingdom (p.1330)
- hell (p.1287)
- obey
- God (p.1272)

## Translation Questions

**What will Jesus do to Satan when he returns?**

Jesus will throw Satan into hell, where he will burn forever.



**50:16**

Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it. But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

**Translation Notes****Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God**

The connecting word **Because** connects the result (God destroyed the world), with the reason (Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into the world).

See TA article: **Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship (p.1093)**

**brought sin into**

This could be translated as: “caused sin to enter.”

**But some day God will create**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. It is expected that God will destroy the world because of sin. Instead of leaving it destroyed, God creates a new heaven and a new earth.

See TA article: **Connect — Contrast Relationship (p.1082)**

**a new heaven**

This could also be translated as: “a new sky” or “a new universe.” It refers to a new set of stars and everything else in the sky.

**a new earth**

This current earth on which we live will be replaced by a new and improved one.

## Translation Words

- Adam (p.1204)
- Eve (p.1257)
- disobeyed
- God (p.1272)
- sin (p.1419)
- cursed (p.1241)
- heaven (p.1285)

## Translation Questions

(No translation questions for this frame)

**50:17**

Jesus and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything. He will wipe away every tear from people's eyes. No one will suffer or be sad any longer. They will not cry. They will not be sick or die. And there will be nothing evil there. Jesus will rule his kingdom justly and with peace. He will be with his people forever.

**Translation Notes****wipe away every tear**

This could also be translated as: "bring an end to all of our grief" or "make trouble end" or "tenderly take away any sadness people have."

**rule his kingdom justly and with peace**

This could also be translated as: "rule over his people fairly, in a way that brings them peace."

**A Bible story from**

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

**Translation Words**

- Jesus (p.1310)
- suffer (p.1427)
- evil (p.1258)
- die
- kingdom (p.1332)
- peace (p.1363)
- justly (p.1326)

## **Translation Questions**

### **What will life be like in the new heaven and new earth?**

Jesus will rule his kingdom justly and with peace, and there will be no more suffering.



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 36**

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Sentence Structure \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Verbs \(UTA PDF\)](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**.  
(Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about: "

[Abstract Nouns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Word Order \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [4:4](#); [11:2](#); [15:5](#); [23:2](#); [24:8](#); [25:4](#); [27:1](#); [27:2](#); [32:14](#); [38:8](#); [40:2](#); [40:7](#); [43:3](#); [43:11](#); [43:12](#); [46:9](#); [47:11](#)



## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.  
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** 5:6; 5:8; 8:6; 8:7; 14:5; 22:2; 23:1; 23:2; 24:5; 25:2; 25:3; 25:4; 25:6; 25:7; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8; 28:7; 28:10; 29:3; 29:8; 30:7; 31:7; 31:8; 32:13; 32:14; 33:7; 34:1; 34:3; 34:4; 34:6; 34:7; 35:7; 35:9; 37:1; 38:4; 38:8; 38:12; 38:14; 39:6; 40:2; 40:3; 40:5; 41:3; 43:3; 44:1; 44:2; 45:9; 46:1; 46:7

## Background Information

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Order of Events* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Example** — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

### A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
  - > \* Setting includes:
    - > \* where the story takes place
    - > \* when the story takes place
    - > \* who is present when the story begins
    - > \* what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said ...."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

**And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.  
**Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

“**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John’s rebuke and Herod’s actions.

“Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother’s wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Connecting Words and Phrases (UTA PDF)*

*Introduction of a New Event (UTA PDF)*

**Referenced in:** 7:1; 7:7; 8:4; 8:6; 9:2; 13:1; 13:8; 14:1; 14:2; 15:1; 17:1; 17:2; 17:12; 18:1; 19:1; 21:15; 22:1; 22:4; 23:4; 23:5; 23:9; 24:1; 26:5; 26:6; 27:7; 27:8; 30:2; 32:7; 36:4; 37:1; 37:2; 37:4; 37:7; 37:10; 38:1; 38:2; 38:3; 38:14; 43:2; 45:1; 45:6; 45:7; 46:1; 47:1; 50:1

## Connect — Background Information

### Time Relationship

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate clauses that give background information?*

### Background Clause

#### Description

A background clause is one that describes something that is ongoing. Then, in the same sentence, another clause indicates an event that begins to happen during that time. These events are also simultaneous events, but they have the further relationship of background event and main event because the event that is already happening serves as the background for the other event, the one that is in focus. The background event simply provides the time frame or other context for the main event or events.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate a shift in time in different ways. You (the translator) need to understand how these shifts in time are indicated in the original languages in order to communicate them clearly in your own language. Background clauses often indicate a time that began long before the event that is in focus. Translators need to understand how both the source language and the target language communicate background events. Some English words that indicate background events are “now,” “when,” “while,” and “during.” Those words can also indicate simultaneous events. To tell the difference, ask yourself if all of the events seem to be equal in importance and started at about the same time. If so, they are probably simultaneous events. But if an event(s) is ongoing and another event(s) just started, then the ongoing event(s) is probably background to the other event(s). Some common phrases that indicate background events are “in those days” and “at that time.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

**When** Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods. (OBS Story 18 Frame 3)

Solomon began to worship foreign gods at a time when he was old. Being old is the background event. Worshiping other gods is the main event.

And his parents went **every year** to Jerusalem to the Feast of the Passover. And when he was 12 years old, they went up according to the custom of the feast. (Luke 2:41-42 ULT)

The first event—going to Jerusalem—is ongoing and started long ago. We know this because of the words “every year.” Going to Jerusalem is the background event. Then an event begins that started during the time “when he was twelve years old.” So the main event is the specific time Jesus and his family traveled to Jerusalem for the Passover festival **when he was twelve years old**.

And it came about that, **while** they were there, the days were fulfilled for her to give birth. (Luke 2:6 ULT)

Being in Bethlehem is the background event. The birth of the baby is the main event.

And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of

Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness.  
(Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

This example begins with five background clauses (marked by commas), signalled as background by the words “while” and “during.” Then the main event happens: “the word of God came to John.”

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the Background Clauses are marked is also clear in your language, then translate the Background Clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

(2) If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words (such as by using different verb forms), then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness.  
(Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a background clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

**It happened during the time that** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, **and during the time that** Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, **and during the time that** his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, **and during the time that** Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **and also during the time that** Annas and Caiaphas were high priests—**that** the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

(2) If your language marks background clauses in a different way than using connecting words, such as with different verb forms, then use that way.

Pontius Pilate **was governing** Judea, and Herod **was ruling over** Galilee, and his brother Philip **was ruling over** the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias **was ruling over** Abilene, and Annas and Caiaphas **were being** high priests—the word of God **came** to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.



### Example of Differences in Time Relationship Connecting Words:

Category	Example
Background setting	Yahweh’s word was rare <b>in those days</b> ;
Background repeated	there was no frequent prophetic vision.
Introduction of main event	<b>At that time, when</b> Eli
Background	<b>whose</b> eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well,
Simultaneous background	was lying down in his own bed.
Simultaneous background	The lamp of God <b>had not yet</b> gone out,
Simultaneous background	<b>and</b> Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh,
Simultaneous background	where the ark of God was.
Main event	<b>Yahweh called to Samuel,</b>
Sequential event	who said, “Here I am.” (1 Sam 3:1-4 ULT)

In the above example, the first two lines talk about a condition that was going on for a long time. This is the general, long-term background. We know this from the phrase “in those days.” After the introduction of the main event (“At that time,”), there are several lines of simultaneous background. The first one is introduced by “when,” and then three more follow, with the last connected by “and.” The background clause introduced by “where” explains a little more about the background clause before it. Then the main event happens, followed by more events. Translators will need to think about the best way to show these relationships in their language.

”

**Referenced in:** [7:8](#); [18:3](#); [18:12](#); [22:4](#); [48:6](#); [48:9](#)

## Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

### Contrast Relationship

#### Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

#### Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
- (2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
- (3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

{David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

"

**Referenced in:** 7:1; 7:3; 7:6; 7:10; 8:5; 8:11; 8:12; 9:10; 10:1; 10:3; 12:10; 13:10; 14:7; 14:12; 15:6; 15:7; 16:6; 16:10; 16:16; 16:18; 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:14; 18:3; 18:6; 18:13; 19:4; 19:8; 19:14; 19:17; 19:18; 20:1; 20:5; 20:10; 21:1; 21:7; 21:8; 21:12; 21:13; 21:15; 23:1; 23:3; 24:9; 42:1; 42:2; 43:5; 43:6; 43:9; 44:6; 44:8; 46:8; 47:8; 47:10; 48:3; 48:4; 48:5; 48:8; 48:14; 49:1; 49:9; 49:10; 49:12; 49:17; 50:1; 50:14; 50:16

## Connect — Exception Clauses

### Exceptional Relationship

This page answers the question: *How can I translate exception clauses?*

### Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however ... not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

### Examples From OBS and the Bible

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

### Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not** a man escaped)
- Part 2: (**except for** 400 young men)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only** 400 young men escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will let you go **only if** you bless me."

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

"

**Referenced in:** [14:6](#); [14:9](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [48:6](#); [49:13](#); [50:10](#)

## Connect — Factual Conditions

### Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate factual conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, “if ... then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

### Factual Conditions

#### Description

A Factual Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true in the speaker’s mind. In English, a sentence containing a Factual Condition can use the words “even though,” “since,” or “this being the case” to indicate that it is a factual condition and not a hypothetical condition.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not state something as a condition if it is certain or true. Translators from these languages may misunderstand the original languages and think that the condition is uncertain. This would lead to mistakes in their translations. Even if the translators understand that the condition is certain or true, the readers may misunderstand it. In this case, it would be best to translate it as a statement of fact rather than as a conditional statement.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

“**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!” (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

Elijah came near to all the people and said, “How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him.” Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

This sentence has the same construction as a hypothetical condition. The condition is “if Yahweh is God.” If that is true, then the Israelites should worship Yahweh. But the prophet Elijah does not question whether or not Yahweh is God. In fact, he is so certain that Yahweh is God that later in the passage he pours water all over his sacrifice. He is confident that God is real and that he will burn even an offering that is completely wet. Over and over again, the prophets taught that Yahweh is God, so the people should worship him. The people did not worship Yahweh, however, even though He is God. By putting the statement or instruction into the form of a Factual Condition, Elijah is trying to get the Israelites to understand more clearly what they should do.

“A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If I**, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If I** am a master, where is the reverence for me?” says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

Yahweh has said that he is a father and a master to Israel, so even though this sounds like a hypothetical condition because it begins with “if,” it is not hypothetical. This verse begins with the proverb that a son honors his father. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh. The other proverb in the verse says that a servant honors his master. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh, so it seems that he is not their master. But Yahweh is the master. Yahweh uses the form of a hypothetical condition to demonstrate that the Israelites are wrong. The second part of the condition that should occur naturally is not happening, even though the conditional statement is true.

## Translation Strategies

If using the form of a hypothetical condition is confusing or would make the reader think that the speaker doubts what he is saying in the first part of the sentence, then use a statement instead. Words such as “since” or “you know that ...” or “it is true that ...” can be helpful to make the meaning clear.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

“**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!” (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

“**It is true that** Yahweh is God, so worship him!”

“A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?” says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

“A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **Since** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **Since** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?”

”

**Referenced in:** [15:3](#); [24:7](#)

## Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a goal (purpose) relationship?*

### Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

#### Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison.** (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian.** (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes.** Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God’s ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean,** and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened,** which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)



The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with “and.” Then the word “so” marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
- (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!” (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!”

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.”

- (2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17bULT)

“... keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**.” or: “... keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**.”

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance.**

"

Referenced in: [12:14](#); [43:11](#)

## Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

### Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate hypothetical conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words “if ... then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

### Hypothetical Condition

#### Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the “then” clause) will only take place if the first event (the “if” clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God’s promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God’s promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the “if clause”) is stated after the “then” clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

#### Translation Strategies

- (1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.
- (2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

"

**Referenced in:** [13:2](#); [13:10](#); [14:3](#); [19:7](#); [19:16](#); [41:1](#); [42:8](#); [49:12](#); [49:15](#); [49:16](#); [49:17](#); [49:18](#); [50:4](#)

## Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

### Reason-and-Result Relationships

#### Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — “I did Y because I wanted X to happen.” But usually it is looking backward — “X happened, and so I did Y.” Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are “because,” “so,” “therefore,” and “for.” Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a [Verse Bridge](#).

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus!  
(Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.  
(Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

“Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.
- (2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.
- (3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

- (1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.
- (2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.
- (3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

- (1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.
- (2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.
- (3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

**Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

- (1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.
- (2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.
- (3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

"

**Referenced in:** 7:3; 7:5; 7:6; 8:2; 8:3; 8:11; 9:2; 9:4; 9:13; 9:15; 10:2; 10:12; 12:3; 12:7; 12:10; 12:12; 12:13; 13:5; 13:12; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 15:3; 15:7; 16:1; 16:2; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:12; 16:14; 16:16; 17:4;

17:7; 17:8; 17:12; 17:13; 18:1; 18:4; 19:2; 19:4; 19:7; 19:15; 20:7; 22:3; 23:2; 23:3; 23:9; 43:10; 43:11; 44:6; 45:2; 45:12;  
46:6; 47:7; 47:10; 47:12; 48:2; 48:7; 48:11; 48:13; 49:10; 49:11; 49:13; 50:8; 50:16

## Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

### Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate clauses with a sequential time relationship?*

### Sequential Clause

#### Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

When Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word “**after**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word “**before**.” However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector “**and**” connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general connector “and” is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.



## Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see [Sequence of Events](#).

"

**Referenced in:** 7:4; 7:10; 8:2; 8:3; 8:4; 8:12; 12:6; 12:11; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:11; 15:12; 16:8; 16:12; 16:13; 16:18; 17:3; 17:13; 18:5; 19:9; 19:11; 19:13; 19:15; 20:8; 22:3; 22:6; 22:7; 23:7; 23:8; 24:3; 41:1; 41:4; 43:1; 44:3; 47:5; 50:12; 50:15

## Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

### Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate clauses with a simultaneous time relationship?*

### Simultaneous Clause

#### Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as “while,” “as,” and “during.” Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word “**during**” tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector “**and**” indicates this.

**While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words “**while**” and “**as**” tell us this.

#### Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

- (1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
- (2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
- (3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

- (1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.
- (2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.
- (3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

**While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

- (1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.
- (2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.
- (3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

"

**Referenced in:** [19:3](#); [23:10](#); [41:5](#); [43:3](#); [46:5](#); [50:11](#)

## Connecting Words and Phrases

### Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to join parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.

**Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

### Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

## The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- [Sequential Clause](#) — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- [Simultaneous Clause](#) — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- [Background Clause](#) — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- [Exceptional Relationship](#) — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- [Hypothetical Condition](#) — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- [Factual Condition](#) — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- [Contrary-to-Fact Condition](#) — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- [Goal Relationship](#) — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- [Reason and Result Relationship](#) — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- [Contrast Relationship](#) — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

## Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

**Therefore**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “therefore” links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “but” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words “so that” connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

## General Translation Strategies

### See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
- (3) Use a different connecting word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "instead" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

- (3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

**Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.  
**And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

”

**Referenced in:** [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [17:8](#); [46:3](#)

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

### Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."  
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you."  
(Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Verbs \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Quotations and Quote Margins \(UTA PDF\)](#)



## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](https://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about: "  
[Quotes within Quotes \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** 1:2; 1:5; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:7; 2:8; 3:13; 4:4; 4:6; 4:7; 4:9; 5:1; 5:3; 5:4; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:10; 6:6; 7:2; 8:7; 9:12; 10:8; 11:8; 12:5; 14:5; 14:13; 15:2; 16:7; 16:11; 18:6; 19:2; 19:12; 19:13; 22:3; 22:5; 23:6; 23:7; 24:2; 24:7; 24:9; 25:2; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:6; 25:7; 26:3; 26:4; 26:5; 26:6; 26:9; 27:1; 27:2; 28:1; 28:2; 28:3; 28:4; 28:6; 28:7; 28:8; 28:9; 28:10; 29:1; 29:2; 29:9; 30:4; 30:5; 30:6; 31:4; 31:5; 31:8; 32:5; 32:11; 32:15; 36:6; 37:7; 38:6; 38:9; 38:10; 38:13; 39:9; 41:2; 42:5

## Doublet

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Figures of Speech \(UTA PDF\)](#)

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

"You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

"He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

"... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, "**Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!**  
We are perishing!"

"

**Referenced in:** [1:9](#); [44:9](#)

## Ellipsis

### Description

An ellipsis<sup>[^1]</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

### Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise.** (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight.**” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight.**” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

”

Referenced in: [27:2](#); [32:10](#); [38:9](#)

## End of Story

### Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Writing Styles \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Background Information \(UTA PDF\)](#)

### The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a comment about what happened in the story
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

### Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

### Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

"

**Referenced in:** [45:5](#); [45:12](#); [45:13](#); [47:13](#)

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.  
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)



But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

"They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

"

**Referenced in:** [8:5](#); [13:6](#); [14:3](#); [17:11](#); [23:3](#); [32:13](#); [40:7](#)

## Exclamations

### Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Sentence Types (UTA PDF)*

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

### Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

### Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, “**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.””

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

”

**Referenced in:** 8:8; 8:12; 10:1; 11:8; 12:4; 12:5; 12:10; 13:12; 14:5; 14:6; 15:5; 16:7; 16:11; 16:13; 17:3; 17:7; 19:5; 19:6; 19:8; 19:11; 19:12; 20:12; 22:2; 22:7; 23:6; 24:2; 24:6; 26:9; 28:6; 29:8; 30:5; 35:3; 35:9; 37:2; 37:9; 37:10; 38:9; 39:4; 39:5; 39:6; 39:7; 39:12; 41:5; 42:5; 43:6; 45:2; 45:3; 46:4; 47:6

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

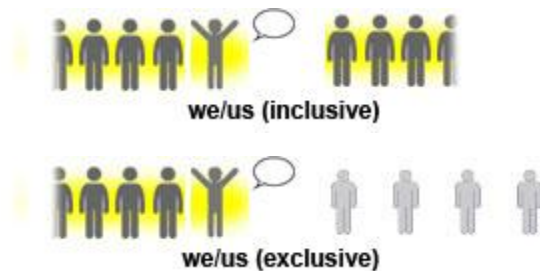
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

#### Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [32:7](#); [36:4](#); [40:4](#); [43:7](#); [44:4](#); [47:10](#); [50:7](#)

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Pronouns* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant,** used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You \(UTA PDF\)](#)

Referenced in: [50:8](#)



## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- [Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal](#)

”

**Referenced in:** [18:6](#); [42:6](#); [42:10](#)

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Forms of ‘You’ — Singular (UTA PDF)*

*Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural (UTA PDF)*

## Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

### Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

This page answers the question: *How do I know if the word 'you' is dual or plural?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Forms of You \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Pronouns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Parts of Speech \(UTA PDF\)](#)

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word “you” refers to, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know how many people the speaker was addressing.

### Examples From the Bible

Then **James and John**, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him, saying to him, “Teacher, we desire that you to do for us whatever we ask you.” 36 So he said to them, “What do **you** want me to do for **you**?” (Mark 10:35-36 ULT)

Jesus is asking the two, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a dual form of “you,” use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, “Go into the village opposite us. As soon as **you** enter it, **you** will find a colt tied there, on which no one has yet sat. Untie it and bring it to me.” (Mark 11:1b-2 ULT)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing two people. If the target language has a dual form of “you,” use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes who are in the dispersion: Greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when **you** experience various troubles. You know that the testing of **your** faith produces endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULT)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word “you” refers to many people. If the target language has a plural form of “you,” it would be best to use it here.

## Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

- (1) Look at the translationNotes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
- (4) Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youdual](https://ufw.io/figs_youdual).

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Forms of 'You' — Singular (UTA PDF)*

**Referenced in:** [41:6](#); [50:7](#)

## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

”

**Referenced in:** [3:13](#); [11:8](#); [14:4](#)

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said,  
“For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** <sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:



[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Copy or Borrow Words (UTA PDF)*

**Referenced in:** [8:15](#); [9:2](#)

## Hyperbole

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

### Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways  
> and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.  
or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

”

**Referenced in:** [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [28:6](#)

## Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Writing Styles (UTA PDF)*

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

## Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

## Hypothetical Situation in the Future

**Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved.** But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

## Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

## Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](https://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

"

**Referenced in:** [37:4](#); [37:6](#); [38:9](#); [40:5](#)



## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

▮ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

▮ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

▮ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

▮ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

▮ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

▮ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

▮ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

▮ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

▮ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

▮ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

▮ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

▮ I am crying my **eyes out**

"

**Referenced in:** [1:14](#); [12:3](#); [15:2](#); [15:7](#); [17:1](#); [29:9](#); [30:7](#); [30:8](#); [31:6](#); [32:6](#); [37:2](#); [43:5](#); [43:8](#); [44:8](#)

## Imperatives — Other Uses

### Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Sentence Types \(UTA PDF\)](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

### Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in.” (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

### Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like “light must be.”

### Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

## Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

**Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;  
**love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

**Teach** a child the way he should go,  
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
- (3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

**Be clean.** (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

“You are now clean.”  
“I now cleanse you.”

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, “**There is now light**” and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, “**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, ‘Let there be light,’ **so** there was light.  
God said, “Light must be;” **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

**If** you teach a child the way he should go,  
**then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

”

**Referenced in:** [1:2](#); [1:5](#); [1:8](#)

## Introduction of a New Event

### Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Writing Styles \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Order of Events \(UTA PDF\)](#)

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

**In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

**Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

**Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector’s tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

**Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** 8:1; 9:1; 9:2; 13:1; 14:13; 14:14; 15:1; 15:7; 15:13; 16:1; 16:4; 17:4; 17:5; 17:10; 17:14; 18:1; 19:17; 20:11; 22:1; 24:1; 25:1; 26:1; 27:1; 28:1; 29:1; 31:1; 35:1; 36:1; 37:1; 38:11; 39:1; 40:1; 43:1; 43:2; 44:1; 45:2; 45:7; 46:2; 46:6; 46:7; 46:8; 46:10; 47:1; 47:5



## Introduction of New and Old Participants

### Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** ... **This man** came to Jesus at night ... Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Parts of Speech \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Writing Styles \(UTA PDF\)](#)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he has become an old participant.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

## Examples From the Bible

### New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man,” as in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

**Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife.” This phrase shows her relationship to him.

Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

### Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his,” and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she.”

His **wife** was barren and **she** had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to by the noun phrase "the wife."

The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the wife** and he said to her ... (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See [Verbs](#).)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
- (2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth ... (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.

It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Pronouns — When to Use Them (UTA PDF)*

**Referenced in:** 14:2; 17:1; 17:2; 17:10; 17:12; 19:1; 19:14; 20:2; 20:6; 22:1; 22:5; 23:9; 27:1; 27:4; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8; 28:1; 32:13; 35:3; 37:1; 42:10; 44:1; 45:1; 45:7; 46:1; 46:4; 47:1; 47:3

## Irony

### Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

### Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They

emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

(2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Litotes (UTA PDF)*

**Referenced in:** [39:12](#); [40:5](#)

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a **double negative** is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good.**”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

”

Referenced in: [45:5](#)



## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Figures of Speech \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

"

**Referenced in:** [2:4](#)

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Figures of Speech \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Simile \(UTA PDF\)](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator’s special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you,” the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material.

The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**"  
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread."  
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, “He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**” (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad.** (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick.**

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay.** You are our **potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood.** You are our **carver;** and we all are the work of your hand.”

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string.** You are the **weaver;** and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock.** May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#).

"

**Referenced in:** 10:4; 12:2; 13:2; 21:5; 24:4; 24:6; 28:4; 32:6; 33:6; 33:7; 35:9; 38:8; 38:12; 44:5; 47:4; 50:3



# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment?**”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

”

**Referenced in:** 4:4; 16:13; 19:14; 21:5; 24:6; 29:9; 36:5; 38:9; 40:4; 40:7; 42:10; 44:2; 46:4; 47:5; 50:6

## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich;** his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

"

**Referenced in:** [28:4](#); [41:6](#)

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Fractions \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [8:15](#); [16:10](#); [16:14](#); [17:6](#); [17:8](#); [18:3](#); [19:6](#); [20:6](#); [20:12](#); [21:15](#); [25:1](#); [28:10](#); [29:1](#); [29:2](#); [30:3](#); [30:6](#); [30:9](#); [32:8](#); [33:5](#)

## Order of Events

### Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

This page answers the question: *Why are some events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Writing Styles \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Verbs \(UTA PDF\)](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

### Examples From the Bible

He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

### Translation Strategies

- (1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
- (2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of [Verbs](#).)
- (3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See [Verse Bridges](#).)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.



20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

20 But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_events](https://ufw.io/figs_events).

<p>Next we recommend you learn about:</p> <p><i>Background Information (UTA PDF)</i></p> <p><i>Connecting Words and Phrases (UTA PDF)</i></p> <p><i>Introduction of a New Event (UTA PDF)</i></p> <p><i>Verse Bridges (UTA PDF)</i></p>
---

Referenced in: 32:14

## Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and delivers the lesson in a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

### Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often use figures of speech such as [simile](#) and [metaphor](#).

Then he also told them a parable. "A blind man is not able to guide a blind man, is he? Would not both fall into a pit?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

### Examples From the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket but, rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

>

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

### Translation Strategies

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the **lampstand**?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on **a high shelf?**"

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **sowed** in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

**Jesus also said to them,** "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

**Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly.** Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them.** He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the kingdom of God grows.** He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

"

**Referenced in:** [27:4](#); [29:1](#); [33:2](#); [34:1](#); [34:3](#); [34:6](#); [35:2](#); [50:5](#)

## Possession

### Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “of,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
  - The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
  - A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
  - The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
  - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head — the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

### Examples From the Bible

**Ownership** — In the example below, the son owned the money.

▮ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Parts of Speech \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Sentence Structure \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Social Relationship** — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

**Association** — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

**Material** — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

**Contents** — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

**Part of a whole** — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

**Part of a group** — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

## Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

**Object** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

**Instrument** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

**Representation** — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

## Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

## Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.

or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

|| You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you.**

"

**Referenced in:** [7:3](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [9:1](#); [17:2](#); [17:5](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [18:5](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [19:6](#); [50:8](#)

## Pronouns

### Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are “I,” “you,” “he,” “it,” “this,” “that,” “himself,” “someone,” and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech (UTA PDF)*

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

#### Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
  - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

#### Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
  - [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

#### Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

### Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.



**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

”

**Referenced in:** [1:9](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:7](#); [12:5](#); [28:4](#); [29:9](#); [30:5](#); [39:4](#); [45:8](#); [47:7](#)

## Proverbs

### Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Parallelism \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Writing Styles \(UTA PDF\)](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

### Examples From the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,  
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,  
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

### Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

- (1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
- (2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them

with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches,  
and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches,  
and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you?

I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like **snow in summer** or rain in harvest,  
so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain  
in the harvest season;

And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow,  
for you do not know what a day may bring. (Proverbs 27:1a ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

There is a generation that curses their father  
and does not bless their mother.

There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,

and yet they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous,  
and they do not turn away from their sin.

"

**Referenced in:** [26:5](#)

## Quotes within Quotes

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Direct and Indirect Quotations (UTA PDF)*

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.

Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples From the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I, however, was indeed born a citizen.” (Acts 22:28b ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

#### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, “... I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

#### A quotation with four layers

They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’**” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

## Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar.**" (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, '**Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?**' But when Paul said, '**I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,**' I told the guard, '**Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.**'"

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, 'Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal

Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quote Markings \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [9:14](#); [10:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:4](#); [25:5](#); [25:7](#); [27:10](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:5](#); [29:6](#); [29:8](#); [32:15](#); [34:7](#); [34:8](#); [34:9](#); [35:3](#); [35:6](#); [35:8](#); [35:9](#); [41:6](#); [43:5](#); [43:7](#); [50:6](#)

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Figures of Speech \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Sentence Types \(UTA PDF\)](#)

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)



Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

"

**Referenced in:** 2:2; 2:7; 2:8; 12:4; 14:7; 16:7; 19:6; 26:4; 28:1; 28:7; 30:5; 31:7; 32:6; 37:8; 38:14; 39:10; 40:4; 42:6; 46:2

## Simile

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech (UTA PDF)*

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

### Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [24:8](#); [27:2](#); [28:2](#); [29:2](#); [30:3](#); [34:1](#); [34:3](#); [34:4](#); [34:5](#); [36:2](#); [41:4](#); [50:10](#)

## Symbolic Action

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

- And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
  - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
- Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
  - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

- And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
  - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
- Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
  - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

- And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.
- Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
  - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

"

**Referenced in:** [23:10](#); [24:1](#); [25:6](#); [29:4](#); [29:6](#); [32:5](#); [34:9](#); [35:9](#); [37:6](#); [39:4](#); [39:5](#); [39:12](#); [41:8](#); [42:11](#); [45:4](#); [45:5](#); [46:5](#); [46:10](#); [50:10](#); [50:14](#)

## Symbolic Language

### Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

█ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

### Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

### Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

### Examples From the Bible

█ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

█ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

█ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven stars** in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven



golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, <sup>1</sup> terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; <sup>2</sup> it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. <sup>3</sup>

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

"

Referenced in: [38:4](#); [38:5](#)

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ “**My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

■ I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

[Metonymy \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies \(UTA PDF\)](#)

"

**Referenced in:** [10:4](#); [13:11](#); [25:2](#); [25:3](#); [46:7](#)

## Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Sentence Structure \(UTA PDF\)](#)

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a **medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) —  
 People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[How to Translate Names \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [7:8](#); [9:6](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:10](#); [13:10](#); [13:14](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:11](#); [15:2](#); [15:9](#); [17:5](#); [21:9](#); [21:11](#); [23:1](#); [34:1](#); [41:2](#); [41:4](#); [47:3](#); [50:7](#)

## Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son.**” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

**I love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

**No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, {God the Father} has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Create Faithful Translations* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Son of God and God the Father* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."

(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

"

**Referenced in:** 22:4; 22:5; 24:8; 24:9; 25:2; 25:4; 26:9; 29:9; 31:8; 32:6; 36:5; 37:5; 37:9; 38:12; 38:15; 39:3; 39:4; 40:2; 40:5; 40:7; 40:8; 42:10; 42:11; 43:8; 46:6; 49:1; 49:3





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 40**

# Aaron

## Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 7:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 1:5
- Numbers 16:45

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:5** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:9** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:7** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0175, G00020

"

**Referenced in:** [9:15](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [11:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [14:7](#)

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

"

**Referenced in:** [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [7:10](#); [8:15](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [14:2](#); [14:12](#); [19:10](#); [21:2](#); [45:3](#); [48:7](#); [48:8](#)

## Adam

### Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: death, [descendant](#), [Eve](#), [image of God](#), life)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

"

**Referenced in:** [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [2:1](#); [2:7](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [21:1](#); [48:1](#); [48:2](#); [48:3](#); [49:8](#); [50:16](#)

## adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

### Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), sleep with, [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 4:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 5:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 2:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:6** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:2** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:7** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

”

Referenced in: [13:6](#); [28:2](#); [34:7](#)

# Ahab

## Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:6
- 2 Kings 9:8

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:3** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0256

"

Referenced in: [19:2](#); [19:3](#); [19:5](#); [19:13](#)

## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

"

Referenced in: [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [5:8](#); [13:9](#); [16:6](#); [16:7](#); [19:9](#); [19:11](#)

## Amorite

### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

### Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567

"

Referenced in: [15:7](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:10](#)



## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

"

**Referenced in:** [16:5](#); [22:1](#); [22:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:7](#); [23:1](#); [23:2](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [25:4](#); [25:8](#); [38:12](#); [38:15](#); [41:4](#); [41:5](#); [41:6](#); [45:7](#); [50:9](#); [50:10](#)

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

”

Referenced in: [26:10](#); [30:1](#); [38:2](#); [43:13](#); [46:8](#)

## Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

”

Referenced in: [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [20:6](#)

## Baal

### Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), [prostitute](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- Jeremiah 2:7-8
- Judges 2:11
- Numbers 22:41

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- **19:7** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.”
- **19:8** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal!**”
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1120, G08960

”

Referenced in: [19:2](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [19:12](#)

## Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word "Babylon" refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the "king of Babylon" ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called "Chaldea" and the people living there were the "Chaldeans." As a result, the term "Chaldea" was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

"

Referenced in: [20:6](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [20:9](#); [20:11](#)

## baptize, baptized, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:38
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 9:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:3** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:7** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:5** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G09070

”

**Referenced in:** [24:3](#); [24:6](#); [24:7](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [25:1](#); [36:1](#); [42:10](#); [43:11](#); [43:12](#); [45:11](#); [45:12](#); [46:5](#); [47:2](#); [47:12](#); [49:14](#)



## Barnabas

### Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Cyprus](#), [good news](#), [Levite](#), [Paul](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:36
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 13:3
- Acts 15:33
- Colossians 4:10-11
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:8** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.
- **46:9** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do." So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09210

"

Referenced in: [46:8](#); [46:9](#); [46:10](#)

## Bathsheba

### Facts:

Bathsheba was the wife of Uriah, a soldier in King David's army. After Uriah's death, she became the wife of David, and the mother of Solomon.

- David committed adultery with Bathsheba while she was married to Uriah.
- When Bathsheba became pregnant with David's child, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle.
- David then married Bathsheba and she gave birth to their child.
- God punished David for his sin by causing the child to die several days after he was born.
- Later, Bathsheba gave birth to another son, Solomon, who grew up to become king after David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:4-5
- 1 Kings 1:11
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- Psalm 51:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:10** One day, when all of David's soldiers were away from home fighting battles, he got up from an afternoon nap and saw a beautiful woman bathing. Her name was **Bathsheba**.
- **17:11** A short time later **Bathsheba** sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.
- **17:12** **Bathsheba's** husband, a man named Uriah, was one of David's best soldiers.
- **17:13** After Uriah was killed, David married **Bathsheba**.
- **17:14** Later, David and **Bathsheba** had another son, and they named him Solomon.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1339

"

Referenced in: [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#)

## beg, beggar, needy

### Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 6:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 45:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:4** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:8** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.’”
- **32:7** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0034, H7592, G01540, G18710, G43190, G44340

”

**Referenced in:** [10:4](#); [29:8](#); [32:7](#); [32:10](#); [35:11](#); [35:12](#); [35:13](#); [44:1](#)

## believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

#### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

#### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

"

**Referenced in:** 4:8; 11:1; 11:2; 11:6; 12:1; 12:12; 15:1; 20:5; 22:3; 22:5; 37:3; 37:4; 37:5; 37:8; 37:9; 37:10; 40:5; 40:6; 42:1; 43:12; 44:6; 45:1; 46:1; 46:10; 47:2; 47:11; 47:12; 48:5; 48:7; 48:10; 48:11; 49:9; 49:12; 49:13; 49:14; 49:15; 50:13; 50:14

## Bethlehem, Ephrathah

### Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), [Micah](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 7:42
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 2:16
- Ruth 1:2
- Ruth 1:21

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:4** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:6** “The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0376, H0672, H1035, G09650

”

Referenced in: [17:2](#); [21:9](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#); [23:6](#); [23:9](#)

## betray, betrayer

### Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- John 6:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:4
- Matthew 26:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:6** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” \* \* **38:6** Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:8** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7411, G38600, G42730

”

Referenced in: [38:2](#); [38:3](#); [38:6](#); [38:13](#); [38:14](#); [39:8](#)



## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

"

**Referenced in:** [1:7](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [4:4](#); [4:7](#); [5:10](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:14](#); [9:3](#); [17:5](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [17:9](#); [21:2](#); [48:7](#)

## Caleb

### Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hebron](#), [Joshua](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:13
- Joshua 14:6-7
- Judges 1:12
- Numbers 32:10-12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately **Caleb** and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!"
- **14:8** "Except for Joshua and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."  
so that they could live at peace in that land.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3612, H3614

"

Referenced in: [14:6](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#)

## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ham](#), [Promised Land](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

"

**Referenced in:** [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:9](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [7:8](#); [7:10](#); [8:10](#); [9:13](#); [14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:9](#); [14:10](#); [15:1](#); [15:5](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:11](#); [16:1](#); [20:5](#)

## chariot, charioteers

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

"

Referenced in: [12:10](#); [45:7](#); [45:8](#); [45:11](#)

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

"

**Referenced in:** 17:7; 17:8; 19:18; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:8; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 22:2; 23:6; 24:5; 26:4; 37:5; 38:2; 39:3; 42:1; 42:3; 42:7; 43:9; 44:5; 44:8; 45:3; 46:6; 48:4; 48:13; 49:14; 50:1; 50:8

# Christian

## Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name “Christian” which means “follower of Christ.”

- It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus’ followers were first called “Christians.”
- A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
- In our modern times, often the term “Christian” is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of “Christian” in the Bible.
- Because the term “Christian” in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a “believer.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “Christ-follower” or “follower of Christ” or perhaps something like, “Christ-person.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
- Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Christ](#), [church](#), [disciple](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:7-8
- 1 Peter 4:16
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 26:28

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:9** It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “**Christians**.”
- **47:14** Paul and other **Christian** leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **49:15** If you believe in Jesus and what he has done for you, you are a **Christian**!
- **49:16** If you are a **Christian**, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did.
- **49:17** Even though you are a **Christian**, you will still be tempted to sin.
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told **Christians** to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.
- **50:11** When Jesus returns, every **Christian** who has died will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G55460

”

Referenced in: [46:9](#)



## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes “church” refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the “church at Ephesus.”

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were “called out” of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G15770

"

**Referenced in:** [43:12](#); [46:9](#); [46:10](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [50:1](#)

## circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48

- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

"

Referenced in: [5:3](#); [5:5](#)

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

"

**Referenced in:** 4:9; 5:3; 5:4; 6:4; 7:10; 8:15; 13:2; 13:4; 14:1; 15:13; 20:1; 21:5; 48:11

## cross

### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:17
- Colossians 2:15
- Galatians 6:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 9:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:2** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G47160

"

Referenced in: [40:1](#); [40:2](#); [40:5](#); [40:6](#); [49:10](#); [49:12](#); [49:14](#)

## crucify, crucified

### Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: [cross](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:9** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

"

Referenced in: [39:11](#); [39:12](#); [40:1](#); [40:4](#); [41:1](#); [43:6](#); [43:9](#); [44:8](#)



## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **2:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **4:4** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

"

**Referenced in:** [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [4:4](#); [39:7](#); [50:16](#)

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

"

**Referenced in:** 17:2; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:12; 17:13; 17:14; 18:1; 18:2; 18:13; 21:4; 21:8; 23:4; 48:13; 48:14

## deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

"

Referenced in: [16:3](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#)

## demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

### Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), [false god](#), [false god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- James 2:19
- James 3:15
- Luke 4:36
- Mark 3:22
- Matthew 4:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:9** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:8** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:5** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G01690, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G41900, G41510, G41520, G41890

"

Referenced in: [26:9](#); [32:5](#); [32:7](#); [32:8](#); [32:9](#); [47:3](#); [47:5](#); [49:2](#)

## demon-possessed

### Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 1:32
- Matthew 4:24
- Matthew 8:16
- Matthew 8:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:9** Many people who had **demons in them** were brought to Jesus.
- **32:2** When they reached the other side of the lake, a **demon-possessed** man came running up to Jesus.
- **32:6** The man **with the demon** cried out in a loud voice, "What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!"
- **32:9** The people from the town came and saw the man who used to **have the demons**.
- **47:3** Every day as they (Paul and Silas) walked there, a slave girl **possessed by a demon** followed them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G11390

"

Referenced in: [32:2](#); [32:3](#); [47:3](#)

## descend, descendant

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), ancestor, [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

”

**Referenced in:** [2:9](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [5:3](#); [5:10](#); [6:4](#); [8:15](#); [9:1](#); [13:9](#); [14:2](#); [17:7](#); [18:13](#); [20:4](#); [21:1](#); [21:4](#); [48:4](#); [48:7](#); [48:13](#); [49:8](#)



## disciple

### Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 11:3
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:8** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3928, G31000, G31010, G31020

"

**Referenced in:** 28:6; 28:7; 28:8; 30:2; 30:4; 30:5; 30:6; 30:8; 30:9; 31:1; 31:2; 31:3; 31:4; 31:8; 32:1; 32:15; 32:16; 33:6; 36:1; 36:5; 36:7; 37:2; 37:3; 38:1; 38:2; 38:4; 38:6; 38:8; 38:10; 38:11; 38:13; 38:15; 41:1; 41:6; 41:7; 41:8; 42:1; 42:5; 42:6; 42:8; 42:9; 42:10; 42:11; 43:1; 43:5; 43:10; 43:12; 46:4; 50:2; 50:3; 50:5; 50:8

## dream

### Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **8:7** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:1** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

"

Referenced in: [8:2](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [16:11](#); [23:1](#)

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [patriarchs](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt!**
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

”

**Referenced in:** [8:4](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [8:14](#); [9:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:3](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [10:2](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:6](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [12:1](#); [12:4](#); [12:6](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [13:4](#); [14:7](#); [38:1](#); [48:9](#)

## Elijah

### Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:3-4
- James 5:16-18
- John 1:19-21
- John 1:24-25
- Mark 9:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:2 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:3** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:4** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:7** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:3** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0452, G22430

"

**Referenced in:** [19:2](#); [19:3](#); [19:4](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [19:10](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [26:5](#); [36:3](#); [36:4](#)

## Esau

### Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Edom](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Rebekah](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:5
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 9:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:7** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **7:2** So *Esau* gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **7:4** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **7:5** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **7:10** But *Esau* had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G22690

"

Referenced in: [6:7](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#)

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

"

Referenced in: [27:1](#); [28:1](#); [28:10](#)



## Eve

### Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means “life” or “living.”

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam’s “helper.” She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), life, [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:3
- Genesis 3:20
- Genesis 4:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:13** Then God took one of Adam’s ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- **2:2** But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”
- **2:11** The man named his wife **Eve**, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people.
- **21:1** God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake’s head.
- **48:2** Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- **49:8** When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2332, G20960

”

**Referenced in:** [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [21:1](#); [48:1](#); [48:2](#); [48:3](#); [48:4](#); [49:8](#); [50:16](#)

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

"

**Referenced in:** [1:11](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [4:2](#); [8:12](#); [14:2](#); [17:13](#); [18:11](#); [18:13](#); [19:2](#); [19:16](#); [29:8](#); [45:2](#); [50:9](#); [50:17](#)

## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

”

Referenced in: [9:12](#); [16:9](#); [17:2](#); [30:3](#); [38:8](#)

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

"

**Referenced in:** [5:6](#); [31:7](#); [38:9](#)

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

"

**Referenced in:** [8:5](#); [14:12](#); [15:13](#); [17:9](#); [17:14](#); [50:4](#)



## fast, fasting

### Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: [Jewish leaders](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 3:4-5
- Luke 5:34
- Mark 2:19
- Matthew 6:18
- Matthew 9:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

”

Referenced in: [25:1](#); [34:8](#); [46:10](#)

## **forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

## Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

"

**Referenced in:** [13:15](#); [17:13](#); [21:5](#); [22:7](#); [29:1](#); [29:8](#); [29:9](#); [38:5](#); [38:12](#); [40:2](#); [42:8](#); [43:11](#); [49:7](#); [49:11](#); [49:16](#); [49:17](#)

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

”

Referenced in: [21:2](#); [24:4](#); [40:3](#)

## Galilee, Galilean

### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Samaria](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 2:1-2
- John 4:3
- Luke 13:3
- Mark 3:7
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:13-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:6** Finally, the people said, "We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**."
- **41:6** Then the angel told the women, "Go and tell the disciples, 'Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1551, G10560, G10570

"

Referenced in: [21:10](#); [26:1](#); [26:8](#); [39:6](#); [41:6](#); [41:8](#)

## Gibeon, Gibeonite

### Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: [Gilgal](#), [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:29
- 1 Kings 3:4-5
- 2 Samuel 2:12-13
- Joshua 9:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:8** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

"

Referenced in: [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#)

## Gideon

### Facts:

Gideon was an Israelite man whom God raised up to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

- During the time when Gideon lived, a people group called the Midianites kept attacking the Israelites and destroying their crops.
- Even though Gideon was afraid, God used him to lead the Israelites to fight against the Midianites and defeat them.
- Gideon also obeyed God by taking down altars to the false gods Baal and Asherah.
- He not only led the people in defeating their enemies but also encouraged them to obey and worship Yahweh, the one true God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Asherah](#), [deliver](#), [Midian](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 6:11
- Judges 6:23
- Judges 8:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:5** The angel of Yahweh came to **Gideon** and said, “God is with you, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites.”
- **16:6** **Gideon's** father had an altar dedicated to an idol. God told **Gideon** to tear down that altar.
- **16:8** There were so many of them (Midianites) that they could not be counted. **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them.
- **16:8** **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them. **Gideon** asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **16:10** 32,000 Israelite soldiers came to **Gideon**, but God told him this was too many.
- **16:12** Then **Gideon** returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a horn, a clay pot, and a torch.
- **16:15** The people wanted to make **Gideon** their king.
- **16:16** Then **Gideon** used the gold to make a special garment like the high priest used to wear. But the people started worshiping it as if it were an idol.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1439, H1441

"

**Referenced in:** [16:5](#); [16:6](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#)

## God

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12



- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

"

**Referenced in:** 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:15; 1:16; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:9; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 6:2; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 7:7; 7:10; 8:4; 8:5; 8:7; 8:12; 8:15; 9:3; 9:12; 9:13; 9:14; 9:15; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:5; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:10; 10:11; 10:12; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 12:1; 12:2; 12:3; 12:5; 12:7; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:7; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 14:1; 14:2; 14:3; 14:6; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 15:1; 15:2; 15:3; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:9; 15:10; 15:12; 15:13; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:4; 16:5; 16:6; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:14; 16:16; 16:17; 16:18; 17:1; 17:2; 17:3; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:13; 17:14; 18:1; 18:2; 18:3; 18:4; 18:9; 18:13; 19:1; 19:3; 19:4; 19:5; 19:6; 19:7; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:13; 19:14; 19:15; 19:16; 19:17; 19:18; 20:1; 20:2; 20:5; 20:6; 20:9; 20:10; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 22:1; 22:3; 22:5; 22:6; 22:7; 23:7; 23:8; 24:6; 24:9; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:7; 26:3; 26:5; 26:9; 27:2; 27:3; 28:1; 28:8; 30:7; 32:6; 32:11; 34:7; 34:9; 34:10; 35:8; 37:1; 37:4; 37:8; 38:1; 38:12; 39:4; 39:7; 39:10; 40:4; 40:7; 40:8; 40:9; 42:4; 42:11; 43:4; 43:6; 43:7; 43:9; 43:11; 43:13; 44:3; 44:5; 44:8; 45:2; 45:3; 45:7; 46:4; 47:1; 47:2; 47:4; 47:8; 47:9; 48:1; 48:2; 48:3; 48:4; 48:5; 48:6; 48:7; 48:8; 48:9; 48:10; 48:11; 48:12; 48:13; 49:2; 49:4; 49:7; 49:8; 49:9; 49:10; 49:11; 49:12; 49:13; 49:14; 49:15; 49:16; 49:17; 49:18; 50:2; 50:9; 50:13; 50:14; 50:15; 50:16

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ancestor, [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

## Word Data:

• Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

"

**Referenced in:** [24:9](#); [29:9](#); [37:9](#); [38:12](#); [38:15](#); [40:2](#); [40:7](#); [42:10](#); [42:11](#); [43:8](#); [50:10](#)

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [demon](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

"

**Referenced in:** [10:2](#); [12:3](#); [13:4](#); [14:2](#); [16:1](#); [16:7](#); [18:3](#); [18:13](#); [19:2](#); [20:5](#)

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news/message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"
- **26:3** Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor."
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

"

**Referenced in:** [26:3](#); [45:10](#); [46:10](#); [47:1](#); [47:11](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [49:6](#); [50:1](#); [50:2](#); [50:3](#)

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

"

**Referenced in:** 1:2; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:11; 1:12; 1:15; 2:3; 2:4; 8:12; 18:13; 28:1; 33:5; 36:4; 50:5; 50:6; 50:8

## grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), death)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

”

Referenced in: [32:4](#); [37:6](#); [37:7](#); [41:1](#); [41:2](#); [41:3](#); [41:4](#); [41:5](#)

## guilt, guilty

### Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
- Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 6:7
- James 2:10-11
- John 19:4
- Jonah 1:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, "I find no **guilt** in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" Pilate replied, "He is not **guilty**." But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, "He is not **guilty**!"
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Don't you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent."
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0818, H5352, H5355, H7563, G03380, G17770, G37840, G52670

"

Referenced in: [19:16](#); [39:2](#); [39:11](#); [40:4](#)

# Hagar

## Facts:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [Ishmael](#), [Sarah](#), [servant](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:9
- Genesis 25:12

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, **Hagar**. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:2 Hagar** had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1904

"

**Referenced in:** [5:1](#); [5:2](#)

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

"

**Referenced in:** [4:2](#); [4:7](#); [23:7](#); [24:8](#); [28:4](#); [30:7](#); [34:9](#); [34:10](#); [37:9](#); [39:4](#); [41:4](#); [42:10](#); [42:11](#); [43:1](#); [43:2](#); [50:3](#); [50:16](#)

## hell, lake of fire

### Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), death, [Hades](#), [abyss](#))

### Bible References:

- James 3:6
- Luke 12:5
- Mark 9:42-44
- Matthew 5:21-22
- Matthew 5:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860, G04390, G04400, G10670, G30410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G50200, G53940, G54570

"

Referenced in: [50:14](#); [50:15](#)

## high priest, chief priests

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:27
- Acts 7:1
- Acts 9:1
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 3:2
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:8** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:7** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:1** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:3** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.



- **45:2** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:1** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G07480, G07490

"

**Referenced in:** [13:8](#); [16:16](#); [21:7](#); [38:3](#); [38:15](#); [39:1](#); [39:3](#); [39:4](#); [39:5](#); [44:7](#); [45:2](#); [45:3](#); [46:1](#); [48:6](#)

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

"

**Referenced in:** [1:1](#); [22:2](#); [22:5](#); [23:2](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [25:1](#); [26:1](#); [26:3](#); [42:10](#); [42:11](#); [43:3](#); [43:5](#); [43:8](#); [43:11](#); [45:1](#); [45:3](#); [45:7](#); [45:12](#); [46:5](#); [46:10](#)

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), [sanctify](#), set apart)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

"

Referenced in: [1:16](#); [9:12](#); [13:2](#); [13:5](#); [22:5](#); [50:2](#)

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

”

Referenced in: [17:2](#)

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#), [possess](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

"

**Referenced in:** [27:1](#); [35:3](#)



## innocent

### Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

”

Referenced in: [8:6](#); [40:4](#); [40:8](#); [40:9](#)

## Isaac

### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G24640

”

**Referenced in:** [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [6:1](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [7:1](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:6](#); [7:10](#); [8:15](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [14:2](#); [14:12](#); [19:10](#); [48:8](#)

# Isaiah

## Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Christ](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [Uzziah](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 1:1
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 1:1
- Mark 7:6
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 4:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:2** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:8** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G22680

"

**Referenced in:** [21:9](#); [21:10](#); [21:11](#); [21:12](#); [26:2](#); [45:8](#); [45:9](#); [45:10](#)

## Ishmael, Ishmaelite

### Facts:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There were several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

- The name "Ishmael" means "God hears."
- God promised to bless Abraham's son Ishmael, but he was not the son with whom God had promised to establish his covenant.
- God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
- While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
- Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
- There were also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [covenant](#), [desert](#), [Egypt](#), [Hagar](#), [Isaac](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Paran](#), [Sarah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 23:1
- Genesis 16:12
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 37:25-26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:2** So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**.
- **5:4** "I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3458, H3459

"

Referenced in: [5:2](#); [5:4](#)

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

"

**Referenced in:** 8:15; 9:1; 9:2; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:7; 9:8; 9:13; 10:1; 10:3; 10:4; 10:5; 10:6; 10:7; 10:9; 10:11; 10:12; 11:1; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5; 11:8; 12:1; 12:3; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:8; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 13:1; 13:2; 13:8; 13:15; 14:1; 14:3; 14:4; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:14; 14:15; 15:1; 15:2; 15:4; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:11; 15:12; 15:13; 16:1; 16:2; 16:4; 16:5; 16:8; 16:9; 16:14; 16:16; 16:17; 17:1; 17:2; 17:3; 17:5; 17:6; 17:8; 18:4; 18:5; 18:8; 18:11; 19:1; 19:10; 20:3; 20:4; 20:11; 21:5; 21:7; 26:5; 26:6; 43:6; 48:9; 48:11; 48:14

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Leah](#), [Rachel](#), [Zilpah](#), [Bilhah](#), [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Rebekah](#), [Laban](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

"

**Referenced in:** [6:7](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [8:15](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [14:2](#); [14:12](#); [19:10](#)



# Jeremiah

## Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [rebel](#), [suffer](#), [well](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 1:2
- Jeremiah 11:1
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:5** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G24080

"

Referenced in: [19:17](#); [21:5](#)

# Jericho

## Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [Salt Sea](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

"

**Referenced in:** [15:1](#); [15:3](#); [15:5](#); [27:4](#); [27:5](#)

## Jeroboam

### Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Kings 3:1-3
- Amos 1:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:9 Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

"

Referenced in: [18:8](#); [18:9](#)

# Jerusalem

## Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

"

**Referenced in:** [17:5](#); [18:2](#); [20:7](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [27:4](#); [27:5](#); [36:3](#); [38:1](#); [38:2](#); [38:4](#); [42:2](#); [42:5](#); [42:8](#); [42:11](#); [43:1](#); [43:2](#); [43:4](#); [43:12](#); [45:6](#); [45:7](#); [46:1](#); [46:8](#); [46:9](#)

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

"

**Referenced in:** 22:4; 23:2; 23:5; 23:8; 23:9; 23:10; 24:6; 24:7; 24:8; 24:9; 25:1; 25:2; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:6; 25:7; 25:8; 26:1; 26:2; 26:4; 26:5; 26:6; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:10; 27:1; 27:2; 27:3; 27:4; 27:5; 28:1; 28:2; 28:3; 28:4; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:9; 28:10; 29:1; 29:9; 30:1; 30:2; 30:3; 30:4; 30:5; 30:6; 30:7; 30:8; 31:1; 31:3; 31:4; 31:5; 31:6; 31:7; 31:8; 32:1; 32:5; 32:6; 32:7; 32:9; 32:10; 32:11; 32:12; 32:13; 32:14; 32:15; 32:16; 33:1; 33:2; 33:3; 33:4; 33:6; 34:1; 34:2; 34:3; 34:6; 35:1; 35:2; 36:1; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:6; 36:7; 37:1; 37:2; 37:3; 37:4; 37:5; 37:6; 37:7; 37:8; 37:9; 37:10; 37:11; 38:1; 38:2; 38:3; 38:4; 38:5; 38:6; 38:8; 38:9; 38:10; 38:11; 38:12; 38:13; 38:14; 38:15; 39:1; 39:2; 39:3; 39:4; 39:5; 39:6; 39:7; 39:8; 39:9; 39:10; 39:11; 39:12; 40:1; 40:2; 40:3; 40:4; 40:5; 40:6; 40:7; 40:8; 40:9; 41:1; 41:3; 41:5; 41:6; 41:8; 42:1; 42:2; 42:3; 42:4; 42:5; 42:6; 42:7; 42:9; 42:10; 42:11; 43:1; 43:2; 43:6; 43:7; 43:8; 43:9; 43:11; 43:12; 44:2; 44:4; 44:5; 44:8; 44:9; 45:1; 45:2; 45:3; 45:5; 45:6; 45:7; 45:10; 45:12; 45:13; 46:1; 46:5; 46:6; 46:7; 46:9; 46:10; 47:1; 47:2; 47:5; 47:11; 47:12; 47:13; 47:14; 48:4; 48:5; 48:6; 48:7; 48:8; 48:10; 48:12; 48:13; 48:14; 49:1; 49:2; 49:3; 49:5; 49:6; 49:7; 49:8; 49:9; 49:10; 49:11; 49:12; 49:13; 49:14; 49:15; 49:16; 49:17; 50:1; 50:2; 50:3; 50:4; 50:5; 50:8; 50:11; 50:12; 50:13; 50:14; 50:15; 50:17

## Jew, Jewish

### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Jewish leaders](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

"

**Referenced in:** [20:11](#); [20:12](#); [26:6](#); [27:4](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:7](#); [27:8](#); [37:10](#); [37:11](#); [38:1](#); [43:2](#); [45:2](#); [46:6](#); [46:7](#); [46:9](#)



## Jewish authorities, Jewish leader

### Facts:

The term “Jewish leader” or “Jewish authority” refers to religious leaders such as the priests and teachers of God’s laws. They also had the authority to make judgments about non-religious matters as well.

- The Jewish leaders were the high priests, chief priests, and scribes (teachers of God’s laws).
- Two main groups of Jewish leaders were the Pharisees and Saducees.
- Seventy Jewish leaders met together in the Jewish Council in Jerusalem to make judgments about matters of law.
- Many Jewish leaders were proud and thought they were righteous. They were jealous of Jesus and wanted to harm him. They claimed to know God but did not obey him.
- Often the phrase “the Jews” referred to the Jewish leaders, especially in contexts where they were angry at Jesus and were trying to trick or harm him.
- These terms could also be translated as “Jewish rulers” or “men who ruled over the Jewish people” or “Jewish religious leaders.”

(See also: [Jew](#), [council](#), [high priest](#), [Pharisee](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 16:22-23
- John 2:19
- John 5:10-11
- John 5:16
- Luke 19:47-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:3** Many **religious leaders** also came to be baptized by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **37:11** But the **religious leaders of the Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the **Jewish leaders** denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **38:3** The **Jewish leaders**, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:5** The **Jewish leaders** all answered the high priest, “He (Jesus) deserves to die!”
- **39:9** Early the next morning, the **Jewish leaders** brought Jesus to Pilate, the Roman governor.
- **39:11** But the **Jewish leaders** and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!”
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two **Jewish leaders** who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body.
- **44:7** The next day, the **Jewish leaders** brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other **religious leaders**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G24530

”

**Referenced in:** [24:3](#); [24:4](#); [34:6](#); [34:7](#); [34:9](#); [34:10](#); [35:2](#); [37:11](#); [38:2](#); [38:3](#); [38:7](#); [38:14](#); [39:2](#); [39:4](#); [39:5](#); [39:8](#); [39:9](#); [39:11](#); [40:5](#); [40:6](#); [41:1](#); [44:7](#); [44:9](#); [45:2](#); [45:4](#)

## John (the apostle)

### Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Zebedee](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 2:9-10
- John 1:19-21
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Revelation 1:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.
- **44:6** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"
- **44:9** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24910

"

Referenced in: [36:1](#); [44:1](#); [44:6](#); [44:7](#); [44:9](#)

## John (the Baptist)

### Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since "John" was a common name, he is often called "John the Baptist" to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called "John the Baptist" because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [baptize](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:11-13
- Luke 1:62-63
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 3:15-16
- Luke 7:27-28
- Matthew 3:13
- Matthew 11:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:2** The angel said to Zechariah, "Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!"
- **22:7** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:1** **John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, "Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09100 G24910

"

Referenced in: [22:2](#); [22:7](#); [24:1](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [24:7](#); [24:9](#)

## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

"

Referenced in: [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [19:14](#); [19:15](#)

## Joseph (NT)

### Facts:

Joseph was Jesus' earthly father and raised him as his son. He was a righteous man who worked as a carpenter.

- Joseph became engaged to a Jewish girl named Mary, while they were engaged God chose her to become the mother of Jesus the Messiah.
- An angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit had miraculously caused Mary to be pregnant, and that Mary's baby was the Son of God.
- After Jesus was born, an angel warned Joseph to take the baby and Mary to Egypt in order to escape from Herod.
- Joseph and his family later lived in the city of Nazareth of Galilee, where he earned a living doing carpentry work.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Jesus](#), [Nazareth](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

### Bible References:

- John 1:43-45
- Luke 1:26-29
- Luke 2:4-5
- Luke 2:15-16
- Matthew 1:18-19
- Matthew 1:24-25
- Matthew 2:19-21
- Matthew 13:54-56

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named **Joseph**.
- **23:1 Joseph**, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, he knew it was not his baby. He did not want to shame her, so he planned to quietly divorce her.
- **23:2** The angel said, "**Joseph**, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **23:3** So **Joseph** married Mary and took her home as his wife, but he did not sleep with her until she had given birth.
- **23:4 Joseph** and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:4** Jesus said, "The words I just read to you are happening right now." All the people were amazed. "Isn't this the son of **Joseph**?" they said.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G25010

"

Referenced in: [22:4](#); [23:1](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:4](#); [26:4](#)

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Ephraim](#), [Manasseh](#), [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

"

Referenced in: [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [9:1](#); [9:2](#)

## Joshua

### Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

"

Referenced in: [14:6](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#); [15:11](#); [15:13](#); [16:1](#)

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7



- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

"

Referenced in: [33:7](#); [33:8](#); [33:9](#); [34:4](#); [41:7](#); [47:12](#)

## Judah, kingdom of Judah

### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:8
- Hosea 5:14
- Jeremiah 7:33
- Judges 1:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:7** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **18:13** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **20:1** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **20:5** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4438, H3063

"

Referenced in: [18:7](#); [18:9](#); [18:13](#); [20:1](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [20:9](#)

## Judas Iscariot

### Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- One of the other apostles of Jesus was Judas son of James. He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.
- One of Jesus' brothers was named Judas. He was later known as "Jude." He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Judas the son of James](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 6:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 3:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:2** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14** **Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:8** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24550, G24690

"

Referenced in: [38:2](#); [38:3](#); [38:6](#); [38:7](#); [38:14](#); [39:8](#)

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

"

Referenced in: [19:16](#); [50:14](#)

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

"

Referenced in: [17:9](#); [18:13](#); [19:16](#); [48:14](#); [50:17](#)

## King of the Jews

### Definition:

The term "King of the Jews" is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus "King of the Jews." This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus' cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as "king over the Jews" or "king who rules over the Jews" or "supreme ruler of the Jews."
- Check to see how the phrase "king of" is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: [descendant](#), [Jew](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [wise men](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 23:3
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:9** Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky. They realized it meant a new **king of the Jews** was born.
- **39:9** Pilate asked Jesus, "Are you the **King of the Jews**?"
- **39:12** The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the **King of the Jews**!"
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "**King of the Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09350, G24530

"

Referenced in: [23:9](#); [39:9](#); [39:12](#); [40:2](#)



## king, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

”

**Referenced in:** [8:6](#); [15:7](#); [16:1](#); [16:15](#); [16:18](#); [17:1](#); [17:2](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [17:7](#); [18:5](#); [18:8](#); [18:11](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [19:2](#); [19:13](#); [19:17](#); [20:6](#); [20:8](#); [20:11](#); [21:6](#); [21:8](#); [29:2](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:7](#); [29:8](#); [48:14](#)

# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

"

**Referenced in:** [13:2](#); [18:4](#); [18:8](#); [18:10](#); [18:11](#); [25:6](#); [49:15](#); [50:15](#)

## kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God!** Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God.**”
- **29:2** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”

- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

"

**Referenced in:** [24:2](#); [28:6](#); [29:2](#); [34:1](#); [34:2](#); [34:3](#); [34:4](#); [34:5](#); [39:10](#); [40:4](#); [42:9](#); [48:14](#); [49:5](#); [49:6](#); [49:15](#); [50:2](#); [50:8](#); [50:10](#); [50:17](#)

## kingdom of Israel

### Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:18
- Jeremiah 5:11
- Jeremiah 9:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **18:11** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **20:1** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **20:2** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H4410, H4467, H4468

"

Referenced in: [18:8](#); [18:12](#); [19:2](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#)

## **lamb, Lamb of God**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

"

**Referenced in:** [5:7](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:5](#); [12:14](#); [24:6](#); [45:8](#); [48:8](#); [48:9](#); [48:10](#)



## law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

"

**Referenced in:** [13:7](#); [13:9](#); [15:13](#); [16:1](#); [27:1](#); [28:1](#); [28:3](#)

## Lazarus

### Facts:

Lazarus and his sisters, Mary and Martha, were special friends of Jesus. Jesus often stayed with them in their home in Bethany.

- Lazarus is best known for the fact that Jesus raised him from the dead after he had been buried in a tomb for several days.
- The Jewish leaders were angry at Jesus and jealous that he had done this miracle, and they tried to find a way to kill both Jesus and Lazarus.
- Jesus also told a parable about a poor beggar and a rich man in which the beggar was a different man named "Lazarus."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [beg](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Martha](#), [Mary](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- John 11:11
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 16:21

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **37:1** One day, Jesus received a message that **Lazarus** was very sick. **Lazarus** and his two sisters, Mary and Martha, were close friends of Jesus.
- **37:2** Jesus said, "Our friend **Lazarus** has fallen asleep, and I must wake him."
- **37:3** Jesus' disciples replied, "Master, if **Lazarus** is sleeping, then he will get better." Then Jesus told them plainly, "**Lazarus** is dead."
- **37:4** When Jesus arrived at **Lazarus'** hometown, **Lazarus** had already been dead for four days.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, "Where have you put **Lazarus**?"
- **37:9** Then Jesus shouted, "**Lazarus**, come out!"
- **37:10** So **Lazarus** came out! He was still wrapped in grave clothes.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the Jews were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and **Lazarus**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G29760

"

Referenced in: [37:1](#); [37:2](#); [37:3](#); [37:4](#); [37:6](#); [37:9](#); [37:10](#); [37:11](#)

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

"

**Referenced in:** [23:6](#); [25:5](#); [25:7](#); [26:3](#); [27:2](#); [27:3](#); [29:1](#); [31:5](#); [31:7](#); [37:3](#); [37:4](#); [37:5](#); [37:6](#); [43:9](#); [45:5](#); [46:2](#); [46:4](#); [47:3](#); [47:11](#); [49:13](#); [49:17](#); [50:4](#); [50:6](#); [50:7](#)

## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

"

**Referenced in:** [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [24:8](#); [27:2](#); [27:3](#); [28:2](#); [28:3](#); [36:5](#); [39:10](#); [47:1](#); [48:1](#); [49:3](#); [49:4](#); [49:7](#); [49:9](#); [49:13](#)

## Mary, the mother of Jesus

### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cana](#), [Egypt](#), [Herod the Great](#), [Jesus](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

### Bible References:

- John 2:4
- John 2:12
- Luke 1:29
- Luke 1:35
- Mark 6:3
- Matthew 1:16
- Matthew 1:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was **Mary**. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah."
- **22:5** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." **Mary** believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:6** Soon after the angel spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard **Mary's** greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:2** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take **Mary** as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:4** Joseph and **Mary** had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:1** An angel told a virgin named **Mary** that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G31370

"



**Referenced in:** [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [23:1](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:4](#); [49:1](#)

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

"

**Referenced in:** [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [20:12](#); [32:11](#); [34:9](#); [34:10](#)

## Midian, Midianite

### Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#), [Egypt](#), [flock](#), [Gideon](#), [Jethro](#), [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 7:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:4** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

"

**Referenced in:** [16:3](#); [16:4](#); [16:5](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#)

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

"

**Referenced in:** [19:14](#); [37:10](#); [43:6](#); [45:1](#); [49:2](#)

## mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

### Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

”

Referenced in: [39:5](#); [39:12](#); [40:1](#); [40:4](#); [40:5](#); [40:6](#)

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

"

**Referenced in:** [9:7](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [10:1](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [11:8](#); [12:5](#); [12:7](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:9](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [14:4](#); [14:7](#); [14:9](#); [14:12](#); [14:13](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [17:6](#); [21:3](#); [36:3](#); [36:4](#); [45:2](#); [48:12](#)



# Naaman

## Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Jordan River](#), [leprosy](#), [prophet](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:6-7
- 2 Kings 5:1
- Luke 4:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:6** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G34970

"

Referenced in: [19:14](#); [19:15](#); [26:6](#)

# Nathan

## Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [prophet](#), [Uriah](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Psalm 51:1

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, "Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me."
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G34810

"

Referenced in: [17:7](#); [17:13](#)

## Nazareth, Nazarene

### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as “the Nazarene.”
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus’ teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth’s synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 1:43-45
- Luke 1:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 2:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:4** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:7** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G34780, G34790, G34800

”

Referenced in: [26:2](#); [26:7](#)

# Nebuchadnezzar

## Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [arrogant](#), [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 1:2
- Daniel 4:4
- Ezekiel 26:8

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:6** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:8** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:9** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

"

Referenced in: [20:6](#); [20:8](#); [20:9](#)

## Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

### Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Goshen](#), [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- Amos 8:8
- Genesis 41:1-3
- Jeremiah 46:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- **9:4** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- **9:6** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- **10:3** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0216, H2975, H4714, H5104

"

Referenced in: [8:4](#); [9:4](#); [9:6](#); [10:3](#)

# Noah

## Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [ark](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G35750

"

**Referenced in:** [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#)

## Passover

### Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G39570

"

**Referenced in:** [12:14](#); [38:1](#); [38:4](#); [43:2](#); [48:9](#); [48:10](#)



## Paul, Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [christian](#), [jewish leaders](#), [rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 8:3
- Acts 9:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 1:1
- Philemon 1:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:6** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:1** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:2** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:5** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:6** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:9** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:1** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G39720, G45690

"

**Referenced in:** [46:1](#); [46:2](#); [46:3](#); [46:4](#); [46:5](#); [46:6](#); [46:7](#); [46:8](#); [46:9](#); [46:10](#); [47:1](#); [47:2](#); [47:3](#); [47:4](#); [47:5](#); [47:7](#); [47:8](#); [47:9](#); [47:10](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#)

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

“

**Referenced in:** [7:10](#); [14:3](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:12](#); [16:3](#); [21:13](#); [23:7](#); [42:6](#); [48:14](#); [50:13](#); [50:17](#)

## people, people group

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

"

**Referenced in:** [14:2](#); [21:2](#); [42:8](#); [42:10](#); [48:7](#); [48:11](#); [50:3](#)

## persecute

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), [oppress](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

”

Referenced in: [45:6](#); [46:1](#); [46:2](#); [46:4](#); [46:9](#)

## Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:25
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 3:16
- Matthew 4:18-20
- Matthew 8:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:9** Peter said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told Peter, "Come!"
- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and John with him.
- **38:9** Peter replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, Peter pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G27860, G40740, G46130

"

**Referenced in:** [28:9](#); [29:1](#); [31:5](#); [31:6](#); [31:7](#); [31:8](#); [36:1](#); [36:4](#); [36:5](#); [38:9](#); [38:10](#); [38:15](#); [39:1](#); [39:6](#); [39:7](#); [39:8](#); [43:5](#); [43:10](#); [43:11](#); [43:12](#); [44:1](#); [44:2](#); [44:4](#); [44:6](#); [44:7](#); [44:8](#); [44:9](#)



## Pharaoh, king of Egypt

### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **8:8 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **9:2** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **9:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** *that he is more powerful than* **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

"

**Referenced in:** [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [9:2](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [9:13](#); [9:15](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:12](#); [11:1](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [12:3](#); [12:4](#)

## Philippi, Philippians

### Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece. People in Philippi were called Philippians.

- Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
- While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
- The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
- Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: [Caesarea](#), [Christian](#), [church](#), [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Silas](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:1-2
- Acts 16:11
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Philippians 1:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of **Philippi** to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave **Philippi**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G53740, G53750

"

Referenced in: [47:1](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#)

## Pilate

### Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:2
- Mark 15:2
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:9** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10** **Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:2** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:2** **Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G40910, G41940

"

Referenced in: [39:9](#); [39:10](#); [39:11](#); [39:12](#); [40:2](#); [41:1](#); [41:2](#)

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

"

Referenced in: [12:13](#); [17:3](#); [17:8](#); [22:7](#); [23:8](#); [43:13](#); [44:3](#); [47:8](#); [47:9](#)

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

”

**Referenced in:** 10:8; 13:12; 13:15; 19:8; 19:10; 21:7; 31:1; 31:3; 34:6; 34:9; 34:10; 36:2; 38:9; 38:11; 38:12; 38:13; 43:1; 43:13; 46:10; 47:3; 49:18

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

"

**Referenced in:** [24:2](#); [30:1](#); [38:1](#); [45:6](#); [45:7](#); [46:6](#); [46:7](#); [46:8](#); [46:10](#); [47:11](#); [50:2](#)



## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

"

**Referenced in:** [4:7](#); [13:2](#); [13:9](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [21:6](#); [21:7](#); [22:1](#); [27:6](#); [27:7](#); [48:6](#)

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”<sup>⚡</sup>
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

”

**Referenced in:** 4:8; 5:4; 5:10; 6:4; 7:10; 8:15; 9:13; 13:10; 14:2; 14:12; 14:14; 15:1; 15:7; 15:13; 17:14; 19:18; 20:10; 21:1; 21:3; 21:4; 43:8; 48:4; 48:13; 50:1; 50:13

## Promised Land

### Facts:

The term "Promised Land" only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Promised Land" can be translated as the "land that God said he would give to Abraham" or "land that God promised to Abraham" or "land God promised to his people" or "land of Canaan."
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of "the land God promised."

(See also: [Canaan](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 7:26-27

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:1** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land!**
- **14:1** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:9** This period of time when God's people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

"

**Referenced in:** [12:1](#); [13:15](#); [14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:13](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:12](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [20:13](#)

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [false god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

"

**Referenced in:** 12:12; 14:14; 17:7; 17:13; 19:1; 19:2; 19:6; 19:7; 19:8; 19:12; 19:14; 19:16; 19:17; 19:18; 20:1; 20:5; 20:10; 21:3; 21:5; 21:6; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 22:1; 22:7; 24:1; 24:4; 26:2; 26:5; 26:6; 36:3; 38:3; 40:3; 42:3; 43:5; 43:7; 44:5; 45:3; 48:12

## prostrate, bow down, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, **Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

”

**Referenced in:** 13:4; 13:5; 13:12; 14:2; 14:3; 16:1; 16:11; 16:16; 17:6; 18:2; 18:3; 18:9; 18:12; 18:13; 19:2; 19:5; 19:16; 20:1; 20:5; 20:13; 23:10; 25:6; 25:7; 26:2; 26:7; 31:8; 47:1; 49:18



## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

”

**Referenced in:** [4:2](#)

## punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

”

**Referenced in:** [16:2](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [17:14](#); [18:4](#); [19:16](#); [20:2](#); [20:5](#); [20:8](#); [20:10](#); [21:7](#); [21:13](#); [48:6](#); [48:10](#); [49:9](#); [49:10](#); [49:11](#); [49:14](#)

## Rahab

### Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family came to live with the Israelites after the Israelites destroyed Jericho and spared Rahab and her family.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jericho](#), [prostitute](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 2:25
- Joshua 2:21
- Joshua 6:17-19
- Matthew 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect **Rahab** and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- **15:5** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. **Rahab** and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G44600

"

Referenced in: [15:1](#); [15:5](#)

## Rebekah

### Facts:

Rebekah was a grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- God chose Rebekah to be the wife of Abraham's son Isaac.
- Rebekah left the region of Aram Naharaim where she lived and went with Abraham's servant to the region of the Negev where Isaac was living.
- For a long time Rebekah did not have any children, but finally God blessed her with twin boys, Esau and Jacob.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Aram](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Nahor](#), [Negev](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15
- Genesis 24:45
- Genesis 24:56
- Genesis 24:64
- Genesis 25:28
- Genesis 26:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:2** After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to **Rebekah**. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.
- **6:6** God told **Rebekah**, "There are two nations inside of you."
- **7:1** As the boys grew up, **Rebekah** loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau. But before he did, **Rebekah** and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau.
- **7:6** But **Rebekah** heard of Esau's plan. So she sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7259

"

Referenced in: [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [7:1](#); [7:3](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#)

## rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

"

Referenced in: [14:14](#); [18:7](#); [18:9](#); [18:13](#); [20:7](#); [45:3](#)

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620



"

**Referenced in:** [45:5](#)

## Rehoboam

### Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21
- Matthew 1:7

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:5** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **18:6** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G44970

"

Referenced in: [18:5](#); [18:6](#)

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

”

**Referenced in:** [16:2](#); [16:17](#); [17:13](#); [19:18](#); [20:1](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#); [24:4](#); [42:8](#); [43:11](#); [44:5](#)

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: life, death, raise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 3:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 5:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 3:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03860, G14540, G18150

”

Referenced in: [21:14](#); [37:5](#)

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [just](#), [law](#), [law](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

"

Referenced in: [3:2](#); [4:8](#); [17:2](#); [23:1](#); [50:10](#)

## Rome, Roman

### Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term "Roman" referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of "Romans" is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](#), [the sea](#), [Pilate](#), [Paul](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 22:25
- Acts 28:14
- John 11:48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:4** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived.
- **32:6** Then Jesus asked the demon, "What is your name?" He replied, "My name is Legion, because we are many." (A "legion" was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.)
- **39:9** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed.
- **39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G45140, G45160

"

Referenced in: [23:4](#); [39:9](#); [39:12](#); [44:5](#); [47:1](#); [47:7](#); [47:10](#)



## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: rest)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

"

**Referenced in:** [13:5](#); [26:2](#); [41:3](#)

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

## Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

"

**Referenced in:** [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [13:9](#); [13:12](#); [16:6](#); [17:6](#); [18:2](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [21:7](#); [38:4](#); [48:6](#); [48:8](#); [49:11](#)

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

"

Referenced in: [20:4](#); [27:8](#); [27:9](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [45:7](#)

## Sarah, Sarai

### Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:4** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- **5:4** God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G45640

"

Referenced in: [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#)

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

"

**Referenced in:** [21:1](#); [25:1](#); [25:2](#); [25:4](#); [25:5](#); [25:6](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#); [26:1](#); [33:6](#); [38:7](#); [38:9](#); [48:2](#); [48:4](#); [49:15](#); [50:4](#); [50:9](#); [50:10](#); [50:15](#)



## Saul (OT)

### Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:1** Saul was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:5** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

"

Referenced in: [17:1](#); [17:2](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#)

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

"

**Referenced in:** 9:8; 11:2; 11:5; 12:5; 12:13; 13:4; 16:4; 16:8; 16:9; 16:14; 16:17; 21:2; 21:14; 23:2; 28:7; 31:7; 38:1; 40:5; 40:6; 44:8; 45:7; 47:4; 47:11; 48:5; 48:7; 49:5; 49:6; 49:12; 49:13; 50:4

## sea of reeds, Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 4:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:4** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:5** Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**."
- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H5488, G20630, G22810

"

Referenced in: [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [13:1](#)

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), works, obey, [house](#), [lord](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

"

**Referenced in:** 4:5; 5:1; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 7:8; 7:9; 8:2; 8:4; 8:12; 9:2; 9:8; 9:13; 12:1; 12:3; 12:13; 12:14; 13:4; 14:7; 19:10; 20:6; 29:2; 29:3; 29:4; 29:5; 29:6; 29:7; 29:8; 35:6; 35:9; 35:10; 38:1; 38:15; 39:6; 39:10; 47:3; 47:4; 47:5; 47:6; 47:7; 49:17; 50:4; 50:6; 50:7

## shepherd, herder, pastor

### Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: [sheep](#), [livestock](#), [pastor](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.



- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

"

**Referenced in:** [9:11](#); [17:2](#); [23:6](#); [23:8](#); [30:3](#); [38:8](#)

## Silas, Silvanus

### Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem.

- The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to take a letter to the city of Antioch.
- Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
- Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Barnabas](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Paul](#), [Philippi](#), prison, [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 1:1
- 2 Thessalonians 1:1
- Acts 15:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:2** She (Lydia) invited Paul and **Silas** to stay at her house, so they stayed with her and her family.
- **47:3** Paul and **Silas** often met with people at the place of prayer.
- **47:7** So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and **Silas** to the Roman authorities, who beat them and threw them into jail.
- **47:8** They put Paul and **Silas** in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet.
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and **Silas** and asked, "What must I do to be saved?"
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and **Silas** from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and **Silas** visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G46090, G46100

"

Referenced in: [47:1](#); [47:2](#); [47:3](#); [47:7](#); [47:8](#); [47:9](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#)

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebellious against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), flesh, [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

"

**Referenced in:** 2:1; 4:2; 8:5; 10:8; 10:9; 13:9; 13:12; 14:9; 16:17; 17:7; 17:9; 17:13; 18:9; 20:1; 20:10; 21:5; 21:7; 21:13; 21:14; 22:7; 23:2; 24:3; 24:6; 24:7; 25:1; 29:1; 34:7; 34:9; 34:10; 35:4; 35:5; 35:8; 38:5; 38:12; 42:8; 43:11; 44:5; 45:5; 48:1; 48:2; 48:3; 48:5; 48:6; 48:8; 48:10; 49:5; 49:7; 49:8; 49:10; 49:11; 49:12; 49:14; 49:16; 49:17; 50:16

## Sinai, Horeb

### Facts:

Mount Sinai or Mount Horeb is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula, but the exact location of this mountain is not known.

- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.
- It is also called the “mountain of God.”
- It was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- It was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.

(See also: [desert](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 4:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 1:17-19
- 1 Kings 8:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 1:2
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Psalms 106:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722, H5514, G37350, G46140

"

Referenced in: [13:1](#); [13:3](#); [13:11](#); [13:15](#); [14:1](#); [15:13](#); [20:1](#); [21:5](#)

## Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

"

Referenced in: [17:14](#); [18:1](#); [18:2](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#)

## Son of God, the Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), ancestor, [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), son, [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”

- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

"

**Referenced in:** [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [25:2](#); [25:4](#); [26:9](#); [31:8](#); [32:6](#); [36:5](#); [37:5](#); [39:3](#); [39:4](#); [40:5](#); [40:6](#); [40:8](#); [40:9](#); [42:10](#); [46:6](#); [48:13](#); [49:1](#); [49:3](#); [49:9](#); [49:12](#); [49:14](#)



## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [demon](#), [breath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

"

Referenced in: [40:7](#); [45:5](#)

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

"

**Referenced in:** [9:13](#); [38:12](#); [42:3](#); [42:7](#); [44:5](#); [46:4](#); [50:4](#); [50:10](#); [50:17](#)

## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:12-15
- Ephesians 4:11-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Habakkuk 2:18
- James 3:2
- John 1:37-39
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:1** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:2** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:3** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G13200, G25670, G35470, G55720

”

Referenced in: [27:1](#); [28:1](#); [37:2](#); [38:14](#)

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

• Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

"

**Referenced in:** [17:6](#); [17:7](#); [18:2](#); [18:9](#); [20:7](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [25:4](#); [27:7](#); [34:6](#); [40:7](#); [44:1](#); [44:3](#); [44:6](#)

## tempt, temptation

### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:4-5
- Hebrews 4:15
- James 1:13
- Luke 4:2
- Luke 11:4
- Matthew 26:41

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0974, H4531, H5254, G05510, G15980, G39850, G39860, G39870

"

Referenced in: [25:1](#); [25:8](#); [26:1](#); [38:11](#); [49:17](#)



## Ten Commandments

### Facts:

The “Ten Commandments” were commands that God gave to Moses on Mount Sinai while the Israelites were living in the desert on their way to the land of Canaan. God wrote these commands on two large slabs of stone.

- God gave the Israelites many commands to obey, but the Ten Commandments were special commands to help the Israelites love and worship God and love other people.
- These commandments were also part of God’s covenant with his people. By obeying what God had commanded them to do, the people of Israel would show that they loved God and belonged to him.
- The stone slabs with the commandments written on them were kept in the Ark of the Covenant, which was located in the most holy place of the tabernacle and later, the temple.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [command](#), [covenant](#), [desert](#), [law](#), [obey](#), [Sinai](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Exodus 34:27-28
- Luke 18:18-21

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** Then God wrote these **Ten Commandments** on two stone tablets and gave them to Moses.
- **13:13** When Moses came down the mountain and saw the idol, he was so angry that he smashed the stones on which God had written the **Ten Commandments**.
- **13:15** Moses wrote the **Ten Commandments** on new stone tablets to replace the ones he had broken.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H6235

”

Referenced in: [13:13](#); [13:15](#)

## tent of meeting

### Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 1:2
- Numbers 4:31-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:8** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **14:8** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **18:2** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0168, H4150

”

Referenced in: [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [14:8](#); [17:6](#); [18:2](#)

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

”

Referenced in: [14:15](#); [17:2](#)

## Uriah

### Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Hittite](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:5
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 3:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0223, G37740

"

Referenced in: [17:12](#); [17:13](#)

## virgin, virginity

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

"

Referenced in: [21:9](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [49:1](#)

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

"

Referenced in: [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [18:1](#); [23:9](#); [45:1](#)

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), true, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7

- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God.**"
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word.**
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God.**
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

"

**Referenced in:** [25:3](#); [25:7](#); [26:4](#); [33:6](#); [33:7](#); [33:8](#); [33:9](#); [42:3](#); [42:5](#); [42:7](#); [42:8](#); [45:10](#); [48:12](#); [49:6](#); [49:18](#)



## Yahweh

### Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

"

**Referenced in:** [9:14](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#); [16:1](#); [16:5](#); [16:13](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [19:10](#); [19:11](#); [19:13](#); [23:2](#)

## Zechariah (NT)

### Facts:

In the New Testament, Zechariah was a Jewish priest who became the father of John the Baptist.

- Zechariah loved God and obeyed him.
- For many years Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, prayed earnestly to have a child, but did not have one. Then when they were very old, God answered their prayers and gave them a son.
- Zechariah prophesied that his son John would be the prophet who would announce and prepare the way for the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Elizabeth](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 1:5-7
- Luke 1:21-23
- Luke 1:39-41
- Luke 3:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:1** Suddenly an angel came with a message from God to an old priest named **Zechariah**. **Zechariah** and his wife, Elizabeth, were godly people, but she had not been able to have any children.
- **22:2** The angel said to **Zechariah**, "Your wife will have a son. You will name him John."
- **22:3** Immediately, **Zechariah** was unable to speak.
- **22:7** Then God allowed **Zechariah** to speak again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G21970

"

Referenced in: [22:1](#); [22:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:7](#); [24:1](#)

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Notes Contributors

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Andrew Belcher  
Lizz Carlton  
Jan Zanutto  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Door43 World Missions Community

## unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Contributors

unfoldingWord  
Door43 World Missions Community

## unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Questions Contributors

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Jerrell Hein  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## unfoldingWord® OBS Translation Words Links Contributors

This list was copied and not necessarily correct for this resource  
Door43 World Missions Community  
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)  
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)  
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)  
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)

## unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia

Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982-2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton  
Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community